



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Edw T 918.98.424

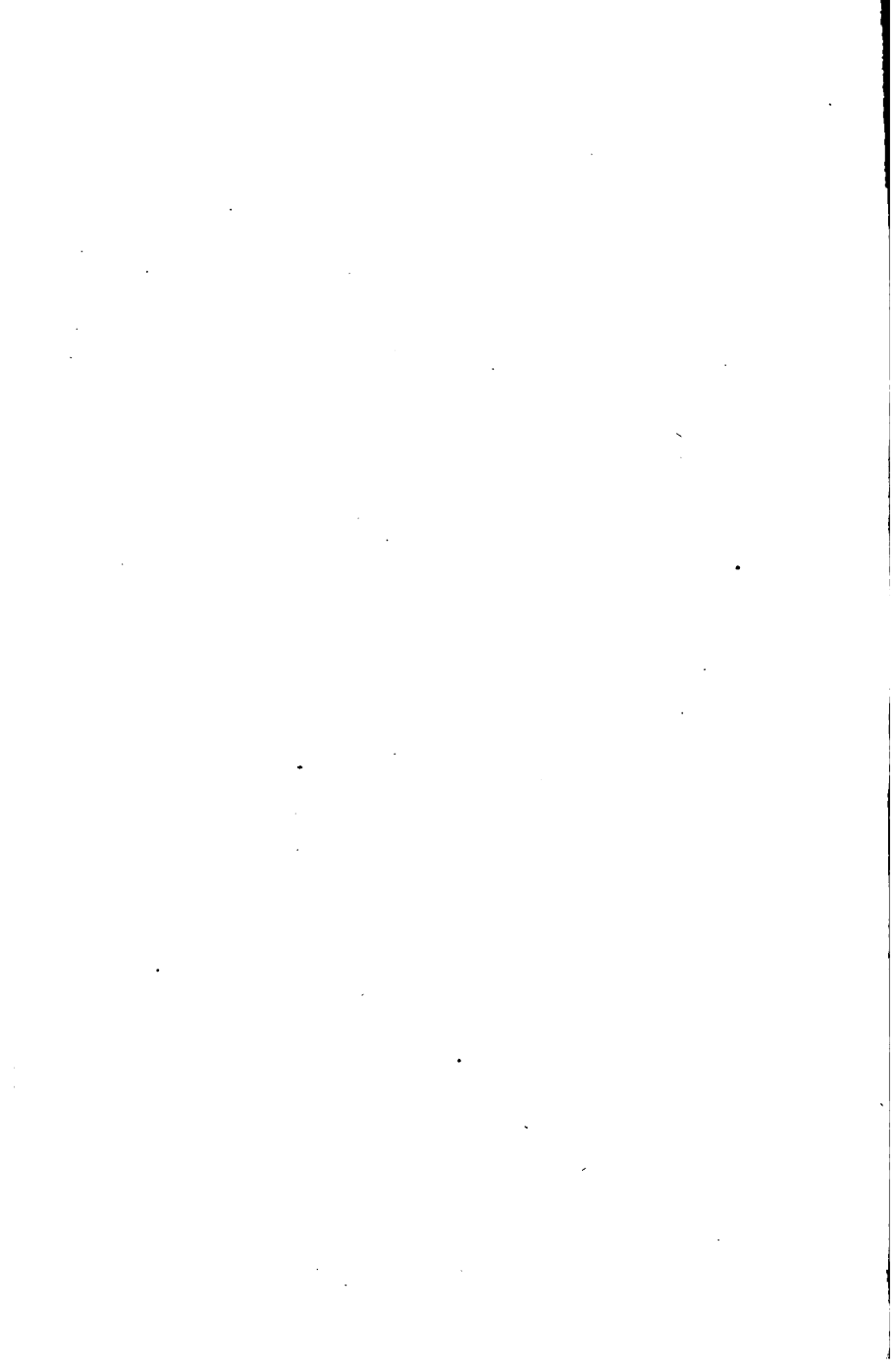


HARVARD  
COLLEGE  
LIBRARY



3 2044 097 078 455





GILDERSLEEVE'S

LATIN GRAMMAR

School Edition

BY

BASIL L. GILDERSLEEVE

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE JOHNS HOPKINS UNIVERSITY

AND

GONZALEZ LODGE

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN BRYN MAWR COLLEGE



UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY

NEW YORK BOSTON NEW ORLEANS

✓ EducT 918.98.424



Mrs. George Henry Browne

COPYRIGHT, 1898, BY  
UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY

\* \* 1972



## PREFACE.

IN response to the demand for a Shorter Latin Grammar based on the GILDERSLEEVE-LODGE work of 1894 the following manual has been prepared. Historical detail and grammatical exposition intended for advanced students mainly have been discarded, and the phraseology has been simplified wherever it seemed possible without a sacrifice of scientific exactness. Still greater abridgment might have been more in accordance with methods that are in vogue just now; but a grammar that shall serve the average student throughout his course in school or college cannot be reduced to a skeleton, and we have not been able to gain our own consent to save space by limiting the illustrative examples to lean and meaningless sentences, holding as we do that the pupil ought to have something more to remember than a mere group of words. Much attention has been paid to the typography, and by retaining the old section-numbers (as has been done except in the list of verbs, 137-165) the parallel use of the larger and the smaller grammars has been facilitated.

In conclusion, we desire to express our obligations to Dr. W. GORDON McCABE, Headmaster of the University School, Richmond, Va., who has read the book in proof-sheets and has given us the advantage of his scholarly criticisms; and to Mr. CHARLES W. BAIN, Headmaster of the Sewanee Grammar School in the University of the South, who has also read all the proof-sheets and given material assistance in adapting the book to the wants of younger students.

By these criticisms and others that have reached us we have endeavored to profit, and it is hoped that a wider sphere of usefulness awaits this result of our joint labors.

BASIL L. GILDERSLEEVE.  
GONZALEZ LODGE.

BALTIMORE AND BRYN MAWR, *June 1, 1898.*



# CONTENTS.

## ETYMOLOGY.

	SECTION
<b>Letters and Syllables</b> . . . . .	1-15
Alphabet, 1; Vowels, 2, 3; Diphthongs, 4; Consonants, 6, 7; Syllables, 10, 11; Quantity, 12-14; Accentuation, 15.	
<b>Parts of Speech</b> . . . . .	16
<b>Inflection of the Substantive</b> . . . . .	17-71
Definitions, 18; Gender, 19-21; Number, 22; Cases, 23-25; Declensions, 26; Endings, 27; First Declension, 29, 30; Second Declension, 31-34; Third Declension, 35-60; Fourth Declension, 61, 62; Fifth Declension, 63, 64; Greek Substantives, 65, 66; Irregular Substantives, 67-71.	
<b>Inflection of the Adjective</b> . . . . .	72-90
Definition, 72; First and Second Declension, 73-76; Pronominal Adjectives, 76; Third Declension, 77-83; Irregular Adjectives, 84, 85; Comparison of Adjectives, 86-90.	
<b>Adverbs</b> . . . . .	91-93
Formation of Adverbs, 91, 92; Comparison, 93.	
<b>Numerals</b> . . . . .	94-98
Cardinals, 94; Ordinals, 94; Distributives, 97; Adverbs, 98.	
<b>Pronouns</b> . . . . .	99-111
Personal, 100-102; Determinative, 103; Demonstrative, 104; Relative, 105; Interrogative, 106; Indefinites, 107; Adjectives, 108; Correlative, 109-111.	
<b>Inflection of the Verb</b> . . . . .	112-175
Definitions, 112, 113; Endings, 114, 115; Inflection of <i>esse</i> , 116, 117; of <i>prædesse</i> , 118; of <i>posse</i> , 119. Regular Verbs, 120-167; Division, 120; Rules for forming Tenses, 121. First Conjugation, 122; Second Conjugation, 123, 124; Third Conjugation, 125, 126; Fourth	

## SECTION

Conjugation, 127; Deponents, 128; Periphrastic, 129; Notes, 180, 181. Formation of the Stems, 182-185; Change in Conjugation, 186; List of Verbs, 187-167. Irregular Verbs, 168-174; *ire*, 169, 2; *quire*, *nequire*, 170; *ferre*, 171; *edere*, 172; *fieri*, 173; *velle*, *nolle*, *malle*, 174; Defective Verbs, 175.

**Formation of Words . . . . . 176-200**

Simple Words, 179-192; Substantives, 180, 181; Adjectives, 182; Substantives without Suffixes, 183; Verbs, 190-192; Compound Words, 193-200; Substantives, 194-198; Verbs, 199, 200.

## SYNTAX.

**Simple Sentence . . . . . 202-471**

Subject, 203, 204; Predicate, 205-209; Concord, 210, 211; Voices, 212-221. Tenses, 222-252; Present, 227-230; Imperfect, 231-234; Perfect, 235-240; Pluperfect, 241; Future, 242, 243; Future Perfect, 244, 245; Periphrastic, 246-251; Tenses in Letters, 252. Moods, 253-283; Indicative, 254; Subjunctive, 255-265; Imperative, 266-275; Tenses in Moods and Verbal Substantives, 276-283.

**Simple Sentence Expanded . . . . . 284-471**

Multiplication of the Subject . . . . . 285-287

Qualification of the Subject . . . . . 288-325

Adjectives, 289-303; Numerals, 292-295; Comparatives and Superlatives, 296-303; Pronouns, 304-319; Personal, 304; Demonstrative, 305-307; Determinative and Reflexive, 308-311; Possessive, 312; Indefinite, 313-319; Apposition, 320-325; Predicative Attribution and Apposition, 325.

Multiplication of Predicate . . . . . 326

Qualification of Predicate . . . . . 327-449

The Cases . . . . . 328-418

Accusative, 328-343; Dative, 344-359; Genitive, 360-383; Ablative, 384-410; Locative, 411; Prepositions, 412-418; with Accusative, 416; with Ablative, 417; with Accusative and Ablative, 418.

Infinitive . . . . . 419-424

Subject, 422; Object, 423; Predicate, 424.

	SECTION
Gerund and Gerundive . . . . .	425-433
Genitive, 428; Dative, 429; Accusative, 430; Ablative, 431; with Prepositions, 432, 433.	
Supine . . . . .	434-436
Accusative, 435; Ablative, 436.	
Participles . . . . .	437, 438
Adverbs . . . . .	439-449
Negatives, 441-449.	
Incomplete (Interrogative) Sentence . . . . .	450-471
Direct Simple Questions, 453-457; Direct Disjunctive Questions, 458, 459; Indirect Questions, 460; Moods in Direct, 462-466; Moods in Indirect, 467.	
<b>Compound Sentence . . . . .</b>	<b>472-670</b>
Coordinate Sentence . . . . .	473-503
Copulative, 474-482; Adversative, 483-491; Disjunctive, 492-497; Causal and Illative, 498-503.	
Subordinate Sentences . . . . .	504-670
Moods in, 508; Sequence of Tenses, 509-519; Reflexive in, 520-522.	
Object Sentences . . . . .	523-537
Introduced by <i>quod</i> , 524, 525; in Accusative and Infinitive, 526, 527, 532-535; in Nominative and Infinitive, 528; in Participle, 536, 537.	
Causal Sentences . . . . .	538-542
Introduced by <i>quod</i> , <i>quia</i> , <i>etc.</i> , 539-541; by <i>quod</i> , with verbs of Emotion, 542.	
Sentences of Design and Tendency . . . . .	543-558
Final, 544-550; Pure Final, 545; Complementary Final, 546-549; After Verbs of Fear, 550.	
Consecutive, 551; Pure Consecutive, 552; Complementary Consecutive, 553-557; Exclamatory Questions, 558.	
Temporal Sentences . . . . .	559-588
Antecedent Action, 561-567; Iterative Action, 566, 567; Contemporaneous Action, 568-573; Subsequent Action, 574-577; Sentences with <i>cum</i> , 578-588.	
Conditional Sentences . . . . .	589-602
Logical, 595; Ideal, 596; Unreal, 597; Incomplete, 598-601; Of Comparison, 602.	
Concessive Sentences . . . . .	603-609



	SECTION
Relative Sentences . . . . .	610-637
Concord, 614-621 ; Tenses, 622, 623 ; Moods, 624-637.	
Comparative Sentences . . . . .	638-644
Correlative, 642 ; with <i>atque</i> or <i>et</i> , 643 ; with <i>quam</i> , 644.	
The Abridged Sentence . . . . .	645-663
Historical Infinitive, 647 ; <i>Oratio Obliqua</i> , 648 ;	
Moods in, 650-652 ; Tenses in, 653-655 ; Conditional Sentences in, 656-659 ; Pronouns, 660 ; Partial Obliquity, 662, 663.	
Participial Sentences . . . . .	664-670
Arrangement of Words . . . . .	671-679
Figures of Syntax and Rhetoric . . . . .	688-700

## PROSODY.

Quantity . . . . .	702-715
General Rules, 702-706 ; of Final Syllables, 707-709 ; of Monosyllables, 710-713 ; of Compounds, 715.	
Figures of Prosody . . . . .	719-728
Versification . . . . .	729-785
Definition, 729-753 ; Iambic Rhythms, 757-762 ; Dactylic Rhythms, 783-785.	

---

	PAGES
Appendices . . . . .	293-297
Roman Calendar, Roman Measures, Roman Money, Roman Names, 293, 294 ; Rules of Gender, 295, 296 ; Principal Irregular Forms, 296, 297.	
Index of Verbs . . . . .	298-304
Principal Rules of Syntax . . . . .	305-312
General Index . . . . .	313-328

# LATIN GRAMMAR.

## ETYMOLOGY.

### Alphabet.

1. The Latin alphabet has twenty-three letters :

A B C D E F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T V X Y Z

REMARKS.—1. C had originally the sound of G, but gradually came to have the sound of K, and finally supplanted K except in a few words, such as *Kalendae*, *Kaest*, which were usually abbreviated, *Kal.*, *K.* The original force of C is retained only in the abbreviations *C.* (for *Gaius*) and *Cn.* (for *Gnaeus*).

2. J, the consonantal form of I, dates from the middle ages. V represented also the vowel u in the Latin alphabet ; and its resolution into two letters—V for the consonant, and U for the vowel—also dates from the middle ages. For convenience, V and U are still distinguished in this grammar.

### Vowels.

2. The vowels are a, e, i, o, u, (y) ; and are divided :

1. According to their *quality* (i. e., the position of the organs used in pronunciation), into

*guttural* (or *back*), a, o, u ;      *palatal* (or *front*), e, i, (y).

2. According to their *quantity* or *prolongation* (i. e., the time required for pronunciation), into

*long*, ( — ) ;      *short*, ( ˇ ).

REMARK.—Vowels whose quantity shifts in poetry are called *common* (see 13), and are distinguished thus :

≡, by preference *short* ;      ≡, by preference *long*.

## 3.

## Sounds of the Vowels.

ǣ = æ in father.	ō = o in bone.
ē = e in prey.	ū = oo in moon.
i = i in caprice.	ȳ = u in sûr (French), German ū.

REMARK.—The short sounds are only less prolonged in pronunciation than the long sounds, and have no exact English equivalents.

## Diphthongs.

4. *Diphthongs*, or *double sounds*, are to be pronounced so that both sounds can be heard in a slur.

æe = æe (ǣh-eh).	ei = ei in feint (drawled).
oe = oy in boy.	eu = eu in Spanish deuda (ǣh-oo).
au = ou in our.	(ui = we, almost).

REMARK.—Æe was perhaps pronounced ē as early as the Augustan age.

5. The sign .. (*Dieræsis*, i. e., *separation*) over the second vowel shows that each sound is to be pronounced separately: æër, air; Oenomatüs, aloë.

## Consonants.

## 6. Consonants are divided :

1. According to the principal *organs* by which they are pronounced, into

<i>Labials</i> (lip-sounds) :	b, p,	(ph), f, v, m.
<i>Dentals</i> (tooth-sounds) :	d, t,	(th), l, n, r, s.
<i>Gutturals</i> (throat-sounds) :	g, c, k, qu,	(ch), h, ŋ (see 7).

NOTE.—Instead of *dental* and *guttural*, the terms *lingual* and *palatal* are often used.

2. According to their *prolongation*, into

A. *Semi-vowels*: of which

l, m, n, r,	are <i>liquids</i> (m and n being <i>nasals</i> ).
h	is a <i>breathing</i> .
s	is a <i>sibilant</i> .

B. *Mutes*: to which belong

P-mutes,	p,	b,	(ph), f,	<i>labials</i> .
T-mutes,	t,	d,	(th),	<i>dentals</i> .
K-mutes,	k, c, qu, g,	(ch),		<i>gutturals</i> .

Those on the same line are said to be of the *same organ*.

*Mutes* are further divided into

<b>Tenuis</b>	(thin, smooth) :	<b>p, t, k, c, qu,</b>	<i>hard</i> (surd).
<b>Mediae</b>	(middle) :	<b>b, d, g,</b>	<i>soft</i> (sonant).
<b>[Aspiratae]</b>	(aspirate, rough) :	<b>ph, th, ch,]</b>	<i>aspirate</i> .

Those on the same line are said to be of the *same order*.

3. *Double consonants* are : **z = dz** in *adze* ; **x = ex** (**ks**), **gs** ; **i** and **u** between two vowels are double sounds, half vowel, half consonant.

### Sounds of the Consonants.

7. The consonants are sounded as in English, with the following exceptions :

**C** is hard throughout = **k**.

**Ch** in Latin words is pronounced like **k** ; in Greek words it = **kh** and is commonly pronounced as **ch** in German.

**G** is hard throughout, as in *get, give*.

**H** at the beginning of a word is but slightly pronounced ; in the middle of a word it is almost imperceptible.

**I consonant** (**J**) has the sound of a broad **y** ; nearly like **y** in *yule*.

**N** has a guttural nasal sound before **c, g, q**, as in *anchor, anguish*.

**Qu** = **kw** (nearly) ; before **o, u** = **c**.

**R** is trilled.

**S** and **X** are always hard, as in *hiss, axe*.

**T** is hard throughout, as in *tone* ; never like **t** in *nation*.

**U consonant** (**V**) is pronounced like the vowel, but with a slur.

### Syllables.

(8, 9) 10. The syllable is the unit of pronunciation ; it consists of a vowel, or of a vowel and one or more consonants.

A word has as many syllables as it contains separate vowels and diphthongs.

In dividing a word into syllables, a consonant, between two vowels, belongs to the second : **a-mō**, *I love* ; **li-xa**, *a sutler*.

Any combination of consonants that can begin a word (including **mn**) belongs to the following vowel ; in other combinations the first consonant belongs to the preceding vowel : **a-sper**, *rough* ; **fau-stus**, *lucky* ; **li-bri**, *books* ; **a-mnis**, *river*.

REMARKS.—1. The combinations that cannot begin a word are (a) doubled consonants : *sic-cus, dry*; (b) a liquid and a consonant : *al-mus, fostering*; *am-bō, both*; *an-guis, snake*; *ar-bor, tree*.

2. Compounds are treated by the best grammarians as if their parts were separate words : *ab-igō, I drive off*; *rēs-pública, commonwealth*.

11. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultimate* (*ultima, last*); the next to the last the *penult* (*paene, almost, and ultima*); the one before the penult, the *antepenult* (*ante, before, and paenultima*).

REMARK.—A syllable is said to be *open* when it ends with a vowel; *close*, when it ends with a consonant.

### Quantity.

12. Distinguish carefully between the length of a syllable and the length of a vowel :

1. A syllable is said to be long *by nature*, when it contains a long vowel or diphthong : *mōs, custom*; *caelum, heaven*.

REMARKS.—1. A vowel before *nf, ns, gm, gn*, is long *by nature* : *infelix, unlucky*; *mēnsa, table*; *agmen, train*; *agnus, lamb*.

2. Before *i* consonant (*j*) a vowel is long *by nature* : *Pompeius, Pompey*; except in compounds of *iugum, yoke* (*bi-iugus, two-horse*), and in a few other words.

2. A syllable is said to be long *by position*, when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant : *ars, art*; *cōllum, neck*; *ābrumpō, I break off*; *pēr mare, through the sea*; *nēx, murder*.

3. A syllable is said to be *short* when it contains a short vowel, which is not followed by two or more consonants : *lōcus, place*; *tābūla, picture*.

REMARK.—A vowel is short *by nature* when followed by another vowel (*h* does not count), or by *nt, nd* : *dēus, God*; *innocētia, innocence*; *amāndus, to be loved*.

13. A syllable ending in a short vowel, followed by a mute with *l* or *r*, is said to be *common* (*anceps, doubtful*) : *tenēbrae, darkness*.

REMARK.—In prose such syllables are always short. In poetry they were short in early times, common in the Augustan period.

14. Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diphthong, or contracted from other vowels, is *long* : *saevus, cruel* ; *conclūdō, I shut up* (from *claudō, I shut*) ; *cōgō* (from *co-agō*), *I drive together*.

### Accentuation.

15. 1. Dissyllabic words have the accent or stress on the penult : *bónus, good*.

2. Polysyllabic words have the accent on the penult, when the penult is long ; on the antepenult, when the penult is short or common : *mandāre, to commit* ; *mándere, to chew* ; *intēgrum, entire* ; *circúmdare, to surround* ; *supérstitēs, survivors*.

REMARKS.—1. The little appendages (*enclitics*), *que, ve, ne*, add an accent to the ultimate of words accented on the antepenult : *lúmináque, and lights* ; *flúmináve, or rivers* ; *vómeréne ? from a plowshare ?* Dissyllables and words accented on the penult follow the ordinary rule of accentuation : *égomet, I indeed* ; *amāreve, or to love*.

2. Compounds (not prepositional) of *facere* and *dare* retain the accent on the verbal form : *calefácit, vñnumdāre*.

3. Vocatives and genitives of substantives in *ius* of the second declension, as well as genitives of substantives in *ium*, retain the accent on the same syllable as the nominative : *Vergíll*.

### Parts of Speech.

16. The Parts of Speech are the Noun, the Pronoun, the Verb, and the Particles, defined as follows :

Noun. { 1. The *Substantive* (also loosely called *noun*) gives a name : *vir, a man* ; *Cocles, Cocles* ; *dōnum, a gift*.  
2. The *Adjective* adds a quality to the Substantive : *bonus vir, a good man*.

3. The *Pronoun* points out without giving the name : *hic, this* ; *ille, that* ; *ego, I*.

4. The *Verb* expresses a complete thought, whether assertion, wish, or command : *amat, he loves* ; *amet, may he love* ; *amā, love thou* !

Particles. { 5. The *Adverb* shows *circumstances*.  
6. The *Preposition* shows *originally local relation*.  
7. The *Conjunction* shows *connection*.

REMARKS.—1. The *Interjection* is either a mere cry of feeling: **ah!** and does not belong to language, or falls under one of the above-mentioned classes.

2. The Particles are mainly mutilated forms of the noun and pronoun.

### Inflection.

17. *Inflection* (**inflexiō**, *bending*) is that *change* in the form of a word which shows a change in the relations of that word. It occurs chiefly at the end of the word.

The noun, pronoun, and verb are inflected; the particles are not capable of further inflection.

The inflection of nouns and pronouns is called *declension*, and nouns and pronouns are said to be *declined*.

The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation*, and verbs are said to be *conjugated*.

### The Substantive.

18. A Substantive is either *concrete* or *abstract*; *concrete* when it gives the name of a person, place, or thing; *abstract* when it gives the name of a quality; as **amicitia**, *friendship*.

Concrete substantives are either *proper* or *common*:

Proper when they are proper, or peculiar, to certain persons, places, or things: **Horātius**, *Horace*; **Neāpolis**, *Naples*; **Padus**, *Po*.

Common when they are common to a whole class: **dominus**, *a lord*; **urbs**, *a city*; **amnis**, *a river*.

### Gender of Substantives.

19. For the names of animate beings, the gender is determined by the signification; for things and qualities, by the termination.

Names of males are masculine; names of females, feminine. Masculine: **Rōmulus**; **Iūppiter**; **vir**, *man*; **equus**, *horse*. Feminine: **Cornelia**; **Iūnō**; **fēmina**, *woman*; **equa**, *mare*.

20. Some classes of words, without natural gender, have their gender determined by the signification :

I. Names of *months* and *winds*, most names of *rivers*, and many names of *mountains* are *masculine* : as **Aprilis**, *April* ; **Aquilō**, *the north wind* ; **Albia**, *the River Elbe* ; **Athōs**, *Mount Athos*.

REMARKS.—1. Of the rivers, **Allia**, **Lēthē**, **Matrona**, **Sagra**, **Styx** are feminine ; **Albula**, **Acherōn**, **Garumna** vary, being sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine.

2. Of the mountains, **Alpēs**, *the Alps*, is feminine ; so, too, sundry (Greek) names in α (G. *ae*), ε (G. *eo*).

II. Many names of *countries*, *islands*, *cities*, *plants*, and *trees* are *feminine* : **Aegyptus**, *Egypt* ; **Rhodus**, *Rhodes* ; **pirus**, *a pear-tree* ; **abiēs**, *a fir-tree*.

REMARKS.—1. Many names of countries (especially Greek) and islands in us (G. *i*) follow the termination, and are masculine, except **Aegyptus**, **Cyprus**, **Peloponnēsus**, **Rhodus**, and some others, mainly Greek.

2. Most names of trees with stems in -tro (N. -ter) are masculine : **oleaster**, *wild olive* ; **pinaster**, *wild pine*. So also most shrubs : **dūmus**, *bramble-bush* ; **rhūs**, *sumach*. Neuter are **acer**, *maple* ; **papāver**, *poppy* (usually) ; **rōbur**, *oak* ; **salix**, *willow* ; **sūber**, *cork-tree* ; **tūber**, *mushroom*.

III. All indeclinable substantives, and all words and phrases treated as indeclinable substantives, are *neuter* : **fās**, *right* ; **ā longum**, *ā long* ; **scire tuum**, *thy knowing* ; **triste valē**, *a sad "farewell."*

21. 1. Substantives which have but one form for masculine and feminine are said to be of *common gender* : **civis**, *citizen* (male or female) ; **comes**, *companion* ; **iūdex**, *judge*.

2. **Substantiva mōbilia** are words of the same origin, whose different terminations designate difference of gender : **magister**, *master, teacher* ; **magistra**, *mistress* ; **servus**, *serva*, *slave* (masc. and fem.) ; **victor**, *victrix*, *conqueror* (masc. and fem.).

3. If the male and female of animals have but one designation, **mās**, *male*, and **fēmina**, *female*, are added, when it is necessary to be exact : **pāvō mās** (*masculus*), *peacock* ; **pāvō fēmina**, *peahen*. These substantives are called *epicene*.



## Number.

**22.** In Latin there are two numbers: the *Singular*, denoting *one*; the *Plural*, denoting *more than one*.

## Cases.

**23.** In Latin there are six cases:

1. Nominative (Case of the Subject).

Answers the question: *who ? what ?*

2. Genitive (Case of the Complement).

Answers the question: *whose ? whereof ?*

3. Dative (Case of Indirect Object or Personal Interest).

Answers the question: *to whom ? for whom ?*

4. Accusative (Case of Direct Object).

Answers the question: *whom ? what ?*

5. Vocative (Case of Direct Address).

6. Ablative (Case of Adverbial Relation).

Answers the question: *where ? whence ? wherewith ?*

NOTE.—These six cases are the remains of a larger number. The Locative (answers the question: *where ?*) is akin to the Dative, and coincident with it in the 1st and 3d Declensions; in the 2d Declension it is lost in the Genitive; it is *often* blended with the Ablative in *form*, *regularly* in *syntax*. The Instrumental (answers the question: *wherewith ?*), which is found in other members of the Indo-European family, is likewise merged in the Ablative.

**24.** According to their *syntactical use*, the cases are divided into **Cāsūs Rēctī**, or Independent Cases, and **Cāsūs Obliquī**, or Dependent Cases. Nominative and Vocative are **Cāsūs Rēctī**, the rest **Cāsūs Obliquī**.

**25.** The case-forms arise from the combination of the *case-endings* with the *stem*.

1. The stem is that which is common to a class of formations.

NOTES.—1. The stem is often so much altered by contact with the case-ending, and the case-ending so much altered by the wearing away of vowels and consonants, that they can be determined only by scientific analysis. So in the paradigm **mēnsa**, the stem is not **mēns**, but **mēnsā**, the final **ā** having been absorbed by the ending in the Dative and Ablative Plural **mēnsis**. So **-ā**, the ending of the Ablative Singular, has nearly disappeared, and the locative ending has undergone many changes (**ē**, **ī**, **ī**, **ē**). The "crude form" it is often impossible to ascertain.

2. The root is an ultimate stem, and the determination of the root belongs to comparative etymology. The stem may be of any length; the root was probably a monosyllable. In **penna** the stem is **pennā-**; in **pennula**, **ponnulā-**; in **pennātulus**, **pennātulo-**; the root is **PET** (**petna**, **pesna**, **penna**), and is found in **pet-ere**, *to fall upon, to fly at*; Greek, *πέτ-ουαι*, *πτερόν*; English, *feather*.

2. The case-endings are as follows :

Sg.—N.V.	Wanting or m. f. -s; n. -m.	Pl.—N.V.	-se; -i; n. -a.
G.	-is; -i.	G.	-um; rum.
D	-i.	D.	-bus; -is.
Ac.	-m, -em.	Ac.	-s; n. -a.
Ab.	Wanting; -e.	Ab.	-bus; -is.

### Declensions.

26. There are five declensions in Latin, which are characterized by the final letter of their respective stems (*stem-characteristic*).

For practical purposes and regularly in lexicons they are also improperly distinguished by the ending of the Genitive Singular.

#### STEM CHARACTERISTIC. GENITIVE SINGULAR.

I.	ā (ā).	ae.
II.	ō.	i.
III.	i, u, a consonant.	is.
IV.	ū.	ūs.
V.	ē.	ei.

REMARK.—The First, Second, and Fifth Declensions are called Vowel Declensions; the Third and Fourth, which really form but one, the Consonant Declension, i and u being semi-consonants.

27. The case-endings in combination with the stem-characteristics give rise to the following systems of terminations:

SINGULAR.			
	I.	II.	III.
N.	a.	us; wanting; um.	s; wanting.
G.	ae.	i.	is.
D.	ae.	ō.	i.
Ac.	am.	um.	em, im.
V.	a.	e; wanting; um.	s.
Ab.	ē.	ō.	e, i.

		IV.	V.
N. V.		us ; ū.	ēs.
G.		ūs.	īī, ē.
D.		ui, ū.	īī, ē.
Ac.		um ; ū.	em.
Ab.		ū.	ē.

	PLURAL.		
	I.	II.	III.
N. V.	ae.	I ; ā.	ēs ; a, ia.
G.	ārum.	um, ōrum.	um, ium.
D. Ab.	is.	is.	ibus.
Ac.	ās.	ēs ; ā.	is, ēs ; a, ia.

		IV.	V.
N. V.		ūs ; ua.	ēs.
G.		uum.	ērum.
D. Ab.		ubus, ibus.	ēbus.
Ac.		ūs ; ua.	ēs.

### 28. General Rules of Declension.

1. The Vocative is like the Nominative, except in the Singular of the Second Declension when the Nominative ends in *-us*.
2. In the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative cases are alike in the Plural.
3. Neuter substantives have the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative alike ; in the Plural these cases always ends in *ā*.
4. The Dative and Ablative Plural are alike in all declensions.

### FIRST DECLENSION.

29. The stem ends in *ā*, which is weakened from an original *ā*. The Nominative is the simple stem, with no ending.

Sg.—N.	mēnsa (f.),	the table,	a table.
G.	mēnsae,	of the table,	of a table.
D.	mēnsae,	to, for the table,	to, for a table.
Ac.	mēnsam,	the table,	a table.
V.	mēnsa,	O table !	table !
Ab.	mēnsā,	from, with, by the table,	from, with, by a table.

PL.—N.	mēnsae,	<i>the tables,</i>	<i>tables.</i>
G.	mēnsārum,	<i>of the tables,</i>	<i>of tables.</i>
D.	mēnsis,	<i>to, for the tables,</i>	<i>to, for tables.</i>
Ac.	mēnsās,	<i>the tables,</i>	<i>tables.</i>
V.	mēnsae,	<i>O tables !</i>	<i>tables !</i>
Ab.	mēnsis,	<i>from, with, by the tables,</i>	<i>from, with, by tables.</i>

REMARKS.—1. The early ending of the Gen., *ās*, is retained in the classical period only in the form *familiās*, *of a family*, in combination with *pater*, *father*, *māter*, *mother*, *filius*, *son*, *filia*, *daughter*; viz., *paterfamiliās*, *māterfamiliās*, *filiusfamiliās*, *filiafamiliās*.

2. The Loc. Sing. is like the Genitive: *Rōmae*, *at Rome*; *militiae*, *abroad*.

3. The Gen. Sing. sometimes ends in *-ai* in poetry; the Gen. Pl. sometimes takes the form *-um* instead of *-ārum*; this occurs chiefly in the Greek words *amphora* (*amphora*, *measure of tonnage*), and *drachma*, *franc*—(*Greek coin*). The poets make frequent use of this form in Greek patronymics in *-da*, *-dās*, and compounds of *-cola* (from *colō*, *I inhabit*) and *-gena* (from root *gen*, *beget*).

4. The ending *-abus* is found (along with the regular ending) in the Dat. and Abl. Pl. of *dea*, *goddess*, and *filia*, *daughter*.

**30. Rule of Gender.**—Substantives of the First Declension are feminine, except when males are meant.

EXCEPTION.—*Hadria*, *the Adriatic*, is masculine.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

**31.** The stem ends in *ō*, which in the classical period is usually weakened to *ū*. In combination with the case-endings it contracts into *ō* or disappears altogether. In the Vocative (except in neuters) it is weakened to *ē*.

The Nominative ends in *s* (m. and f.) and *m* (n.). But many masculine stems in which the final vowel, *ō*, is preceded by *r*, drop the *us* and *e* of the Nominative and Vocative, and insert *ē* before the *r* if it was preceded by a consonant.

The final *-o* is often retained after *u* or *v* until the first century A.D.; as *servos*, *slave*.

(32) **33. Hortus** (m.), *garden*; **puer** (m.), *boy*; **ager** (m.), *field*; **bellum** (n.), *war*, are thus declined :

Sg.—N.	<b>hortus,</b>	<b>puer,</b>	<b>ager,</b>	<b>bellum,</b>
G.	<b>horti,</b>	<b>pueri,</b>	<b>agri,</b>	<b>belli,</b>
D.	<b>hortō,</b>	<b>puerō,</b>	<b>agrō,</b>	<b>bellō,</b>
Ac.	<b>hortum,</b>	<b>puerum,</b>	<b>agrum,</b>	<b>bellum,</b>
V.	<b>horte,</b>	<b>puer,</b>	<b>ager,</b>	<b>bellum,</b>
Ab.	<b>hortō,</b>	<b>puerō,</b>	<b>agrō,</b>	<b>bellō,</b>
PL.—N.	<b>horti,</b>	<b>pueri,</b>	<b>agri,</b>	<b>bella,</b>
G.	<b>hortōrum,</b>	<b>puerōrum,</b>	<b>agrōrum,</b>	<b>bellōrum,</b>
D.	<b>hortis,</b>	<b>pueris,</b>	<b>agris,</b>	<b>bellis,</b>
Ac.	<b>hortōs,</b>	<b>puerōs,</b>	<b>agrōs,</b>	<b>bella,</b>
V.	<b>horti,</b>	<b>pueri,</b>	<b>agri,</b>	<b>bella,</b>
Ab.	<b>hortis.</b>	<b>pueris.</b>	<b>agris.</b>	<b>bellis.</b>

REMARKS.—1. Stems in *-io* have Gen. Sing. for the most part in **i** until the first century A.D., without change of accent : **ingēni** (N. *ingenium*), of *genius*, **Vergīl**, of *Vergil*. See 15, R. 3.

2. Proper names in *-ius* (stems in *-io*) have Voc. in **i**, without change of accent : **Antōni**, **Tulli**, **Gai**, **Vergīl**. **Filius**, *son*, and **genius**, *genius*, form their Voc. in like manner : **filii**, **geni**. In solemn discourse *-us* of the Nom. is employed also for the Vocative. So regularly **deus**, *God*!

3. The Loc. Sing. ends in **i** (apparent Genitive), as **Rhodi**, at *Rhodes*, **Tarenti**, at *Tarentum*.

4. In the Gen. Pl. **-um** instead of **ōrum** is found in words denoting coins and measures ; as, **nummum**, of *moneys* = **sestertium**, of *sesterces* ; **dēnārium** ; **talentum**, of *talents* ; **modium**, of *measures* ; **iugerum** ; **medimnum** ; **stadium**. Likewise in some names of persons : **deum** (also **-ōrum**) ; **liberum** ; **virum** (poetical, except in technical expressions, as **triumvirum**) ; **socium**. Most of these have also the regular endings.

5. The Loc. Pl. is identical with the Dative : **Delphis**, at *Delphi*.

6. **Deus**, *God*, is irregular, and declined as follows : Sg. N. V. **deus** ; G. **dei** ; D. **deō** ; Ac. **deum** ; Ab. **deō**. Pl. N. V. **dei**, **di**, **di** ; G. **deum**, **deōrum** ; D. Ab. **deis**, **dis**, **dis** ; Ac. **deōs**.

**34. Rule of Gender.**—Substantives in **-us** are masculine ; in **-um** neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—Feminine are : 1st. Cities and islands, as, **Corinthus**, **Samus**. 2d. Most trees, as, **fāgus**, *beech* ; **pirus**, *pear-tree*. 3d. **Alvus**, *belly* ; **colus**, *distaff* ; **humus**, *ground* ; **vannus**, *wheat-fan*. 4th. Many Greek nouns, as, **atomus**, *atom*.

Neuters are : **pelagus**, *sea* ; **vīrus**, *venom* ; **vulgus**, *the rabble*.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

**35. 1.** The stem ends in a consonant, or in the close vowels *i* and *u*.

**2.** The stems are divided according to their last letter, called the stem-characteristic, following the subdivisions of the letters of the alphabet :

## I.—Consonant Stems.

A. Liquid stems, ending in *l, m, n, r*.

B. Sibilant stems, ending in *s*.

C. Mute stems, { 1. Ending in a P-mute, *b, p*,  
2. Ending in a K-mute, *g, c*,  
3. Ending in a T-mute, *d, t*.

## II.—Vowel Stems.

1. Ending in *i*.

2. Ending in *u*.

(Compare the Fourth Declension.)

**36. 1.** The Nominative Singular, masculine and feminine, ends in *s*, which, however, is dropped after *l, n, r, s*, and combines with a K-mute to form *x*. The final vowel of the stem undergoes various changes.

The Vocative is like the Nominative.

In the other cases, the endings are added to the unchanged stem:

**2.** Neuters always form :

The nominative without the case-ending *s*.

The Accusative and Vocative cases in both numbers like the Nominative.

The Nominative Plural in *ä*.

## I.—CONSONANT STEMS.

## A.—Liquid Stems.

1. LIQUID STEMS IN *l*.

(37, 38) **39.** Form the Nominative without *s*. These comprise :

A. Those in which the stem-characteristic is preceded by a vowel :

B. Two neuter substantives with stems in *-ll*, one of which is lost in the Nominative : *mel, mellis, honey; fel, fellis, gall*.

Sg.—N. *cōnsul, consul* (m.).

Pl.—N. *cōnsulēs, the consuls*.

G. *cōnsulis,*

G. *cōnsulum,*

D. *cōnsuli,*

D. *cōnsulibus,*

Ac. *cōnsulem,*

Ac. *cōnsulēs,*

V. *cōnsul,*

V. *cōnsulēs,*

Ab. *cōnsule,*

Ab. *cōnsulibus.*

*Rules of Gender.*—1. Stems in -l are masculine.

EXCEPTIONS : **sāl**, *ochre*, is neuter, and occasionally **sāl**, *salt*.

2. Stems in -ll are neuter.

## 2. LIQUID STEMS IN m.

40. Nominative with **s**. One example only : **hiem(p)s**, *winter* (f.) ; Gen., **hiem-is**, Dat., **hiem-i**, etc.

## 3. LIQUID STEMS IN n.

41. *Most masculine* and *feminine* stems form the Nominative Singular by dropping the stem-characteristic and changing a preceding vowel to o.

*Some masculine* and *most neuter* stems retain the stem-characteristic in the Nominative and change a preceding i to e.

42.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Sg.—N.	<b>leð</b> , <i>lion</i> (m.),	<b>imāgō</b> , <i>likeness</i> (f.),	<b>nōmen</b> , <i>name</i> (n.),
G.	<b>leðnis</b> ,	<b>imāginis</b> ,	<b>nōminis</b> ,
D.	<b>leðni</b> ,	<b>imāgini</b> ,	<b>nōmini</b> ,
Ac.	<b>leðnem</b> ,	<b>imāginem</b> ,	<b>nōmen</b> ,
V.	<b>leð</b> ,	<b>imāgō</b> ,	<b>nōmen</b> ,
Ab.	<b>leðne</b> ,	<b>imāgine</b> ,	<b>nōmine</b> ,
PL.—N.	<b>leðnēs</b> ,	<b>imāginēs</b> ,	<b>nōmina</b> ,
G.	<b>leðnum</b> ,	<b>imāginum</b> ,	<b>nōminum</b> ,
D.	<b>leðnibus</b> ,	<b>imāginibus</b> ,	<b>nōminibus</b> ,
Ac.	<b>leðnēs</b> ,	<b>imāginēs</b> ,	<b>nōmina</b> ,
V.	<b>leðnēs</b> ,	<b>imāginēs</b> ,	<b>nōmina</b> ,
Ab.	<b>leðnibus</b> .	<b>imāginibus</b> .	<b>nōminibus</b> .

Irregular formations : **carð**, G. *carnis*, *flesh* ; **Anið**, G. *Aniēnis*, *the Anio river* ; **Nērið**, G. *Nēriēnis*, a proper name. **Sanguis**, *blood*, and **pollis**, *flour*, drop the stem-characteristic and add **s** to form nominative ; G. *sanguinis*, *pollinis*.

## 43. Rules of Gender.—

1. Masculine are nouns in -ō,

Save those in -dō, -gō, and -iō,

With **carð**, *flesh* ; but **cardō**, **ōrdō**,

Are masculine with **ligō**, **margō** ;

So **harpagō**, and in -iō

All concrete nouns like **pūgiō**.\*

---

\* **cardō**, *hinge* ; **harpagō**, *grappling-hook* ; **ligō**, *mattock* ; **margō**, *border* ; **ōrdō**, *rank* ; **pūgiō**, *dagger*.

2. Substantives in **-en** (**-men**) are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—Masculine are *liēn*, *splēn*, *spleen*; *rēnēs* (pl.), *kidneys*; *pecten*, *comb*, and a few others, mostly names of males.

4. LIQUID STEMS IN **r**.44. Form Nominative without **s**.

45.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	<i>labor, toil</i> (m.),	<i>labōrēs</i> ,	<i>pater, father</i> (m.),	<i>patrēs</i> ,
G.	<i>labōris</i> ,	<i>labōrum</i> ,	<i>patris</i> ,	<i>patrum</i> ,
D.	<i>labōri</i> ,	<i>labōribus</i> ,	<i>patri</i> ,	<i>patribus</i> ,
Ac.	<i>labōrem</i> ,	<i>labōrēs</i> ,	<i>patrem</i> ,	<i>patrēs</i> ,
V.	<i>labor</i> ,	<i>labōrēs</i> ,	<i>pater</i> ,	<i>patrēs</i> ,
Ab.	<i>labōre</i> ,	<i>labōribus</i> .	<i>patre</i> ,	<i>patribus</i> .

Irregular formations: Four neuters, *ebur*, *ivory*; *femur*, *thigh*; *iecur*, *liver*; *rōbur*, *oak*, show Gen. in **-oris**; two of these, *femur*, *iecur*, have also the irregular forms *feminis* and *iecineris*, *iecinoris*, *iecinoris*. *Iter*, *way*, has G. *itineris*; and *supellēx*, *furniture*, has G. *supellēctilis*.

REMARK.—*Imber*, *shower*, *linter*, *skiff*, *ūter*, *bag*, *venter*, *belly*, have Gen. Pl. in **-ium**. *Imber* has also sometimes Abl. Sing. in **i**.

46. *Rules of Gender*.—1. Substantives in **-er** and **-or** are masculine. 2. Substantives in **-ar** and **-ur** are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—Masculine are *salar*, *trout*; *furfur*, *bran*, and names of animals in **-ur**.

Feminine are *linter*, *arbor*.

Neuters are: *fār*, *nectar*, *marmor*,

*Aequor*, *iter*, *acer*, *piper*,

*Verber*, *tūber*, *vēr*, *cadāver*,

*Ador*, *tūber*, and *papāver*.\*

## B.—Sibilant Stems.

47. The Nominative has no additional **s**, and changes in masculines **e** to **i**, and in neuters **e** or **o** to **u** before **s**.

In the oblique cases, the **s** of the stem usually passes over, between two vowels, into **r**.

48.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. A. V.	<i>genus, kind</i> (n.),	<i>genera</i> ,	<i>corpus, body</i> (n.),	<i>corpora</i> ,
G.	<i>generis</i> ,	<i>generum</i> ,	<i>corporis</i> ,	<i>corporum</i> ,
D.	<i>generi</i> ,	<i>generibus</i> ,	<i>corpori</i> ,	<i>corporibus</i> ,
Ab.	<i>genere</i> ,	<i>generibus</i> .	<i>corpore</i> ,	<i>corporibus</i> .

\* *arbor*, *tree*; *acer*, *maple*; *ador*, *spelt*; *aequor*, *sea*; *cadāver*, *dead body*; *fār*, *spelt*; *iter*, *way*; *marmor*, *marble*; *nectar*, *nectar*; *papāver*, *poppy*; *piper*, *pepper*; *tūber*, *tumor*; *tūber*, *teat*; *vēr*, *spring*; [*verber*], *thong*; *linter*, *skiff*.



REMARK.—*Ās*, a *copper*, and *os*, *bone*, form the Gen. Pl. in *-ium*, after the usage of vowel stems. So also *mūs*, *mouse*.

49. *Rules of Gender*.—1. Masculine are substantives in *-is* (*-eris*), and *-ōs* (*-ōris*).

2. Neuter are substantives in *-us* (*-eris*, *-oris*), and in *-ūs* (*-ūris*).

EXCEPTIONS.—*Ōs*, *mouth* (G. *ōris*), is neuter; *tellūs*, *earth* (G. *-ūris*), is feminine; and *lepus*, *hare* (G. *-oris*), *mūs*, *mouse* (G. *mūris*), are masculine.

### C.—Mute Stems.

50. All masculines and feminines of mute stems have *s* in the Nominative. Before *s* a P-mute is retained, a K-mute combines with it to form *x*, a T-mute is dropped.

Most polysyllabic mute stems change their final vowel *i* into *e* in the Nominative.

The stems show variations as follows :

#### 51. Stems in a P-mute.

Sg.—N.	<i>princeps</i> , <i>chief</i> (m.),	PL.—	<i>principēs</i> ,
G.	<i>principis</i> ,		<i>principum</i> ,
D.	<i>principi</i> ,		<i>principibus</i> ,
Ac.	<i>principem</i> ,		<i>principēs</i> ,
V.	<i>princeps</i> ,		<i>principēs</i> ,
Ab.	<i>principe</i> ,		<i>principibus</i> .

#### 52. Stems in a K-mute.

Sg.—N.	<i>rēx</i> , <i>king</i> (m.),	PL.—	<i>rēgēs</i> ,
G.	<i>rēgis</i> ,		<i>rēgum</i> ,
D.	<i>rēgi</i> ,		<i>rēgibus</i> ,
Ac.	<i>rēgem</i> ,		<i>rēgēs</i> ,
V.	<i>rēx</i> ,		<i>rēgēs</i> ,
Ab.	<i>rēge</i> ,		<i>rēgibus</i> .

Irregular formations : *nix* (G. *nivis*), *snow*; *bōs* (G. *bovis*; see 71), *ox*.

#### 53. Stems in a T-mute.

Sg.—N.	<i>aetās</i> , <i>age</i> (f.),	PL.—	<i>aetātēs</i> ,	Sg.—	<i>pēs</i> , <i>foot</i> (m.),	PL.—	<i>pedēs</i> ,
G.	<i>aetātis</i> ,		<i>aetātum</i> ,		<i>pedis</i> ,		<i>pedum</i> ,
D.	<i>aetātī</i> ,		<i>aetātibus</i> ,		<i>pedī</i> ,		<i>pedibus</i> ,
Ac.	<i>aetātem</i> ,		<i>aetātēs</i> ,		<i>pedem</i> ,		<i>pedēs</i> ,
V.	<i>aetās</i> ,		<i>aetātēs</i> ,		<i>pēs</i> ,		<i>pedēs</i> ,
Ab.	<i>aetāte</i> ,		<i>aetātibus</i> .		<i>pede</i> ,		<i>pedibus</i> .

Irregular formations : *cor* (G. *cordis*), *heart*; *nox* (G. *noctis*), *night*; *caput* (G. *capitis*), *head*; *lao* (G. *lactis*), *milk*.

**54.** Many substantives of this class have the termination *-ium* in the Gen. Pl. and *-i* in the Abl. Singular.

Monosyllabic mute stems, with the characteristic preceded by a consonant, have the Gen. Pl. in *-ium*: *urbium*, of cities; *arcium*, of citadels; *montium*, of mountains; *noctium*, of the nights.

Monosyllabic mute stems, with characteristic preceded by a long vowel or diphthong, vary: *dōt-ium*, of douries; *lit-ium*, *fauc-ium*, *fraud-um* (*-ium*), *laud-um* (*-ium*). But *vōcum*, of voices.

Monosyllabic mute stems with characteristic preceded by a short vowel have *-um*: *opum*, of resources; but *fac-ium*, *nuc-um* (*-ium*), *niv-ium* (*-um*).

The polysyllabic stems in *-nt* and *-rt* have more frequently *-ium*, as *clientium* (*-um*), of clients; *cohortium* (*-um*), of companies.

Of other polysyllabic stems feminine stems in *-āt* have frequently both *-um* and *-ium*, as *aetātum* and *aetātium*, *civitatūm* and *civitatium*, etc.; the rest have usually *-um*. *Palūs*, marsh, has usually *palūdiūm*.

**55. Rule of Gender.**—Mute stems, with Nominative in *a*, are feminine.

1. *Exceptions in a k-mute.*

Masculine *-unx*, *-ix*, and *-ex*,

Saving *forfex*, *forpex*, *nex*,

*lāx*, *vībēx*, *faex*, and forms of [*prex*].\*

*Calx*, heel, and *calx*, chalk, vary.

2. *Exceptions in a t-mute.*

Masculine are *lapis*, stone, and substantives in *-es*, *-itis*, except *merges* (f.), sheaf; *pariēs*, wall; also *pēs*, foot.

Masculines in *-ns* are: *dēns*, tooth; *fōns*, spring; *mōns*, mountain; *pōns*, bridge; *rudēns*, rope; *torrēns*, torrent.

Neuters are only: *cor*, heart, *lac*, milk, and *caput*, head.

## II.—VOWEL STEMS.

### 1. Vowel Stems in *i*.

**56.** Masculines and feminines form their Nominative in *a*.

Some feminines change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel *i* into *e*.

Neuters change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel *i* into *e*. This *e* is generally dropped by polysyllabic neuters after *l* and *r*.

---

\* *faex*, dregs; *forfex*, shears; *forpox*, tongs; *lāx*, law; *nex*, slaughter; [*prex*], prayer; *vībēx*, weal.

Stems in *i* have Genitive Plural in *-ium*.

Neuter stems in *i* have the Ablative Singular in *ī*, and Nominative Plural in *-ia*.

	M.	F.	F.	N.	N.
Se.—N.	<i>collis, hill,</i>	<i>turris, tower,</i>	<i>vulpēs, fox,</i>	<i>mare, sea,</i>	<i>animal, living being,</i>
G.	<i>collis,</i>	<i>turris,</i>	<i>vulpis,</i>	<i>maris,</i>	<i>animālis,</i>
D.	<i>collī,</i>	<i>turri,</i>	<i>vulpi,</i>	<i>marī,</i>	<i>animālī,</i>
Ac.	<i>collem,</i>	<i>turrim(em),</i>	<i>vulpem,</i>	<i>mare,</i>	<i>animal,</i>
V.	<i>collis,</i>	<i>turris,</i>	<i>vulpēs,</i>	<i>mare,</i>	<i>animal,</i>
Ab.	<i>colle,</i>	<i>turri(e),</i>	<i>vulpe,</i>	<i>marī,</i>	<i>animālī,</i>
Pl.—N.	<i>collēs,</i>	<i>turrēs,</i>	<i>vulpēs,</i>	<i>maria,</i>	<i>animālia,</i>
G.	<i>collium,</i>	<i>turri-um,</i>	<i>vulpium,</i>	<i>marum,</i>	<i>animālium,</i>
D.	<i>collibus,</i>	<i>turri-bus,</i>	<i>vulpibus,</i>	<i>maribus,</i>	<i>animālibus,</i>
Ac.	<i>collis(ēs),</i>	<i>turris(ēs),</i>	<i>vulpis(ēs),</i>	<i>maria,</i>	<i>animālia,</i>
V.	<i>collēs,</i>	<i>turrēs,</i>	<i>vulpēs,</i>	<i>maria,</i>	<i>animālia,</i>
Ab.	<i>collibus.</i>	<i>turri-bus.</i>	<i>vulpibus.</i>	<i>maribus.</i>	<i>animālibus.</i>

57. REMARKS.—1. The proper ending of the Acc. Sing. *-im* is retained *always* in *sitis, tussis, vis*; and in names of towns and rivers in *-is*, as *Neāpolis, Tiberis*; *usually* in *febris, puppis, restis, securis, turris*; *occasionally* in *clāvis, crātis, cutis, messis, nāvis*.

2. The Abl. in *-ī* is found in substantives that regularly have *-im* in Acc. (except perhaps *restis*): also not unfrequently in *amnis, avis, canālis, civis, clāssis, finis, fustis, ignis, orbis, unguis*; occasionally in *anguis, bŭlis, clāvis, collis, corbis, messis*; regularly in neuters in *e, al*, and *ar*, except in *rēte*, and in the towns *Caere, Praeneste*.

3. In the Gen. Pl., instead of the ending *-ium, -um* is found *always* in *canis, dog, iuvenis, young man, pānis, bread, senex, old, struēs, heap, volucris, bird*; *usually* in *apis, bee, sēdēs, seat, vātēs, bard*; *frequently* in *mēnsis, month*. On *imber, etc.*, see 45, R.

4. The proper ending of the Acc. Pl., *-is*, is found frequently in the classical period along with the later termination *-ēs*.

58. *Rule of Gender*.—1. Vowel stems, with Nominative in *-ēs* are feminine; those with Nominative in *-is* are partly masculine, partly feminine.

2. Vowel stems, with Nominative in *-e, -al, -ar*, are neuter.

3. *The rest* are feminine.

REMARKS.—1. Of the names of animals in *-is*, some are masculine: *tigris, tiger* (fem. in poetry); *canis, dog* (also fem.); *piscis, fish*; others feminine: *apis, bee*; *avis, bird*; *ovis, sheep*; *fēlis, cat* (usually *fēlēs*).

2. *Masculinī generis*

Are these words that end in -is :

*amnis, axis, būris, collis,*  
*caulis, crinis, fascis, follis,*  
*fūnis, fūstis, ignis, torris;*

*orbis, pānis, postis, ōnsis,*  
*vectis, vermis, unguis, mēnsis,*  
 —*antēs, cassēs, mănēs*, (plural)—  
 Add to these *the mullet, mūgil*,  
 Which is sometimes *mūgilis*.\*

## 2. Vowel Stems in u.

59. Of stems in u, the *monosyllabic* stems, two in number, belong to the Third Declension.

Sa.—N.	<i>grūs, crane (f.),</i>	PL.— <i>grūs,</i>
G.	<i>gruis,</i>	<i>gruum,</i>
D.	<i>grui,</i>	<i>gruibus,</i>
Ac.	<i>gruem,</i>	<i>grūs,</i>
V.	<i>grūs,</i>	<i>grūs,</i>
Ab.	<i>grue,</i>	<i>gruibus.</i>

*Sūs, swine* (commonly *f.*), usually *subus*, in Dat. and Abl. Plural.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

(60) 61. The Fourth Declension embraces only dissyllabic and polysyllabic stems in u.

The endings are those of the Third Declension.

In the Genitive and Ablative Singular, and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural (sometimes, too, in the Dative Singular), the u of the stem absorbs the vowel of the ending, and becomes long.

In the Dative and Ablative Plural u becomes i before the ending -bus.

The Accusative Singular, as always in vowel stems, has the ending -m, without a connecting vowel (compare the Accusative in -i-m of the stems in i), hence -u-m.

MASCULINE.		NEUTER.		
Se.—N.	<i>fructus, fruit,</i>	PL.— <i>fructūs,</i>	Se.— <i>cornū, horn,</i>	PL.— <i>cornua,</i>
G.	<i>fructūs,</i>	<i>fructuum,</i>	<i>cornūs,</i>	<i>cornuum,</i>
D.	<i>fructui (fructū),</i>	<i>fructibus,</i>	<i>cornū,</i>	<i>cornibus,</i>
Ac.	<i>fructum,</i>	<i>fructūs,</i>	<i>cornū,</i>	<i>cornua,</i>
V.	<i>fructus,</i>	<i>fructūs,</i>	<i>cornū,</i>	<i>cornua,</i>
Ab.	<i>fructū,</i>	<i>fructibus.</i>	<i>cornū,</i>	<i>cornibus.</i>

\* *Amnis, river*; *antēs* (pl.), *rows*; *axis, axle*; *būris, plow-tail*; *cassēs* (pl.), *toils*; *caulis, stalk*; *collis, hill*; *crinis, hair*; *ōnsis, glaive*; *fascis, fagot*; *follis, bellows*; *fūnis, rope*; *fūstis, cudgel*; *ignis, fire*; *mănēs* (pl.), *Manes*; *mēnsis, month*; *mūgil(is), mullet*; *orbis, circle*; *pānis, bread*; *postis, door-post*; *torris, fire-brand*; *unguis, nail*; *vectis, lever*; *vermis, worm*.

REMARKS.—*Plural*: 1. *Dat., Abl.* The original form *-abus* is retained always in *acus, needle*; *arcus, bow*; *quercus, oak*; *tribus, tribe*; sometimes in a few other words.

2. *Domus, house*, is declined: G. *domūs*. D. *domui*. Ac. *domum*. V. *domus*. Ab. *domō*. Loc. *domi* (*domui*). Pl. N. *domūs*. G. *domōrum*. D. Ab. *domibus*. Ac. *domōs, domūs*.

62. *Rule of Gender*.—Substantives in *-us* are masculine; those in *-ū* are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Feminines* are *acus, needle, domus, house, Idūs* (pl.), *the Ides, manus, hand, ponus, victuals, porticus, piazza, tribus, tribe*.

### FIFTH DECLENSION.

63. The stem ends in *-ē*; Nominative in *a*.

In the Genitive and Dative Singular *-ē* is shortened after a consonant; after a vowel it remains long.

In the Accusative Singular we find always *ē*.

The ending in the Genitive Singular is that of the Second Declension, *-ī*; the other endings are those of the Third.

MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
Sg.—N. <i>diēs, day</i> , Pl.— <i>diēs</i> ,		Sg.— <i>rēs, thing</i> , Pl.— <i>rēs</i> ,	
G. <i>diēi</i> ,	<i>diērum</i> ,	rei,	<i>rērum</i> ,
D. <i>diēi</i> ,	<i>diēbus</i> ,	rei,	<i>rēbus</i> ,
Ac. <i>diem</i> ,	<i>diēs</i> ,	rem,	<i>rēs</i> ,
V. <i>diēs</i> ,	<i>diēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,
Ab. <i>diē</i> ,	<i>diēbus</i> .	<i>rē</i> ,	<i>rēbus</i> .

REMARKS.—1. *Plural*: *Gen., Dat., Abl.* Common in but two substantives, *diēs, rēs*.

2. Many words of the Fifth Declension have a parallel form, which follows the First Declension, as *mollitiēs, softness*, and *mollitia*. Where this is the case, forms of the Fifth Declension are usually found only in the Nom., Acc., and Abl. Singular.

64. *Rule of Gender*.—Substantives of the Fifth Declension are feminine except *diēs* (which in the Sing. is common, and in the Pl. masculine), and *meridiēs* (m.), *midday*.

### Declension of Greek Substantives.

65. Greek substantives, especially proper names, are commonly Latinized, and declined regularly according to their stem-characteristic. Many substantives, however, either

retain their Greek form exclusively, or have the Greek and Latin forms side by side. These variations occur principally in the Singular, in the Plural the declension is usually regular.

### Singular Forms of Greek Substantives.

#### First Declension.

N.	Pēnelopē,	Leōnidās,	Anchisēs,
G.	Pēnelopēs,	Leōnidās,	Anchisās,
D.	Pēnelopae,	Leōnidāe,	Anchisās,
Ac.	Pēnelopēn,	Leōnidam, ān,	Anchisēn, am,
V.	Pēnelopē,	Leōnidā,	Anchisē, ā, ā,
Ab.	Pēnelopā.	Leōnidā.	Anchisā.

#### Second Declension.

N.	Dēlos, us,	Ilion, um,	Panthūs,	Androgeōs, us,
G.	Dēli,	Ilīi,	Panthī,	Androgei,
D.	Dēlō,	Ilīō,	Panthō,	Androgeō,
Ac.	Dēlon, um,	Ilion, um,	Panthūn,	Androgeōn, ō, ōna,
V.	Dēle,	Ilion, um,	Panthū,	Androgeōs,
Ab.	Dēlō.	Ilīō.	Panthō.	Androgeō.

#### Third Declension.

N.	Solōn, Solō,	ēr, air.	Xenophōn,	Atlās,
G.	Solōnis,	ēris,	Xenophōntis,	Atlantis,
D.	Solōni,	ēri,	Xenophōnti,	Atlanti,
Ac.	Solōna, em,	ēra, em,	Xenophōnta, em,	Atlanta,
V.	Solōn,	ēr,	Xenophōn,	Atlā,
Ab.	Solōne.	ēre.	Xenophōnte.	Atlante.

N.	Thalēs,	Paris,	hērōs, hero,
G.	Thalētis, -is,	Paridis, os,	hērōis,
D.	Thalēti, -i,	Paridi, i,	hērōi,
Ac.	Thalēta, -ēn, -em,	Parida, -im, -in,	hērōa, em,
V.	Thalē,	Parī, Paris,	hērōs,
Ab.	Thalē.	Paride.	hērōe.

#### Mixed Declensions.

	II. III.	II. III.	II. III.
N.	Orphēus,	Athōs,	Oedipūs,
G.	Orphēi, ēi,	Athō, ōnis,	Oedip-odis, -i,
D.	Orphēō,	Athō,	Oedipodī,
Ac.	Orpheum, ea,	Athō, ōn, ōnem,	Oedip-um, -oda,
V.	Orphēū,	Athōs,	Oedipe,
Ab.	Orphēō.	Athōne.	Oedip-ode, -ō.

	II. III.	II. III.	III. IV.
N.	Achillēs, eus,	Sōcratēs,	Didō,
G.	Achillis, ei, i, eōs,	Sōcratis, i,	Didūs, ōnis,
D.	Achilli,	Sōcrati,	Didō, ōni,
Ac.	Achillem, ea, ēn,	Sōcratēn, em,	Didō, ōnem,
V.	Achillēs, ē, ēū, e,	Sōcratē, es,	Didō,
Ab.	Achille, ē, i.	Sōcrate.	Didō, ōne.

REMARKS.—1. In the Gen. Pl. *-ōn* and *-eōn* are found in the titles of books ; as, *Geōrgiōn*, *Metamorphōseōn*.

2. Many Greek names, of the Third Declension in Latin, pass over into the First Declension in the Plural ; as, *Thūcydīdēs*, *Hyperīdēs*, and many names in *-cratēs* ; as *Sōcratēs* ; Pl., *Sōcratēs* (also *Sōcratēs*).

3. In transferring Greek words into Latin, the Accusative Singular was sometimes taken as the stem :

So *κρατήρ*, Acc. *κρατήρα*, (*punch*) *bowl*.

*crātēr*, *crātēris* (masc.), and *crātēra* (*crēterra*), *crātērae* (fem.).

*Σαλαμῖς*, Acc. *Σαλαμῖνα*, *Salamis*.

*Salamis*, *Salaminis*, and *Salamina*, *ae*.

## IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

### I. Redundant Substantives. (Abundantia.)

(66) 67. A. *Heterogeneous* Substantives, or those whose gender varies :

1. The variation occurs in several cases in either number or in both.

<i>ævum</i> ,	-us,	<i>age</i> ,	<i>iugulum</i> ,	-us,	<i>collar-bone</i> ,
<i>baculum</i> ,	-us,	<i>staff</i> ,	<i>nāsus</i> ,	-um,	<i>nose</i> ,
<i>balteus</i> ,	-um,	<i>girdle</i> ,	<i>palātum</i> ,	-us,	<i>palate</i> ,
<i>cāsēus</i> ,	-um,	<i>cheese</i> ,	<i>pīleus</i> ,	-um,	<i>cap</i> ,
<i>cavum</i> ,	-us,	<i>cavity</i> ,	<i>sagum</i> ,	-us,	<i>cloak</i> ,
<i>cingulum</i> ,	-us,	<i>belt</i> ,	<i>tergum</i> ,	-us,	<i>back</i> ,
<i>clipeus</i> ,	-um,	<i>shield</i> ,	<i>thēsaurus</i> ,	-um,	<i>treasure</i> ,
<i>collum</i> ,	-us,	<i>neck</i> ,	<i>vāllus</i> ,	-um,	<i>palisade</i> ,
<i>forum</i> ,	-us,	<i>market</i> ,	and many others.		
<i>gladius</i> ,	-um,	<i>sword</i> ,			

2. The gender varies in Singular and Plural.

a. The Plural has *-a* sometimes, while the Singular ends in *-as* (or *-er*) : *clivus*, *hill*, *locus*, *jest*, *locus* (*loca*, *localities* ; *loca*, usually *passages in books, topics*), and many others, especially names of places.

b. The Plural has *-i*, while the Singular ends in *-um* : *filum*, *thread*, *frēnum*, *bit*, *rāstrum*, *hoe*, and many others.

68. B. *Heteroclites*, or substantives which show different stems with the same Nominative ; *Metaplasts*, or those which have certain forms from another than the Nominative stem.—Many of these belong also under 67.

1. 1st, 2d.	<i>essedā</i> ,	-um,	<i>chariot</i> ,	<i>margarita</i> ,	-um,	<i>pearl</i> ,
	<i>ostrea</i> ,	-um,	<i>oyster</i> ,			
2. 1st, 5th.	<i>dūritia</i> ,	-ēs,	<i>hardness</i> ,	<i>māteria</i> ,	-ēs,	<i>matter</i> ,
and many others. See 63, n. 2.						
3. 2d, 1st.	<i>mendum</i> ,	-a,	<i>fault</i> ,	<i>sertum</i> ,	-a,	<i>wreath</i> .

The following form their Plural according to the First Declension only : *balneum*, *bath*, *delicium*, *pleasure*, *epulum*, *banquet*, *fulmentum*, *prop*.

4. 2d, 4th. *Colus*, *distaff*, *domus*, *house*, and a large number of substantives of the Fourth Declension have one or two cases of the Second ; so *arcus* has G. *arci* ; *cōnātus* (-um), *iūsus* (-um), have Nom. Plural in *a* ; *senātus*, *senate*, has Gen. Sing. *senātī*.

Some substantives of the Second Declension form individual cases according to the Fourth : *fāstī* (Ac. Pl. *fāstūs*), *fretum* (N. *fretus*, Ab. *fretū*), *lectus* (G. *lectūs*), and others.

5. 3d, 2d. *Vās*, *vessel*, and *vāsum* ; *palumbēs*, *pigeon*, and *palumbus* ; [*iūger*], *acre*, and *iūgerum* ; all Greek nouns in -a (G. -atis), as *poēma*, *poem* (G. *poēmatīs*), but Pl. Gen. *poēmatōrum*, Dat. Abl. *poēmatīs*.

6. 3d, 5th. *Fames*, *hunger*, *tābes*, *corruption*, have Abl. *famē*, *tābē* ; *requiēs*, *quiet* (G. -ētis) has Acc. *requiem*, Abl. *requiē* ; *plēbs* (G. *plēbis*), *commons*, and *plēbēs* (G. *plēbē*).

7. 2d, 3d, 1st. *Vesper*, *evening*, has Acc. *vesperum* ; Dat. Abl. *vesperō* ; Pl. Nom. *vespera* of the Second Declension ; Acc. *vesperam* ; Abl. *vesperā* of the First ; Gen. *vesperis* ; Abl. *vespere* ; Loc. *vespere*, *vesperi* of the Third.

8. Variations in the same Declension : *femur* (G. *femoris*, *feminis*, etc.) ; *iecur* (G. *iecoris*, *iecinoris*, etc.) ; *pecus*, *early*, also *pecu* (G. *pecoris*, *pecudis*, etc.).

## II. Defective Substantives.

### I. SUBSTANTIVES DEFECTIVE IN NUMBER.

#### 69. A. Substantives used in Singular only : *Singulāria tantum*.

Most abstract substantives, and names of materials ; such as

<i>iūstitia</i> ,	<i>justice</i> .	<i>aurum</i> ,	<i>gold</i> .
-------------------	------------------	----------------	---------------

#### B. Substantives used in Plural only : *Plūrālia tantum*.

<i>angustiae</i> ,	<i>straits</i> .	<i>insidiae</i> ,	<i>ambuscade</i> .
<i>arma, ōrum</i> ,	<i>arms</i> .	<i>liberī</i> ,	<i>children</i> .
<i>armāmenta, ōrum</i> ,	<i>tackle</i> .	<i>mānēs</i> ,	<i>shades of the dead</i> .
<i>bigae, quadrigae</i> ,	<i>two-horse, four-horse</i>	<i>manubiae</i> ,	<i>spoils</i> .
	<i>chariot</i> .	<i>minae</i> ,	<i>threats</i> .
<i>cervicēs</i> ,	<i>neck</i> .	<i>moenia, ium</i> ,	<i>town-wall</i> .
<i>cōdicilli</i> ,	<i>a short note</i> .	<i>nūptiae</i> ,	<i>wedding</i> .
<i>compedēs</i> ,	<i>fetters</i> .	<i>penātēs</i> ,	<i>the Penates</i> .
<i>divitiae</i> ,	<i>riches</i> .	<i>phalerae</i> ,	<i>trappings</i> .
<i>epulae (epulum)</i> ,	<i>banquet</i> .	<i>praecordia, ōrum</i> ,	<i>diaphragm</i> .
<i>excubiae</i> ,	<i>watching</i> .	<i>precēs, -um</i> ,	<i>prayer</i> .
<i>exsequiae</i> ,	<i>funeral procession</i> .	<i>reliquiae</i> ,	<i>remains</i> .
<i>exta, ōrum</i> ,	<i>the internal organs</i> .	<i>rēnēs</i> ,	<i>kidneys</i> .
<i>exuviae</i> ,	<i>equipments</i> .	<i>scālae</i> ,	<i>stairway</i> .
<i>fāstī (fāstūs)</i> ,	<i>calendar</i> .	<i>spolia, ōrum</i> ,	<i>spoils (sing. late, and poet.)</i> .
<i>faucēs</i> ,	<i>gullet</i> .		
<i>fēriae</i> ,	<i>holidays</i> .	<i>tenebrae</i> ,	<i>darkness</i> .
<i>forēs</i> ,	<i>door</i> .	<i>valvae</i> ,	<i>foldiing-doors</i> .
<i>hiberna</i> ,	<i>winter quarters</i> .	<i>verbera, um</i> ,	<i>scourging (sing. poet. and late)</i> .
<i>īdūs, Kalendae</i> ,	<i>Ides, Calends</i> .		
<i>Nōnae</i> ,	<i>Nones</i> .	<i>viscera</i> ,	<i>entrails (sing. poet. and late)</i> .
<i>indūtiae</i> ,	<i>truce</i> .		



C. Substantives used in Plural with a special sense: **Heterologa.**

<b>aedēs, is,</b>	<i>temple (better aedis),</i>	<b>aedēs,</b>	<i>house, palace.</i>
<b>aqua,</b>	<i>water,</i>	<b>aquae,</b>	<i>mineral springs.</i>
<b>auxilium,</b>	<i>help,</i>	<b>auxilia,</b>	<i>auxiliaries, reinforcements.</i>
<b>carcer,</b>	<i>prison,</i>	<b>carcerēs,</b>	<i>barriers.</i>
<b>castrum,</b>	<i>fort,</i>	<b>castra,</b>	<i>camp.</i>
<b>comitium,</b>	<i>place of assemblage,</i>	<b>comitia,</b>	<i>assemblage for voting.</i>
<b>cōpia,</b>	<i>abundance,</i>	<b>cōpiae,</b>	<i>forces, troops.</i>
<b>facultās,</b>	<i>capability,</i>	<b>facultātēs,</b>	<i>goods.</i>
<b>finis,</b>	<i>end, limit,</i>	<b>finēs,</b>	<i>territory, borders.</i>
<b>fortūna,</b>	<i>fortune,</i>	<b>fortūnae,</b>	<i>possessions.</i>
<b>habēna,</b>	<i>strap,</i>	<b>habēnae,</b>	<i>reins.</i>
<b>impedimentum,</b>	<i>hindrance,</i>	<b>impedimenta,</b>	<i>baggage.</i>
<b>littera,</b>	<i>letter (of the alphabet),</i>	<b>litterae,</b>	<i>epistle, literature.</i>
<b>pars,</b>	<i>part,</i>	<b>partēs,</b>	<i>also role.</i>
<b>rōstrum,</b>	<i>beak,</i>	<b>rōstra,</b>	<i>the tribunal at Rome.</i>
<b>sors,</b>	<i>lot,</i>	<b>sortēs,</b>	<i>also oracle.</i>
<b>tabula,</b>	<i>board, tablet,</i>	<b>tabulae,</b>	<i>also accounts.</i>
<b>vigilia,</b>	<i>a night-watch.</i>	<b>vigiliae,</b>	<i>pickets.</i>

## 2. SUBSTANTIVES DEFECTIVE IN CASE.

**70. A.** Many verbals of the Fourth Declension occur only in the Ab. ū, as **admonitū, coactū, invitātū, iussū, iniussū, mandātū, missū, nātū, permissū, rogātū.**

**B.** Some substantives have only two cases, as, **fās, nefās,** Sing. N. Ac.; **instar,** Sing. N. Ac. Some verbals in **-us** have in Plural only Nom. and Acc., as **impetūs, monitūs.** Greek neuters in **-os** have only Nom. and Acc. Singular.

**C.** Substantives with three cases: **faex, drege;** Sing. N. D., Plur. Ab.; **vīrus, slime;** Sing. N., G., Ab.

**D. Nēmō, nobody,** substitutes for Gen. and Abl. **nūllius hominis,** and **nūllō homine.** In the Dat. and Acc. it is normal; **nēminī, nēminem.**

## 71.

## III. Peculiarities.

**ās, assis (m.),** a copper.

**auceps, aucupis,** fowler.

**bōs (for bovs), bovis (c.),** ox, cow.

Pl. G., **boum.**

D. Ab., **būbus, bōbus.**

**caput, capitis (n.),** head.

**anceps, ancipitis,** two-headed.

**praeceps, -cipitis,** headlong.

**carō, carnis (f.),** flesh.

Pl. G. **carnium.**

**Cerēs, Ceresis,** Ceres.

**fār, farris (n.),** spelt.

**fel, fellis (n.),** gall.

**femur, femoris (n.),** thigh.

**feminis.**

**iter, itineris (n.),** way, route.

**iecur, iecoris (n.),** liver.

**iecinoris, iecineris, iocineris.**

**Iūpiter, Iovis.**

**mel, mellis (n.),** honey.

**nix, nivis (f.),** snow.

**os, ossis (n.),** bone (48 R.).

**os, oris (n.),** mouth.

**pollis, pollinis (m.),** flour.

**sāguis, sanguinis (m.),** blood.

**senex, senis,** old man.

**supellēx, supellēctilis (f.),** furniture.

**Venus, Veneris,** Venus.

## ADJECTIVES.

**72.** The adjective adds a quality to the substantive. Adjectives have the same declension as substantives, and according to the stem-characteristic are of the First and Second, or Third Declension.

## Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.

**73.** Stems in **-o** for masculine and neuter, **-a** for feminine; nominative in **-us, -a, -um**; (**er**), **-a, -um**. The same variations in termination occur as in the substantives; except that adjectives in **-ius** form Singular Genitive and Vocative regularly. See 33, R. 1 and 2.

*Bonus, bona, bonum, good.*

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Se.—N.	bonus,	bona,	bonum,	Pl.—	boni,	bonae,	bona,
G.	boni,	bonae,	boni,		bonorum,	bonarum,	bonorum,
D.	bonō,	bonae,	bonō,		bonis,	bonis,	bonis,
Ac.	bonum,	bonam,	bonum,		bonōs,	bonās,	bona,
V.	bone,	bona,	bonum,		boni,	bonae,	bona,
Ab.	bonō,	bonā,	bonō,		bonis,	bonis,	bonis.

*Miser, misera, miserum, wretched.*

Se.—N.	miser,	misera,	miserum,	Pl.—	miseri,	miserae,	misera,
G.	miseri,	miserae,	miseri,		miserorum,	miserarum,	miserorum,
D.	miserō,	miserae,	miserō,		miseris,	miseris,	miseris,
Ac.	miserum,	miseram,	miserum,		miserōs,	miserās,	misera,
V.	miser,	misera,	miserum,		miseri,	miserae,	misera,
Ab.	miserō,	miserā,	miserō,		miseris,	miseris,	miseris.

*Piger, pigra, pigrum, slow.*

Se.—N.	piger,	pigra,	pigrum,	Pl.—	pigri,	pigrae,	pigra,
G.	pigri,	pigrae,	pigri,		pigrorum,	pigrarum,	pigrorum,
D.	pigrō,	pigrae,	pigrō,		pigris,	pigris,	pigris,
Ac.	pigrum,	pigram,	pigrum,		pigrōs,	pigrās,	pigra,
V.	piger,	pigra,	pigrum,		pigri,	pigrae,	pigra,
Ab.	pigrō,	pigrā,	pigrō,		pigris,	pigris,	pigris.

**74.** Stems in **-ro** follow the same principle in the formation of the Nominative masculine as the substantives, except that **-us** is retained :

1. In *ferus, wild, properus, quick, praeproperus, praeposterus, absurd, inferus, lower, superus, upper.*

2. Also when **-ro** is preceded by a long vowel ; as, *austērus, harsh, mātūrus, early, prōcērus, tall, pūrus, pure, sevērus, serious, sincērus, sincere, sērus, late, vērus, true.*

REMARKS.—1. *Dextera, dexterum, etc., right*, are found side by side with *dextra, dextrum, etc.*, throughout the language. CAESAR uses only the shorter form.

2. A few adjectives of this class lack the Nom. Sing. wholly or in part ; so there is no *cōterus* or *posterus* in the best period.

75. 1. In poetry, but at all periods, we find **-um** alongside of **-ōrum** and **-ārum** in the Gen. Plural.

2. In the Dat. and Abl. Pl. **-is** from adjectives in **-ius** is often contracted to **is** ; usually in names of months and in adjectives formed from proper names.

76. The so-called pronominal adjectives show certain peculiarities in the declension of the singular, in the Genitive and Dative. They are : *alter, one of the two ; alteruter* (a combination of *alter* and *uter*), *either of the two ; alius, other ; neuter, neither ; nūllus, none ; sōlus, sole ; tōtus, whole ; ūllus, any ; ūnus, one ; uter, which of the two.*

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	<i>alter,</i>	<i>altera,</i>	<i>alterum,</i>	<i>alius,</i>	<i>alia,</i>	<i>aliud,</i>
G.	<i>alterius,</i>	<i>alterius,</i>	<i>alterius,</i>	<i>alius,</i>	<i>alius,</i>	<i>alius,</i>
D.	<i>alteri,</i>	<i>alteri,</i>	<i>alteri,</i>	<i>alii,</i>	<i>alii,</i>	<i>alii,</i>
Ac.	<i>alterum,</i>	<i>alteram,</i>	<i>alterum,</i>	<i>alium,</i>	<i>aliam,</i>	<i>aliud,</i>
Ab.	<i>alterō,</i>	<i>alterā,</i>	<i>alterō.</i>	<i>aliō,</i>	<i>aliā,</i>	<i>aliō.</i>
N.	<i>ūllus,</i>	<i>ūlla,</i>	<i>ūllum,</i>	<i>uter,</i>	<i>utra,</i>	<i>utrum,</i>
G.	<i>ūllius,</i>	<i>ūllius,</i>	<i>ūllius,</i>	<i>utrius,</i>	<i>utrius,</i>	<i>utrius,</i>
D.	<i>ūlli,</i>	<i>ūlli,</i>	<i>ūlli,</i>	<i>utri,</i>	<i>utri,</i>	<i>utri,</i>
Ac.	<i>ūllum,</i>	<i>ūllam,</i>	<i>ūllum,</i>	<i>utrum,</i>	<i>utram,</i>	<i>utrum,</i>
Ab.	<i>ūllō,</i>	<i>ūllā,</i>	<i>ūllō.</i>	<i>utrō,</i>	<i>utrā,</i>	<i>utrō.</i>

Like *uter* is declined *neuter* ; like *ūllus* are declined *nūllus, sōlus, tōtus, ūnus*. The Plural is regular.

REMARKS.—1. The Gen. *alius* is very rare, and as a possessive its place is usually taken by *aliēnus*.

2. The **i** of the ending **-ius** (except in *alius*) could be shortened in poetry. This was usually the case with *alter*, and regularly in the compounds of *uter* ; as, *utriusque*.

3. In the compound *alteruter* we find usually both parts declined ; sometimes the second only.

4. *Alius* makes Nom. and Acc. Sing. neuter irregularly : *aliud*.

#### Adjectives of the Third Declension.

77. The declension of the adjectives of the Third Declension follows the rules given for the substantives.

Most adjectives of the Third Declension are vowel stems in *-i*, with two (rarely three) endings in the Nominative.

The remaining adjectives of the Third Declension are consonant stems and have one ending only in the Nominative.

#### ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS.

78. 1. These have (except stems in *-ri*) one ending in the Nominative for masculine and feminine, one for neuter.

Most stems in *-i* form the masculine and feminine alike, with Nominative in *s* ; but the Nominative neuter weakens the characteristic *i* into *e*. (Compare *mare*, *sea*.)

2. Several stems in *-i*, preceded by *r* (*cr*, *tr*, *br*), form the Nominative masculine, not by affixing *s*, but by dropping the *i* and inserting short *e* before the *r*, as, stem, *ācri*, *sharp*, Nom., *ācer* (m.), *ācris* (f.), *ācre* (n.).

These adjectives are *ācer*, *alacer*, *camposter*, *celeber*, *celer*, *equester*, *palūster*, *pedester*, *puter*, *salūber*, *silvester*, *terrester*, *volucer*, and the last four months ; and are sometimes called adjectives of *three endings*.

The *e* belongs to the stem in *celer*, *celeris*, *celere*, *swift*, and therefore appears in all cases.

	M. and F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Sg.—N.	<i>facilis</i> , <i>easy</i> .	<i>facile</i> ,	<i>ācer</i> , <i>sharp</i> ,	<i>ācris</i> ,	<i>ācre</i> ,
G.	<i>facilis</i> ,	<i>facilis</i> ,	<i>ācris</i> ,	<i>ācris</i> ,	<i>ācris</i> ,
D.	<i>facili</i> ,	<i>facili</i> ,	<i>ācri</i> ,	<i>ācri</i> ,	<i>ācri</i> ,
Ac.	<i>facilem</i> ,	<i>facile</i> ,	<i>ācrem</i> ,	<i>ācrem</i> ,	<i>ācre</i> ,
V.	<i>facilis</i> ,	<i>facile</i> ,	<i>ācer</i> ,	<i>ācris</i> ,	<i>ācre</i> ,
Ab.	<i>facili</i> ,	<i>facili</i> ,	<i>ācri</i> ,	<i>ācri</i> ,	<i>ācri</i> ,
Pl.—N.	<i>facilēs</i> ,	<i>facilia</i> ,	<i>ācrēs</i> ,	<i>ācrēs</i> ,	<i>ācria</i> ,
G.	<i>facilium</i> ,	<i>facilium</i> ,	<i>ācrium</i> ,	<i>ācrium</i> ,	<i>ācrium</i> ,
D.	<i>facilibus</i> ,	<i>facilibus</i> ,	<i>ācribus</i> ,	<i>ācribus</i> ,	<i>ācribus</i> ,
Ac.	<i>facilēs(is)</i> ,	<i>facilia</i> ,	<i>ācrēs(is)</i> ,	<i>ācrēs(is)</i> ,	<i>ācria</i> ,
V.	<i>facilēs</i> ,	<i>facilia</i> ,	<i>ācrēs</i> ,	<i>ācrēs</i> ,	<i>ācria</i> ,
Ab.	<i>facilibus</i> ,	<i>facilibus</i> .	<i>ācribus</i> ,	<i>ācribus</i> ,	<i>ācribus</i> .

REMARK.—Stems in **-āli** and **-āri** differ from the substantival declension in not dropping final **-e** in the Nom. Sing. neuter, except occasionally **capital**. See 56.

79. REMARKS.—1. Many adjectives of two endings (except stems in **-ri**) have also **-e** in the Ablative. This is found chiefly in the poets. When, however, these adjectives become proper names, **-e** is the rule.

2. The Gen. Pl. in **-um** is found frequently in the poets. In classical prose are found only **Titiansum** and **familiarum**.

#### ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING.

80. Adjective stems of one ending (consonant stems) close with **l**, **r**, **s**, a **p**-mute, a **k**-mute, or a **t**-mute. Examples are :

**vigil**, alert, **memor**, mindful, **pauper**, poor, **cicur**, tame, **pūbēs**, adult, **vetus**, old, **vigilis**. **memoris**. **pauperis**. **cicuris**. **pūberis**. **veteris**.

**particeps**, sharing, **caelebs**, unmarried, **inops**, poor, **participis**. **caelibis**. **inopis**.

**audāx**, bold, **fēlix**, lucky, **duplex**, double, **ferōx**, fierce, **trux**, savage, **audācis**. **fēlicis**. **duplicis**. **ferōcis**. **trucis**.

**dives**, rich, **dēses**, slothful, **compos**, possessed of, **prūdēns**, wise, **concora**, harmonious, **dīvitis**. **dēsidis**. **compotis**. **prūdentis**. **concordis**.

Present active participles are also consonant stems and follow the same declension.

(81) 82. The consonant stems have the same forms in all the genders, except that in the Accusative Singular, and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine.

In the oblique cases they follow in part the declension of vowel stems ; thus,

1. In the Ablative Singular they have **i** and **e**—when used as adjectives commonly **i** ; when used as substantives commonly **e**.

The participles, as such, have **e** ; but used as substantives or adjectives, either **e** or **i**, with tendency to **i**.

2. In the neuter Plural they have **ia** ; except **vetus**, old, which has **vetera**. Many have no neuter.

3. In the Genitive Plural they have : **ium**, when the stem-characteristic is preceded by a long vowel or a consonant ;

**um**, when the characteristic is preceded by a short vowel. The participles have **ium**.

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Se.—N.	<i>fēlix, lucky, fēlix,</i>		<i>prūdēns, wise, prūdēns,</i>		<i>vetus, old, vetus,</i>	
G.	<i>fēlicis, fēlicis,</i>		<i>prūdētis, prūdētis,</i>		<i>veteris, veteris,</i>	
D.	<i>fēlici, fēlici,</i>		<i>prūdēti, prūdēti,</i>		<i>veteri, veteri,</i>	
Ac.	<i>fēlicem, fēlix,</i>		<i>prūdētem, prūdēns,</i>		<i>veterem, vetus,</i>	
V.	<i>fēlix, fēlix,</i>		<i>prūdēns, prūdēns,</i>		<i>vetus, vetus,</i>	
Ab.	<i>fēlicē (e), fēlicē (e),</i>		<i>prūdēti (e), prūdēti (e),</i>		<i>vetere (i), vetere (i),</i>	
Pl.—N.	<i>fēlicēs, fēlicia,</i>		<i>prūdētēs, prūdētia,</i>		<i>veterēs, vetera,</i>	
G.	<i>fēlicium, fēlicium,</i>		<i>prūdētium, prūdētium,</i>		<i>veterum, veterum,</i>	
D.	<i>fēlicibus, fēlicibus,</i>		<i>prūdētibus, prūdētibus,</i>		<i>veteribus, veteribus,</i>	
Ac.	<i>fēlicēs, fēlicia,</i>		<i>prūdētēs, prūdētia,</i>		<i>veterēs, vetera,</i>	
V.	<i>fēlicēs, fēlicia,</i>		<i>prūdētēs, prūdētia,</i>		<i>veterēs, vetera,</i>	
Ab.	<i>fēlicibus, fēlicibus.</i>		<i>prūdētibus, prūdētibus.</i>		<i>veteribus, veteribus.</i>	

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Se.—N.	<i>amāns, loving,</i>	<i>amāns,</i>	Pl.— <i>amantēs,</i>	<i>amantia,</i>
G.	<i>amantis,</i>	<i>amantis,</i>	<i>amantium,</i>	<i>amantium,</i>
D.	<i>amanti,</i>	<i>amanti,</i>	<i>amantibus,</i>	<i>amantibus,</i>
Ac.	<i>amantem,</i>	<i>amāns,</i>	<i>amantēs (is),</i>	<i>amantia,</i>
V.	<i>amāns,</i>	<i>amāns,</i>	<i>amantēs,</i>	<i>amantia,</i>
Ab.	<i>amante (i),</i>	<i>amanto (i),</i>	<i>amantibus,</i>	<i>amantibus.</i>

**83. REMARKS.**—1. In the poets, **-e** is often found for **-i** in the Abl. Singular. Also in classical prose we find regularly **paupere, vetere**, and frequently **divite, sapiente**.

With participles, **-i** is usual when they are used as adjectives.

2. In the Nom. and Acc. Pl. **-is** for **-es** belongs to early Latin and the poets, but a few cases of the Acc. are still found in CICERO. In the case of participles **-is** is very common, and is the rule in VERGIL and HORACE. In the neuter, **-a** for **-ia** is found only in **ūbera, vetera**.

3. In the Gen. Pl., **cicur, tame, vetus, old, dives, rich**, have **-um** instead of **-ium**; so also many compound adjectives.

4. In the poets and in later writers, **-um** is not unfrequently found where classical prose uses **-ium**.

### Irregular Adjectives.

#### 84. A. ABUNDANTIA.

Some adjectives which end in **-us, -a, -um**, in the classical times, show occasionally, especially in the poets, forms in **-is, -e, e. g., imbecillus** and **imbecillis**; **infrēnus** and **infrēnis**; **biugus** and **biugis**; **violentus** and **violēns**; **indecōrus** and **indecoris**; so also **perpetuus** and **perpes**.

#### 85. B. DEFECTIVE.

Several adjectives lack a Nom. Singular, wholly or in part: **as, cōtera (f.), cōterum, nūperum (n.), primōris (G.)**, and a few others.

## C. INDECLINABLES.

*Nēquam*, worthless ; *frūgi*, frugal ; *neccesse*, necessary, and a few others.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

86. The Degrees of Comparison are : Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

The Comparative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings *-ior* for the masculine and feminine, and *-ius* for the neuter.

The Superlative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings *-is-simus*, *-a*, *-um* (earlier *-is-sumus*).

Vowel stems, before forming the Comparative and Superlative, drop their characteristic vowel.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.		SUPERLATIVE.
	M. and F.	N.	
<i>altus</i> , a, um, <i>high</i> ,	<i>altior</i> , <i>higher</i> ,	<i>altius</i> ,	<i>altissimus</i> , a, um, <i>highest</i> .
<i>fortis</i> , e,	<i>fortior</i> ,	<i>fortius</i> ,	<i>fortissimus</i> .
<i>utilis</i> , e,	<i>utilior</i> ,	<i>utilius</i> ,	<i>utilissimus</i> .
<i>audāx</i> ,	<i>audācior</i> ,	<i>audācius</i> ,	<i>audācissimus</i> .
<i>prūdēns</i> ,	<i>prūdēntior</i> ,	<i>prūdēntius</i> ,	<i>prūdēntissimus</i> .

## Peculiarities.

87. 1. Adjectives in *-er* add the Superlative ending *-rimus* (earlier *-rumus*) directly to the Nominative masculine. The Comparative follows the rule.

POSITIVE.		COMPARATIVE.		SUPERLATIVE.
<i>miser</i> , a, um,	<i>wretched</i> ,	<i>miserior</i> ,	<i>miserius</i> ,	<i>miserimus</i> .
<i>celer</i> , is, e,	<i>swift</i> ,	<i>celerior</i> ,	<i>celerius</i> ,	<i>celerrimus</i> .
<i>ācer</i> , <i>ācris</i> , <i>ācre</i> ,	<i>sharp</i> ,	<i>ācior</i> ,	<i>ācius</i> ,	<i>ācerrimus</i> .

REMARKS.—1. *Dexter*, *right*, and *sinister*, *left*, have always *dexterior* and *sinisterior* in the Comparative. *Dēterior*, *worse*, *dēterrimus*, lacks a Positive.

2. *Vetus*, *old*, has Comp. *veterior* (archaic) or *vetustior*; Sup., *veterrimus*.

2. Some Comparatives in *-er-ior*, whose Positive is lacking or rare, form the Superlative either in *-rēmus*; or in *-imus* or *-umus*; or in both.

*citerior*, on this side, *citimus*;      *interior*, inner, *intimus*;  
*dexterior*, on the right, *dextimus*;      *posterior*, hinder, *postrēmus*, *postumus*;  
*exterior*, outer, *extrēmus*, *extimus*;      *superior*, upper, *suprēmus*, *summus*.  
*inferior*, lower, *infinus*, *imus*;

3. Six adjectives in *-ilis* add *-limus* to the stem, after dropping *-i*, to form the Superlative : *facilis*, *easy* ; *difficilis*, *hard* ; *similis*, *like* ; *dissimilis*, *unlike* ; *gracilis*, *slender*, and *humilis*, *low*.

<i>facilis</i> ,	Comp. <i>facilior</i> ,	Sup. <i>facillimus</i> .
------------------	-------------------------	--------------------------

4. Adjectives in *-dicus*, *-ficus*, *-volus*, borrow the Comparative and Superlative from the participial forms in *-diēns*, *-fiēns*, and *-volēns*.

<i>benevolus</i> , <i>benevolent</i> ,	Comp. <i>benevolentior</i> ,	Sup. <i>benevolentissimus</i> .
<i>maledicus</i> , <i>scurrilous</i> ,	<i>maledicentior</i> ,	<i>maledicentissimus</i> .
<i>māgnificus</i> , <i>distinguished</i> ,	<i>māgnificentior</i> ,	<i>māgnificentissimus</i> .

5. In like manner, *egēnus* and *prōvidus* form their Comparative and Superlative.

<i>egēnus</i> , <i>needy</i> ,	<i>egentior</i> ,	<i>egentissimus</i> .
<i>prōvidus</i> , <i>far-sighted</i> .	<i>prōvidentior</i> ,	<i>prōvidentissimus</i> .

6. Adjectives in *-us*, preceded by a vowel (except those in *-quus*), form the Comparative and Superlative by means of *magis* and *māximē*, *more* and *most*.

But <i>idōneus</i> , <i>fit</i> ,	Comp. <i>magis idōneus</i> ,	Sup. <i>māximē idōneus</i> .
<i>antiquus</i> , <i>old</i> ,	Comp. <i>antiquior</i> ,	Sup. <i>antiquissimus</i> .

REMARK.—But *pius*, *pious*, which lacks the Comparative, forms the Superlative regularly, *piissimus*.

7. Some Comparatives and Superlatives are in use, whilst the corresponding Positive is either lacking or rare.

So those mentioned in 87, 1, B. 1, and 87, 2 : *dēterior*, *worse* ; *citerior*, *on this side* (from *citer* and prep. *citrā*, *on this side*) ; *exterior*, *outer* (from *exterus*, *on the outside*, and prep. *extrā*, *without*) ; *inferior*, *lower* (from *inferus*, *below*, and prep. *infrā*, *below*) ; *posterior*, *hinder* (from *posterus*, *coming after*, and prep. *post*, *after*) ; *superior*, *upper* (from *superus*, *on the top*, and prep. *suprā*, *above*).

Also *ŏcior*, *swift*, *ŏcissimus* ; *potior*, *better*, *potissimus*.

8. The Positive stem of existing Comparatives is sometimes met with only in a preposition or an adverb ; as, *ante*, *before* ; *anterior*, *that is before* ; *prope*, *near* ; *propior*, *proximus* ; *ūterior*, *further*, *ūltimus*, *from ūtrā*, *beyond* ; *interior*, *inner*, *intimus*, *from intrā*, *within* ; *prior*, *former*, *primus*, *first*, *from prō*, *before*.

9. Many adjectives lack one or both of the degrees of comparison ; especially those denoting *material*, *relationship*, *time*, *etc*.

*Novus*, *new*, *falsus*, *untrue*, *meritus*, *deserved*, have no Comparative.

*Longinquus*, *afar*, *propinquus*, *near*, *salūtāris*, *healthful*, *iūvenis*, *young* (Comparative *iūnior*), and *senex*, *old* (Comparative *senior*), have no Superlative.

"*Youngest*" and "*oldest*" are expressed by *minimus*, *māximus* (*nātū*).

10. *Dives*, *rich*, shows in Cic. only *divitior* and *divitissimus* ; otherwise the Comparative and Superlative are found principally in poetry and later prose, the more usual forms being *ditior*, *ditissimus*.



88. Participles used as adjectives are subject also to the same laws of comparison : as, *amāns*, *loving*, *amantior*, *amantissimus* ; *apertus*, *open*, *apertior*, *apertissimus*.

89. The Superlative follows the declension of adjectives of Three Endings of the First and Second Declensions. The Comparative is declined according to the Third Declension, thus :

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Se.—N.	<i>altior</i> ,	<i>altius</i> ,	PL.— <i>altiōrēs</i> ,	<i>altiōra</i> ,
G.	<i>altiōris</i> ,	<i>altiōris</i> ,	<i>altiōrum</i> ,	<i>altiōrum</i> ,
D.	<i>altiōri</i> ,	<i>altiōri</i> ,	<i>altiōribus</i> ,	<i>altiōribus</i> ,
Ac.	<i>altiōrem</i> ,	<i>altius</i> ,	<i>altiōrēs</i> ,	<i>altiōra</i> ,
V.	<i>altior</i> ,	<i>altius</i> ,	<i>altiōrēs</i> ,	<i>altiōra</i> ,
Ab.	<i>altiōre</i> and <i>i</i> ,	<i>altiōre</i> and <i>i</i> ,	<i>altiōribus</i> ,	<i>altiōribus</i> .

REMARKS.—1. In classical prose the Abl. Sing. ends in *-e*. In the poets and in early and late prose, often in *-i*.

2. In the Acc. Pl. the ending *-is* for *-es* is confined mainly to *plūris*, *minōris*, *māiōris*, *melīōris*.

3. The Gen. Pl. in *-ium* is found in *plūrium* and *complūrium* only.

## 90.

## Irregular Comparison.

<i>bonus</i> ,	<i>good</i> ,	<i>melior</i> ,	<i>melius</i> ,	<i>optimus</i> .
<i>malus</i> ,	<i>bad</i> ,	<i>pēior</i> ,	<i>pēius</i> ,	<i>pessimus</i> .
<i>māgnus</i> ,	<i>great</i> ,	<i>māior</i> ,	<i>māius</i> ,	<i>māximus</i> .
<i>parvus</i> ,	<i>small</i> ,	<i>minor</i> ,	<i>minus</i> ,	<i>minimus</i> .
<i>multus</i> ,	<i>much</i> ,	S. —	<i>plūs</i> (no Dat. nor Abl.),	<i>plūrimus</i> .
		Pl. <i>plūrēs</i> ,	<i>plūra</i> .	
		<i>complūrēs</i> ,	<i>complūra</i> and <i>-ia</i> .	
<i>nēquam</i> ,	<i>worthless</i> ,	<i>nēquior</i> ,	<i>nēquius</i> ,	<i>nēquissimus</i> .
<i>frūgi</i> (indecl.),	<i>frugal</i> ,	<i>frūgālior</i> ,		<i>frūgālissimus</i> .

## ADVERBS.

91. Most adverbs are either oblique cases or mutilated forms of oblique cases of nominal or pronominal stems.

The cases from which they are derived are principally the Accusative and the Ablative.

## Substantives.

1. Many substantives form adverbs with the Accusative ending *-tim*: as *acervus*, *heap*, *acervātim*, *in heaps*; *pars*, *part*, *partim*, *partly*.

2. The Ablative of many substantives is used as an adverb ; as *domō* *at home* ; *initio*, *at the outset* ; *modo*, *only* ; *vulgo*, *commonly*.

## Adjectives and Pronouns.

1. Many adjectives in *-us*, *-a*, *-um* use the Abl. case as an adverb; as, *tūtus*, *safe*, *tūtō*; *primus*, *first*, *primō*, *at first*.

So also some pronouns: *hōc*, *here*: *istō*, *there*, etc.

2. Adjectives in *-us* and *-er* may form adverbs in *ō*: *altus*, *lofty*, *altō*; *pulcher*, *beautiful*, *pulchrō*.

Also *ferō* and *fermō*, *almost*.

3. In a few cases the adverbial form is the Abl. Sing. feminine:

*aliā*, *otherwise*; *aliquā*, *somehow*; *dexterā* and *dextrā*, *to the right*; *sinistrā* and *laevā*, *to the left hand*; *quā*, *on which side*; *rēctā*, *straightway*, and some others.

4. A large number of these adjectives show adverbs in two endings, sometimes with a difference in meaning:

*cōsultō* and *cōsultū*, *purposely*; *certō*, *at least*, and *certū*, *certainly*; *rārē*, *thinly*, and *rārō*, *seldom*; *vērō*, *in truth*, and *vērū*, *true but*; *rēctō*, *correctly*, and *rēctā*, *straightway*; *dexterā* or *dextrā*, *to the right*, and *dexterō*, *skillfully*.

5. Many adjectival and pronominal stems use the Accusative Singular neuter as an adverb. *This is true of all Comparatives.*

*Multum*, *much*; *paulum*, *a little*; *nimum*, *too much*; *cōterum*, *for the rest*; *primum*, *first*; *postrēmum*, *finally*; *potissimum*, *chiefly*; *facile*, *easily*; *dulce*, *sweetly*; *triste*, *sadly*; *impūne*, *scot-free*; *aliquantum*, *somewhat*, and others.

To the Comparatives belong *magis*, *more*; *nimis*, *too*; *satis*, *enough*.

92. 1. Adjectives and participles of the Third Declension form their adverbs by adding *-ter* (*-iter*) to the stem; stems in *nt* dropping the *t*, and stems in a *k*-mute inserting the connecting vowel *i* before the ending; also a few adjectives of the Second Declension:

*fortis*, *brave*, *fortiter*; *ferōx*, *wild*, *ferōciter*; *prōdēsns*, *foreseeing*, *prōdenter*.

Exceptions: *audāx*, *dōd*, *audāc-ter*; *difficilis*, *hard to do*, *difficulter*, *difficiliter* (but generally, *nōn facile*, *vix*, *aegrō*), and others.

2. Some adjectives of the Second Declension in *-us* and *-er* form in early and late Latin their adverbs by dropping the stem vowel and adding *-iter* or *-er*. In a few cases the normal form in *-ō* is also found: *hūmāniter* and *hūmānō*, *humanely*; *largiter* and *largō*, *lavishly*; *turbulenter* and *turbulentō*, *riotously*.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

93. The Comparative of the adverb is the Accusative neuter of the Comparative of the adjective. The Superlative ends in *-is-simē*, *-er-rimē*, *etc.*, according to the Superlative of the adjective.

POSITIVE.		COMPARATIVE.		SUPERLATIVE.
altē,	<i>loftily,</i>	altius,		altissimē.
pulchrē,	<i>beautifully,</i>	pulchrius,		pulcherrimē.
miserē,	<i>poorly,</i>	miserius,		miserrimē.
fortiter,	<i>bravely,</i>	fortius,		fortissimē.
audācter,	<i>boldly,</i>	audācius,		audācissimē.
tūtō,	<i>safely,</i>	tūtius,		tūtissimē.
facile,	<i>easily,</i>	facilius,		facillimē.
bene,	<i>well,</i>	melius,		optimē.
male,	<i>ill,</i>	pēius,		pessimē.
[parvus],	<i>small,</i>	minus, <i>less,</i>		minimē, <i>least.</i>
[māgnus],	<i>great,</i>	magis, <i>more,</i>		māximē, <i>most.</i>
multum,	<i>much,</i>	plūs, <i>more,</i>		plūrium.
cito,	<i>quickly,</i>	citius,		citissimē.
diū,	<i>long,</i>	diūtius,		diūtissimē.
saepe,	<i>often,</i>	saepius,		saeptissimē.
nūper,	<i>recently,</i>	—,		nūperimē.
satis,	<i>enough,</i>	satiū,	<i>better.</i>	

## NUMERALS.

## NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

94. The Cardinal numerals answer the question *quot*, *how many?* and are the numbers used in counting. The Ordinal numerals are derived from these and answer the question *quotus*, *which one in the series?* They are as follows :

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS.		2. ORDINAL NUMBERS.
1	I unus, una, unum	primus, -a, -um (prior)
2	II duo, duae, duo	secundus (alter)
3	III trēs, tria	tertius
4	IV (IIII) quattuor	quārtus
5	V quinque	quintus
6	VI sex	sextus
7	VII septem	septimus
8	VIII octō	octāvus
9	IX novem	nōnus
10	X decem	decimus
11	XI undecim	undecimus

## 1. CARDINAL NUMBERS.

12	XII	duodecim
13	XIII	tredecim
14	XIV	quattuordecim
15	XV	quindecim
16	XVI	sēdecim
17	XVII	septendecim
18	XVIII	duodēviginti
19	XIX	undēviginti
20	XX	viginti
21	XXI	viginti unus
22	XXII	viginti duo
23	XXIII	viginti trēs
24	XXIV	viginti quattuor
25	XXV	viginti quinque
26	XXVI	viginti sex
27	XXVII	viginti septem
28	XXVIII	duodētrigintā
29	XXIX	undētrigintā
30	XXX	trigintā
40	XL	quadrāgintā
50	L	quinqūāgintā
60	LX	sexāgintā
70	LXX	septuāgintā
80	LXXX	octōgintā
90	XC	nōnāgintā
100	C	centum
101	CI	centum et unus
115	CXV	centum et quindecim
120	CXX	centum et viginti
121	CXXI	centum viginti unus
200	CC	ducenti, -ae, -a
300	CCC	trecenti
400	CCCC	quadrīgenti
500	D (ID)	quīngenti
600	DC	sēscenti
700	DCC*	septīngenti
800	DCCC	octīngenti
900	DCCCC	nōngenti
1000	M (CIO)	mille
1001	MI	mille et unus
1101	MCI	mille centum unus
1120	MCXX	mille centum viginti
		[unus
1121	MCXXI	mille centum viginti

## 2. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

duodecim
tertius decimus
quārtus decimus
quintus decimus
sextus decimus
septimus decimus
duodēvicēsimus
undēvicēsimus
vicēsimus
vicēsimus primus
vicēsimus secundus
vicēsimus tertius
vicēsimus quārtus
vicēsimus quintus
vicēsimus sextus
vicēsimus septimus
duodētricēsimus
undētricēsimus
tricēsimus
quadrāgēsīmus
quīnquāgēsīmus
sexāgēsīmus
septuāgēsīmus
octōgēsīmus
nōnāgēsīmus
centēsimus
centēsimus primus [mus
centēsimus (et) quintus deci-
centēsimus vicēsimus
centēsimus vicēsimus primus
ducentēsimus
trecentēsimus
quadrīgentēsimus
quīngentēsimus
sēscentēsimus
septīgentēsimus
octīgentēsimus
nōngentēsimus
millēsīmus
millēsīmus primus
millēsīmus centēsimus primus
millēsīmus centēsimus vicē-
simus [simus primus
millēsīmus centēsimus vicē-

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS.			2. ORDINAL NUMBERS.
1200	MCC	mille ducenti	millēsimus ducentēsimus
2000	MM	duo milia (milia)	bis millēsimus
		bina milia	
2222		duo milia ducenti viginti duo	bis millēsimus ducentēsimus vicēsimus secundus
5000	IOO	quinque milia	quinqvies millēsimus
		quina milia	
10,000	CCIOO	decem milia	decies millēsimus
		dēna milia	
21,000		unum et viginti milia	semel et vicies millēsimus
100,000		centum milia	centies millēsimus
		centēna milia [milia	
1,000,000		decies centēna (centum) decies centies millēsimus	

95. The Cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except : *ūnus*, *one*, *duo*, *two*, *trēs*, *three*, the hundreds beginning with *ducenti*, *two hundred*, and the plural *milia*, *thousands*, which forms *miliūm* and *milibus*.

				M. and F.	N.
N.	duo, <i>two,</i>	duae,	duo,	trēs, <i>three,</i>	tria,
G.	duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	trium,	trium,
D.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	tribus,	tribus,
A.	duōs, duo,	duās,	duo,	trēs, trīs,	tria,
Ab.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.	tribus.	tribus.

Like *duō* is declined *ambō*, *-ae*, *-ō*.

REMARKS.—1. For the declension of *ūnus*, see 76. It occurs also in plural forms in connection with *plūrālīa tantum*, as *ūnae litterae*, *one epistle*, or with another numeral in the sense *only*; in the latter sense also with substantives.

2. The Gen. of the hundreds, *ducenti*, *etc.*, ends in *-um* and not *-ōrum*.

3. The Pl. *milia*, *miliūm*, *milibus*, are treated almost always as substantives, the adjectival form being the Singular.

## 96.

### 1. Compound Numerals.

1. From 10 to 20, as in the tables, or separately : *decem* et *trēs*.

2. The numbers 18, 19, 28, 29, *etc.*, are commonly expressed by subtraction; occasionally as in English, but never in Cicerō.

3. From 20 to 100, the compound numerals stand in the same order as the English : *twenty-one*, *viginti ūnus*; or, *one and twenty*, *ūnus et (atque) viginti*; as, *twenty-one years old* : *annōs ūnum et viginti (viginti*

*unum*), *unum et viginti annis natus*. But compounds like *septuaginta et tres* are not uncommon, though avoided by good writers.

4. From 100 on, *et* may be inserted after the first numeral, if there be but two numbers; as, *centum quattuor*, or *centum et quattuor*. If the smaller number precedes, the *et* should be inserted; likewise in all cases where a word is inserted within the compound numeral, as *ducenti anni et viginti*. If there be three numerals, the *et* is regularly omitted; exceptions are very rare.

5. In compound ordinals *alter* is preferred to *secundus*.

6. *Centena milia* is often omitted after the numeral adverb *decies* = 1,000,000; especially in stating sums of money.

7. Fractions are expressed by *pars* (omitted or expressed) in combination with *dimidia* ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ), *tertia* ( $\frac{1}{3}$ ), *quarta* ( $\frac{1}{4}$ ), *etc.* A Plural numerator is expressed by a Cardinal; as, *duae quintae* ( $\frac{2}{5}$ ). The fraction is often broken up; as, *pars dimidia et tertia* ( $\frac{3}{4} = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4}$ ). The even denominators could be divided; as, *dimidia tertia* ( $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{3} = \frac{1}{6}$ ). Instead of *dimidia* without *pars*, *dimidium* is used.

## 97.

## 2. Distributive Numerals.

These answer the question *quotiesni*, *how many each?*

1	<i>singuli</i> , -ae, -a, <i>one each</i> ,	30	<i>tricesni</i>
2	<i>binī</i> , -ae, -a, <i>two each</i> .	40	<i>quadragesni</i>
3	<i>terni</i> ( <i>trini</i> )	50	<i>quingagesni</i>
4	<i>quaterni</i>	60	<i>sexagesni</i>
5	<i>quini</i>	70	<i>septuagesni</i>
6	<i>seni</i>	80	<i>octogesni</i>
7	<i>septeni</i>	90	<i>nonagesni</i>
8	<i>octeni</i>	100	<i>centeni</i>
9	<i>noveni</i>	102	<i>centeni bini</i>
10	<i>deni</i>	125	<i>centeni viceni quini</i>
11	<i>undeni</i>	200	<i>ducenti</i>
12	<i>duodeni</i>	300	<i>trecenti</i>
13	<i>terni deni</i>	400	<i>quadragesni</i>
14	<i>quaterni deni</i>	500	<i>quingeni</i>
15	<i>quini deni</i>	600	<i>sexcenti</i> ( <i>sexceni</i> )
16	<i>seni deni</i>	700	<i>septingeni</i>
17	<i>septeni deni</i>	800	<i>octingeni</i>
18	<i>octeni deni</i> , <i>duodevicesni</i>	900	<i>nonagesni</i>
19	<i>noveni deni</i> , <i>undevicesni</i>	1000	<i>singula milia</i>
20	<i>viceni</i>	2000	<i>duo milia</i>
21	<i>viceni singuli</i>	3000	<i>tria milia</i>
22	<i>viceni bini</i> , <i>binī et viceni</i>	10,000	<i>decena milia</i>
28	<i>duodevicesni</i>	100,000	<i>centena milia</i>
29	<i>undevicesni</i>		

REMARKS.—1. The Gen. Pl. masc. and neuter end usually in -um, but *singulus* has always *singulorum*.

2. The Distributives are used with an exactness which is foreign to our idiom, whenever repetition is involved, as in the multiplication table. But when *singuli* is expressed, the Cardinal may be used.

3. The Distributives are used with *plurālia tantum*: *binæ litteræ*, *two epistles*. But with these *uni* is used for *one*, *trini* for *three*: *ūnæ litteræ*, *trīnæ litteræ*.

4. The same rules as to the insertion or omission of *et* apply to the Distributives as to the Ordinals (96, 3, 4).

### 3. Multiplicative Numerals.

These answer the question, *how many fold* ?

Only the following forms occur :

1	<i>simplex</i> ,	<i>single</i> ,	5	<i>quīnplex</i>
2	<i>duplex</i> ,	<i>double</i> ,	7	<i>septēplex</i>
3	<i>triplex</i> ,	<i>triple</i> ,	10	<i>decēplex</i>
4	<i>quadruplex</i> ,	<i>quadruple</i> .	100	<i>centplex</i>

### 4. Proportional Numerals.

These answer the question, *how many times as great* ?

Only the following forms occur :

1	<i>simplus</i> , -a, -um,	<i>single</i> ,	4	<i>quadruplus</i>
2	<i>duplus</i> ,	<i>double</i> .	7	<i>septuplus</i>
3	<i>triplus</i>		8	<i>octuplus</i>

## 98.

### NUMERAL ADVERBS.

These answer the question *quōtiēns* : *how often* ?

1	<i>semel</i> , <i>once</i> ,	13	<i>ter decies</i> , <i>tredecies</i>
2	<i>bis</i> , <i>twice</i> .	14	<i>quater decies</i> , <i>quattuordecies</i>
3	<i>ter</i>	15	<i>quīquies decies</i> , <i>quīndecies</i>
4	<i>quater</i>	16	<i>sexies decies</i> , <i>sēdecies</i>
5	<i>quīquies</i>	17	<i>septies decies</i>
6	<i>sexies</i>	18	<i>duodēviciēs</i> , <i>octies decies</i>
7	<i>septies</i>	19	<i>undēviciēs</i> , <i>novies decies</i>
8	<i>octies</i>	20	<i>viciēs</i>
9	<i>novies</i>	21	<i>semel et viciēs</i> , <i>viciēs et semel</i> ,
10	<i>decies</i>		<i>viciēs semel</i> *
11	<i>ūndecies</i>	22	<i>bis et viciēs</i> , <i>viciēs et bis</i> , <i>viciēs</i>
12	<i>duodecies</i>		<i>bis</i> *

\* Not *semel viciēs*, *bis viciēs*, *etc.*, because that would be, once twenty times = 20 times ; twice twenty times = 40 times ; this, however, does not hold for numerals between 10 and 20.

30	triciēs	500	quingentiēs
40	quadrāgiēs	600	sexcentiēs (sešcentiēs)
50	quīnquāgiēs	700	septingentiēs
60	sexāgiēs	800	octingentiēs
70	septuāgiēs	900	nōngentiēs
80	octōgiēs	1000	milliēs
90	nōnāgiēs	2000	his milliēs
100	centiēs	100,000	centiēs milliēs
200	ducentiēs	1,000,000	milliēs milliēs, deciēs centiēs milliēs
400	quadringentiēs		

## PRONOUNS.

99. Pronouns point out a person, place, or thing, but do not give its name.

## A. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

## 100. I. Personal Pronouns of the First Person.

	SUBSTANTIVE.	POSSESSIVE.
Sg.—N.	ego, <i>I,</i>	
G.	mei, <i>of me,</i>	meus, -a, -um, <i>mine or my.</i>
D.	mihi, <i>to, for me,</i>	
Ac.	mē, <i>me,</i>	(Voc. masc. mī).
Ab.	mē, <i>from, with, by me,</i>	
PL.—N.	nōs, <i>we,</i>	
G.	nostrī, <i>of us,</i> nostrum (Part. Gen. 804, 3),	noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our or ours.</i>
D.	nōbīs, <i>to, for us,</i>	
Ac.	nōs, <i>us,</i>	
Ab.	nōbīs, <i>from, with, by us.</i>	

## 101. II. Personal Pronouns of the Second Person.

	SUBSTANTIVE.	POSSESSIVE.
Sg.—N. V.	tū, <i>thou.</i>	
G.	tui, <i>of thee,</i>	
D.	tibi, <i>to, for thee,</i>	tuus, -a, -um, <i>thy or thine.</i>
Ac.	tē, <i>thee,</i>	
Ab.	tē, <i>from, with, by thee,</i>	
PL.—N.	vōs, <i>ye or you,</i>	
G.	vestrī, <i>of you,</i> vestrum (Part. Gen. 804, 3),	vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your or yours.</i>
D.	vōbīs, <i>to, for you,</i>	
Ac.	vōs, <i>you,</i>	
Ab.	vōbīs, <i>from, with, by you.</i>	



## III. Personal Pronouns of the Third Person.

102. The original personal pronoun of the third person, together with its possessive, is used only as a reflexive in Latin, and therefore lacks a Nominative. Its place is taken in the oblique cases by the Determinative *is* (103).

## DETERMINATIVE.

	SUBSTANTIVE.	POSSESSIVE.
Sg.—N.	[ <i>is, ea, id</i> ], <i>he, she, it,</i>	supplied by the Genitive.
G.	<i>ëius,</i> <i>of him,</i> <i>etc.</i>	<i>ëius, his, hers, its.</i>
Pl.—N.	[ <i>ei, ii, i; eae, ea</i> ], <i>they,</i>	
G.	<i>eörum, eärum, eörum,</i> <i>of them, eörum, eärum, eörum,</i> <i>their or theirs.</i> <i>etc.</i>	

## REFLEXIVE.

	SUBSTANTIVE.	POSSESSIVE.
Sg.—N.	—	
G.	<i>sui,</i> <i>of him, her, it(self),</i>	<i>suus, -a, -um, his, her(s), its</i>
D.	<i>sibi,</i> <i>to, for, him(self), her(self),</i>	<i>(own).</i>
Ac.	<i>së, sësë,</i> <i>him(self), her(self),</i>	
Ab.	<i>së, sësë,</i> <i>from, with, by him(self),</i>	
Pl.—N.	—	
G.	<i>sui,</i> <i>of them(selves),</i>	<i>suus, -a, -um, their (own),</i>
D.	<i>sibi,</i> <i>to, for them(selves),</i>	<i>theirs.</i>
Ac.	<i>së, sësë,</i> <i>them(selves),</i>	
Ab.	<i>së, sësë,</i> <i>from, with, by them(selves).</i>	

REMARKS.—1. The enclitic *-met* is sometimes added to certain forms of the Personal Pronouns ; as, *egomet, I myself*.

2. The enclitic *-pte* is sometimes added to the Abl. Sing. of the Possessives ; as, *suöpte ingenio, by his own genius*.

## 103. B. DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

I. *is, he, that.*

	SINGULAR.				PLURAL.	
N.	<i>is,</i>	<i>ea,</i>	<i>id,</i>	<i>ii, ei, i,</i>	<i>eae,</i>	<i>ea,</i>
G.	<i>ëius,</i>	<i>ëius,</i>	<i>ëius,</i>	<i>eörum,</i>	<i>eärum,</i>	<i>eörum,</i>
D.	<i>ei,</i>	<i>ei,</i>	<i>ei,</i>		<i>iis, eis, is,</i>	
Ac.	<i>eum,</i>	<i>eam,</i>	<i>id,</i>	<i>eös,</i>	<i>eäs</i>	<i>ea,</i>
Ab.	<i>eö,</i>	<i>eä,</i>	<i>eö,</i>		<i>iis, eis, is,</i>	

2. *Idem* (is + dem), *the same*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	<i>Idem,</i>	<i>eadem,</i>	<i>idem,</i>	<i>Idem,</i>	<i>eidem,</i>	<i>idem,</i>
G.	<i>eiudem,</i>	<i>eiudem,</i>	<i>eiudem,</i>	<i>eörundem,</i>	<i>eörundem,</i>	<i>eörundem,</i>
D.	<i>eidem,</i>	<i>eidem,</i>	<i>eidem,</i>	<i>Idem,</i>	<i>eidem,</i>	<i>idem,</i>
Ac.	<i>eundem,</i>	<i>eandem,</i>	<i>idem,</i>	<i>eödem,</i>	<i>eödem,</i>	<i>eadem,</i>
Ab.	<i>eödem,</i>	<i>eödem,</i>	<i>eödem,</i>	<i>Idem,</i>	<i>eidem,</i>	<i>idem.</i>

3. *ipse* (perhaps is + pœ), *he, self*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	<i>ipse,</i>	<i>ipsa,</i>	<i>ipsum,</i>	<i>ipsi,</i>	<i>ipse,</i>	<i>ipsa,</i>
G.	<i>ipſus,</i>	<i>ipſus,</i>	<i>ipſus,</i>	<i>ipſorum,</i>	<i>ipſorum,</i>	<i>ipſorum,</i>
D.	<i>ipsi,</i>	<i>ipsi,</i>	<i>ipsi,</i>	<i>ipsis,</i>	<i>ipsis,</i>	<i>ipsis,</i>
Ac.	<i>ipsum,</i>	<i>ipsam,</i>	<i>ipsum,</i>	<i>ipsos,</i>	<i>ipsas,</i>	<i>ipsa,</i>
Ab.	<i>ipsos,</i>	<i>ipsas,</i>	<i>ipsos,</i>	<i>ipsis,</i>	<i>ipsis,</i>	<i>ipsis.</i>

## 104. C. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

## I. Demonstrative Pronoun for the First Person.

*hic, this.*

Sg.—N.	<i>hic,</i>	<i>haec,</i>	<i>hœc,</i>	PL.— <i>hi,</i>	<i>hae,</i>	<i>haec, these.</i>
G.	<i>hîus,</i>	<i>hîus,</i>	<i>hîus,</i>	<i>hœrum,</i>	<i>hœrum,</i>	<i>hœrum,</i>
D.	<i>huic,</i>	<i>huic,</i>	<i>huic,</i>	<i>his,</i>	<i>his,</i>	<i>his,</i>
Ac.	<i>hunc,</i>	<i>hanc,</i>	<i>hœc,</i>	<i>hœs,</i>	<i>hœs,</i>	<i>haec,</i>
Ab.	<i>hœc,</i>	<i>hœc,</i>	<i>hœc,</i>	<i>his,</i>	<i>his,</i>	<i>his.</i>

REMARK.—The full forms *-œ* are rare in classical Latin, except in the phrase *hîuscœ modi, of this kind*.

## II. Demonstrative Pronoun for the Second Person.

*iste, that.*

Sg.—N.	<i>iste,</i>	<i>ista,</i>	<i>istud,</i>	PL.— <i>isti,</i>	<i>istae,</i>	<i>ista,</i>
G.	<i>istius,</i>	<i>istius,</i>	<i>istius,</i>	<i>istœrum,</i>	<i>istœrum,</i>	<i>istœrum,</i>
D.	<i>isti,</i>	<i>isti,</i>	<i>isti,</i>	<i>istis,</i>	<i>istis,</i>	<i>istis,</i>
Ac.	<i>istum,</i>	<i>istam,</i>	<i>istud,</i>	<i>istos,</i>	<i>istas,</i>	<i>ista,</i>
Ab.	<i>istos,</i>	<i>istas,</i>	<i>istos,</i>	<i>istis,</i>	<i>istis,</i>	<i>istis.</i>

REMARK.—*Iste* combines with *-œ*, but in classical Latin the only common forms are *istuc* (for *istud*) and *istaec* (for *ista*).

## III. Demonstrative Pronoun for the Third Person.

Sg.—N.	<i>ille,</i>	<i>illa,</i>	<i>illud,</i>	PL.— <i>illi,</i>	<i>illae,</i>	<i>illa,</i>
G.	<i>illius,</i>	<i>illius,</i>	<i>illius,</i>	<i>illœrum,</i>	<i>illœrum,</i>	<i>illœrum,</i>
D.	<i>illi,</i>	<i>illi,</i>	<i>illi,</i>	<i>illis,</i>	<i>illis,</i>	<i>illis,</i>
Ac.	<i>illum,</i>	<i>illam,</i>	<i>illud,</i>	<i>illos,</i>	<i>illas,</i>	<i>illa,</i>
Ab.	<i>illos,</i>	<i>illas,</i>	<i>illos,</i>	<i>illis,</i>	<i>illis,</i>	<i>illis.</i>

## 105.

## D. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

*qui* (Substantive and Adjective), *who*.

Sg.—N.	<i>qui</i> ,	<i>quae</i> ,	<i>quod</i> ,	PL.— <i>qui</i> ,	<i>quae</i> ,	<i>quae</i> ,
G.	<i>cuius</i> ,	<i>cuius</i> ,	<i>cuius</i> ,	<i>quorum</i> ,	<i>quarum</i> ,	<i>quorum</i> ,
D.	<i>cui</i> ,	<i>cui</i> ,	<i>cui</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> ,
Ac.	<i>quem</i> ,	<i>quam</i> ,	<i>quod</i> ,	<i>quos</i> ,	<i>quas</i> ,	<i>quae</i> ,
Ab.	<i>quod</i> ,	<i>quae</i> ,	<i>quod</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> ,	<i>quibus</i> .

General Relatives are :

Substantive.	<i>quisquis</i> , <i>whoever</i> ,	<i>quidquid</i> , <i>quicquid</i> ,	<i>whatever</i> .
Adjective.	( <i>quiqui</i> , <i>quaequae</i> , <i>quodquod</i> ),	<i>whosoever</i> .	
	<i>quicunque</i> , <i>quaecunque</i> , <i>quodcunque</i> ,	<i>whichever</i> .	

REMARKS.—1. D. Ab. Pl. *quis* is common in the poets at all periods ; and occurs sometimes also in prose writers.

2. The Abl. Sing. *qui* for all genders is the prevalent form in early times, and in combination with *cum* is preferred to *quod*, *quae*, by CICERO.

## 106.

## E. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Substantive.	<i>quis</i> ? <i>who</i> ?	<i>quid</i> ? <i>what</i> ?	
Adjective.	<i>qui</i> ?	<i>quae</i> ?	<i>quod</i> ? <i>which</i> ?
Subst. and Adj.	<i>uter</i> ?	<i>utra</i> ?	<i>utrum</i> ? <i>who, which of two</i> ?
Sg.—N.	<i>quis</i> ?	<i>quid</i> ?	<i>who</i> ? <i>what</i> ?
			POSSESSIVE.
G.	<i>cuius</i> ?	<i>cuius</i> ?	<i>whose</i> ?
			<i>cuius</i> , <i>cuius</i> , <i>cuius</i> , <i>whose</i> ?
D.	<i>cui</i> ?	<i>cui</i> ?	<i>to, for whom</i> ?
Ac.	<i>quem</i> ?	<i>quid</i> ?	<i>whom</i> ? <i>what</i> ?
Ab.	<i>quod</i> ?	<i>quod</i> ?	<i>from, with, by whom or what</i> ?

The plural of the substantive interrogative pronoun and both numbers of the adjective interrogative pronoun coincide with the forms of the relative *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, *who*, *which*.

## Strengthened Interrogatives.

Substantive.	<i>quisnam</i> ? <i>who, pray</i> ?	<i>quidnam</i> ? <i>what, pray</i> ?
	<i>ecquis</i> ? <i>is there any one who</i> ?	<i>ecquid</i> ?
Adjective.	<i>quisnam</i> ?	<i>quasnam</i> ?
	<i>ecqui</i> ?	<i>ecquae</i> ? ( <i>ecquae</i> ?)
		<i>quodnam</i> ? <i>which, pray</i> ?
		<i>ecquod</i> ?

REMARK.—In the poets *qui* is sometimes found as a substantive for *quis* in independent sentences. In dependent sentences the use always fluctuates.

## 107.

## F. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1. Substantive.	<i>aliquis</i> , <i>aliqua</i> (rare),	<i>aliquid</i> ,	{ <i>somebody, some one</i> <i>or other.</i>
	<i>quis</i> ,	<i>qua</i> ,	
Adjective.	<i>aliqui</i> , <i>aliqua</i> ,	<i>aliquid</i> ,	{ <i>some, any.</i>
	<i>qui</i> ,	<i>quae, qua</i> ,	
		<i>quod</i> ,	

REMARKS.—1. The common rule is that *quis* and *qui* occur properly only after *si*, *nisi*, *nō*, *num*, or after a relative ; otherwise *aliquis*, *aliqui*.

2. *Aliquis* and *quis* are not unfrequently used as adjectives instead of *aliqui*, *qui*.

3. The Pl. N. Ac. Neut. of *quis* is both *quae* and *qua* ; of *aliquis* only *aliqua*.

2. *quidam*, *quaedam*,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quiddam (subst.),} \\ \text{quoddam (adj.),} \end{array} \right\} \text{a certain, certain one.}$

3. *quispiam*, *quaeipiam*, *quidpiam* (and *quodpiam*), *some one, some.*  
*quisquam*, ———, *quicquam*, *any one (at all).*

REMARK.—*Quisquam* has no plural ; but forms of *illius* are used instead.

4. *quivis*, *quaevis*,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quidvis (subst.),} \\ \text{quodvis (adj.),} \end{array} \right\} \text{any one you please,}$   
*quilibet*, *quaelibet*,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quidlibet (subst.),} \\ \text{quodlibet (adj.),} \end{array} \right\} \text{you like.}$

5. *quisque*, *quaeque*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quidque (subst.),} \\ \text{quodque (adj.),} \end{array} \right\} \text{each one.}$

*unusquisque*, *unaquaeque*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{unumquidque (subst.),} \\ \text{unumquodque (adj.),} \end{array} \right\} \text{each one sever- ally.}$

108. The declension of the pronominal adjectives has been given in 76. They are :

*illius*, -a, -um, *any* ; *nullus*, -a, -um, *no one, not one.* The corresponding substantives are *nēmō* (70) and *nihil*, the latter of which forms only *nihili* (Gen.) and *nihilō* (Abl.), and those only in certain combinations.

*nōnnullus*, -a, -um, *some, many a*, declined like *nullus*.

*alius*, -a, -ud, *another* ; the Possessive of *alius* is *aliēnus*.

*alter*, -era, -erum, *the other, one (of two).*

*neuter*, *neutra*, *neutrum*, *neither of two.*

*alteruter*, *alterutra*, *alterutrum*, *the one or the other of the two.*

*uterque*, *utraqe*, *utrumque*, *each of two, either.* *ambō*, -ae, -ō, *both.*

*utervis*, *utravis*, *utrumvis*,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{whichever you please of the two.} \end{array} \right.$   
*uterlibet*, *utralibet*, *utrumlibet*,

## CORRELATIVES.

### 109. I. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

INTERROGATIVES.		DEMONSTRATIVES.		RELATIVES.
<i>quis</i> ?	<i>who</i> ?	<i>is</i> ,	<i>that</i> ,	<i>qui</i> , <i>who.</i>
<i>quālis</i> ?	<i>of what</i> <i>kind</i> ?	<i>tālis</i> ,	<i>such (of that</i> <i>kind),</i>	<i>quālis</i> , <i>as (of which</i> <i>kind).</i>
<i>quantus</i> ?	<i>how much</i> ?	<i>tantus</i> ,	<i>so much</i> ,	<i>quantus</i> , <i>as much.</i>
<i>quot</i> ?	<i>how many</i> ?	<i>tot</i> ,	<i>so many</i> ,	<i>quot</i> , <i>as many.</i>

## 110. II. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADVERBS.

1. Pronominal adverbs of *place*.

ubi ?	where ?	ibi,	there,	ubi,	where.
quā ?	where, which way ?	hic, hūc,	here, this way,	quā,	where, which way.
		istūc, istūc,	there, that way.		
		illūc, illūc,	there, yonder way.		
unde ?	whence ?	inde,	thence,	unde,	whence.
		hinc,	hence.		
		istinc,	thence.		
		illinc,	thence, from yonder.		
quō ?	whither ?	eō,	thither,	quō,	whither.
		hūc, (hūc),	hither.		
		istūc, (istūc),	thither.		
		illūc, (illūc),	thither, yonder.		

2. Pronominal adverbs of *time*.

quandō ?	when ?	tūc,	then,	quandō,	when.
		tūc,	at that time,	quom,	cum.
		nunc,	now.		
quotiens ?	how often ?	totiens,	so often,	quotiens,	as often as.

3. Pronominal adverbs of *manner*.

quōmodo ?	qui ?	how ?	ita, sic,	so, thus,	ut, uti,	as.
quam ?		how much ?	tam,	so much,	quam,	as.

## 111. III. COMPOUNDS OF THE RELATIVE FORMS.

1. The relative pronouns become *indefinite* by prefixing *ali-*:

*aliquantus*, somewhat great ; *aliquot*, several, some ; *alicubi*, somewhere ; *alicunde*, from somewhere ; *aliquandō*, at some time.

2. The simple relatives become *universal* by doubling themselves, or by suffixing *-cunque* (*-cumque*), sometimes *-que*:

*quantuscunque*, however great ; *quālcunque*, of whatever kind ; *quotquot*, however many ; *ublcunque*, wheresoever ; *quandōcunque*, *quandōque*, whenever ; *quotiēscunque*, however often ; *utut*, in whatever way ; *utcunque*, howsoever ; *quamquam*, however, although.

3. Many of the relatives are further compounded with *-vis* or *-libet*:

*quantuslibet*, *quantusvis*, as great as you please ; *ubivis*, where you will ; *quamvis*, as you please, though.

## THE VERB.

112. The inflection given to the verbal stem is called Conjugation, and expresses :

1. Person : First.  
Second.  
Third.
2. Voice : Active.  
Passive.

The Active Voice denotes that the action proceeds from the subject : **amō**, *I love*.

The Passive Voice denotes that the subject receives the action of the Verb : **amor**, *I am loved*.

3. Tense : Present, Imperfect, Future.  
Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.

The Tenses are divided into—

- a. Principal \* : Present, **amō**, *I love*.  
Future, **amābō**, *I shall love*.  
Pure Perfect, **amāvī**, *I have loved*.  
Future Perf., **amāverō**, *I shall have loved*.
- b. Historical \* : Imperfect, **amābam**, *I was loving*.  
Historical Perfect, **amāvī**, *I loved*.  
Pluperfect, **amāveram**, *I had loved*.

REMARK.—The Pure and Historical Perfects are identical in form.

4. Mood : Indicative.  
Subjunctive.  
Imperative.

The Indicative Mood is the mood of the *fact* : **amō**, *I love*.

The Subjunctive Mood is the mood of the *wish*, *command*, or *qualified statement* : **amem**, *may I love*, *I may love* ; **amet**, *may he love*, *let him love* ; *he may love* ; **sī amet**, *if he should love*.

The Imperative Mood is the mood of *command* : **amā**, *love thou !*

For further distinctions see Syntax.

---

\* For *Principal* some Grammars use *Primary* ; for *Historical*, *Secondary*.

5. These forms belong to the Finite Verb. Outside of the Finite Verb, and akin to the noun, are the verbal forms called Infinitive, Supine, Participle, Gerund.

113. A large number of Verbs have the passive form, but are active in meaning : *hortor, I exhort*. These are called *deponent* (from *dēponere, to lay aside*).

114. The Inflection of the Finite Verb is effected by the addition of personal endings to the verb stems.

1. The personal endings are mostly pronominal forms, which serve to indicate not only person, but also number and voice. They are :

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Sg.—1. -m (or a vowel, coalescing with the characteristic ending); Pf. <i>ī</i> ,	
2. -s; Pf. -s-tī; Impv. -tō or wanting,	-ris or -re; Impv. -re or -tor.
3. -t; Impv. -tō,	-tur; Impv. -tor.
Pl.—1. -mus,	-mur.
2. -tis; Pf. -s-tis; Impv. -te or -tōte,	-mini.
3. -nt; Pf. -runt or -ere; Impv. -ntō,	-ntur; Impv. -ntor.

2. The personal endings are added directly to the stem in the Present Indicative and Imperative only, except in the third conjugation in some forms of the Future Indicative. In the other tenses certain modifications occur in the stem, or tense signs are employed.

3. The stem itself is variously modified, either by change of vowel or by addition of suffixes, and appears in the following forms :

(a) The *Present* stem ; being the stem of the Present, Imperfect, and Future tenses. These forms are called the *Present System*.

(b) The *Perfect* stem ; being the stem of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses. These forms are called the *Perfect System*.

(c) The *Supine* stem, which is used for convenience' sake to form the Future Active and Perfect Passive Participles and the Supine. These forms are called the *Supine System*.

115. 1. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses in the Passive are formed by the combination of the Perfect Passive Participle with forms of the verb *sum, I am*.

2. The Future Passive Infinitive is formed by the combination of the Supine with the Present Passive Infinitive of *es*, *I go*.

3. The infinite parts of the verb are formed by the addition of the following endings to the stems :

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.
INFINITIVE.	Pr.	-re,	-ri, -i.
	Pf.	-isse,	-tum (-tam, -tum), esse.
	Fut.	-tūrum (-am, -um) [esse],	-tum iri.
PARTICIPLES.	Pr.	-ns (G. -ntis),	
	Pf.	—	-tus (-ta, -tum).
	Fut.	-tūrus (-a, -um).	
GERUND.		GERUNDIVE.	SUPINE.
-ndi (-dō, -dum, -dō).		-ndus (-a, -um).	-tum ; -tū.

## 116. THE VERB *sum*, *I am*.

(Pres. stem *es*-, Perf. stem *fu*-)

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		
PRESENT.				
Sg.—I.	<i>su-m,</i>	<i>I am,</i>	<i>si-m,</i>	<i>I be,</i>
2.	<i>es,</i>	<i>thou art,</i>	<i>si-s,</i>	<i>thou be,</i>
3.	<i>es-t,</i>	<i>he, she, it is.</i>	<i>si-t,</i>	<i>he, she, it be.</i>
PL.—I.	<i>su-mus,</i>	<i>we are,</i>	<i>si-mus,</i>	<i>we be,</i>
2.	<i>es-tis,</i>	<i>you are,</i>	<i>si-tis,</i>	<i>you be,</i>
3.	<i>su-nt,</i>	<i>they are.</i>	<i>si-nt,</i>	<i>they be.</i>
IMPERFECT.				
Sg.—I.	<i>era-m,</i>	<i>I was,</i>	<i>esse-m,</i>	<i>I were (forem),</i>
2.	<i>erā-s,</i>	<i>thou wast,</i>	<i>essē-s,</i>	<i>thou wert (forēs),</i>
3.	<i>era-t,</i>	<i>he was.</i>	<i>esse-t,</i>	<i>he were (foret).</i>
PL.—I.	<i>erā-mus,</i>	<i>we were,</i>	<i>essē-mus,</i>	<i>we were,</i>
2.	<i>erā-tis,</i>	<i>you were,</i>	<i>essē-tis,</i>	<i>you were,</i>
3.	<i>era-nt,</i>	<i>they were.</i>	<i>esse-nt,</i>	<i>they were (forent).</i>
FUTURE.				
Sg.—I.	<i>er-ō,</i>	<i>I shall be,</i>		
2.	<i>erī-s,</i>	<i>thou wilt be,</i>		
3.	<i>erī-t,</i>	<i>he will be.</i>		
PL.—I.	<i>erī-mus,</i>	<i>we shall be,</i>		
2.	<i>erī-tis,</i>	<i>you will be,</i>		
3.	<i>eru-nt,</i>	<i>they will be.</i>		



## PERFECT.

- Sg.—1. *fu-i*, *I have been*, *I fu-eri-m*, *I have, may have, been,*  
*was,*  
 2. *fu-i-sti*, *thou hast been*, *fu-erī-s*, *thou have, mayest have,*  
*thou wast,* *been,*  
 3. *fu-i-t*, *he has been*, *he fu-erī-t*, *he have, may have, been.*  
*was.*
- Pl.—1. *fu-i-mus*, *we have been*, *we fu-erī-mus*, *we have, may have, been,*  
*were,*  
 2. *fu-i-stis*, *you have been*, *fu-erī-tis*, *you have, may have,*  
*you were,* *been,*  
 3. *fu-ēru-nt*, *fu-ēre*, *they have* *fu-erī-nt*, *they have, may have,*  
*been, they were.* *been.*

## PLUPERFECT.

- Sg.—1. *fu-era-m*, *I had been*, *fu-isse-m*, *I had, might have, been,*  
 2. *fu-erī-s*, *thou hadst* *fu-isse-s*, *thou hadst, mightst have,*  
*been,* *been,*  
 3. *fu-era-t*, *he had been.* *fu-isse-t*, *he had, might have, been.*
- Pl.—1. *fu-erī-mus*, *we had been*, *fu-isse-mus*, *we had, might have, been,*  
 2. *fu-erī-tis*, *you had been*, *fu-isse-tis*, *you had, might have,*  
*been.*  
 3. *fu-era-nt*, *they had been*, *fu-isse-nt*, *they had, might have,*  
*been.*

## FUTURE PERFECT.

- Sg.—1. *fu-er-ō*, *I shall have been,*  
 2. *fu-erī-s*, *thou wilt have been,*  
 3. *fu-erī-t*, *he will have been.*
- Pl.—1. *fu-erī-mus*, *we shall have been,*  
 2. *fu-erī-tis*, *you will have been,*  
 3. *fu-erī-nt*, *they will have been.*

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

- Sg.—1. —, —,  
 2. *es*, *be thou*, *estō*, *thou shalt be*,  
 3. —, *estō*, *he shall be.*

- Pl.—1. —,  
 2. *es-te*, *be ye*, *estōte*, *you shall be*,  
 3. —, *suntō*, *they shall be.*

## INFINITIVE.

- PRES. *es-se*, *to be*,  
 PERF. *fu-isse*, *to have been*,  
 FUT. *fu-tūr-um (-am, -um) esse*  
*(fore), to be about to be.*

## PARTICIPLE.

- PRES. only in the compounds  
*ab-sēns*, *prae-sēns*.  
 FUT. *fu-tūr-us, -a, -um*, *about*  
*to be.*

117. COMPOUNDS OF *sum*, *I am*.

<i>ab-sum</i> , <i>I am away, absent</i> . Pf. ( <i>ab-ful</i> ) <i>ŭful</i> , Pr. Part. <i>ab-sēns</i> , <i>absent</i> .	<i>pos-sum</i> , <i>I am able</i> .
<i>ad-sum</i> , <i>I am present</i> . Pf. <i>afful</i> .	<i>prae-sum</i> , <i>I am over, I superintend</i> . Pr. Part. <i>prae-sēns</i> , <i>present</i> .
<i>dē-sum</i> , <i>I am wanting</i> .	<i>prō-sum</i> , <i>I am for, I profit</i> .
<i>in-sum</i> , <i>I am in</i> .	<i>sub-sum</i> , <i>I am under</i> . No Pf.
<i>inter-sum</i> , <i>I am between</i> .	<i>super-sum</i> , <i>I am, or remain, over</i> .
<i>ob-sum</i> , <i>I am against, I hurt</i> . Pf. <i>obŭful</i> or <i>offul</i> .	

These are all inflected like *sum*, but *prōsum* and *possum* require special treatment by reason of their composition.

*Prōsum*, *I profit*.118. In the forms of *prōsum*, *prōd-* is used before vowels.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	<i>prō-sum</i> , <i>prōd-es</i> , <i>prōd-est</i> , <i>prō-sumus</i> , <i>prōd-estis</i> , <i>prōd-sunt</i> ,	<i>prō-sim</i> ,
IMPERFECT.	<i>prōd-eram</i> ,	<i>prōd-essem</i> ,
FUTURE.	<i>prōd-erō</i> ,	
PERFECT.	<i>prōd-ful</i> ,	<i>prō-fuerim</i> ,
PLUPERFECT.	<i>prō-fueram</i> ,	<i>prō-fuissem</i> .
FUT. PERF.	<i>prō-fuerō</i> .	
INFINITIVE. PRES.	<i>prōd-esse</i> ; FUT. <i>prō-futūrum esse</i> (-fore); PERF. <i>prō-fuisse</i> .	

*Possum*, *I am able, I can*.

119. *Possum* is compounded of *pot* (*potis*, *pote*) and *sum*; *t* becomes *s* before *s*; in the perfect forms, *f* (*pot-ful*) is lost.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	PRESENT.	
Sg.—1.	<i>pos-sum</i> , <i>I am able, can</i> ,	<i>pos-sim</i> , <i>I be able</i> .
2.	<i>pot-es</i> ,	<i>pos-sis</i> ,
3.	<i>pot-est</i> .	<i>pos-sit</i> .
Pl.—1.	<i>pos-sumus</i> ,	<i>pos-simus</i> ,
2.	<i>pot-estis</i> ,	<i>pos-sitis</i> .
3.	<i>pos-sunt</i> .	<i>pos-sint</i> .
	IMPERFECT.	
Sg.—1.	<i>pot-eram</i> , <i>I was able, could</i> ,	<i>pos-sem</i> , <i>I were, might be, able</i> .
2.	<i>pot-erās</i> ,	<i>pos-sēs</i> ,
3.	<i>pot-erat</i> .	<i>pos-set</i> .
Pl.—1.	<i>pot-erāmus</i> ,	<i>pos-sēmus</i> ,
2.	<i>pot-erātis</i> ,	<i>pos-sētis</i> ,
3.	<i>pot-erant</i> .	<i>pos-sent</i> .

## FUTURE.

Sg.—1. *pot-erō, I shall be able.*2. *pot-eris,*3. *pot-erit.*Pl.—1. *pot-erimus,*2. *pot-eritis,*3. *pot-erunt.*

## PERFECT.

Sg.—1. *pot-u-i, I have been able,*2. *pot-u-isti,*3. *pot-u-it.**pot-u-erim, I have, may have, been**pot-u-eris,**[able.**pot-u-erit.*Pl.—1. *pot-u-imus,*2. *pot-u-istis,*3. *pot-u-erunt.**pot-u-erimus,**pot-u-eritis,**pot-u-erint.*

## PLUPERFECT.

Sg.—1. *pot-u-eram, I had been able,*2. *pot-u-erās,*3. *pot-u-erat.**pot-u-issem, I had, might have,**pot-u-issēs,**[been able.**pot-u-isset.*Pl.—1. *pot-u-erāmus,*2. *pot-u-erātis,*3. *pot-u-erant.**pot-u-issēmus,**pot-u-issētis,**pot-u-issent.*

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Sg.—1. *pot-u-erō, I shall have been*2. *pot-u-eris,*3. *pot-u-erit.*Pl.—1. *pot-u-erimus,**[able,*2. *pot-u-eritis,*3. *pot-u-erint.*INFINITIVE. PRES., *pos-se, to be able.* PERF., *pot-u-isse, to have been able.*

## REGULAR VERBS.

## SYSTEMS OF CONJUGATION.

120. 1. There are two Systems of Conjugation, the Thematic and the Non-thematic (132). The Non-thematic is confined to a small class. The Thematic System comprises four Conjugations, distinguished by the vowel characteristics of the present stem, *ā, ē, ē, ī*, which may be found by dropping *-re* from the Present Infinitive Active. The consonant preceding the short vowel stem-characteristic is called the consonant stem-characteristic.

2. From the *Present* stem, as seen in the Present Indicative and Present Infinitive Active; from the *Perfect* stem, as seen in the Perfect Indicative Active; and from the *Supine* stem, can be derived all the forms of the verb. These tenses are accordingly called the *Principal Parts*; and in the regular verbs appear in the four conjugations as follows:

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.	
I. am-ō,	amē-re,	amē-vī,	amē-tum,	to love.
II. dēle-ō,	dēle-re,	dēle-vī,	dēle-tum,	to blot out.
mone-ō,	monē-re,	mon-vī,	mon-i-tum,	to remind.
III. em-ō,	eme-re,	ēm-I,	ēm(p)-tum,	to buy.
statu-ō,	statue-re,	statu-I,	statū-tum,	to settle.
scrib-ō,	scribe-re,	scrip-sī,	scrip-tum,	to write.
capi-ō,	cape-re,	cēp-I,	cap-tum,	to take.
IV. audi-ō,	audi-re,	audi-vī,	audi-tum,	to hear.

#### Formation of the Tenses.

121. The tenses are formed by the addition of the personal endings to the various stems, either directly, or by means of certain tense signs, as shown in the paradigms.

While no practical rules for the formation of the tenses can be given, it is well to observe that

1. The *Second Person Impv. Active* is the same as the stem of the Pres. Infinitive.

2. The *Impf. Subjv.* may be formed from the Pres. Inf. Active by adding -m for Active and -r for Passive.

3. The *Second Person Impv. Passive* and *Second Person Sing. Pres. Passive* in -re are the same as the Pres. Inf. Active. Hence -ris is preferred in the Pres. Indic. Pass. in order to avoid confusion.

4. The *Pres. Subjv. Active* and *Fut. Indic. Active* in the third and fourth conjugations are alike in the First Person Singular.

5. The *Fut. Perf. Indic. Active* and the *Perf. Subjv. Active* differ only in the First Person Singular.

REMARK.—*Euphonic changes in the consonant stem-characteristic in the Perfect and Supine.* Characteristic b before s and t becomes p; g and qu before t become c; c, g, qu, with s, become x; t and d before s are assimilated, and then sometimes dropped.

scrib-ō, scrip-sī, scriptum; legō, lēc-tum; coqu-ō, coc-tum; dic-ō, dixī (dic-sī); iung-ō, iūnx-I (iūng-sī); coqu-ō, coxī (coqu-sī); ed-ō, ē-sum (ed-sum); cēd-ō, cēs-sī (cēd-sī); mitt-ō, mī-sī (mit-sī), mis-sum (mit-sum).

## 122.

## First Conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF *amāre*, to love.PRIN. PARTS : *am-ō*, *amā-re*, *amā-vi*, *amā-tum*.

## ACTIVE

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*Am loving, do love, love.**Be loving, may love.*SG.—1. *am-ō*,*ame-m*,2. *amā-s*,*amē-s*,3. *ama-t*,*ame-t*.PL.—1. *amā-mus*,*amē-mus*,2. *amā-tis*,*amē-tis*,3. *ama-nt*,*ame-nt*.

## IMPERFECT.

*Was loving, loved.**Were loving, might love.*SG.—1. *amā-ba-m*,*amā-re-m*,2. *amā-bā-s*,*amā-rē-s*,3. *amā-ba-t*,*amā-re-t*.PL.—1. *amā-bā-mus*,*amā-rē-mus*,2. *amā-bā-tis*,*amā-rē-tis*,3. *amā-ba-nt*,*amā-re-nt*.

## FUTURE.

*Shall be loving, shall love.*SG.—1. *amā-b-ō*,2. *amā-bi-s*,3. *amā-bi-t*,PL.—1. *amā-bi-mus*,2. *amā-bi-tis*,3. *amā-bu-nt*.

## PERFECT.

*Have loved, did love.**Have, may have, loved.*SG.—1. *amā-v-ī*,*amā-v-erī-m*,2. *amā-v-istī*,*amā-v-erī-s*,3. *amā-v-īt*,*amā-v-erī-t*.PL.—1. *amā-v-imus*,*amā-v-erī-mus*,2. *amā-v-istis*,*amā-v-erī-tis*,3. *amā-v-ērunt (-ēre)*,*amā-v-erī-nt*.

## First Conjugation.

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PLUPERFECT.

*Had loved.**Had, might have, loved.*

- Sg.—1. amā-v-**era**-m,  
 2. amā-v-**erā**-s,  
 3. amā-v-**era**-t,

- amā-v-**isse**-m,  
 amā-v-**issē**-s,  
 amā-v-**isse**-t.

- Pl.—1. amā-v-**erā**-mus,  
 2. amā-v-**erā**-tis,  
 3. amā-v-**era**-nt,

- amā-v-**issē**-mus,  
 amā-v-**issē**-tis,  
 amā-v-**isse**-nt.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have loved.*

- Sg.—1. amā-v-**er**-ō,  
 2. amā-v-**erī**-s,  
 3. amā-v-**erī**-t,

- Pl.—1. amā-v-**erī**-mus,  
 2. amā-v-**erī**-tis,  
 3. amā-v-**erī**-nt.

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

## FUTURE.

- Sg.—1. —, —,  
 2. amā, *love thou,* amā-tō, *thou shalt love.*  
 3. —, amā-tō, *he shall love.*

- Pl.—1. —, —,  
 2. amā-te, *love ye,* amā-tōte, *ye shall love.*  
 3. —, ama-ntō, *they shall love.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. amā-re, *to love.*PERF. amā-v-isse, *to have loved.*FUT. amā-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse], *to be about to love.*

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

N. [amā-re], *loving.*G. ama-nd-i, *of loving.*D. ama-nd-ō, *to loving.*

Ac. [amā-re],

Ac. amā-tum, *to love.*(ad) ama-nd-um, *loving, to love.*Ab. ama-nd-ō, *by loving.*Ab. amā-tū, *to love, in the loving.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. N. amā-n-s (G. ama-nt-is), *loving.*FUTURE. amā-tūr-us, -a, -um, *being about to love.*

## First Conjugation.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

*Am loved.*

- Sg.—1. amō-r,  
 2. amā-ris (-re),  
 3. amā-tur,

- Pl.—1. amā-mur,  
 2. amā-mini,  
 3. amā-ntur,

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*Be, may be, loved.*

- amē-r,  
 amē-ris (-re),  
 amē-tur.

- amē-mur,  
 amē-mini,  
 amē-ntur.

## IMPERFECT.

*Was loved.**Were, might be, loved.*

- Sg.—1. amā-ba-r,  
 2. amā-bā-ris (-re),  
 3. amā-bā-tur,

- Pl.—1. amā-bā-mur,  
 2. amā-bā-mini,  
 3. amā-bā-ntur,

- amā-rē-r,  
 amā-rē-ris (-re),  
 amā-rē-tur.

- amā-rē-mur,  
 amā-rē-mini,  
 amā-rē-ntur.

## FUTURE.

*Shall be loved.*

- Sg.—1. amā-bo-r,  
 2. amā-be-ris (-re),  
 3. amā-bi-tur.

- Pl.—1. amā-bi-mur,  
 2. amā-bi-mini,  
 3. amā-bi-ntur.

## PERFECT.

*Have been loved, was loved.**Have, may have, been loved.*

- Sg.—1. amā-t-us, -a, -um sum,  
 2. es,  
 3. est,

- Pl.—1. amā-t-i, -ae, -a sumus,  
 2. estis,  
 3. sunt.

- amā-t-us, -a, -um sim,  
 sis,  
 sit,  
 amā-t-i, -ae, -a simus,  
 sitis,  
 sint.

## First Conjugation.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PLUPERFECT.

*Had been loved.**Had, might have, been loved.*

Sg.—1.	amā-t-us, -a, -um	eram,	amā-t-us, -a, -um	essem,
2.		erās,		essēs,
3.		erat,		esset,
PL.—1.	amā-t-I, -ae, -a	erāmus,	amā-t-I, -ae, -a	essēmus,
2.		erātis,		essētis,
3.		erant.		essent.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Shall have been loved.*

Sg.—1.	amā-t-us, -a, -um	erō,
2.		eris,
3.		erit,
PL.—1.	amā-t-I, -ae, -a	erimus,
2.		eritis,
3.		erunt.

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

## FUTURE.

Sg.—1.	—,	—,
2.	amā-re, <i>be thou loved.</i>	amā-tor, <i>thou shalt be loved.</i>
3.	—,	amā-tor, <i>he shall be loved.</i>
PL.—1.	—,	—,
2.	amā-mini, <i>be ye loved.</i>	—,
3.	—.	ama-ntor, <i>they shall be loved.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	amā-rī,	<i>to be loved.</i>
PERF.	amā-t-um, -am, -um	<i>esse, to have been loved.</i>
FUT.	amā-tum irī,	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>
FUT. PERF.	amā-t-um, -am, -um	<i>fore.</i>

## PARTICIPLE.

## GERUNDIVE.

PERF.	amā-t-us, -a, -um, <i>loved.</i>	ama-nd-us, -a, -um, <i>(one) to be loved.</i>
-------	----------------------------------	---



## 123.

## Second Conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF *dēlēre*, to destroy (*blot out*).PRIN. PARTS : *dēlē-ō*, *dēlē-re*, *dēlē-vī*, *dēlē-tum*.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJV.	INDIC.	SUBJV.
PRESENT.			
Sg. — <i>dēlē-ō</i> , <i>dēlē-s</i> , <i>dēlē-t</i> ,	<i>dēlē-a-m</i> , <i>dēlē-ā-s</i> , <i>dēlē-a-t</i> ,	<i>dēlē-o-r</i> , <i>dēlē-ris (-re)</i> , <i>dēlē-tur</i> ,	<i>dēlē-a-r</i> , <i>dēlē-ā-ris (-re)</i> , <i>dēlē-ā-tur</i> ,
Pl. — <i>dēlē-mus</i> , <i>dēlē-tis</i> , <i>dēlē-nt</i> .	<i>dēlē-ā-mus</i> , <i>dēlē-ā-tis</i> , <i>dēlē-a-nt</i> .	<i>dēlē-mur</i> , <i>dēlē-mini</i> , <i>dēlē-ntur</i> .	<i>dēlē-ā-mur</i> , <i>dēlē-ā-mini</i> , <i>dēlē-a-ntur</i> .
IMPERFECT.			
Sg. — <i>dēlē-ba-m</i> , <i>dēlē-bā-s</i> , <i>dēlē-ba-t</i> ,	<i>dēlē-re-m</i> , <i>dēlē-rē-s</i> , <i>dēlē-re-t</i> ,	<i>dēlē-ba-r</i> , <i>dēlē-bā-ris (-re)</i> , <i>dēlē-bā-tur</i> ,	<i>dēlē-re-r</i> , <i>dēlē-rē-ris (-re)</i> , <i>dēlē-rē-tur</i> ,
Pl. — <i>dēlē-bā-mus</i> , <i>dēlē-bā-tis</i> , <i>dēlē-ba-nt</i> .	<i>dēlē-rē-mus</i> , <i>dēlē-rē-tis</i> , <i>dēlē-re-nt</i> .	<i>dēlē-bā-mur</i> , <i>dēlē-bā-mini</i> , <i>dēlē-ba-ntur</i> .	<i>dēlē-rē-mur</i> , <i>dēlē-rē-mini</i> , <i>dēlē-re-ntur</i> .
FUTURE.			
Sg. — <i>dēlē-b-ō</i> , <i>dēlē-bi-s</i> , <i>dēlē-bi-t</i> ,		<i>dēlē-bo-r</i> , <i>dēlē-be-ris (-re)</i> , <i>dēlē-bi-tur</i> ,	
Pl. — <i>dēlē-bi-mus</i> , <i>dēlē-bi-tis</i> , <i>dēlē-bu-nt</i> .		<i>dēlē-bi-mur</i> , <i>dēlē-bi-mini</i> , <i>dēlē-bu-ntur</i> .	
PERFECT.			
Sg. — <i>dēlē-v-ī</i> , <i>dēlē-v-istī</i> , <i>dēlē-v-it</i> ,	<i>dēlē-v-erī-m</i> , <i>dēlē-v-erī-s</i> , <i>dēlē-v-erī-t</i> ,	<i>dēlē-t-us</i> <i>sum</i> , <i>es</i> , <i>est</i> ,	<i>dēlē-t-us</i> <i>sim</i> , <i>sis</i> , <i>sit</i> ,
Pl. — <i>dēlē-v-imus</i> , <i>dēlē-v-istis</i> , <i>dēlē-v-ērunt (-ēre)</i> ,	<i>dēlē-v-erī-mus</i> , <i>dēlē-v-erī-tis</i> , <i>dēlē-v-erī-nt</i> ,	<i>dēlē-t-ī</i> <i>sumus</i> , <i>estis</i> , <i>gunt</i> .	<i>dēlē-t-ī</i> <i>simus</i> , <i>astis</i> , <i>sint</i> .

## Second Conjugation.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## PLUPERFECT.

Sg. —dēlē-v-erā-m,	dēlē-v-isse-m,	dēlē-t-us	eram,	dēlē-t-us	essem,
dēlē-v-erā-s,	dēlē-v-isse-s,		erās,		essēs,
dēlē-v-erā-t,	dēlē-v-isse-t,		erat,		esset,
PL. —dēlē-v-erā-mus,	dēlē-v-isse-mus,	dēlē-t-i	erāmus,	dēlē-t-i	essēmus,
dēlē-v-erā-tis,	dēlē-v-isse-tis,		erātis,		essētis,
dēlē-v-erā-nt.	dēlē-v-isse-nt.		erant.		essent.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Sg. —dēlē-v-er-ō,		dēlē-t-us	erō,
dēlē-v-erī-s,			eris,
dēlē-v-erī-t,			erit,
PL. —dēlē-v-erī-mus,		dēlē-t-i	erimus,
dēlē-v-erī-tis,			eritis,
dēlē-v-erī-nt,			erunt.

## IMPERATIVE.

	PRESENT.	FUTURE.		PRESENT.	FUTURE.
Sg.	—,	—,		—,	—,
	dēlē,	dēlē-tō,		dēlē-re,	dēlē-tor,
	—,	dēlē-tō,		—,	dēlē-tor.
PL.	—,	—,		—,	—,
	dēlē-te,	dēlē-tōte,		dēlē-min.,	—,
	—,	dēle-ntō.		—,	dēle-ntor.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	dēlē-re.	PRES.	dēlē-rī.
PERF.	dēlē-v-isse.	PERF.	dēlē-t-um, -am, -um esse.
FUT.	dēlē-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse].	FUT.	dēlē-tum iri.
		FUT. Pr.	dēlē-t-um, -am, -um fore.

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

## PARTICIPLES.

N.	[dēlē-re].		PRES.	N. dēlē-n-s; G. dēle-nt-is.
G.	dēle-nd-i.		FUT.	dēlē-tūr-us, -a, -um.
D.	dēle-nd-ō.		PERF.	dēlē-t-us, -a, -um.
Ac.	[dēlē-re]	Ac.	dēlē-tum.	
	(ad) dēle-nd-um.			
Ab.	dēle-nd-ō.	Ab.	dēlē-tū.	

## GERUNDIVE.

dēle-nd-us, -a, -um.

124. Like *dölere*, to *destroy*, are conjugated only, *nôre*, to *spin*, *flêre*, to *weep*, and the compounds of *-plêre*, *fill*, and *-olêre*, *grow* (the latter with Supine in *-itum*); also *ciêre*, to *stir up*.

All other verbs of the Second Conjugation retain the characteristic *e* in the Present System, but drop it in the Perfect System, changing *vī* to *uī*, and weaken it to *i* in the Supine System.

### Second Conjugation.

#### CONJUGATION OF *monêre*, to *remind*.

PRIN. PARTS: *mone-ō*, *monê-re*, *mon-uī*, *moni-tum*.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJV.	INDIC.	SUBJV.
PRESENT.			
Sg.— <i>mone-ō</i> ,	<i>mone-a-m</i> ,	<i>mone-o-r</i> ,	<i>mone-a-r</i> ,
<i>monê-s</i> ,	<i>mone-ā-s</i> ,	<i>monê-ris (-re)</i> ,	<i>mone-ā-ris (-re)</i> ,
<i>mone-t</i> ,	<i>mone-a-t</i> ,	<i>monê-tur</i> ,	<i>mone-ā-tur</i> ,
Pl.— <i>monê-mus</i> ,	<i>mone-ā-mus</i> ,	<i>monê-mur</i> ,	<i>mone-ā-mur</i> ,
<i>monê-tis</i> ,	<i>mone-ā-tis</i> ,	<i>monê-mini</i> ,	<i>mone-ā-mini</i> ,
<i>mone-nt</i> .	<i>mone-a-nt</i> .	<i>mone-ntur</i> .	<i>mone-a-ntur</i> .
IMPERFECT.			
Sg.— <i>monê-ba-m</i> ,	<i>monê-re-m</i> ,	<i>monê-ba-r</i> ,	<i>monê-re-r</i> ,
<i>monê-bā-s</i> ,	<i>monê-rē-s</i> ,	<i>monê-bā-ris (-re)</i> ,	<i>monê-rē-ris (-re)</i> ,
<i>monê-ba-t</i> ,	<i>monê-re-t</i> ,	<i>monê-bā-tur</i> ,	<i>monê-rē-tur</i> ,
Pl.— <i>monê-bā-mus</i> ,	<i>monê-rē-mus</i> ,	<i>monê-bā-mur</i> ,	<i>monê-rē-mur</i> ,
<i>monê-bā-tis</i> ,	<i>monê-rē-tis</i> ,	<i>monê-bā-mini</i> ,	<i>monê-rē-mini</i> ,
<i>monê-ba-nt</i> .	<i>monê-re-nt</i> .	<i>monê-ba-ntur</i> .	<i>monê-re-ntur</i> .
FUTURE.			
Sg.— <i>monê-b-ō</i> ,		<i>monê-bo-r</i> ,	
<i>monê-bi-s</i> ,		<i>monê-be-ris (-re)</i> ,	
<i>monê-bi-t</i> ,		<i>monê-bi-tur</i> ,	
Pl.— <i>monê-bi-mus</i> ,		<i>monê-bi-mur</i> ,	
<i>monê-bi-tis</i> ,		<i>monê-bi-mini</i> ,	
<i>monê-bu-nt</i> .		<i>monê-bu-ntur</i> .	
PERFECT.			
Sg.— <i>mon-u-ī</i> ,	<i>mon-u-erī-m</i> ,	<i>moni-tu-s</i> <i>sum</i> ,	<i>moni-t-us</i> <i>sim</i> ,
<i>mon-u-istī</i> ,	<i>mon-u-erī-s</i> ,	<i>es</i> ,	<i>sis</i> ,
<i>mon-u-it</i> ,	<i>mon-u-erī-t</i> ,	<i>est</i> ,	<i>sit</i> ,
Pl.— <i>mon-u-imus</i> ,	<i>mon-u-erī-mus</i> ,	<i>moni-t-i</i> <i>sumus</i> ,	<i>moni-t-i</i> <i>simus</i> ,
<i>mon-u-istis</i> ,	<i>mon-u-erī-tis</i> ,	<i>estis</i> ,	<i>sitis</i> ,
<i>mon-u-erunt (-êre)</i> .	<i>mon-u-erī-nt</i> .	<i>sunt</i> .	<i>sint</i> .

## Second Conjugation.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## PLUPERFECT.

Sg.—mon-u- <b>era</b> -m,	mon-u- <b>isse</b> -m,	moni-t- <b>us</b> eram,	moni-t- <b>us</b> <b>essem</b> ,
mon-u- <b>erā</b> -s,	mon-u- <b>issē</b> -s,	<b>erās</b> ,	<b>essēs</b> ,
mon-u- <b>era</b> -t,	mon-u- <b>isse</b> -t,	<b>erat</b> ,	<b>esset</b> ,
Pl.—mon-u- <b>erā</b> -mus,	mon-u- <b>issē</b> -mus,	moni-t- <b>i</b> <b>erāmus</b> ,	moni-t- <b>i</b> <b>essēmus</b> ,
mon-u- <b>erā</b> -tis,	mon-u- <b>issē</b> -tis,	<b>erātis</b> ,	<b>essētis</b> ,
mon-u- <b>era</b> -nt.	mon-u- <b>isse</b> -nt.	<b>erant</b> .	<b>essent</b> .

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Sg.—mon-u- <b>er</b> -ō,	moni-t- <b>us</b> <b>erō</b> ,
mon-u- <b>erī</b> -s,	<b>eris</b> ,
mon-u- <b>erī</b> -t,	<b>erit</b> ,
Pl.—mon-u- <b>erī</b> -mus,	moni-t- <b>i</b> <b>erimus</b> ,
mon-u- <b>erī</b> -tis,	<b>eritis</b> ,
mon-u- <b>erī</b> -nt.	<b>erunt</b> .

## IMPERATIVE.

	PRESENT.	FUTURE.		PRESENT.	FUTURE.
Sg.	—	—	—	—	—
	monē,	monē-tō,		monē-re,	monē-tor,
	—	monē-tō,		—	monē-tor,
Pl.	—	—	—	—	—
	monē-te,	monē-tōte,		monē-mini,	—
	—	mone-ntō.		—	mone-ntor.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	monē-re.	PRES.	monē-ri.
PERF.	mon-u-isse.	PERF.	moni-t-um, -am, -um esse.
FUT.	moni-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse].	FUT.	moni-t-um iri.
		FUT. PF.	moni-t-um, -am, -um fore.

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

## PARTICIPLES.

N.	[monē-re].		PRES.	N. monē-n-s; G. mone-nt-is.
G.	mone-nd-i.		FUT.	moni-tūr-us, -a, -um.
D.	mone-nd-ō.		PERF.	moni-t-us, -a, -um.
Ac.	[monē-re]	Ac. moni-tum.		
	(ad) mone-nd-um.			GERUNDIVE.
Ab.	mone-nd-ō.	Ab. moni-tū.		mone-nd-us, -a, -um.

## 125.

## Third Conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF *emere, to buy*.PRIN. PARTS : *em-ō, eme-re, ēm-I, ēm(p)-tum*.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## PRESENT.

Sg.— <i>em-ō,</i> <i>emi-s,</i> <i>emi-t,</i>	<i>ema-m,</i> <i>emā-s,</i> <i>ema-t,</i>	<i>em-o-r,</i> <i>eme-ris (-re),</i> <i>emi-tur,</i>	<i>ema-r,</i> <i>emā-ris (-re),</i> <i>emā-tur,</i>
Pl.— <i>emi-mus,</i> <i>emi-tis,</i> <i>emu-nt.</i>	<i>emā-mus,</i> <i>emā-tis,</i> <i>ema-nt.</i>	<i>emi-mur,</i> <i>emi-mini,</i> <i>emu-ntur.</i>	<i>emā-mur,</i> <i>emā-mini,</i> <i>ema-ntur.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

Sg.— <i>emē-ba-m,</i> <i>emē-bā-s,</i> <i>emē-ba-t,</i>	<i>eme-re-m,</i> <i>eme-rē-s,</i> <i>eme-rē-t,</i>	<i>emē-ba-r,</i> <i>emē-bā-ris (-re),</i> <i>emē-bā-tur,</i>	<i>eme-rē-r,</i> <i>eme-rē-ris (-re),</i> <i>eme-rē-tur,</i>
Pl.— <i>emē-bā-mus,</i> <i>emē-bā-tis,</i> <i>emē-ba-nt.</i>	<i>eme-rē-mus,</i> <i>eme-rē-tis,</i> <i>eme-rē-nt.</i>	<i>emē-bā-mur,</i> <i>emē-bā-mini,</i> <i>emē-ba-ntur.</i>	<i>eme-rē-mur,</i> <i>eme-rē-mini,</i> <i>eme-rē-ntur.</i>

## FUTURE.

Sg.— <i>ema-m,</i> <i>emē-s,</i> <i>eme-t,</i>	<i>ema-r,</i> <i>emē-ris (-re),</i> <i>emē-tur,</i>
Pl.— <i>emē-mus,</i> <i>emē-tis,</i> <i>eme-nt.</i>	<i>emē-mur,</i> <i>emē-mini,</i> <i>eme-ntur.</i>

## PERFECT.

Sg.— <i>ēm-I,</i> <i>ēm-isti,</i> <i>ēm-it,</i>	<i>ēm-eri-m,</i> <i>ēm-erī-s,</i> <i>ēm-eri-t,</i>	<i>ēmp-t-us sum,</i> <i>es,</i> <i>est,</i>	<i>ēmp-t-us sim,</i> <i>sis,</i> <i>sit,</i>
Pl.— <i>ēm-imus,</i> <i>ēm-istis,</i> <i>ēm-ērunt (-ēre).</i>	<i>ēm-erī-mus,</i> <i>ēm-erī-tis,</i> <i>ēm-eri-nt.</i>	<i>ēmp-t-i sumus,</i> <i>estis,</i> <i>sunt.</i>	<i>ēmp-t-i simus,</i> <i>sitis,</i> <i>sint.</i>

## Third Conjugation.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## INDIC.

## SUBJV.

## PLUPERFECT.

Sg.—ē-m-erā-m,	ē-m-isso-m,	ēmp-t-us eram,	ēmp-t-us essem,
ē-m-erā-s,	ē-m-isso-s,	erās,	essēs,
ē-m-erā-t,	ē-m-isso-t,	erat,	esset,
Pl.—ē-m-erā-mus,	ē-m-isso-mus,	ēmp-t-i erāmus,	ēmp-t-i essemus,
ē-m-erā-tis,	ē-m-isso-tis,	erātis,	essētis,
ē-m-erā-nt.	ē-m-isso-nt.	erant.	essent.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Sg.—ē-m-er-ō,	ēmp-t-us erō,
ē-m-er-is,	eris,
ē-m-er-i-t,	erit,
Pl.—ē-m-er-i-mus,	ēmp-t-i erimus,
ē-m-er-i-tis,	eritis,
ē-m-er-i-nt.	erunt.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.	FUTURE.	PRESENT.	FUTURE.
Sg. —	—	—	—
eme,	emi-tō,	eme-re,	emi-tor,
—	emi-tō,	—	emi-tor,
Pl. —	—	—	—
emi-te,	emi-tōte,	emi-mini,	—
—	emu-ntō.	—	emu-ntor.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. eme-re.	PRES. em-i.
PERF. ē-m-isso.	PERF. ēmp-t-um, -am, -um esse.
FUT. ēmp-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse].	FUT. ēmp-tum iri.
	FUT. PR. ēmp-t-um, -am, -um fore.

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

## PARTICIPLES.

N. [eme-re].		PRES. N. emē-n-s; G. eme-nt-is.
G. em-e-nd-i.		FUT. ēmp-tūr-us, -a, -um.
D. em-e-nd-ō.		PERF. ēmp-t-us, -a, -um.
Ac. [em-e-re]	Ac. ēmp-tum.	
(ad) em-e-ndum.		GERUNDIVE.
Ab. em-e-nd-o.	Ab. ēmp-tū.	em-e-nd-us, -a, -um.

**126.** Many verbs of the third conjugation with Pres. Indic. in *iō*, change *i* to *e* before *r* and drop it when it would come before *ē* or *i* in all tenses of the Present System except the Future, Participle, and Gerund. Otherwise they follow the inflection of *eme-re*.

These verbs are *capiō*, *cupiō*, *faciō*, *fodiō*, *fugiō*, *iaciō*, *pariō*, *quatiō*, *rapiō*, *sapiō*, and their compounds; also compounds of *-liciō*, *-spiciō*, and the deponents *gradior* and its compounds, *morior* and its compounds, *patior* and its compounds.

### SYNOPSIS OF PRESENT SYSTEM OF *cape-re*, *to take*.

PRIN. PARTS : *capi-ō*, *cape-re*, *cōp-i*, *cap-tum*.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJV.	INDIC.	SUBJV.
PRESENT.			
Sg.— <i>capi-ō</i> , <i>capi-s</i> , <i>capi-t</i> ,	<i>capi-a-m</i> , <i>capi-ā-s</i> , <i>capi-a-t</i> ,	<i>capi-o-r</i> , <i>cape-ris (-re)</i> , <i>capi-tur</i> ,	<i>capi-a-r</i> , <i>capi-ā-ris (-re)</i> , <i>capi-ā-tur</i> ,
Pl.— <i>capi-mus</i> , <i>capi-tis</i> , <i>capi-u-nt</i> .	<i>capi-ā-mus</i> , <i>capi-ā-tis</i> , <i>capi-a-nt</i> .	<i>capi-mur</i> , <i>capi-mini</i> , <i>capi-u-ntur</i> .	<i>capi-ā-mur</i> , <i>capi-ā-mini</i> , <i>capi-a-ntur</i> .
IMPERFECT.			
Sg.— <i>capi-ē-ba-m</i> , <i>etc.</i>	<i>cape-re-m</i> , <i>etc.</i>	<i>capi-ē-ba-r</i> , <i>etc.</i>	<i>cape-re-r</i> , <i>etc.</i>
FUTURE.			
Sg.— <i>capi-a-m</i> , <i>capi-ē-s</i> , <i>etc.</i>		<i>capi-a-r</i> , <i>capi-ē-ris (-re)</i> , <i>etc.</i>	
IMPERATIVE.			
Pres.	Fut.	Pres.	Fut.
Sg.— <i>cape</i> ,  <i>capi-te</i> .	<i>cap-i-tō</i> , <i>cap-i-tō</i> , <i>capi-tōte</i> , <i>capi-u-ntō</i> .	<i>cape-re</i> ,  <i>capi-mini</i> .	<i>capi-tor</i> , <i>capi-tor</i> ,  <i>capi-u-ntor</i> ,
INFINITIVE.			
Pres. <i>cape-re</i> .			<i>cap-i</i> .
PARTICIPLE.			
Pres. <i>capi-ē-n-s</i> .	GERUND.		GERUNDIVE.
	G. <i>capi-e-nd-i</i> .		<i>capi-e-nd-us, -a, -um</i> .

127.

## Fourth Conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF *audire*, to hear.PRIN. PARTS : *audi-ō*, *audi-re*, *audi-vi*, *audi-tum*.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

INDIC.

SUBJV.

INDIC.

SUBJV.

## PRESENT.

Sg.— <i>audi-ō</i> , <i>audi-s</i> , <i>audi-t</i> ,	<i>audi-a-m</i> , <i>audi-ā-s</i> , <i>audi-a-t</i> ,	<i>audi-o-r</i> , <i>audi-ris (-re)</i> , <i>audi-tur</i> ,	<i>audi-a-r</i> , <i>audi-ā-ris (-re)</i> , <i>audi-ā-tur</i> ,
PL.— <i>audi-mus</i> , <i>audi-tis</i> , <i>audi-u-nt</i> .	<i>audi-ā-mus</i> , <i>audi-ā-tis</i> , <i>audi-a-nt</i> .	<i>audi-mur</i> , <i>audi-mini</i> , <i>audi-u-ntur</i> .	<i>audi-ā-mur</i> , <i>audi-ā-mini</i> , <i>audi-a-ntur</i> .

## IMPERFECT.

Sg.— <i>audi-ē-ba-m</i> , <i>audi-ē-bā-s</i> , <i>audi-ē-ba-t</i> ,	<i>audi-re-m</i> , <i>audi-rē-s</i> , <i>audi-re-t</i> ,	<i>audi-ē-ba-r</i> , <i>audi-ē-bā-ris (-re)</i> , <i>audi-ē-bā-tur</i> ,	<i>audi-rē-r</i> , <i>audi-rē-ris (-re)</i> , <i>audi-rē-tur</i> ,
PL.— <i>audi-ē-bā-mus</i> , <i>audi-ē-bā-tis</i> , <i>audi-ē-ba-nt</i> .	<i>audi-rē-mus</i> , <i>audi-rē-tis</i> , <i>audi-re-nt</i> .	<i>audi-ē-bā-mur</i> , <i>audi-ē-bā-mini</i> , <i>audi-ē-ba-ntur</i> .	<i>audi-rē-mur</i> , <i>audi-rē-mini</i> , <i>audi-re-ntur</i> .

## FUTURE.

Sg.— <i>audi-a-m</i> , <i>audi-ēs</i> , <i>audi-e-t</i> ,	<i>audi-a-r</i> , <i>audi-ēs (-re)</i> , <i>audi-ē-tur</i> ,
PL.— <i>audi-ē-mus</i> , <i>audi-ētis</i> , <i>audi-e-nt</i> .	<i>audi-ē-mur</i> , <i>audi-ē-mini</i> , <i>audi-e-ntur</i> .

## PERFECT.

Sg.— <i>audi-v-i</i> , <i>audi-v-isti</i> , <i>audi-v-it</i> ,	<i>audi-v-eri-m</i> , <i>audi-v-erī-s</i> , <i>audi-v-erī-t</i> ,	<i>audi-t-us sum</i> , <i>es</i> , <i>est</i> ,	<i>audi-t-us sim</i> , <i>sis</i> , <i>sit</i> ,
PL.— <i>audi-v-imus</i> , <i>audi-v-istis</i> , <i>audi-v-erunt (-re)</i> .	<i>audi-v-erī-mus</i> , <i>audi-v-erī-tis</i> , <i>audi-v-erī-nt</i> .	<i>audi-t-i sumus</i> , <i>estis</i> , <i>sunt</i> .	<i>audi-t-i simus</i> , <i>sitis</i> , <i>sint</i> .



## Fourth Conjugation.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJV.	INDIC.	SUBJV.
PLUPERFECT.			
Sg.—audi-v- <b>era-m</b> ,	audi-v- <b>isse-m</b> ,	audi-t- <b>us eram</b> ,	audi-t- <b>us essem</b> ,
audi-v- <b>erā-s</b> ,	audi-v- <b>issē-s</b> ,	erās,	essēs,
audi-v- <b>era-t</b> ,	audi-v- <b>isse-t</b> ,	erat,	esset,
Pl.—audi-v- <b>erē-mus</b> ,	audi-v- <b>issē-mus</b> ,	audi-t- <b>i erāmus</b> ,	audi-t- <b>i essēmus</b> ,
audi-v- <b>erēt-is</b> ,	audi-v- <b>issēt-is</b> ,	erātis,	essētis,
audi-v- <b>era-nt</b> .	audi-v- <b>isse-nt</b> .	erant.	essent.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Sg.—audi-v- <b>er-ō</b> ,	audi-t- <b>us erō</b> ,
audi-v- <b>erī-s</b> ,	eris,
audi-v- <b>erit</b> ,	erit,
Pl.—audi-v- <b>erī-mus</b> ,	audi-t- <b>i erimus</b> ,
audi-v- <b>erīt-is</b> ,	eritis,
audi-v- <b>erit-nt</b> .	erunt.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.		FUTURE.	
Sg. —	—	—	—
audi,	audi-tō,	audi-re,	audi-tor,
—	audi-tō,	—	audi-tor,
Pl. —	—	—	—
audi-te,	audi-tōte,	audi-mini.	—
—	audi-u-ntō.	—	audi-u-ntor.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. audi-re.	PRES. audi-rī.
PERF. audi-v-isse.	PERF. audi-t-um, -am, -um esse.
FUT. audi-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse].	FUT. audi-tum iri.
	FUT. Pr. audi-t-um, -am, -um fore.

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

## PARTICIPLES.

N. [audi-re].	PRES. N. audi-e-n-s, G. audi-e-nt-is.
G. audi-e-nd-i.	FUT. audi-tūr-us, -a, -um.
D. audi-e-nd-ō.	PERF. audi-t-us, -a, -um.
Ac. [audi-re]	Ac. audi-tum.
(ad) audi-e-nd-um,	
Ab. audi-e-nd-ō.	Ab. audi-tū.
	GERUNDIVE.
	audi-e-nd-us, -a, -um.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

**128.** Deponent verbs have the passive form, but are active in meaning. They have also the Present and Future Active Participles, and the Future Active Infinitive. Thus a deponent verb alone can have a Present, Future, and Perfect Participle, all with active meaning. The Gerundive, however, is passive in meaning as well as in form.

The conjugation differs in no particular from that of the regular conjugation.

## I. First Conjugation.

CONJUGATION OF *hortāri*, to exhort.

PRIN. PARTS : *hort-or*, *hortā-ri*, *hortā-tus sum*.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*Exhort.*

*Be exhorting, may exhort.*

Sg.—*hort-o-r*,  
*hortā-ris (-re)*,  
*hortā-tur*,

*hortē-r*,  
*hortē-ris (-re)*,  
*hortē-tur*,

Pl.—*hortā-mur*,  
*hortā-mini*,  
*horta-ntur*.

*hortē-mur*,  
*hortē-mini*,  
*hortē-ntur*.

## IMPERFECT.

*Was exhorting.*

*Were exhorting, might exhort.*

Sg.—*hortā-ba-r*,  
*hortā-bā-ris (-re)*,  
*hortā-bā-tur*,

*hortā-re-r*,  
*hortā-rē-ris (-re)*,  
*hortā-rē-tur*,

Pl.—*hortā-bā-mur*,  
*hortā-bā-mini*,  
*hortā-ba-ntur*.

*hortā-rē-mur*,  
*hortā-rē-mini*,  
*hortā-re-ntur*.

## FUTURE.

*Shall exhort.*

Sg.—*hortā-bo-r*,  
*hortā-be-ris (-re)*,  
*hortā-bi-tur*,

Pl.—*hortā-bi-mur*,  
*hortā-bi-mini*,  
*hortā-bu-ntur*.

## PERFECT.

<i>Have exhorted, exhorted.</i>		<i>Have, may have, exhorted.</i>	
Sg.—hortā-t-us, -a, -um	sum,	hortā-t-us, -a, -um	sim,
	es,		sis,
	est,		sit,
PL.—hortā-t-i, -ae, -a	sumus,	hortā-t-i, -ae, -a	simus,
	estis,		sitis,
	sunt.		sint.

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>Had exhorted.</i>		<i>Had, might have, exhorted.</i>	
Sg.—hortā-t-us, -a, -um	eram,	hortā-t-us, -a, -um	essem,
	erās,		essēs,
	erat,		esset,
PL.—hortā-t-i, -ae, -a	erāmus,	hortā-t-i, -ae, -a	essēmus,
	erātis,		essētis,
	erant.		essent.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

<i>Shall have exhorted.</i>	
Sg.—hortā-t-us, -a, -um	erō,
	eris,
	erit,
PL.—hortā-t-i, -ae, -a	erimus,
	eritis,
	erunt.

## PRESENT.

## IMPERATIVE.

## FUTURE.

Sg. —	—	—
hortā-re, exhort thou.	hortā-tor, thou shalt exhort.	
—	hortā-tor, he shall exhort.	
PL. —	—	—
hortā-mini, exhort ye.	—	
—	horta-ntor, they shall exhort.	

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. hortā-ri, to exhort.	PRES. hortā-n-s, exhorting.
FUT. hortā-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse], to be about to exhort.	FUT. hortā-tūr-us, -a, -um, about to exhort.
PERF. hortā-t-um, -am, -um esse, to have exhorted.	PERF. hortā-t-us, -a, -um, having exhorted.
F. P. hortā-t-um, -am, -um fore.	GERUNDIVE.
SUPINE.	horta-nd-us, -a, -um, [one] to be exhorted.
Ac. hortā-tum, to exhort, for ex- horting.	GERUND.
Ab. hortā-tū, to exhort, in the ex- horting.	G. horta-nd-i, of exhorting.

## 2. Second, Third, Fourth Conjugations.

SYNOPSIS OF *verēri*, to fear ; *loqui*, to speak ; *mentiri*, to lie.PRIN. PARTS: *vere-or*, *verē-ri*, *veri-tus sum* ; *loqu-or*, *loqu-i*, *locū-tus sum* ;  
*menti-or*, *menti-ri*, *menti-tus sum*.

## INDICATIVE.

	II.	III.	IV.
PRES.	<i>vere-o-r</i> , <i>verē-ris</i> (-re), etc.,	<i>loqu-o-r</i> , <i>loque-ris</i> (-re), etc.,	<i>menti-o-r</i> , <i>menti-ris</i> (-re), etc.,
IMPERF.	<i>verē-ba-r</i> ,	<i>loquē-ba-r</i> ,	<i>menti-ē-ba-r</i> ,
FUT.	<i>verē-bo-r</i> ,	<i>loqua-r</i> ,	<i>menti-a-r</i> ,
PERF.	<i>veri-t-us sum</i> ,	<i>locū-t-us sum</i> ,	<i>menti-t-us sum</i> ,
PLUFF.	<i>veri-t-us eram</i> ,	<i>locū-t-us eram</i> ,	<i>menti-t-us eram</i> ,
FUT. PF.	<i>veri-t-us erō</i> .	<i>locū-t-us erō</i> .	<i>menti-t-us erō</i> .

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	<i>vere-a-r</i> , <i>vere-ā-ris</i> (-re), etc.,	<i>loqua-r</i> , <i>loquā-ris</i> (-re), etc.,	<i>menti-a-r</i> , <i>menti-ā-ris</i> (-re), etc.,
IMPERF.	<i>verē-re-r</i> ,	<i>loque-re-r</i> ,	<i>menti-re-r</i> ,
PERF.	<i>veri-t-us sim</i> ,	<i>locū-t-us sim</i> ,	<i>menti-t-us sim</i> ,
PLUFF.	<i>veri-t-us essem</i> .	<i>locū-t-us essem</i> .	<i>menti-t-us essem</i> .

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	<i>verē-re</i> ,	<i>loque-re</i> ,	<i>menti-re</i> ,
FUT.	<i>verē-tor</i> .	<i>loqui-tor</i> .	<i>menti-tor</i> .

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	<i>verē-ri</i> ,	<i>loqu-i</i> ,	<i>menti-ri</i> ,
FUT.	<i>veri-tūr-um</i> [esse],	<i>locū-tūr-um</i> [esse],	<i>menti-tūr-um</i> [esse],
PERF.	<i>veri-t-um esse</i> ,	<i>locū-t-um esse</i> ,	<i>menti-t-um esse</i> ,
FUT. PF.	<i>veri-t-um fore</i> .	<i>locū-t-um fore</i> .	<i>menti-t-um fore</i> .

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	<i>verē-n-s</i> ,	<i>loquē-n-s</i> ,	<i>menti-ē-n-s</i> ,
FUT.	<i>veri-tūr-us</i> ,	<i>locū-tūr-us</i> ,	<i>menti-tūr-us</i> ,
PERF.	<i>veri-t-us</i> .	<i>locū-t-us</i> .	<i>menti-t-us</i> .
GERUND.	<i>vere-nd-i</i> , etc.,	<i>loque-nd-i</i> ,	<i>menti-e-nd-i</i> ,
GERUNDIVE.	<i>vere-nd-us</i> ,	<i>loque-nd-us</i> ,	<i>menti-e-nd-us</i> ,
SUPINE.	<i>veri-tum</i> ,	<i>locū-tum</i> ,	<i>menti-tum</i> ,
	<i>veri-tū</i> .	<i>locū-tū</i> .	<i>menti-tū</i> .

## Periphrastic Conjugation.

129. The Periphrastic Conjugation arises from the combination of the Future Participle Active and the Gerundive with forms of the verb *sum*.

## ACTIVE.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	<i>amā-tūr-us (-a, -um) sum,</i> <i>Am about to love.</i>	<i>amā-tūr-us (-a, -um) sim,</i> <i>Be about to love.</i>
IMPF.	<i>amā-tūr-us eram,</i> <i>Was about to love.</i>	<i>amā-tūr-us essem,</i> <i>Were about to love.</i>
FUT.	<i>amā-tūr-us erō,</i> <i>Shall be about to love.</i>	
PERF.	<i>amā-tūr-us fui,</i> <i>Have been, was, about to love.</i>	<i>amā-tūr-us fuerim,</i> <i>Have, may have, been</i> <i>about to love.</i>
PLUFF.	<i>amā-tūr-us fueram,</i> <i>Had been about to love.</i>	<i>amā-tūr-us fuissem,</i> <i>Had, might have, been</i> <i>about to love.</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>amā-tūr-us fuerō,</i> <i>Shall have been about to love.</i>	
INFINITIVE.	PRES. <i>amā-tūr-um (-am, -um) [esse],</i> <i>To be about to love.</i> PERF. <i>amā-tūr-um fuisse,</i> <i>To have been about to love.</i>	

## PASSIVE.

PRES.	<i>ama-nd-us (-a, -um) sum,</i> <i>Have to be loved.</i>	<i>ama-nd-us (-a, -um) sim,</i> <i>Have to be loved.</i>
IMPF.	<i>ama-nd-us eram,</i> <i>Had to be loved.</i>	<i>ama-nd-us essem, forem,</i> <i>Had to be loved.</i>
FUT.	<i>ama-nd-us erō,</i> <i>Shall have to be loved.</i>	
PERF.	<i>ama-nd-us fui,</i> <i>Have had to be loved.</i>	<i>ama-nd-us fuerim,</i> <i>Have had to be loved.</i>
PLUFF.	<i>ama-nd-us fueram,</i> <i>Had had to be loved.</i>	<i>ama-nd-us fuissem,</i> <i>Should have had to be</i> <i>loved.</i>
INFINITIVE.	PRES. <i>ama-nd-um (-am, -um) esse,</i> <i>To have to be loved.</i> PERF. <i>ama-nd-um fuisse,</i> <i>To have had to be loved.</i>	

**130. I. IMPERATIVE.**—Four verbs, *dicere, dūcere, facere, ferre* (171), form the Pr. Impv. active *dic, dūc, fac, fer*. But in early Latin *dice, dūce, face* are not uncommon. The compounds also have *dice, dūce, face*, except the non-prepositional (173, R.) compounds of *faciō*. *Scire, to know*, lacks the Pr. Impv. *sci*.

2. The older ending of the GERUND and GERUNDIVE in the third and fourth conjugations was *-undus*; and *-endus* was found only after *u*. In classical times *-undus* is frequent, especially in verbs of third and fourth conjugations. Later, *-endus* is the regular form.

**131. I. SYNCOPATED FORMS.**—The Perfects in *-āvī, -ēvī, -īvī*, often drop the *v* before *s* or *r*, and contract the vowels throughout, except those in *-īvī*, which admit the contraction only before *s*.

These forms are called syncopated. They are found in all periods, and in the poets are used to suit the metre.

PERFECT.			
SING. 1.	—	—	—
2.	<i>amāvisti, amāsti.</i>	<i>dēlēvisti, dēlēsti.</i>	<i>audivisti, audisti.</i>
3.	—	—	—
PLUR. 1.	—	—	—
2.	<i>amāvistis, amāstis.</i>	<i>dēlēvistis, dēlēstis.</i>	<i>audivistis, audistis.</i>
3.	<i>amāverunt, amārun.</i>	<i>dēlēverunt, dēlērun.</i>	<i>audiverunt, audierunt.</i>
SUBJV.	<i>amāverim, amārim,</i> <i>etc.</i>	<i>dēlēverim, dēlērim,</i> <i>etc.</i>	<i>audiverim, audierim,</i> <i>etc.</i>
PLUPERFECT.			
INDIC.	<i>amāveram, amāram,</i> <i>etc.</i>	<i>dēlēveram, dēlēram,</i> <i>etc.</i>	<i>audiveram, audieram,</i> <i>etc.</i>
SUBJV.	<i>amāvissem, amāsem,</i> <i>etc.</i>	<i>dēlēvissem, dēlēsem,</i> <i>etc.</i>	<i>audivissem, audissem,</i> <i>etc.</i>
FUTURE PERFECT.			
	<i>amāverō, amārō,</i> <i>etc.</i>	<i>dēlēverō, dēlērō,</i> <i>etc.</i>	<i>audiverō, audierō,</i> <i>etc.</i>
INFINITIVE PERFECT.			
	<i>amāvisse, amāsse.</i>	<i>dēlēvisse, dēlēsse.</i>	<i>audivisse, audisse.</i>

2. In the first and third persons Sing. and in the first person Pl. of the Perfect, syncope occurs regularly only in Perfects in *-īvī*, and there is no contraction. It is most common in the Perfects of *ire* (169) and *petere*. The unsyncopated forms are always common except those of *ire* (169), which are very rare in good prose, but occur more often in the poets for metrical reasons.

3. *nōvī, I know*, and *mōvī, I have moved*, are also contracted, in their compounds especially.

SING.—2. *nōsti*. PLUR.—2. *nōstis*. 3. *nōrunt*. SUBJV. *nōrim, etc.*

PLUFF. *nōram, etc.* SUBJV. *nōssem, etc.* INF. *nōsse*.

But the Fut. Perf. *nōrō* is found only in compounds.

Similar contractions are seen in *mōvī*, but not so often.

## THE STEM.

**132.** Most of the forms of the verbs *sum, I am, edō, I eat, eō, I go, ferō, I bear, volō, I wish* (perhaps *dō, I give*), and their compounds come directly from the root.

The other verbs in Latin form their stems from the root by the addition of a vowel or of a combination of a vowel with a consonant. This vowel is called the *thematic vowel*, and these verbs are called *Thematic verbs* (120, 1).

In the first, second, and fourth conjugations, and in some verbs of the third conjugation, the stem thus formed is found throughout the whole conjugation; in other verbs the present stem shows different forms from the other stems.

## I. THE PRESENT STEM.

**133.** I. *The Stem or Thematic class*: This comprises

(a) Verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations: stems in *a, e, and i*.

(b) Most verbs of the third conjugation: stems in *e*, either unlengthened or lengthened; *leg-ō* (root *LEG-*), *lege-re, to read*; *dūc-ō* (*DUC-*), *dūce-re, to lead*.

II. *The Reduplicated class*: The Present stem is formed by reduplication, with *i* in the reduplicated syllable:

*gen-, gī-gnō* (for *GI-GEN-ō*), *gī-gne-re, to beget*; *sta-, ai-stō, ai-ste-re, to set, stand*. Compare *stā-re, to stand*.

III. *The T class*: The root, which usually ends in a guttural, is strengthened by *t*: *flectō* (*FLEC-*), *flecte-re, to bend*.

IV. *The Nasal class*: In this class the root is strengthened by *n*, the nasal being inserted

A. In vowel-stems: *sinō* (*SI-*), *sine-re, to let*; *linō* (*LI-*), *line-re, to besmear*.

B. After the characteristic liquid: *cernō* (*CER-*), *cerne-re, to sift, separate*; *temnō* (*TEM-*), *temne-re, to scorn*; *pellō* (for *PEL-Nō*, by assimilation), *pelle-re, to drive*.

C. Before the characteristic mute: *vincō* (*VIC-*), *vince-re, to conquer*; *frangō* (*FRAG-*), *frange-re, to break*; *fundō* (*FUD-*), *funde-re, to pour*.

Before a *p*-mute *n* becomes *m*: *rumpō* (*RUP-*), *rumpe-re, to rend*; *cumbō* (*CUB-*), *cumbe-re, to lie down*.

D. Here belong also those verbs in which the root is strengthened by *-nu*; as *sternuō* (*STER-*), *sternue-re, to sneeze*.

V. *The Inchoative class*: The Present stem has the suffix *-sc-*; as, *irā-scor*, *I am in a rage*; *crē-scō*, *I grow*; *pro-fici-scor*, *I set out*; *nō-scō*, *I become acquainted*; *pō-scō* (= *pore-scō*), *I demand*; *di-scō* (= *di-de-scō*), *I learn*.

VI. *The I class*: The root is strengthened by *i* (*e*) in some forms of the Present System: *capi-ō* (*CAP-*), *cape-re*, *to take*.

VII. *The Mixed class*: Some verbs that originally belong to the *i*-class have gone over in the Present stem to the forms of the Stem class: as *veniō* (*VEN-*), *veni-re*, *to come*; *videō* (*VID-*), *vidē-re*, *to see*; *sonō* (*SON-*), *sonē-re*, *to sound*.

## II. THE PERFECT STEM.

134. I. *Perfect in -vi* (or *-ui*): These are formed by the addition

(a) Of *-vi* to the Present stem. To this class belong the Perfects of the first and fourth conjugations, and the few verbs of the second conjugation mentioned in 124; *amā-re*, *amā-vi*; *audi-re*, *audi-vi*; *dōlē-re*, *dōlē-vi*.

(b) Of *-ui* to the Present stem after its characteristic vowel is dropped. Here belong the majority of the verbs of the second conjugation; *monē-re*, *mon-ui*.

II. *Perfect in -si*: These are formed by the addition of *-si* to the root; which is, as a rule, long either by nature or position. This class comprises a large number of verbs in the third conjugation in which the stem-characteristic consonant is a mute: *rēpō*, *I creep*, *rēp-si*; *scribō*, *I write*, *scrip-si*; *dico*, *I say*, *dixi* (= *dico-si*); *carpō*, *I pluck*, *carp-si*; *rādo*, *I scrape*, *rāsī* (= *rād-si*).

In three verbs the stem-characteristic is *-m*: *preme-re*, *to press*; *sūme-re*, *to take*; *con-tem(n)e-re*, *to scorn*; and in a few others it is *-s*, as *ūr-ō*, *I burn*, *ūs-si*; *haereō*, *I stick*, *haesi* (= *haes-si*).

III. *Reduplicated Perfects*: These are formed by prefixing to the unstrengthened root its first consonant (or group of consonants), together with the following vowel (but *e* instead of *a* or *ae*), and adding the termination *-i*: *currō*, *I run*, *cu-curr-i*; *disco*, *I learn*, *di-dici*; *spondeō*, *I pledge*, *spo(s)pendi*; *tangō*, *I touch*, *te-tigi*; *tundō*, *I strike*, *tu-tudi*.

In composition the reduplication is in many cases dropped; so always in compounds of *cade-re*, *to fall*; *caede-re*, *to fell*; *cane-re*, *to sing*; *falle-re*, *to deceive*; *parce-re*, *to spare*; *pare-re*, *to bear*; *pende-re*, *to weigh*; *tange-re*, *to touch*; *tende-re*, *to stretch*; *tunde-re*, *to strike*, etc.

*Disc-ere*, *to learn*, always retains the reduplication in compounds, and so *pōsce-re*, *to demand*, and *admordē-re*, *to bite*.

Of compounds of *curre-re*, *to run*, *succurrere* always drops the reduplication, *praecurrere* always retains it; the others vary.



Of compounds of *dare*, *abscondere* usually drops it, but all trisyllabic compounds that change the *a*, and all quadrisyllabic compounds, retain it. Compounds of *sistere*, *to set*, and *stare*, *to stand*, retain it.

REMARK.—A few verbs beginning with vowels form the Perfect by prefixing *e*, which then contracts with the initial vowel : *ago*, *I act*, *ēgi* (= *e-ag-i*) ; *emō*, *I buy*, *ēmi* (= *e-em-i*).

IV. *Perfect in i*. Verbs of the third conjugation, with a short stem-syllable, take *i* in the Perfect, after lengthening the stem-syllable and changing *a* into *ē* : *legō*, *I read*, *lēg-i* ; *videō*, *I see*, *vid-i* ; *fodiō*, *I stab*, *fōd-i* ; *fugīō*, *I flee*, *fūg-i* ; *frangō*, *I break*, *frēg-i*.

V. Denominative verbs in *-uō*, like *acuō*, *I sharpen* ; *metuō*, *I fear* ; also *sternuō*, *I sneeze*, form the Perfect in *-u-i* after the analogy of primary verbs.

### III. THE SUPINE STEM.

135. I. *Supine in -tum, Perfect Passive Participle in -tus* : The stems are formed by the addition of *-tu* or *-to*

(a) To the Present stem. Here belong most verbs of the first and fourth conjugations, and those verbs of the second conjugation that are mentioned in 124 : *amā-tum*, *dēlē-tum*, *audi-tum*.

Those verbs of the second conjugation which form Perfect in *-ui*, form the Supine stem by weakening the thematic vowel *e* to *i*, and adding *-tu*, *-to*, except *cōnsē-re*, *to deem*, *docē-re*, *to teach*, *miscē-re*, *to mix*, *tenē-re*, *to hold*, *torrē-re*, *to scorch*, which omit the thematic vowel, and form *cōnsūm*, *doctum*, *mīxtum*, (*tentum*), *tōstum*.

(b) To the unstrengthened stem. Here belong most verbs of the third conjugation and the five verbs of the second just given, with sporadic forms in the other conjugations : *cap-tum* (*capīō*, *I take*), *rēp-tum* (*rēpō*, *I creep*), *dic-tum* (*dicō*, *I say*), *fac-tum* (*faciō*, *I do*).

In combinations of *-t-* with a dental, assimilation took place, giving usually *ss* after a short vowel and *s* after a long vowel : *scissum* (*scindō*, *I cleave*), *caesum* (*caedō*, *I fell*). On the analogy of this and under the influence often of Perfect in *-si*, we find *-s-* also in some other stems : so *fig-ō*, *I fix*, *fix-um* ; *par-ō*, *I spare*, *par-sum*, etc.

II. *Future Active Participle in -tūrus*.—The same changes occur in the stem as are found in the case of the Supine.

1. In some stems ending in *-u* a thematic vowel *i* is inserted ; as *argutūrus* (*arguere*, *to prove*) ; *abnuītūrus* (*abnuere*, *to deny*) ; *ruitūrus* (*ruere*, *to rush*) ; *fruitūrus* (*frui*, *to enjoy*).

2. Some Future Participles are found without corresponding Perfect, as : *calitūrus* (*calēre*, *to be warm*) ; *dolitūrus* (*dolēre*, *to grieve*).

3. Irregular are : *agnōtūrus*, *agnitūrus* (*agnōscere*, to know well); *discitūrus* (*discere*, to learn); *haustūrus*, *haustūrus* (*haurire*, to drain); *nitūrus* (*nitī*, to lean); *moritūrus* (*mori*, to die); *nōscitūrus* (*nōscere*, to know); *oritūrus* (*oriri*, to arise); *paritūrus* (*parere*, to bear).

### Change of Conjugation.

136. A change of Conjugation occurs in verbs which show a long thematic vowel in the Present stem, but not in the Perfect stem, or the reverse.

1. Verbs with Perfect and Supine formed regularly, according to the third conjugation, have the Present stem formed according to one of the other three :

<i>auge-ō</i> ,	<i>augē-re</i> ,	<i>aux-i</i> ,	<i>auc-tum</i> ,	<i>to increase.</i>
<i>senti-ō</i> ,	<i>senti-re</i> ,	<i>sēn-ai</i> ,	<i>sēn-sum</i> ,	<i>to feel.</i>
<i>saepi-ō</i> ,	<i>saepi-re</i> ,	<i>saep-ai</i> ,	<i>saep-tum</i> ,	<i>to hedge about.</i>
<i>veni-ō</i> ,	<i>veni-re</i> ,	<i>vēn-i</i> ,	<i>ven-tum</i> ,	<i>to come.</i>
<i>vide-ō</i> ,	<i>vidē-re</i> ,	<i>vid-i</i> ,	<i>vi-sum</i> ,	<i>to see.</i>
<i>vinci-ō</i> ,	<i>vinci-re</i> ,	<i>vinx-i</i> ,	<i>vine-tum</i> ,	<i>to bind.</i>

2. Verbs with Perfect and Supine formed according to the first, second, or fourth conjugations, have the Present stem formed according to the third, in consequence of strengthening :

<i>ster-n-ō</i> ,	<i>ster-ne-re</i> ,	<i>strā-vi</i> ,	<i>strā-tum</i> ,	<i>to strew.</i>
<i>crē-sc-ō</i> ,	<i>crē-sce-re</i> ,	<i>crē-vi</i> ,	<i>crē-tum</i> ,	<i>to grow.</i>
<i>li-n-ō</i> ,	<i>li-ne-re</i> ,	<i>lā-vi</i> (II-vi),	<i>li-tum</i> ,	<i>to smear.</i>

3. Verbs with the Present formed regularly according to the third conjugation, have the Perfect and Supine formed according to (a) the second, or (b) the fourth conjugation :

<i>accumb-ō</i> ,	<i>accumbe-re</i> ,	<i>accub-ui</i> ,	<i>accubi-tum</i> ,	<i>to recline.</i>
<i>gign-ō</i> ,	<i>gigne-re</i> ,	<i>gen-ui</i> ,	<i>geni-tum</i> ,	<i>to beget.</i>
<i>arcess-ō</i> ,	<i>arcesse-re</i> ,	<i>arcessi-vi</i> ,	<i>arcessi-tum</i> ,	<i>to summon.</i>
<i>cupi-ō</i> ,	<i>cupe-re</i> ,	<i>cupi-vi</i> ,	<i>cupi-tum</i> ,	<i>to desire.</i>

4. Stems vary among the first, second, and fourth conjugations.:

<i>crep-ō</i> , I.	<i>crepā-re</i> , III.	<i>crep-ui</i> , II.	<i>crepi-tum</i> , II.	<i>to crackle.</i>
<i>aperi-ō</i> , IV.	<i>aperi-re</i> ,	<i>aper-ui</i> , II.	<i>aper-tum</i> ,	<i>to uncover.</i>
<i>ciē-ō</i> , II.	<i>ciē-re</i> ,	<i>ci-vi</i> , IV.	<i>ci-tum</i> ,	<i>to stir up.</i>

5. *dare*, to give, and *stāre*, to stand, pass over to the third conjugation in the Perfect, in consequence of reduplication.

<i>d-ō</i> ,	<i>da-re</i> ,	<i>ded-i</i> ,	<i>da-tum</i> ,	<i>to give.</i>
<i>st-ō</i> ,	<i>stā-re</i> ,	<i>stet-i</i> ,	<i>(stā-tūr-us)</i> ,	<i>to stand.</i>

## LIST OF THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS.

## First Conjugation.

TYPE : am-ō, amā-re, amā-vi, amā-tum.

137.

Perfect : -ui; Supine : -(i)tum.

crep-ō,	crepā-re,	crep-ui,	crepi-tum,	to rattle.
cub-ō,	cubā-re,	cub-ui,	cubi-tum,	to lie.
dom-ō,	domā-re,	dom-ui,	domi-tum,	to tame.
frie-ō,	frieā-re,	frie-ui,	frie-tum (-ā-tum),	to rub.
mic-ō,	micā-re,	mic-ui,	—	to quiver, flash.

But *di-micā-re*, to *fight (out)*, is usually regular.

nec-ō,	necā-re,	necā-vi (nec-ui rare),	necā-tum,	to kill.
-plic-ō,	-plicā-re,	-(plicā-vi),	-plic-tum,	to fold.
sec-ō,	secā-re,	sec-ui,	sec-tum,	to cut.
son-ō,	sonā-re,	son-ui,	soni-tum,	to sound.

But regularly *sonātūrus*.

ton-ō,	tonā-re,	ton-ui,	—	to thunder.
vet-ō,	vetā-re,	vet-ui,	veti-tum,	to forbid.

138. Perfect : -i with reduplication; Supine : -sum, -tum.

i. d-ō,	da-re,	ded-i,	da-tum,	to give, put, do.
---------	--------	--------	---------	-------------------

Everywhere *ā*, except in *dās*, thou *givest*, and *dā*, *give thou*.

1. Like *dō*, are conjugated the compounds with dissyllabic words, such as : *circum-dō*, I surround; *satis-dō*, I give bail; *pessum-dō*, I ruin; *vānum-dō*, I sell; thus :

*circum-d-ō*, *circum-da-re*, *circum-de-di*, *circum-da-tum*, to surround.

2. The compounds of *da-re* with monosyllabic words pass over wholly into the Third Conjugation.

ab-d-ō,	ab-de-re,	ab-did-i,	ab-di-tum,	to put away.
ad-d-ō,	ad-de-re,	ad-did-i,	ad-di-tum,	to put to.
con-d-ō,	con-de-re,	con-did-i,	con-di-tum,	to put up (found).
abs-con-dō,	-con-de-re,	-con-d-i,	-con-di-tum,	to put far away.
crē-d-ō,	crē-de-re,	crē-did-i,	crē-di-tum,	to put faith.
dē-d-ō,	dē-de-re,	dē-did-i,	dē-di-tum,	to give up.
ē-d-ō,	ē-de-re,	ē-did-i,	ē-di-tum,	to put out.
in-d-ō,	in-de-re,	in-did-i,	in-di-tum,	to put in.
per-d-ō,	per-de-re,	per-did-i,	per-di-tum,	to fordo (ruin).
prō-d-ō,	prō-de-re,	prō-did-i,	prō-di-tum,	to betray.
red-d-ō,	red-de-re,	red-did-i,	red-di-tum,	to give back.
trā-d-ō,	trā-de-re,	trā-did-i,	trā-di-tum,	to give over.
vēn-d-ō,	vēn-de-re,	vēn-did-i,	vēn-di-tum,	to put up to sale.

2. **st-ō,**      **stā-re,**      **stet-I, (stā-tū-rus),** *to stand.*

So the compounds :

<b>ad-st-ō,</b>	<b>ad-stā-re,</b>	<b>ad-stit-I,</b>	—	<i>to stand by.</i>
<b>cōn-st-ō,</b>	<b>cōn-stā-re,</b>	<b>cōn-stit-I,</b>	—	<i>to stand fast.</i>
<b>in-st-ō,</b>	<b>in-stā-re,</b>	<b>in-stit-I,</b>	—	<i>to stand upon.</i>
<b>ob-st-ō,</b>	<b>ob-stā-re,</b>	<b>ob-stit-I,</b>	—	<i>to stand out against.</i>
<b>per-st-ō,</b>	<b>per-stā-re,</b>	<b>per-stit-I,</b>	—	<i>to stand firm.</i>
<b>prae-st-ō,</b>	<b>prae-stā-re,</b>	<b>prae-stit-I,</b>	—	<i>to stand ahead.</i>
<b>re-st-ō,</b>	<b>re-stā-re,</b>	<b>re-stit-I,</b>	—	<i>to stand over.</i>
<b>di-st-ō,</b>	<b>di-stā-re,</b>	—	—	<i>to stand apart.</i>
<b>ex-st-ō,</b>	<b>ex-stā-re,</b>	—	—	<i>to stand out.</i>

All compounds of **stāre** with dissyllabic prepositions, have, however, **-steti** in the Perfect, as : **ante-stō, I am superior** ; **inter-stō, I am between** ; **super-stō, I stand upon** ; thus :

**circum-st-ō, circum-stā-re, circum-stet-I,**      —      *to stand round.*

### 139.      Perfect: -I; Supine: -tum, -sum.

<b>iu-v-ō,</b>	<b>iu-vā-re,</b>	<b>iū-v-I,</b>	<b>iū-tum (iuvātūrus),</b>	<i>to help.</i>
<b>ad-iuv-ō,</b>	<b>-iuvā-re,</b>	<b>-iū-v-I,</b>	<b>-iū-tum (-iū-tūrus),</b>	<i>to stand by as aid.</i>
<b>(lav-ō),</b>	<b>(lav-ere),</b>	<b>lāv-I,</b>	<b>lau-tum (lō-tum),</b>	<i>to wash.</i>
<b>lav-ō,</b>	<b>lavā-re,</b>	<b>(lavā-vī),</b>	<b>lavā-tum,</b>	<i>to wash.</i>

## Second Conjugation.

TYPES : **dōle-ō,**      **dōlē-re,**      **dōlē-vī,**      **dōlē-tum,** see 124.  
                  **mone-ō,**      **monē-re,**      **monu-I,**      **moni-tum.**

### 140. Irregular and defective :

**ciē-ō (ci-ō),**      **ciē-re (ci-re),**      **ci-vī,**      **ci-tum (ci-tum),**      *to stir up.*

In the compounds we find the Participles **conditus** or **concutus**, **percitus**, **excitus** or **excitus**, but **accitus**.

**sorbe-ō,**      **sorbē-re,**      **sorb-uī,**      —      *to sup up.*

### 141.      Perfect: -si; Supine: -tum, -sum.

<b>iube-ō,</b>	<b>iubē-re,</b>	<b>iūs-sī,</b>	<b>iūs-sum,</b>	<i>to order.</i>
<b>ārde-ō,</b>	<b>ārdē-re,</b>	<b>ār-sī,</b>	<b>ār-sum,</b>	<i>to be on fire.</i>
<b>ride-ō,</b>	<b>ridē-re,</b>	<b>ri-sī,</b>	<b>ri-sum,</b>	<i>to laugh (at).</i>
<b>haere-ō,</b>	<b>haerē-re,</b>	<b>hae-sī,</b>	<b>(hae-sum),</b>	<i>to stick (to).</i>
<b>mane-ō,</b>	<b>manē-re,</b>	<b>mān-sī,</b>	<b>mān-sum,</b>	<i>to remain.</i>
<b>suāde-ō,</b>	<b>suādē-re,</b>	<b>suā-sī,</b>	<b>suā-sum,</b>	<i>to counsel.</i>

With dental dropped before ending of Pl. and Supine.

auge-ō,	augē-re,	auxī,	auc-tum,	<i>to cause to wax.</i>
frige-ō,	frigē-re,	(frīxī),	—	<i>to be chilled.</i>
lūce-ō,	lūcē-re,	lūxī,	—	<i>to give light.</i>
lūge-ō,	lūgē-re,	lūxī,	—	<i>to be in mourning.</i>
alge-ō,	algē-re,	al-sī,	—	<i>to freeze.</i>
fulge-ō,	fulgē-re,	ful-sī,	—	<i>to glow.</i>
indulge-ō,	indulgē-re,	indul-sī,	(indul-tum),	<i>to give way.</i>
mulce-ō,	muleē-re,	mul-sī,	mul-sum,	<i>to stroke.</i>
mulge-ō,	mulgē-re,	mul-sī,	mul-sum(otum),	<i>to milk.</i>
terge-ō,	tergē-re,	ter-sī,	ter-sum,	<i>to wipe.</i>
torque-ō,	torquē-re,	tor-sī,	tor-tum,	<i>to twist.</i>
turge-ō,	turgē-re,	tur-sī,	—	<i>to swell.</i>
urge-ō,	urgē-re,	ur-sī,	—	<i>to press.</i>

142. Perfect: -I with reduplication; Supine: -sum.

morde-ō,	mordē-re,	mo-mord-I,	mor-sum,	<i>to bite.</i>
pende-ō,	pendē-re,	pe-pond-I,	—	<i>to hang (intr.).</i>
spende-ō,	spendē-re,	spo-pond-I,	spōn-sum,	<i>to pledge oneself.</i>
Compounds omit the reduplication.				
tonde-ō,	tondē-re,	to-tond-I,	tōn-sum,	<i>to shear.</i>

143. Perfect: -I; Supine: -tum, -sum.

cave-ō,	cavē-re,	cāv-I,	cau-tum,	<i>to take heed.</i>
fave-ō,	favē-re,	fāv-I,	faū-tum,	<i>to be well-disposed.</i>
ferve-ō(ferv-ō),	fervē-re(ere),	ferv-I(ferb-ū),	—	<i>to seethe.</i>
fove-ō,	fovē-re,	fōv-I,	fō-tum,	<i>to keep warm.</i>
move-ō,	movē-re,	mōv-I,	mō-tum,	<i>to move.</i>
pave-ō,	pavē-re,	pāv-I,	—	<i>to quake (with fear).</i>
prande-ō,	prandē-re,	prand-I,	prān-sum,	<i>to breakfast.</i>
sede-ō,	sedē-re,	sēd-I,	ses-sum,	<i>to sit.</i>
stride-ō(-dō),	stridē-re(-e-re),	strid-I,	—	<i>to whistle, screech.</i>
vove-ō,	vovē-re,	vōv-I,	vō-tum,	<i>to vow.</i>
The Present forms of the third conjugation also occur in the Augustan poets.				
vide-ō,	vidē-re,	vid-I,	vi-sum,	<i>to see.</i>

### Third Conjugation.

FIRST TYPE: Perfect: -sī; Supine: -tum, -sum.

144. The Stem class:

carp-ō,	carpe-re,	carp-sī,	carp-tum,	<i>to pluck.</i>
dē-cerp-ō,	-cerpe-re,	-cerp-sī,	-cerp-tum,	<i>to pluck off.</i>
nūb-ō,	nūbe-re,	nūp-sī,	nūp-tum,	<i>to put on a veil</i> <i>(as a bride).</i>
rēp-ō,	rēpe-re,	rēp-sī,	rēp-tum,	<i>to creep.</i>

scalp-ō,	scalpe-re,	scalp-si,	scalp-tum,	to scrape.
scrib-ō,	scribe-re,	scrip-si,	scrip-tum,	to write.
sculp-ō,	sculpe-re,	sculp-si,	sculp-tum,	to chisel.
serp-ō,	serpe-re,	serp-si,	serp-tum,	to creep.
prem-ō (-primō),	preme-re,	pres-si,	pres-sum,	to press.

Some compounds of *emo*, *I take, buy*, have Pf. in *-si*, Sup. in *-tum*, before which a euphonic *p* develops :

oōm-ō,	oōme-re,	oōm-p-si,	oōm-p-tum,	to adorn.
dēm-ō,	dēme-re,	dēm-p-si,	dēm-p-tum,	to take away.
prēm-ō,	prōme-re,	prēm-p-si,	prēm-p-tum,	to take out.
sūm-ō,	sūme-re,	sūm-p-si,	sūm-p-tum,	to take.

On *contemn-ō* see 146, c.

dic-ō,	dice-re,	dixi (dic-si),	dic-tum,	to say.
--------	----------	----------------	----------	---------

Impv. *dic*, see 130, 1.

dūc-ō,	dūce-re,	dūxi,	duc-tum,	to lead.
--------	----------	-------	----------	----------

Imperative *dūc*, see 130, 1.

fig-ō,	fige-re,	fixi,	fixum,	to fasten.
-fig-ō (con-, af-, in-),	-fige-re,	-fixi,	-fio-tum,	to strike.
merg-ō,	merge-re,	mer-si,	mer-sum,	to plunge.
sparg-ō,	sparge-re,	spar-si,	spar-sum,	to strew.
oōn-sperg-ō,	-sperge-re,	-sper-si,	-sper-sum,	to besprinkle.
coqu-ō,	coque-re,	coxi,	coc-tum,	to cook.
[-lig-ō (leg-),	-lige-re,	-lēxi,	-lēc-tum.]	
di-lig-ō,	di-lige-re,	di-lēxi,	di-lēc-tum,	to love.
intel-legō (ligō),	intel-lege-re,	intel-lēxi,	intel-lēc-tum,	to understand.
neg-leg-ō (ligō),	neg-lege-re,	neg-lēxi,	neg-lēc-tum,	to neglect.

Other compounds have *lēgī* in the Perfect.

regō,	rege-re,	rēxi,	rēc-tum,	to keep right.
di-rig-ō,	di-rige-re,	di-rēxi,	di-rēc-tum,	to guide.
per-g-ō,	per-ge-re,	per-rēxi,	per-rēctum,	to go on.
sur-g-ō,	sur-rge-re,	sur-rēxi,	sur-rēc-tum,	to rise up.
teg-ō,	tege-re,	tēxi,	tēc-tum,	to cover.
claud-ō,	clau-de-re,	clau-si,	clau-sum,	to shut.
con-, ex-clūd-ō,	-clūde-re,	-clū-si,	-clū-sum,	to shut up, out.
laed-ō,	laede-re,	lae-si,	lae-sum,	to harm.
col-lid-ō,	-lide-re,	-li-si,	-li-sum,	to strike together.
lūd-ō,	lūde-re,	lū-si,	lū-sum,	to play.
plaud-ō (ap-plaud-ō),	plau-de-re,	plau-si,	plau-sum,	to clap.
ex-plōd-ō,	-plōde-re,	-plō-si,	-plō-sum,	to hoot off.
rād-ō,	rāde-re,	rā-si,	rā-sum,	to scratch.
trūd-ō,	trūde-re,	trū-si,	trū-sum,	to push.
vād-ō (in-, ē-),	-vāde-re,	-vā-si,	-vā-sum,	to go.
cōd-ō,	cōde-re,	cōs-si,	cōs-sum,	to give way.
quati-ō,	quate-re,	(quas-si),	quas-sum,	to shake.
con-cutiō (per-, ex-),	con-cute-re,	con-cus-si,	con-cus-sum,	to shatter.

mitt-ō,	mitte-re,	mi-si,	mis-sum,	to send.
di-vid-ō,	di-vide-re,	di-vi-si,	di-vi-sum,	to part.
ūr-ō,	ūr-re,	ūs-si,	ūs-tum,	to burn.
com-būr-ō,	com-būre-re,	com-būs-si	com-būs-tum,	to burn up.
ger-ō,	gere-re,	ges-si,	ges-tum,	to carry.
flu-ō (fluv-),	flue-re,	fluxi,	(flux-us),	to flow.
stru-ō (strugv-),	strue-re,	strūxi	strūc-tum,	to build.
trah-o (tragh-),	trahe-re,	trāxi,	trāc-tum,	to drag.
veh-ō (vegh-),	vehe-re,	vexi,	vec-tum,	to carry.
viv-ō (vigv-),	vive-re,	vixi,	vic-tum,	to live.

## 145. The T-class :

flect-ō,	flecte-re,	flexi,	flexum,	to bend.
nect-ō,	necte-re,	nexi (-nexui),	nexum,	to knot.
pect-ō,	pecte-re,	plexi,	pexum,	to comb.
plect-ō,	plecte-re,	(plexi),	plexum,	to plait.

## 146. The Nasal class :

## (a) Supine without N :

fig-ō,	fige-re,	finxi,	fic-tum,	to form.
ping-ō,	pinge-re,	pinxi,	pic-tum,	to paint.
string-ō,	stringe-re,	strinxi,	stric-tum,	to draw tight.

## (b) Supine with N :

ang-ō,	ange-re,	anxi,	—	to throttle, vex.
cing-ō,	cinge-re,	cinxi,	cinc-tum,	to gird.
iung-ō,	iunge-re,	iūnxi,	iūnc-tum,	to yoke, join.
pang-ō,	pange-re,	panxi,	panc-tum,	to drive in.

Perfect also pēgi, and Supine pāctum. Compare 150 and paciscor, 165.

plang-ō,	plange-re,	planxi,	planc-tum,	to smite.
-stingu-ō,	-stingue-re,	-stinxi,	-stinc-tum,	to put out.

So the compounds ex-, dis-, re-.

ting-ō (tingu-ō),	ting(u)-re,	tinxi,	tinc-tum,	to wet, dye.
ung-ō (angu-ō),	ung(u)-re,	ūnxi,	ūnc-tum,	to anoint.

## (c) tem-n-ō (rare) and its compounds form the Pf. with a euphonic p :

con-tem-n-ō,	-temne-re,	-tem-p-si,	-tem-p-tum,	to despise.
--------------	------------	------------	-------------	-------------

## 147. The I-class :

[-lici-ō (LAC),	-lice-re,	-lexi,	-lec-tum],	to lure.
pel-lici-ō,	pel-lice-re,	pel-lexi,	pel-lec-tum,	to allure.

So allicere, illicere. But ē-licere has -ui regularly in classical times.

[-spici-ō (SPEC),	-spice-re,	-spexi,	-spec-tum],	to peer.
per-spici-ō,	per-spice-re,	per-spexi,	per-spec-tum,	to see through.

So the compounds with ad-, con-, dē-, in-.

SECOND TYPE—Perfect: -I with reduplication; Supine: -sum, -tum.

### 148. Stem class:

Reduplication lost in the compounds:

cad-ō,	cade-re,	ce-cid-I,	cā-sum,	to fall.
oc-cid-ō,	oc-cide-re,	oc-cid-I,	oc-cā-sum,	to perish.
re-cidere sometimes forms <i>reccidi</i> , as well as <i>recidi</i> , in the Perfect.				

caed-ō,	caede-re,	ce-cid-I,	cae-sum,	to fell.
oc-cid-ō,	oc-cide-re,	oc-cid-I,	oc-ci-sum,	to kill.

can-ō,	cane-re,	ce-cin-I,	(can-tum),	to sing.
Compounds form the Pf. in -ui. For (cantum), <i>cantatum</i> was used.				

curr-ō,	curre-re,	cu-curr-I,	cur-sum,	to run.
The compounds vary in their use of the reduplication; see 134, III.				

pare-ō	parce-re,	pe-pero-I (pars-I),	(par-sūrus),	to spare.
com-paraō (-peroō),	com-parce-re,	com-par-si,	com-par-sum,	to save.

### 149. Reduplicated class:

1. *sistō* (= *si-stō*), as a simple verb, has the transitive meaning, *I (cause to) stand*, but in its compounds, the intransitive meaning, *I stand*. Compare *stō*, *I stand*, and its compounds (138):

sist-ō,	siste-re,	(stit-I),	sta-tum,	to (cause to) stand.
---------	-----------	-----------	----------	----------------------

So the compounds:

cōn-sist-ō,	cōn-siste-re,	cōn-stit-I,	cōn-sti-tum,	to come to a stand.
dē-sist-ō (ab-),	dē-siste-re,	dē-stit-I,	dē-sti-tum,	to stand off.
ex-sist-ō,	ex-siste-re,	ex-stit-I,	ex-sti-tum,	to stand up.
ob-sist-ō,	ob-siste-re,	ob-stit-I,	ob-sti-tum,	to take a stand against.
re-sist-ō,	re-siste-re,	re-stit-I,	re-sti-tum,	to withstand.
ad-sist-ō,	ad-siste-re,	ad-stit-I,	—	to stand near.
in-sist-ō,	in-siste-re,	in-stit-I,	—	to stand upon.
circum-sist-ō,	circum-siste-re,	circum-stet-I,	—	to take a stand round.

2. bi-bō,	bi-be-re,	bi-bi,	(bi-bi-tus),	to drink.
No Supine. The Pf. Part. is late.				

### 150. Nasal class:

fall-ō,	falle-re,	fe-fell-I,	fal-sum,	to cheat.
The compound <i>refellō</i> has the Perfect <i>refelli</i> , and lacks Supine.				

pell-ō,	pelle-re,	pe-pul-I,	pul-sum,	to push, drive back.
<i>repellō</i> loses the reduplicating vowel in Pf. <i>reppuli</i> .				

toll-ō,	tolle-re,	—	—	to lift up.
Pf. and Sup. are formed <i>sus-tuli</i> and <i>sub-lātum</i> .				



(pang-ō), (pange-re), pe-pig-I, pāo-tum, to drive a bargain.

The Fr. forms are supplied by *paciscor*, 165. The Pf. *pāgi*, rare in the simple form, is regular in the compounds *com-*, *im-*, *op-*. See 146, b.

tang-ō (TAG), tange-re, te-tig-I, tāo-tum, to touch.  
at-ting-ō, -tinge-re, -tig-I, -tāo-tum, to border upon.

So with other compounds.

pend-ō, pende-re, pe-pend-I, pēn-sum, to hang (trans.).  
tend-ō, tende-re, te-tend-I, tēn-sum and -tum, to stretch.  
ex-tend-ō, -tende-re, -tend-I, -tēn-sum and -tum, to stretch out.  
oe-tend-ō, -tende-re, -tend-I, -tēn-sum (-tus), to stretch at, show.

The compounds prefer the Sup. in -tum; so always *attentus*, *contentus*, usually *distentus* and *intentus*.

pung-ō, punge-re, pu-pug-I, punc-tum, to prick.  
inter-pungō, -punge-re, -punxi, -punc-tum, to place points between.

tund-ō, tunde-re, tu-tud-I, tūn-sum, tū-sum, to thump.

Simple form has usually *tūnus* in the Participle; in the compounds more often *tūsus*. The reduplicating vowel is lost in *rettudi*.

### 151. Inchoative class:

discō (= di-d(e)cō), discē-re, di-dic-I, —, to learn.

A late form is Fut. Part. *discitūrus*. Compounds retain reduplication. See 134, III.

pōscō (= porcō), pōscē-re, po-pōsc-I, —, to claim.

Compounds retain the reduplication. See 134, III.

### 152. The I-class:

pari-ō, pare-re, pe-per-I, par-tum (paritūrus), to bring forth.

The compounds drop the reduplication and form the Inf. in -ire. But *reperire*, to find, forms its Pf., *repperi*, with omission of the vowel of reduplication.

## THIRD TYPE—Perfect: -I; Supine: -tum, -sum.

### 153. The Stem class:

With long vowel in the Perfect.

ag-ō, age-re, āg-I, āo-tum, to do, drive.  
cō-g-ō, cō-ge-re, cō-āg-I, cō-āo-tum, to compel.  
dē-g-ō, dē-ge-re, —, —, to pass (time).  
red-ig-ō, red-ige-re, red-āg-I, red-āo-tum, to bring back.

em-ō, eme-re, ēm-I, ēmp-tum, to take, to buy.  
inter-im-ō, -ime-re, -ēm-I, -ēmp-tum, to make away with.  
co-em-ō, I buy up, is conjugated like *em-ō*. But the compounds with *ad-*, *ex-*, *inter-*, *red-*, take -im-ō. So, too, *dir-im-ō*, I sever.

ed-ō, ede-re, ēd-I, ē-sum, to eat.  
cūd-ō, cūde-re, (cūd-I), (cū-sum), to hammer.  
leg-ō, lege-re, lēg-I, lēo-tum, to pick up, read.  
col-lig-ō, -lige-re, -lēg-I, -lēo-tum, to gather.

So the other compounds, except *di-lig-ō*, *intel-leg-ō*, *neg-leg-ō*, see 144.

ic-ō (defective), ice-re, ic-I, ic-tum, to strike.

<b>sīd-ō,</b>	<b>sīde-re,</b>	<b>sīd-i,</b>	—	<i>to sit down.</i>
The Pf. was originally reduplicated as the Present; see 133, II. In composition the Pf. is <b>-sēdī, -sēssum,</b> from <b>sede-ō,</b> thus:				
<b>cōn-sīd-ō,</b>	<b>cōn-sīde-re,</b>	<b>cōn-sēd-i,</b>	<b>cōn-sēssum,</b>	<i>to settle down.</i>
<b>scab-ō,</b>	<b>scabe-re,</b>	<b>scāb-i,</b>	—	<i>to scratch.</i>
<b>solv-ō,</b>	<b>solve-re,</b>	<b>solv-i,</b>	<b>sōlū-tum,</b>	<i>to loose, pay.</i>
<b>vert-ō,</b>	<b>verte-re,</b>	<b>vert-i,</b>	<b>ver-sum,</b>	<i>to turn.</i>
<b>re-vert-or,</b>	<b>re-vert-i,</b>	<b>re-vert-i (active),</b>	<b>re-ver-sum,</b>	<i>to turn back.</i>
<b>verr-ō,</b>	<b>verre-re,</b>	<b>verr-i (rare),</b>	<b>ver-sum,</b>	<i>to sweep.</i>
<b>vis-ō,</b>	<b>vis-e-re,</b>	<b>vis-i,</b>	—	<i>to visit.</i>
<b>volv-ō,</b>	<b>volve-re,</b>	<b>volv-i,</b>	<b>vōlū-tum,</b>	<i>to roll.</i>
On <b>percellō,</b> <b>perculi,</b> see 158, c. On <b>tollō,</b> <b>sustulī,</b> see 150.				

154. *The Nasal class:*

<b>psall-ō,</b>	<b>psalle-re,</b>	<b>psall-i,</b>	—	<i>to play on the cithern.</i>
<b>vell-ō,</b>	<b>velle-re,</b>	<b>vell-i (vul-sī),</b>	<b>vul-sum,</b>	<i>to pluck.</i>
<b>lamb-ō,</b>	<b>lambe-re,</b>	<b>lamb-i,</b>	—	<i>to lick.</i>
<b>rump-ō,</b>	<b>rumpe-re,</b>	<b>rūp-i,</b>	<b>rup-tum,</b>	<i>to break.</i>
<b>ac-cend-ō,</b>	<b>ac-cende-re,</b>	<b>ac-cend-i,</b>	<b>ac-cēn-sum,</b>	<i>to kindle.</i>
<b>dē-fend-ō,</b>	<b>dē-fende-re,</b>	<b>dē-fend-i,</b>	<b>dē-fēn-sum,</b>	<i>to strike away, defend.</i>
<b>fund-ō (FUD),</b>	<b>funde-re,</b>	<b>fūd-i,</b>	<b>fū-sum,</b>	<i>to pour.</i>
<b>mand-ō,</b>	<b>mande-re,</b>	<b>mand-i,</b>	<b>mān-sum,</b>	<i>to chew.</i>
<b>pand-ō,</b>	<b>pande-re,</b>	<b>pand-i,</b>	<b>pas-sum,</b>	<i>to spread out.</i>
<b>prehend-ō,</b>	<b>prehende-re,</b>	<b>prehend-i,</b>	<b>prehēn-sum,</b>	<i>to seize.</i>
Often shortened to <b>prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsum.</b>				

<b>scand-ō,</b>	<b>scande-re,</b>	<b>scand-i,</b>	<b>scān-sum,</b>	<i>to climb.</i>
<b>sc(d)-, dē-scend-ō,</b>	<b>-scende-re,</b>	<b>-scend-i,</b>	<b>-scēn-sum,</b>	<i>to climb up, down.</i>
<b>frang-ō,</b>	<b>frange-re,</b>	<b>frēg-i,</b>	<b>frāc-tum,</b>	<i>to break.</i>
<b>per-fring-ō,</b>	<b>-fringe-re,</b>	<b>-frēg-i,</b>	<b>-frāc-tum,</b>	<i>to shiver.</i>
<b>linqu-ō,</b>	<b>linque-re,</b>	<b>liqu-i,</b>	—	<i>to leave.</i>
<b>re-liqu-ō,</b>	<b>-linque-re,</b>	<b>-liqu-i,</b>	<b>-lic-tum,</b>	<i>to leave behind.</i>
<b>(pang-ō),</b>	<b>(pange-re),</b>	<b>(pēg-i),</b>	<b>(pāc-tum),</b>	<i>to drive in.</i>
<b>com-ping-ō,</b>	<b>-pinge-re,</b>	<b>-pēg-i,</b>	<b>-pāc-tum,</b>	<i>to drive tight.</i>
See 146, b, 150.				
<b>vinc-ō (VIC),</b>	<b>vince-rē,</b>	<b>vic-i,</b>	<b>vic-tum,</b>	<i>to conquer.</i>

155. *The I-class.*

(a) With long vowel in the Perfect.

<b>capī-ō (cap-),</b>	<b>cape-re,</b>	<b>cēp-i,</b>	<b>cap-tum,</b>	<i>to take.</i>
<b>ac-cipī-ō,</b>	<b>ac-cipe-re,</b>	<b>ac-cēp-i,</b>	<b>ac-cep-tum,</b>	<i>to receive.</i>
<b>faci-ō,</b>	<b>face-re,</b>	<b>fēc-i,</b>	<b>fac-tum,</b>	<i>to make.</i>
<b>cale-faci-ō (calf.),</b>	<b>cale-face-re,</b>	<b>cale-fēc-i,</b>	<b>cale-fac-tum,</b>	<i>to make warm.</i>
<b>per-fici-ō,</b>	<b>per-fice-re,</b>	<b>per-fēc-i,</b>	<b>per-fec-tum,</b>	<i>to achieve.</i>

On Impv. **fac,** see 130, 1.

fodi-ō,	fode-re,	fōd-i,	fos-sum,	to dig.
fugi-ō,	fuge-re,	fūg-i,	(fug-i-tūrus),	to flee.
iaci-ō,	iace-re,	iēc-i,	iac-tum,	to cast.
con-ici-ō,	-ice-re,	-iēc-i,	-ieo-tum,	to gather.

(b) With short vowel in the Pf. due to the loss of the reduplication :

find-ō,	finde-re,	fīd-i,	fīs-sum,	to cleave.
scind-ō,	scinde-re,	scīd-i,	scīs-sum,	to split.

156. A number of verbs of the *third* conjugation have a characteristic -u-; these form the perfect in -i.

ab-lu-ō,	ab-lue-re,	ab-lu-i,	ab-lū-tum,	to wash off.
ab-nu-ō,	ab-nue-re,	ab-nu-i,	(ab-nu-itūrus),	to dissent.
acu-ō,	acue-re,	acu-i,	acū-tum,	to sharpen.
ad-nu-ō (an-nu-ō),	ad-nue-re,	ad-nu-i,	—	to nod assent.
argu-ō,	argue-re,	argu-i,	argū-tum,	to accuse.
batu-ō,	batue-re,	batu-i,	—	to beat.
con-gru-ō,	con-grue-re,	con-gru-i,	—	to agree.
dē-libu-ō,	dē-libue-re,	dē-libu-i,	dē-libū-tum,	to anoint.
ex-u-ō,	ex-ue-re,	ex-u-i,	ex-ū-tum,	to put off, doff.
im-bu-ō,	im-bue-re,	im-bu-i,	im-bū-tum,	to dip, dye.
in-du-ō,	in-due-re,	in-du-i,	in-dū-tum,	to put on, don.
lu-ō,	lue-re,	lu-i,	lu-itūrus,	to atone for.
metu-ō,	metue-re,	metu-i,	—	to fear.
minu-ō,	minue-re,	minu-i,	minū-tum,	to lessen.
plu-ō,	plue-re,	plu-it, plūv-it,	—	to rain.
ru-ō,	rue-re,	ru-i,	ru-tum (ruitūrus),	to rush down.
spu-ō,	spue-re,	spu-i,	spū-tum,	to spew.
statu-ō,	statue-re,	statu-i,	statū-tum,	to settle.
sternu-ō,	sternue-re,	sternu-i,	—	to sneeze.
su-ō,	sue-re,	su-i,	sū-tum,	to sew.
tribu-ō,	tribue-re,	tribu-i,	tribū-tum,	to allot.

### Mixed Conjugation.

Perfect : -vi; Supine : -tum.

157. (a) Stem class :

arcess-ō,	arcesse-re,	arcessi-vi,	arcessi-tum,	to send for.
in-cess-ō,	in-cesse-re,	in-cessi-vi (cessi),	—	to attack.
So facess-ō, I cause, make off.				
pet-ō,	pete-re,	peti-vi,	peti-tum,	to seek (Ay at).
quaer-ō,	quaere-re,	quaesi-vi,	quaesi-tum,	to seek.
con-quir-ō,	-quīre-re,	-quisi-vi,	-quisi-tum,	to hunt up.
So other compounds of -quirō (quaerō).				

rud-ō,	rude-re,	rudī-vī,	rudī-tum,	to roar.
ter-ō,	tere-re,	trī-vī,	trī-tum,	to rub.

## (b) Reduplicated class :

sar-ō,	sare-re,	sā-vī,	sa-tum,	to sow.
So cōnsērō, but with Sup. cōn-situm.				

## (c) Nasal class :

li-n-ō,	li-ne-re,	lī-vī,	li-tum,	to besmear.
si-n-ō,	si-ne-re,	sī-vī,	si-tum,	to let.
pō-n-ō(=posinō),	pō-ne-re,	po-s-ū,	po-si-tum,	to put.
cer-n-ō,	cer-ne-re,	crē-vī,	(crē-tum),	to separate.
sper-n-ō,	sper-ne-re,	sprē-vī,	sprē-tum,	to despise.
ster-n-ō,	ster-ne-re,	strā-vī,	strā-tum,	to strew.

## (d) Inchoative class :

inveterā-sc-ō,	inveterā-sce-re,	inveterā-vī,	inveterā-tum,	to grow old.
pā-sc-ō,	pā-sce-re,	pā-vī,	pās-tum,	to graze (trans.).
vesperā-sc-ō,	vesperā-sce-re,	vesperā-vī,	—	to become evening.
crē-sc-ō,	crē-sce-re,	crē-vī,	crē-tum,	to grow.
con-cupī-sc-ō,	-cupī-sce-re,	-cupī-vī,	-cupī-tum,	to long for.
ob-dormī-sc-ō,	-dormī-sce-re,	-dormī-vī,	-dormī-tum,	to fall asleep.
So condormīscō, ōdormīscō.				

ex-olē-sc-ō, -olē-sce-re, -olē-vī, -olē-tum, to get one's growth.  
 So ob-solēscō, I grow old. But ab-olēscō, I disappear, has abolitum; co-alēscō, I grow together, co-alitum; ad-olēscō, I grow up, ad-ultum in the Sup.; and inolēscō lacks the Supine.

quī-sc-ō,	quī-sce-re,	quī-vī,	quī-tum,	to rest.
sci-sc-ō,	sci-sce-re,	sci-vī,	sci-tum,	to decree.
su-ā-sc-ō,	suā-sce-re,	suā-vī,	suā-tum,	to accustom one's self.
So compounds as-, con-, dē-, man-.				

(g)nō-sc-ō, nō-sce-re, nō-vī, (nō-tum), to know.  
 So ignōscō, I pardon; but cō-gnōscō, I recognize, and other compounds of nōscō, have Sup. in -itum.

re-sip-ī-sc-ō,	-sipī-sce-re,	-sipī-vī,	—	to come to one's senses.
----------------	---------------	-----------	---	--------------------------

## (e) I-class :

cupī-ō,	cupe-re,	cupī-vī,	cupī-tum,	to desire.
sapi-ō,	sape-re,	sapi-vī (-ui),	—	to have a flavor.

Perfect: -ui; Supine: -(i)tum.

## 158. (a) Stem class :

frem-ō,	freme-re,	frem-ū,	—	to roar, rage.
gem-ō,	geme-re,	gem-ū,	—	to groan.
vom-ō,	vome-re,	vom-ū,	vomi-tum,	to vomit.
al-ō,	ale-re,	al-ū,	al-tum (ali-tum),	to nourish.

col-ō,	cole-re,	col-uf,	cul-tum,	<i>to cultivate.</i>
con-cin-ō,	-cine-re,	-cin-uf,	—	<i>to sing together.</i>
So occinere, praecinere.				
cōn-sul-ō,	cōn-sule-re,	cōn-sul-uf,	cōn-sul-tum,	<i>to consult.</i>
mol-ō,	mole-re,	mol-uf,	moli-tum,	<i>to grind.</i>
occul-ō,	occul-re,	occul-uf,	occul-tum,	<i>to conceal.</i>
pīns-ō,	pīns-re,	pīns-uf,	pīnsi-tum,	<i>to pound.</i>
Sup. also pīnsūm, pistum.				
ser-ō,	sere-re,	—	(ser-tum),	<i>to string (out).</i>
Common in compounds : as, dēserō, dēserere, dēseruf, dēsertum, <i>to desert.</i>				
stert-ō,	sterte-re,	stert-uf,	—	<i>to snore.</i>
strep-ō,	strepe-re,	strep-uf,	(strepī-tum),	<i>to make a din.</i>
tex-ō,	texe-re,	tex-uf,	tex-tum,	<i>to weave.</i>

Irregular are :

met-ō,	mete-re,	mess-uf,	mes-sum,	<i>to mow.</i>
vol-ō,	vel-le,	vol-uf,	—	<i>to wish.</i>
So nōlō, mālō ; see 174.				

(b) Reduplicated class :

gi-gn-ō (GEN-),	gi-gue-re,	gen-uf,	geni-tum,	<i>to beget.</i>
-----------------	------------	---------	-----------	------------------

(c) The Nasal class :

frend-ō,	frende-re,	—	frē-sum, frēs-sum,	<i>to gnash.</i>
Also in the form frende-ō, frendē-re.				

ac-cumb-ō,	-cumbo-re,	-cub-uf,	-cubi-tum,	<i>to lie down.</i>
So also the compounds con-, dis-, in- ; but re-cumbō lacks the Supine.				

ex-cell-ō,	-celle-re,	(cell-uf),	(cel-sus),	<i>to surpass.</i>
But per-cellere, <i>to beat down</i> , has Pf. per-culi, Sup. per-culsum.				

(d) Inchoative class :

dispēsc-ō,	dispēsce-re,	dispēsc-uf,	—	<i>to let loose.</i>
So compēscere, <i>to check.</i>				

A large number of verbs are formed from verbs of the second conjugation, or from substantives or adjectives, and take Pf. in -uf ; as,

co-alēsc-o,	-alēsce-re,	-al-uf,	-ali-tum,	<i>to grow together.</i>
See 157, d.				
ē-vānēsc-ō,	-vānēsce-re,	-vān-uf,	—	<i>to disappear.</i>
con-valēsc-ō,	-valēsce-re,	-val-uf,	-vali-tum,	<i>to get well.</i>
in-gemisc-ō,	-gemisce-re,	-gem-uf,	—	<i>to sigh.</i>
nōtēsc-ō,	nōtēsce-re,	nōt-uf,	—	<i>to become known.</i>
in-calēsc-ō,	-calēsce-re,	-cal-uf,	—	<i>to get warm.</i>

(e) I-class :

rapi-ō,	rape-re,	rap-uf,	rap-tum,	<i>to snatch.</i>
cor-ripiō,	-ripe-re,	-rip-uf,	-rep-tum,	<i>to seize.</i>
So other compounds.				

## Fourth Conjugation.

TYPE : audi-ō, audi-re, audi-vi, audi-tum.

159. Irregular in Supine is :

sepeli-ō,      sepeli-re,      sepeli-vi,      sepul-tum,      to bury.

160.

Perfect : -ui; Supine : -tum.

amici-ō,	amici-re,	amic-ui (ami-xi),	amic-tum,	to clothe.
aperi-ō,	aperi-re,	apor-ui,	apor-tum,	to open.
operi-ō,	operi-re,	oper-ui,	oper-tum,	to cover up.
sali-ō,	sali-re,	sal-ui,	sal-tum,	to loop.

161.

Perfect : -si; Supine : -tum, -sum.

saepi-ō,	saepi-re,	saep-si,	saep-tum,	to hedge in.
sanci-ō,	sanci-re,	sānxi,	sānc-tum,	to hallow.
vinci-ō,	vinci-re,	vinxi,	vinc-tum,	to bind.
farci-ō (-ferci-ō),	farci-re,	far-si,	far-tum,	to stuff.
fulci-ō,	fulci-re,	ful-si,	ful-tum,	to prop.
sarci-ō,	sarci-re,	sar-si,	sar-tum,	to patch.
senti-ō,	senti-re,	sēn-si,	sēn-sum,	to feel.
hauri-ō,	hauri-re,	hau-si,	haus-tum,	to drain.

VERG., A. iv., 383, has *hausturus*.

162.

Perfect : -i; Supine : -tum.

com-peri-ō,	com-peri-re,	com-por-i,	com-per-tum,	to find out.
re-peri-ō,	re-peri-re,	rep-per-i,	re-per-tum,	to find.

See the simple verb *parere*, 153.

veni-ō,	veni-re,	vēn-i,	ven-tum,	to come.
---------	----------	--------	----------	----------

## DEPONENTS.

163. The majority of the deponent verbs belong to the *first* conjugation. In many instances they have parallel active forms in early or in late Latin. A few of the principal verbs are as follows :

In the *first* conjugation.

arbitr-or,	arbitrā-rī,	arbitrā-tus sum,	to think.
comit-or,	comitā-rī,	comitā-tus sum,	to accompany.
cunct-or,	cunctā-rī,	cunctā-tus sum,	to delay.
(for),	fā-rī,	fā-tus sum,	to speak.

See 175, 3.

opin-or,	opinā-ri,	opinā-tus sum,	<i>to think.</i>
tūt-or,	tūtā-ri,	tūtā-tus sum,	<i>to protect.</i>
vag-or,	vagā-ri,	vagā-tus sum,	<i>to wander.</i>
vener-or,	venerā-ri,	venerā-tus sum,	<i>to reverence.</i>

164. In the *second* conjugation :

fate-or,	fatē-ri,	fas-sus sum,	<i>to confess.</i>
cōn-fite-or,	cōn-fitē-ri,	cōn-fes-sus sum,	<i>to confess.</i>
lice-or,	licē-ri,	lici-tus sum,	<i>to bid (at a sale).</i>
mere-or,	merē-ri,	meri-tus sum,	<i>to deserve.</i>

Especially in the phrases *merēri bene dē aliquō*, *to deserve well of any one.*

misere-or,	miserē-ri,	miseri-tus sum,	<i>to pity.</i>
pollice-or,	pollicē-ri,	pollici-tus sum,	<i>to promise.</i>
re-or,	rē-ri,	ra-tus sum,	<i>to think.</i>

Pr. Part. Active is wanting.

tue-or,	tuē-ri,	tui-tus (tūtus) sum,	<i>to protect.</i>
vere-or,	verē-ri,	veri-tus sum,	<i>to fear.</i>

165. In the *third* conjugation :

ad-ipsce-or,	ad-ipse-I,	ad-ep-tus sum,	<i>to get.</i>
am-plect-or,	am-plect-I,	am-plex-us sum,	<i>to twine round, embrace.</i>

So the compounds *complector*, *circumplector*.

com-min-isc-or,	com-min-isc-I,	com-men-tus sum,	<i>to think up, devise.</i>
experg-isc-or,	ex-perg-isc-I,	ex-per-rēo-tus sum,	<i>to (right one's self up,) awake.</i>

fung-or,	fung-I,	fūno-tus sum,	<i>to discharge.</i>
fru-or (frugv-),	fru-I,	frūo-tus sum,	<i>to enjoy.</i>

gradi-or,	grad-I,	gres-sus sum,	<i>to step.</i>
ag-gredi-or,	ag-gred-I,	ag-gres-sus sum,	<i>to attack.</i>

lāb-or,	lāb-I,	lāp-sus sum,	<i>to glide.</i>
---------	--------	--------------	------------------

loqu-or,	loqu-I,	loqu-tus sum,	<i>to speak.</i>
----------	---------	---------------	------------------

mori-or,	mor-I,	mor-tu-us sum,	<i>to die.</i>
----------	--------	----------------	----------------

nanc-isc-or,	nanc-isc-I,	nac-tus (nanc-tus) sum,	<i>to get.</i>
--------------	-------------	-------------------------	----------------

nāsc-or (gnā-),	nāsc-I,	nā-tus sum,	<i>to be born.</i>
-----------------	---------	-------------	--------------------

Fut. Part. *nāscitūrus*.

nit-or,	nit-I,	{ ni-sus (nix-us) sum, } { ni-sūrus, }	<i>to stay one's self on.</i>
---------	--------	---	-------------------------------

ob-liv-isc-or,	ob-liv-isc-I,	ob-li-tus sum,	<i>to forget.</i>
----------------	---------------	----------------	-------------------

pac-isc-or,	pac-isc-I,	pac-tus sum (pepigI),	<i>to drive (a bargain).</i>
-------------	------------	-----------------------	------------------------------

See pangō (150).

pati-or,	pat-I,	pas-sus sum,	<i>to suffer.</i>
----------	--------	--------------	-------------------

per-peti-or,	per-pet-I,	per-pes-sus sum,	<i>to endure to the end.</i>
--------------	------------	------------------	------------------------------

pro-fic-isc-or,	pro-fic-isc-I,	pro-fec-tus sum,	<i>to (get forward) set out.</i>
-----------------	----------------	------------------	----------------------------------

quer-or,	quer-I,	quee-tus sum,	<i>to complain.</i>
----------	---------	---------------	---------------------

sequ-or,	sequ-I,	secū-tus sum,	<i>to follow.</i>
----------	---------	---------------	-------------------

ulo-isc-or,	ulo-isc-I,	ul-tus sum,	<i>to avenge.</i>
-------------	------------	-------------	-------------------

ūt-or,	ūt-i,	ū-sus sum,	to use.
veh-or,	veh-i,	vec-tus sum,	to (wagon) ride.
vesc-or,	vesc-i,	—	to feed.

166. In the *fourth* conjugation :

assenti-or,	assenti-rī,	assēn-sus sum,	to assent.
com-peri-or,	comperi-rī,	—	to find out.

Occasionally for *comperiō*, *comperire*. But *experior*, *experiri*, *expertus sum*, to try, is regularly deponent.

largi-or,	largi-rī,	largi-tus sum,	to bestow.
menti-or,	menti-rī,	menti-tus sum,	to lie.
mēti-or,	mēti-rī,	mēn-sus sum,	to measure.
ordi-or,	ordi-rī,	or-sus sum,	to begin.
ori-or,	ori-rī,	or-tus sum,	to arise.
parti-or,	parti-rī,	parti-tus sum,	to share.
poti-or,	poti-rī,	poti-tus sum,	to get possession of.
pūni-or,	pūni-rī,	pūni-tus sum,	to punish.
sorti-or,	sorti-rī,	sorti-tus sum,	to cast lots.

## SEMI-DEPONENTS.

167. 1. A few verbs form the Perfect forms only as deponents :

aude-ō,	audē-re,	au-sus sum,	to dare.
fid-ō,	fide-re,	fi-sus sum,	to trust.
gaude-ō,	gaudē-re,	gāv-isus sum,	to rejoice.
sole-ō,	solē-re,	sol-itus sum,	to be wont.

2. The reverse usage is found in :

re-vert-or,	re-vert-i,	re-vert-i,	to turn back.
-------------	------------	------------	---------------

So also *dēverti*, but without Pf. Part. *Reversus* is also used actively, but *reversus sum* for *reverti* is post-classic.  
See also *assentior*, etc., 166.

NOTES.—1. Some active verbs have a Perfect Participle passive with active meaning, as : *cōnātus*, one who has dined, from *cōnāre*, to dine ; *prānsus*, having breakfasted, from *prandeō*, I breakfast ; *pōtus*, drunken, from *pōtō*, I drink ; *iūrātus*, having taken the oath, sworn, from *iūrō*, I swear ; *coniūrātus*, a conspirator, from *coniūrō*, I conspire. Many such are used purely as Adjectives : *cōsiderātus*, *circumspect*, from *cōsiderō* ; *cautus*, wary, from *caveō*, I beware.

2. The Perfect Participle of many deponent Verbs has both active and passive meaning : *adeptus* (*adipiscor*, having acquired, or being acquired) ; *comitātus* (*comitor*, I accompany) ; *effātus* (*effor*, I speak out) ; *expertus* (*experior*, I try) ; *exsecrātus* (*exsecror*, I curse) ; *imitātus* (*imitor*, I copy) ; *meritus* (*mereor*, I deserve) ; *opinātus*, *neopinātus* (*opiner*, I think) ; *pactus* (*paciscor*, I contract) ; *partitus* (*partior*, I distribute) ; *sortitus* (*sortior*, I cast lots) ; *tueor*, I protect ; *tūtus*, safe.

For others, see the list of deponents.



## IRREGULAR VERBS.

(168) 169. Irregular in the conjugation of the Present stem :

1. **ori-or, ori-ri, or-tus sum, to arise.**

The Pr. Indic. is usually formed according to the third conjugation ; the Impf. Subjv. always **orerer** ; but the Fut. Part. is **oriturus**. The compounds follow the same usage except **adoriri, to rise up at, attack**, which follows the fourth conjugation.

2. **i-re, to go.**

The stem is **i**, which, before **a, o, u**, becomes **e**.

PRIN. PARTS : **eō, ire, ivi, (if), itum.**

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>I go.</i>		<i>I be going.</i>	
PRES. SG.—1. <b>e-ō,</b>	PL.— <b>i-mus,</b>	SG.— <b>ea-m,</b>	PL.— <b>eā-mus,</b>
2. <b>i-s,</b>	<b>i-tis,</b>	<b>eā-s,</b>	<b>eā-tis,</b>
3. <b>i-t,</b>	<b>eu-nt.</b>	<b>ea-t,</b>	<b>ea-nt.</b>
IMPF.	<b>i-ba-m, I went.</b>	<b>i-re-m, I were going.</b>	
FUT.	<b>i-b-o, I shall go.</b>		
PERF.	<b>i-v-i (i-i), I have gone.</b>	<b>i-v-eri-m (i-eri-m).</b>	
PLUFF.	<b>i-v-era-m (i-era-m), I had gone.</b>	<b>i-v-isse-m (i-isse-m, i-esse-m).</b>	
FUT. PR.	<b>i-v-er-ō (i-er-ō), I shall have gone.</b>		

## IMPERATIVE.

SG.—2. <b>i,</b>	<i>go thou.</i>	<b>i-tō,</b>	<i>thou shalt go.</i>
3. —		<b>i-tō,</b>	<i>he shall go.</i>
PL.—2. <b>i-te,</b>	<i>go ye.</i>	<b>i-tōte,</b>	<i>ye shall go.</i>
3. —		<b>eu-ntō,</b>	<i>they shall go.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. <b>i-re.</b>
FUT. <b>i-tūr-um [esse].</b>
PERF. <b>i-v-isse (i-esse).</b>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. <b>iō-nō (G. eu-nt-is).</b>
FUT. <b>i-tūr-us.</b>

## GERUND.

**eu-nd-i, etc.**

## SUPINE.

**i-tum, to go.**

REMARKS.—1. Like the simple verb **are** are inflected most of the compounds, except in the Perfect system, where **i-i** is the regular form (see 131, 2). **Vēn-eō, I am for sale**, and **per-eō, I perish**, serve as passives to **vēn-dō, I sell**, and **per-dō, I destroy**. **Amb-iō, I solicit**, follows the fourth conjugation throughout.

2. The passive of the simple verb is found only in the impersonal forms *itur, ibātur, itum est, iri* (in combination with the Supine). But compounds *with transitive force* are conjugated regularly; so, *præter-eō* forms *præter-eor, -iris, -itur, -imur, -imini, -euntur, ibar, etc., -itus sum, eram, erō, -eunter, -itor, -iri, -eundus*.

### 3. *qui-re, to be able; nequi-re, to be unable.*

170. (a) *que-ō, I am able*, is found in the following forms, of which those in parenthesis are unclassical, occurring in early and late Latin and the poets; CÆSAR uses no form of *queō*.

PR. INDIC. *que-ō, (quis), (quit), quimus, (quitis), queunt*. PR. SUBJV. *queam, queās, queat, queāmus, queātis, queant*. IMPF. (*quibam*), (*quirem*). FUT. (*quibō*). PR. *quivī, etc.; quiverim, etc.* PLUFF. *quiveram, etc.; quivissem, etc.* FUT. PF. *quiverō, etc.* PR. INF. *quire*. PR. *quivisse*. PART. *quiens*.

(b) *neque-ō, I am unable*, has the same forms, all of which seem to be classic excepting the Future Indicative, which is not cited.

### 4. *fer-re, to bear.*

171. The endings beginning with *t, s*, and *r* are added directly to the root (132). Some parts are supplied by *tul-* (*tol-, tla-*).

PRIN. PARTS: *ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum*.

#### ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRES.	<i>I bear.</i>	<i>I be bearing.</i>	
SG.—1.	<i>fer-ō, PL.—fer-i-mus,</i>	SG.— <i>fera-m,</i>	PL.— <i>ferā-mus,</i>
2.	<i>fer-s, fer-tis,</i>	<i>ferā-s,</i>	<i>ferā-tis,</i>
3.	<i>fer-t, fer-u-nt.</i>	<i>fera-t,</i>	<i>fera-nt.</i>
IMPF.	<i>ferō-ba-m, I was bearing.</i>	<i>fer-re-m, I were bearing.</i>	
FUT.	<i>fera-m, I shall bear.</i>		
PERF.	<i>tul-i, I have borne.</i>	<i>tul-eri-m.</i>	
PLUPF.	<i>tul-era-m.</i>	<i>tul-isse-m.</i>	
FUT. PF.	<i>tul-er-ō.</i>		

#### IMPERATIVE.

SG.—2.	<i>fer,</i>	<i>bear thou.</i>	<i>fer-tō,</i>	<i>thou shalt bear.</i>
3.	—		<i>fer-tō,</i>	<i>he shall bear.</i>
PL.—2.	<i>fer-te,</i>	<i>bear ye.</i>	<i>fer-tōte,</i>	<i>ye shall bear.</i>
3.	—		<i>fer-u-ntō,</i>	<i>they shall bear.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. *fer-re*.FUT. *lā-tūr-um* [*esse*].PERF. *tul-isse*.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. *ferē-na*, *bearing*.FUT. *lā-tūr-us*.

## GERUND.

*ferē-nd-i*, *etc.*

## SUPINE.

*lā-tum*, *lā-tū*.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

*I am borne.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*I be borne.*

PRES.	Sg.—1. <i>fer-o-r</i> , PL.— <i>feri-mur</i> ,	Sg.— <i>fera-r</i> , PL.— <i>ferē-mur</i> ,
	2. <i>fer-ris</i> , <i>feri-mini</i> ,	<i>ferē-ris</i> , <i>ferē-mini</i> ,
	3. <i>fer-tur</i> , <i>feru-ntur</i> .	<i>ferē-tur</i> , <i>fera-ntur</i> .
IMPF.	<i>ferē-ba-r</i> ,	<i>fer-re-r</i> .
FUT.	<i>fera-r</i> .	
PERF.	<i>lā-tus sum</i> .	<i>lā-tus sim</i> ,
PLUPF.	<i>lā-tus eram</i> .	<i>lā-tus essem</i> .
FUT. PF.	<i>lā-tus erō</i> .	

## IMPERATIVE.

Sg.—2.	<i>fer-re</i> , <i>be thou borne.</i>	<i>fer-tor</i> , <i>thou shalt be borne.</i>
3.	—	<i>fer-tor</i> , <i>he shall be borne.</i>
PL.—2.	<i>feri-mini</i> , <i>be ye borne.</i>	—
3.	—	<i>feru-ntor</i> , <i>they shall be borne.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. *fer-ri*, *to be borne.*

## PARTICIPLE.

PERF. *lā-t-us*, *-a*, *-um*, *borne*.FUT. *lā-tum iri*.

## GERUNDIVE.

PERF. *lā-tum esse*, *to have been borne.**ferē-nd-us*.

## COMPOUNDS.

<i>af-fer-ō</i> ,	<i>af-fer-re</i> ,	<i>at-tul-i</i> ,	<i>al-lā-tum</i> ,	<i>to bear to</i> .
<i>au-fer-ō</i> ,	<i>au-fer-re</i> ,	<i>abs-tul-i</i> ,	<i>ab-lā-tum</i> ,	<i>to bear away</i> .
<i>cōn-fer-ō</i> ,	<i>cōn-fer-re</i> ,	<i>con-tul-i</i> ,	<i>col-lā-tum</i> ,	<i>to collect</i> .
<i>dif-fer-ō</i> ,	<i>dif-fer-re</i> ,	<i>dis-tul-i</i> ,	<i>di-lā-tum</i> ,	<i>to put off</i> .
<i>ef-fer-ō</i> ,	<i>ef-fer-re</i> ,	<i>ex-tul-i</i> ,	<i>ē-lā-tum</i> ,	<i>to carry out</i> .
<i>of-fer-ō</i> ,	<i>of-fer-re</i> ,	<i>ob-tul-i</i> ,	<i>ob-lā-tum</i> ,	<i>to offer</i> .

REMARKS.—1. The Pf. *tuli* was originally reduplicated *te-tuli*. Traces of this are seen in *rettuli*.

2. *Suf-ferō*, *I undergo*, has the Pf. *sus-tin-ui*, because *sus-tul-i*, *sub-lā-tum* have been appropriated to *toll-ō*.

5. *ede-re, to eat.*

172. In certain forms the endings beginning with *s*, *t*, and *r* are added directly to the root (132); *d* before *s* (*r*) is dropped or assimilated (as *ss*) and before *t* becomes *s*.

PRIN. PARTS : *edō, edere* (*esse*), *ēdī, ēsum*.

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

*I eat.*

SG.—1.	<i>ed-ō,</i>	PL.— <i>edi-mus,</i>
2.	<i>edi-s, ē-s,</i>	<i>edi-tis, ēs-tis,</i>
3.	<i>edi-t, ē-st,</i>	<i>edu-nt.</i>

IMPF.	<i>edō-ba-m,</i>	<i>I ate.</i>
FUT.	<i>eda-m.</i>	
PERF.	<i>ēd-i,</i>	
PLUPF.	<i>ē-dera-m.</i>	
FUT. PF.	<i>ēd-er-ō.</i>	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*I be eating.*

SG.— <i>eda-m,</i>	PL.— <i>edā-mus,</i>
<i>edā-s,</i>	<i>edā-tis,</i>
<i>eda-t,</i>	<i>eda-nt.</i>

*ede-re-m, ēs-se-m, I were eating.*

*ēd-eri-m.*

*ēd-isse-m.*

## IMPERATIVE.

SG.—2.	<i>ede, ēs,</i>	<i>eat thou.</i>	<i>edi-tō, ēs-tō,</i>	<i>thou shalt eat.</i>
3.	—		<i>edi-tō, ēs-te,</i>	<i>he shall eat.</i>
PL.—2.	<i>edi-te, ēs-to,</i>	<i>eat ye.</i>	<i>edi-tōte, ēs-tōte,</i>	<i>ye shall eat.</i>
3.	—		<i>edu-ntō,</i>	<i>they shall eat.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	<i>ede-re, ēs-se,</i>	<i>to eat.</i>
FUT.	<i>ēs-ūr-um esse.</i>	
PERF.	<i>ēd-isse.</i>	

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	( <i>edō-nus</i> ).
FUT.	<i>ēs-ūr-us.</i>

## GERUND.

*ede-nd-i, etc.*

## SUPINE.

*ēs-um, ēs-ū.*

## PASSIVE.

In the passive voice the only peculiarities are as follows : Pr. Indic. Sing. Third, *editur* and *ēstur*. Impf. Subjv. Sing. Third, *ederetur* and *ēsetur*. The Pf. Part. is *ēsus* and the Gerundive *edendus*.

6. *fi-e-rī, to become.*

173. *Fi-ō* is conjugated in the Present, Imperfect, and Future, according to the fourth conjugation, but in the Subjunctive Imperfect and in the Infinitive the stem is increased by *e*; thus, *fi-e-rem, I were becoming*; *fi-e-rī, to become*. In these forms the *i* is short, but elsewhere it is long even before another vowel.

The Infinitive ends in *-rī*, and the whole Verb in the Present-stem is treated as the Passive to *faciō*, *I make*. The rest of the Passive is formed regularly from *faciō*.

PRIN. PARTS : *fiō, fieri, factus sum*.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
PRES.	<i>faci-ō, I make.</i>	INDIC.	<i>fi-s, I am made, I become.</i>
			<i>fi-s, fi-t (fi-mus, fi-tis), fi-u-nt.</i>
IMPF.	<i>faci-ē-bam, I made.</i>		<i>fi-ē-ba-m, I was made, I became.</i>
FUT.	<i>faci-am, I shall make.</i>		<i>fi-a-m, I shall be made (become).</i>
PERF.	<i>fecī.</i>		<i>fac-tus sum.</i>
PLUPF.	<i>fec-ē-ra-m.</i>		<i>fac-tus eram.</i>
FUT. PF.	<i>fec-er-ō.</i>		<i>fac-tus erō.</i>
		SUBJV.	<i>fi-a-m, fi-ā-s, fi-a-t, etc.</i>
	<i>etc.</i>		<i>fi-e-re-m, fi-e-rē-s, etc.</i>

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
		PRES.	<i>fi-rī.</i>
		PERF.	<i>fac-tum esse, to have become.</i>
(fi),	(fi-tō).	FUT.	<i>fu-tū-rum esse or fore.</i>
(fi-te).		FUT. PF.	<i>fac-tum fore.</i>

REMARK.—The compounds of *faciō* with Prepositions change the *a* of the stem into *i*, and form the Passive in classical Latin regularly from the same stem : *perficiō*, *I achieve*, Pass. *perficior* ; *interficiō*, Pass. *interficior*, *I am destroyed*. When compounded with words other than prepositions, *faciō* retains its *a*, and uses *fiō* as its Passive :

*patefaciō*, *I lay open*, Pass. *patefiō* ; *calefaciō*, *I warm*, Pass. *calefiō*.

For the accent, see 15, 2, B. 2.

#### 174. 7. *vel-le, to be willing*.

*nōlle, to be unwilling* ; *mālle, to be willing rather*.

PRIN. PARTS : *volō, velle, volui* ; *nōlō, nōlle, nōlui* ; *mālō, mālle, mālui*.

		INDICATIVE.	
PRES.	<i>volō,</i>	<i>nōlō,</i>	<i>mālō,</i>
	<i>vis,</i>	<i>nōn vis,</i>	<i>māvis,</i>
	<i>vult,</i>	<i>nōn vult,</i>	<i>māvult,</i>
	<i>volumus,</i>	<i>nōlumus,</i>	<i>mālumus,</i>
	<i>vultis,</i>	<i>nōn vultis,</i>	<i>māvultis,</i>
	<i>volunt.</i>	<i>nōlunt.</i>	<i>mālunt.</i>
IMPF.	<i>volēbam,</i>	<i>nōlēbam,</i>	<i>mālēbam.</i>
FUT.	<i>volam,</i>	<i>nōlam,</i>	<i>mālam,</i>
	<i>volēs, etc.</i>	<i>nōlē, etc.</i>	<i>mālēs, etc.</i>

PERF.	volui,	nōlui,	mālui, etc.
PLUFF.	volueram,	nōlueram,	mālueram, etc.
FUT. PF.	voluerō,	nōluerō,	māluerō, etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	velim,	nōlim,	mālim,
	velis,	nōlis,	mālis,
	velit,	nōlit,	mālit,
	velimus,	nōlimus,	mālimus,
	velitis,	nōlitis,	mālitis,
	velint.	nōlint.	mālint.
IMPF.	vellem,	nōllem,	māllem.
PERF.	voluerim,	nōluerim,	māluerim, etc.
PLUFF.	voluissem,	nōluissem,	māluissem, etc.
IMPV.	[fac velis],	Sg. — nōli, nōlitō. Pl. — nōlite, nōlitōte, nōluntō.	
INF. PR.	velle,	nōlle,	mālle.
PF.	voluisse,	nōluisse,	māluisse.
PART.	volēns,	nōlēns.	

## 175. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

1. *aiō, I say aye.*

INDIC. PRES. SG.—1.	aiō,	2. ais,	3. ait,	PL.—3. aiunt.
IMPF.	aiēbam, etc.			
PERF.			3. ait.	
SUBJV. PRES. SG.—		2. aiās,	3. aiat,	3. aiant.
PART.	aiēns (as adj.),	affirmative. IMPV. ai.		

2. *inquam, I say, quoth I.*

INDIC. PRES. SG.—1.	inquam,	2. inquis,	3. inquit.
PL.—1.	inquimus,	2. inquitis,	3. inquitunt.
IMPF. SG.—			3. inquitēbat.
FUT. SG.—		2. inquitēs,	3. inquiet.
PERF. SG.—1.	inquit,	2. inquisti,	3. inquit.

IMPV. inque, inquitō.

3. *fā-rī, to speak.*

INDIC. PRES. *fātur.* FUT. *fābor, fābitur.* PERF. *fātus sum, etc.* IMPV. *fāre.*  
 PART. PRES. *fāns, fantis, fanti, fantem.* GER. *fandi, fandō.* SUP. *fātū.*

4. *havē-re (avē-re), salvē-re.*

IMPV. *havē,* *salvē, salvēbis, hail thou!*  
*havētō,* *salvētō.*  
*havēte,* *salvēte, hail ye!*  
 INF. *havēre,* *salvēre.*

Corresponding to these are the forms of *valēre*, viz.: *valē, valēte, valēre, farewell.*

5. *coepī, meminī, ōdī, nōvī.*

In use only in the Perfect-stem are *coepī, I have begun*, which serves as a Perfect to *incipiō*, and *meminī, I remember*, *ōdī, I hate*, *nōvī* (from *nōscō*, see 131, 3, 157, d), *I know, am aware*, *cōnsuēvī* (from *cōnsuēscō*), *I am wont*, which have the force of Presents.

a. INDIC. *coepī, I have begun.* SUBJV. *coeperim.*  
*coeperam.* *coepissem.*  
*coeperō,* INF. *coepisse, to have begun.*

Passive forms *coeptus sum, etc.*, occur with the same meaning in combination with a Passive Infinitive. See 423, R. 3.

b. INDIC. *meminī, I remember.* SUBJV. *meminerim.*  
*memineram.* *meminissem.*  
*meminerō.* INF. *meminisse, to remember.*

IMPV. SG.—*mementō.* PL.—*mementōte.*  
 c. INDIC. *ōdī, I hate.* SUBJV. *ōderim.*  
*ōderam.* *ōdissem.*  
*ōderō.* INF. *ōdisse, to hate.*

FUT. PART. *ōsūrus.*

NOTE.—For the Passive the phrase *ōdī esse* is used.

d. INDIC. *nōvī.* SUBJV. *nōverim (nōrim).*  
*nōveram (nōram).* *nōvissem (nōssem).*  
*nōverō (nōrō).* INF. *nōvisse (nōase), to know.*

6. *cedo, quaesō.*

Other defective forms are :

SG.—*cedo, give!* (old Impv.) PL.—*cette.*  
 INDIC. PRES. *quaesō, please* (i. e., *I seek, beg*), *quaesumus.*

## FORMATION OF WORDS.

**176.** By the formation of words is meant the way in which stems are made of roots, new stems of old, and in which words are compounded.

**177.** All roots of the Latin language are probably monosyllabic. They can be ascertained only by scientific analysis.

The difference between Root and Stem has been set forth in 25, NN. Sometimes the Stem is the same as the Root ; so especially in the Root Verbs (132). But it is usually different.

**178.** Words are either *simple* or *compound*.

A *simple* word is one that is formed from a single root : *sōl, sun ; stāre, stand, stay.*

A *compound* word is one that is made up of two or more roots : *sōl-stiti-um, sun-staying, solstice.*

## A.—Simple Words.

**179.** Simple words are partly *primitive*, partly *derivative* or *secondary*.

1. Primitive words come from the root, and as this usually appears in the simplest form of the verb-stem, primitive words are called *verbals* : *scrib-a (scribō, I write), scribe.*

2. Derivative words are formed from a noun-stem ; hence called *denominatives* : *vetus-tās, age, from vetes- (N. vetus), old.*

**180.** Substantives are generally formed by means of a *suffix*. A suffix is an addition to a stem, and serves to define its meaning or show its relations. So from the verbal stem *scrib-* (*scribō, I write*) comes *scrip-tor, writ-er ; scrip-tiō(n), writ-ing.*

Suffixes are either *primary* or *secondary*. A primary suffix is one added to a root (or verb stem) to form primitive words. A secondary suffix is one used in the formation of derivative words. Thus, *-tor* in *scrip-tor* is a primary suffix ; *-tās* in *vetus-tās* is secondary.

**181. FORMATION OF SUBSTANTIVES.**

The suffixes, as applied to various roots, have often special functions, and form words of definite meaning. The most important are as follows :



1. *Agency* is indicated by

- tor*, -*trix* (N. *tor*, *trix*): *amā-tor*, *lover*; *vis-trix*, *conqueress*;
- ōn* (N. *ō*, G. *ōnis*): *com-bib-ō* (*fellow-drinker*), *boon companion*;
- o*, -*a* (N. -*us*, -*a*): *serv-os*, *slave*; *scrib-a*, *scribe*, occasionally;
- ōno*, -*ōna* (N. *ōnu-s*, -*ōna*): *col-ōnu-s*, *settler*;
- (i)t (N. *es*, G. *itis*): *mil-es*, *soldier*, and a few others.

2. *Action, Activity, and Event* are indicated by

- a. -*tu* (N. *tu-s*, *su-s*, G. -*tūs*): *ad-ven-tus*, *arrival*;
- trī-na* (N. *trīna*): *doc-trīna*, *instruction*;
- īn-a* (N. *īna*): *rap-īna*, *rapine*;
- men* (N. *men*, G. *min-is*): *ēg-men*, *train*;
- mento* (N. *mentum*): *tor-mentu-m*, *torture*;
- ē-la* (*ella*): *loqu-ēla*, *speech*; *quer-ēla*, *complaint*;
- cinio* (N. -*u-m*): *latrō-ciniu-m*, *highway robbery*;
- mōnio*, -*mōnia*: *queri-mōnia*, *complaint*; *tēsti-mōniu-m*, *testimony*.

b. *Abstracts*. Masculine: -*ōs* (N. -*or*, G. -*ōr-is*): *ang-or*, *anguish*.

Feminine: -*ōn* (N. *dō*, *gō*, G. *in-is*): *imā-gō*, *image*; *cup-i-dō*, *desire*;

-*ia*: *audāc-ia*, *boldness*;

-*iōn* (N. *iō*): *leg-iō*, *legion*;

-*tia*: *avāri-tia*, *avarice*; collateral are some with Nom. in -*tiēs*, as *dūri-tiēs*, *hardness*;

-*tiōn* (N. *tiō*, *siō*): *amb-i-tiō*, *ambition*; *cōn-fū-siō*, *confusion*;

-*tāt* (N. *tās*): *aquāli-tās*, *equality*;

-*tūra*: *pic-tūra*, *painting*;

-*tūt* (N. *tūs*, *sus*): *iuvēn-tūs*, *youth*;

-*tu* (-*su*) (N. *tu-s*, *su-s*): *sēn-sus*, *perception*;

-*tūdōn* (N. *tūd-ō*, G. -*inis*): *aegri-tūdō*, *sickness of heart*.

Neuter: -*tio* (N. *tiu-m*): *servi-tiu-m*, *bondage*.

3. An *Artisan* or *Tradesman* is indicated by

-*ārio* (N. *āriu-s*): *argent-āriu-s*, *money changer*.

4. The *Trade* is indicated by

-*āria*: *argent-āria*, *silver mine*, *bank*.

5. The *Locality* of the work (or trade) is indicated by

-*ārio* (N. *āriu-m*): *sēmin-ārium*, *seed-plot*;

-*ōnio* (N. *ōniu-m*): *full-ōniu-m*, *fuller's shop*;

-*īna*: *offic-īna*, *workshop*;

-*cro*, -*culo* (N. -*cru-m*, -*culu-m*): *lavā-cru-m*, *bath*;

-*trīno*, -*trīna* (N. *trīna*, *trīnu-m*): *sū-trīna*, *shoemaker's shop*;

*pis-trīnu-m*, *mill*.

6. *Instrument* and *Means* are indicated by

-*bro*, -*bra* (N. *bra*, *bru-m*): *li-bra*, *balance*; *cri-brum*, *sieve*;

-*cro*, -*culo* (N. *cru-m*, *culu-m*): *ba-culu-m*, *walking stick*;

**-lo, -la** (N. *-la, -lu-m*): *pi-la, pillar*; *tš-lu-m, weapon*;  
**-ulo, -ula** (N. *ulu-s, ula, ulu-m*): *cap-ulu-s, handle*; *ršg-ula, rule*;  
*cing-ulu-m, girdle*;

**-mento** (N. *mentu-m*): *al-i-mentu-m, nourishment*;

**-tro, -tra** (N. *tra, tru-m*): *fenes-tra, window*; *arš-tru-m, plow*.

7. *Relationship* is indicated by

**-ter** (N. *ter, G. tr-la*): *pa-ter, father*; *mā-ter, mother*.

8. *Condition or Relation* by

**-ina**: *discipl-ina, discipline*; *medic-ina, medicine*.

9. *Function* is indicated by

**-tūra (sūra)**: *cul-tūra, cultivation*.

10. *Office* is indicated by

**-ātu** (N. *ātus, G. ātūs*): *cōnsul-ātus, consulship*;

**-tūra (-sūra)**: *dictā-tūra, dictatorship*.

11. *Dense Growths* are indicated by

**-ēto** (N. *ētu-m*): *murt-ētu-m, myrtle grove*;

**-to** (N. *tu-m*): *virgul-tu-m, brushwood*.

12. *Diminutives* are indicated by

**-lo, -la** (N. *lu-s, etc.*), before which a liquid is assimilated: (*ager*), *agel-lu-s, little field*; (*corōn-a*), *corōl-la, chaplet*;

**-olo, -ulo**: *olo* after *e, i, v*, otherwise **-ulo** (N. *olu-s, ola, ulu-s, ula*): (*alve-us*), *alve-olu-s, little hollow*; (*filii-a*), *filii-ola, little daughter*;

**-culo, -cula** (N. *culu-s, etc.*), after *e, i, u*, and consonant stems: (*spēs*), *spēs-cula, slight hope*; (*versu-s*), *versu-culu-s, versicle*; (*homō*, *homin-*), *homin-culu-s, manikin*; (*cor, cord-*), *cor-culu-m, dear heart*.

## 182. FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES.

The significance of the most important adjective suffixes, which are often identical with the substantive suffixes, are as follows:

1. *Action* is indicated by

**-bundo, -bunda**: *cunctā-bundu-s, lingering*;

**-ulo, -ula** (*repeated action*): *cred-ulu-s, quick to believe*;

**-bili** (*passive action*): *amā-bili-s, lovable*.

2. *Capacity and Inclination* are indicated by

**-cundo, -cunda**: *fā-cundu-s, of ready speech*.

**-ili** (*passive capacity*): *ag-ili-s, movable*; *doc-ili-s, teachable*.

The *Capacity and Resulting Condition* by

**-tili**: *duc-tili-s, ductile*; *fāc-tili-s, capable of being moulded, of clay*.

3. *Tendency* is indicated by

**-āci** (N. *āx*): *aud-āx, bold*; *rap-āx, greedy*.

4. *Likeness and Composition or Material* are indicated by  
*-āceo, -ācea* : arundin-āceu-s, reedy ; crēt-āceu-s, chalky ;  
*-icio, -icia* : later-iciu-s, made of brick ;  
*-no, -na* : acer-nu-s, of maple ;  
*-neo, -nea* : ae-neu-s, brazen.

5. *Belonging to* is indicated by  
*-io, -ia* : imperātor-iu-s, belonging to a general ;  
*-icio, -icia* : aedil-iciu-s, belonging to an ædile ;  
*-āno, -āna* : hūm-ānu-s, human ; urb-ānu-s, urbane, city.

6. *Appurtenance and Medium* are indicated by  
*-tico, -tica* : aquā-ticu-s, aquatic ;  
*-tili* : aquā-tili-s, aquatic ; plūmā-tili-s (embroidered) like feathers.

7. *Origin* is indicated by.  
*-io, -ia* : Cornēl-ia (lāx), Corinth-iu-s ;  
*-āno, -āna, -īno, -īna* : Rōm-ānu-s, Lat-īnu-s.

8. *Time* is indicated by  
*-tino, -tina* : crās-tinu-s, of to-morrow ;  
*-terno, -terna* : hes-ternu-s, of yesterday ;  
*-urno, -urna* : noct-urnu-s, by night ;  
*-tino, -tina* : mātū-tinu-s, of early morning.

9. *Locality, where, whence*, is indicated by  
*-ia* : Galli-a, Gaul ;  
*-tino* : intes-tinu-s, inner, intestine ;  
*-ēnsi* : circ-ēnsi-s, from the circus ; Sicili-ēnsi-s, Sicilian.

10. *Fullness* is indicated by  
*-ōso, -ōsa* : anim-ōsu-s, full of spirit ; verb-ōsu-s, wordy ;  
*-lento, -lenta* : sanguin-o-lentu-s, bloody.

11. *Descent and Relationship* are indicated in Latin mainly by Greek adjectives, made by the addition of Greek suffixes to proper names (*Patronymics*). These suffixes are

M. *-idēs* (G. *idae*), F. *-is* (G. *idis*), from Nominatives in *us*, *or*, *ōs*, and *s* preceded by a consonant : (Tantalus) Tantal-idēs, son of Tantalus ; Tantal-is, daughter of Tantalus ; (Pelops) Pelopidēs.

M. *-idēs* (G. *idae*), F. *-ēis* (G. *idis*), from Nominatives in *-eus* : (Thēseus) Thēs-idēs, Thēsēis.

M. *-adēs* (G. *adae*), F. *-ēis* (G. *idis*), from Nominatives in *ās* (G. *ae*) and *-ēs* (G. *ae*) : (Aenēās) Aene-adēs.

M. *-iadēs* (G. *iadae*), F. *-ias* (G. *iadis*), from Nominatives in *ius*, *ēs*, *ōn*, *o* : (Lāsertēs) Lāsert-iadēs.

F. *-inē*, from Nominatives in *-us* and *-eus* : (Neptūnus) Neptūn-inē.

F. *-iōnē*, from Nominatives in *ius* : (Acrisius) Acrisiōnē.

12. *Diminutive* adjectives are formed by the same suffixes as diminutive substantives (181, 12) : *albus*, *white*, *albu-lus*, *whitish* ; *miser*, *wretched*, *mis-ellus*, *poor (little)* ; *acer*, *sharp*, *acer-culu-s*, *somewhat sharp*.

### 183. SUBSTANTIVES WITHOUT SUFFIXES.

#### (Root Substantives.)

A few substantives are formed from roots without a suffix :

1. With weak root : *duc-s* (*dux*), *leader*, from root *duc*, *lead* ; *nec-s* (*nex*), *killing*, from root *nec*, *kill*.
2. With strong root : *luc-s* (*lux*), *light*, from root *luc*, *light* ; *rēg-s* (*rēx*), *king*, from root *rēg*, *rule*.
3. With reduplication : *car-cer*, *jail* ; *mar-mor*, *marble* ; *mur-mur*, *murmur*.

### (184-9) 190. FORMATION OF VERBS.

1. Primitives are confined to the Third Conjugation, to some forms of the Irregular verbs, and to some Inchoatives. The various stem-formations are shown in 183.

2. Derivatives comprise the verbs of the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, and some verbs of the Third Conjugation. They are all (except the Inchoatives and the Meditatives) formed in the same way, but certain classes of these verbs have obtained special names according to their various meanings :

The *Causatives*.

The *Frequentatives*.

The *Desideratives*.

The *Inchoatives*.

The *Meditatives*.

### 191. A. *Verbālia* (derived from verb-stems) :

1. *Frequentatives* or *Intensives*, denoting *repeated* or *intense action*. These verbs end in *-tāre* (*sāre*), *-itāre*, *-titāre* (*-sitāre*), and follow the supine stem (perfect passive form).

(a) *cantāre*, *sing* ; compare *canō* (*cantum*) : *cursāre*, *run to and fro* ; compare *currō* (*cursum*) : *dormitāre*, *be sleepy* ; compare *dormiō* (*dormitum*) : *pulsāre*, *beat* ; compare *pellō* (*pulsum*).

(b) *agitāre* (*age*), *nōscitāre* (*nōscō*).

(c) *cantitāre* (*cantāre*), *cursitāre* (*cursāre*).

2. *Inchoatives* indicate *entrance upon an action*. For their formation see 183, V.

3. *Desideratives* denote *desire* or *tendency*. They are formed by means of the suffix *-turiō* (*-suriō*) : *esuriire* (for *ed-t*), *to be sharp-set for eating, hungry* ; *em-p-turiire*, *to be all agog for buying*.

4. *Causatives* signify the *effecting* of the *condition* indicated by their original verb. They are found mainly in the Second Conjugation, and show usually a change in the stem-vowel.

*Change*: *cadere*, *fall*, and *caedere*, *fell*; *liquere*, *melt* (intr.), and *liquäre*, *melt* (trans.); *nocäre*, *kill*, and *nocäre*, *be death to*.

*No change*: *fugere*, *flee*, and *fugäre*, *put to flight*; *iacere*, *throw*, and *iacäre*, *(lie) thrown*; *pendere*, *(hang) weigh*, and *pendäre*, *hang* (intr.).

5. *Meditatives*: (verbs that look forward to an action). These end in *-essere*: *arcessere*, *to summon*; *capessere*, *to catch at*; *facessere*, *to do eagerly*; *incessere*, *to enter*; *lacessere*, *to irritate* (136, 3, b).

## 192. B. *Denominatives* (derived from noun-stems):

1. These are most commonly found in the First Conjugation, even though the stem-vowel of the noun is *i* or *u*.

(a) *acerväre*, *heap up* (from *acervo-s*); *corönäre*, *wreathe* (*coröna*); *leväre*, *lighten* (*levi-s*); *nöminäre*, *name* (*nömen*, *nömin-is*).

The Deponents signify *condition*, *employment*: *ancilläre*, *be maid* (*ancilla*); *aquäre*, *be a drawer of water* (*aqua*); *füräre*, *thieve* (*für*).

(b) *albäre*, *be white* (*albu-s*); *flöräre*, *be in bloom* (*flös*, *flöris*); *frondäre*, *be in leaf* (*fröns*, *frondi-s*); *lucäre*, *be light* (*lūx*, *lūc-is*).

(c) *arguäre*, *(be bright, sharp), prove*; *laedere*, *hurt*; *metuäre*, *be in fear* (*metu-s*).

(d) *cüstödäre*, *guard* (*cüstös*, *cüstöd-is*); *finäre*, *end* (*fini-s*); *länäre*, *soften* (*län-i-s*); *vestäre*, *clothe* (*vesti-s*).

2. Noteworthy are the *Diminutives* formed by the suffix *-illäre*: *st-illäre*, *drop* (*st-illa*); *scint-illäre*, *sparkle* (*scint-illa*). Similar in function but of different formation are *pullu-läre*, *sprout* (*pul-lus*); *fodic-läre*, *punch* (*fodere*, *dig*); *albic-läre*, *whiten* (*albu-s*).

## B.—Compound Words.

193. 1. By composition words are so put together that a new word is made with a signification of its own. The second word is regularly the fundamental word, the first the modifier.

2. Composition is either *proper* or *improper*.

### Noun.

194. In COMPOSITION IMPROPER there are either traces of construction or the first part is still inflected: *ä-nörmis* = *ex nörmis*, *out of all rule*; *lëgis-lätor*, *lawgiver*; *Senäts-cönsultum*, *decree of the Senate*.

Many of these compounds have gradually become inflectional: *däli-rus* (*dä-lira*), *crazy from fear*; *ägregius* (*ä-grege*), *distinguished* (from *the crowd*); *pröcönsul* (for *prö cönsule*); *trium-vir* (from *trium virum*), etc.

**195. COMPOSITION PROPER.**—1. The first part of the compound may be a particle, as *ne-far-iu-s*, *nefarious*; *vō-sānu-s*, *mad, out of one's sound senses*: or a substantive.

If it is a substantive—

(a) The stems in *-a*, *-o*, *-u* regularly weaken these vowels into *-i* before the consonants of the second part, which *i* may vanish: *causi-dicus*, *pleader, lawyer* (*causa*); *signi-fer*, *standard-bearer* (*signu-m*); *corni-ger*, *horn-wearer* (*cornū*); *man-ceps* (*manu-* and *cap-*), *one who takes in hand, contractor*. The *i*-stems retain *i* or drop it: *igni-vomu-s*, *fire-vomiting* (*igni-s*); *nau-fragu-s*, *shipwrecked* (*nāvi-s*).

(b) Vowel-stems drop their vowel before the vowel of the second part: *māgn-animu-s*, *great-souled*; *ūn-animu-s*, *of one mind*.

(c) Consonant-stems either drop their consonants or add *i*: *homi-cid-a*, *manslayer* (*homin-*); *lapi-cid-a*, *stone-cutter* (*lapid-*); *mātr-i-cid-a*, *mother-murderer, matricide*.

2. The second part of the composition is a substantive: *tri-enn-iu-m*, *space of three years* (*annus*); *miseri-cor-s*, *tender-hearted* (*cor*).

When the second part ends in a vowel, it adapts itself, if an adjective, to changes of gender, as *flāvi-comus*, *yellow-haired* (*coma, hair*), but more often this final vowel becomes *i* and the adjective follows the third declension: *ab-nōrmi-s*, *abnormal* (*nōrma, norm*).

When the second part ends in a consonant, the last term usually undergoes no change: *bi-dēn-s*, *two-pronged*; *simplex* (*sim-plec-s*), *simple*.

### Signification of Nouns.

**196.** Compound substantives and adjectives are divided according to their signification into two main classes: Determinative and Possessive.

In Determinative compounds one of the terms is subordinate to the other. They fall into two classes: Attributive or Appositional, and Dependent.

**197. 1. Attributive compounds.** The first part is the attribute of the second.

The first word is, (1) a substantive: *ālī-pēs*, *wing-foot(ed)*; (2) an adjective: *māgn-animus*, *great-hearted*; *lāti-fundium*, *large estate*; (3) a numeral: *bi-enni-um* (i. e., *spatium*), *space of two years*.

2. *Dependent compounds.* In these the second word is simply limited by the other, its signification not being altered.

(a) The first word is: (1) an adjective: *meri-diēs* (from *medi-diēs* = *mediō diē*), *mid-day*; (2) an adverb: *bene-ficus* (*well-doing*), *beneficent*; *male-ficus*, *evil-doing*; (3) a numeral: *ter-geminus*, *triple*; (4) a par-

tiole : *dis-sonus*, *harsh-sounding* ; *per-māgnus*, *very large* ; *in-dignus*, *unworthy* ; (5) a verb-stem : *horri-fens*, *horrible* (*horror-stirring*).

(b) The first word gives a case relation, such as (1) the Accusative : *armi-ger* = *arma gerēns*, *armor-bearer* ; *agri-cola* = *agrum colēns* (*land-tiller*), *husbandman* ; (2) the Genitive : *sōl-stitium* = *sōlis statio* (*sun-staying*), *solstice* ; (3) the Locative : *aliēni-gena* (*born elsewhere*), *alien* ; (4) the instrumental : *tibi-cen* = *tibis canēns*, *flute-player*.

**198.** *Possessive Compounds* are adjectival only, and are so called because they imply the existence of a Subject possessing the quality indicated.

The first term is, (1) a substantive : *angui-manus*, (*having a*) *snake-hand* (*elephant*) ; (2) an adjective : *flāvi-comus*, (*having*) *yellow hair* ; (3) a numeral : *bi-frōns*, (*having*) *two front(s)* ; (4) a particle : *dis-cors*, *discordant* ; *in-ers*, *inactive*.

### Verb.

**199.** In *Composition Improper* the verb is joined to a verb, substantive, or adverb. In *Composition Proper* the verb is combined with a preposition.

**200.** I. COMPOSITION IMPROPER.—(a) *Verb with verb* : This only takes place when the second part of the compound is *faciō* or *fiō* (173, R.). The first part of the compound is regularly an intransitive of the second conjugation : *cale-faciō*, *cale-fiō*, *warm*, *am warmed*.

(b) *Verb with substantive* : *anim-advertō* = *animum advertō*, *take notice* ; *manū-mittō*, *set free* ; *usū-capiō*, *acquire by use*.

(c) *Verb with adverb* : *bone-dicō*, *bless* ; *male-dicō*, *curse* ; *mālō*, *nōlō* (for *mage* (*magis*) *volō*, *ne-volō*), *satis-faciō*, *satisfy*.

2. COMPOSITION PROPER.—The verb combines with separable or inseparable prepositions. Compare 413, R. 3.

(a) *With inseparable prepositions* : *amb-iō*, *go about* ; *am-plector*, *enfold* ; *an-hālō*, *draw deep breath*, *pant* ; *dis-currō*, *run apart* ; *dir-imō*, 153 ; *por-tendō*, *hold forth*, *portend* ; *red-dō*, *give back* ; *re-solvō*, *resolve* ; *sē-iungō*, *separate*.

(b) *With separable prepositions* : *ab-eō*, *go away* ; *ad-eō*, *come up* ; *ante-currō*, *run in advance* ; *com-pōnō*, *put together* ; *dē-currō*, *run down*, *finish a course* ; *ex-cēdō*, *overstep* ; *in-clūdō*, *shut in* ; *ob-dūcō*, *draw over* ; *per-agrō*, *wander through* ; *post-habēō*, *keep in the background* ; *prae-dicō*, *foretell* ; *praeter-eō*, *pass by* ; *prōd-eō*, *go forth* ; *prae-vidēō*, *foresee* ; *sub-iciō*, *put under* ; *subter-fugiō*, *flee from under* ; *super-sum*, *remain over* ; *trāns-gredior*, *pass beyond*.

# SYNTAX.

---

**201.** SYNTAX treats of the formation and combination of sentences.

A sentence is the expression of a thought (*sententia*) in words.

Sentences are divided into *simple* and *compound*.

A simple sentence is one in which the necessary parts occur but once.

The necessary parts of the sentence are *the subject* and *the predicate*.

The predicate is that which is said of the subject.

The subject is that of which the predicate is said.

*Lūna fulget, the moon shines.*

*Lūna* is the *subject*; *fulget*, the *predicate*.

REMARKS.—1. The Interjection (16, R. 1) and the Vocative case (23, 5) do not properly belong to the sentence, and therefore do not enter as elements into Syntax, except that the Vocative is subject to the laws of Concord.

2. The Vocative differs from the Nominative in form in the second declension only, and even there the Nominative is sometimes used instead, especially in poetry and solemn prose.

*Almae filius Māiae, H., O.,* I. 2, 43; *son of mild Maia!*

*Audi tū, populus Albānus, L.,* I. 24, 7; *hear thou, people of Alba!*

*Ō* is prefixed to give emphasis to the address:

*Ō formōse puer, nimium nō crēde colōri, V., Ec. 2, 17; O shapely boy!*  
*trust not complexion all too much.*

## SYNTAX OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

**202.** The most simple form of the sentence is the finite verb: *su-m, I am*; *docē-s, thou teachest*; *scribi-t, he writes*.



**203. SUBJECT.**—The subject of the finite verb is in the Nominative Case.

The use of the Nom. in Latin is the same as in English.

REMARK.—The subj. of the Infinitive is in the Accusative (343, 2).

**204.** The subject may be a substantive or a pronoun, or some other word, phrase, or clause used as a substantive :

*Deus mundum gubernat*, GOD *steers the universe*.

*Ego rēgēs ēieci*, [C.] *ad Her.*, iv. 53, 66 ; I *drove out kings*.

*Sapiēs rēs adversās nōn timet*, THE SAGE *does not fear adversity*.

*Victi in servitūtem rediguntur*, THE VANQUISHED *are reduced to slavery*.

*Contendisse decōrum est*, *Ov.*, *M.*, ix. 6 ; TO HAVE STRUGGLED *is honorable*.

REMARKS.—1. Masculine and feminine adjectives, and participles, are often used as substantives : *pauperēs*, *the poor* ; *divitēs*, *the rich*.

This is very rare in the Nom. Sing., where the substantive should be expressed : *vir pauper*, *a poor man* ; *mulier peregrina*, *a foreign woman*. So regularly, if a *proper name* is added : *Platō, doctissimus homō*, *the learned Plato*.

2. Neuter adjectives and participles are freely employed as substantives in both numbers : *medium*, *the midst* ; *extrēmum*, *the end* ; *futūrum*, *the future* ; *bonum*, *good* ; *bona*, *blessings, possessions* ; *malum*, *evil* ; *mala*, *misfortunes*.

3. Adjectives of the Second Declension are sometimes used as neuter substantives in the Gen., after words of quantity or pronouns : *aliquid boni*, *something good* ; *nihil mali*, *nothing bad*.

4. Instead of the neuter adjective, the word *rēs*, *thing*, is frequently used, especially in forms which are identical for different genders, and consequently ambiguous ; so *bonārū rārū*, *of blessings*, rather than *bonōrum* (masc. and neut.).

5. In Latin the Pl. of abstract substantives occurs more frequently than in English ; *adventūs imperātorū*, *the arrival(s) of the generals* (because there were several generals, or because they arrived at different times). Abstract substantives often become concrete in the plural : *fortitudinēs*, *gallant actions* ; *formidīnēs*, *bugbears* ; *irae*, *quarrels*.

**205. PREDICATE AND COPULA.**—When the predicate is not in the form of a verb, the so-called copula (i. e. coupler) is generally employed, in order to couple the predicate with the subject. The chief copula is the verb *sum*, *I am*.

*Fortūna caeca est*, *C.*, *Lael.* 15, 54 ; *fortune is blind*.

*Ūsus magister est optimus*, *C.*, *Rab. Post.*, 4, 9 ; *practice is the best teacher*.

NOTE.—Strictly speaking, the copula is itself a predicate, as is shown by the translation when it stands alone or with an adverb : *est Deus, there is a God, God exists ; rēctē semper erunt rēa, things will always be (go on) well ; sic vita hominum est, C., Rosc. Am., 30, 84 ; such is human life ; " So runs the world away."*

206. Other copulative verbs are : *vidēri, to seem ; nasci, to be born ; fieri, to become ; evādere, to turn out ; creāri, to be created ; dēligi, to be chosen ; putāri, to be thought ; habēri, to be held ; dici, to be said ; appellāri, to be called ; nōmināri, to be named.* Hence the rule :

Verbs of *seeming, becoming*, with the passive of verbs of *making, choosing, showing, thinking, and calling*, take two Nominatives, one of the subject, one of the predicate :

*Nēmō nascitur dives, SEN., E.M., 20, 13 ; no one is born rich.*

*Aristidēs iustus appellātur, Cf. NEP., iii. 1, 4 ; Aristides is called just.*

*Thūcydidēs numquam est numerātus ōrātor, C., O., 9, 31 ; Thucydides has never been accounted an orator.*

REMARKS.—1. All copulative verbs retain the Nom. with the Inf. after auxiliary verbs (423).

*Beātus esse sine virtūte nēmō potest, C., N.D., 1. 18, 48 ; no one can be happy without virtue.*

2. On the Double Acc. after Active Verbs, see 340.

207. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The personal pronoun is not expressed in classical prose, unless it is emphatic, as, for example, in contrasts, or when the subject changes :

*Amāmus parentēs, We love (our) parents.*

*Ego rēgēs ēlēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcītis, [C.] ad Her., iv. 53, 66 ; I drove out kings, ye are bringing in tyrants.*

208. IMPERSONAL VERBS.—Impersonal Verbs are verbs in which the person is not expressed. Chief of these are :

1. Verbs pertaining to the state of the weather : *tonat, it thunders, the thunder thunders, or rather, the Thunderer thunders ; fulget, it lightens ; pluit, it rains ; ningit, it snows, etc.*

*Nocte pluit tōtā, V., (POET. LAT. MIN., iv. 155, B.) ; all night it (he, Jupiter) rains.*

2. The passive of intransitive verbs is often used impersonally ; so regularly of verbs which in the active are construed with the Dat. (217) : *vivitur, people live ; curritur, there is a running ; pugnātur, there is a battle ; mihi invidetur, I am envied.* The subject is contained in the verb itself : *pugnātur = pūgna pūgnātur, a battle is (being) fought.*

**209. COPULA OMITTED.**—*Est* or *sunt* is often omitted in proverbs, in short statements and questions, and in tenses compounded with participles :

*Summum iſs ſumma iniſuria*, C., *Off.*, I. 10, 33 ; *the height of right (is) the height of wrong.*

*Nemo malus felix*, JUV., IV. 8 ; *no bad man (is) happy.*

So also *esse*, with participles and the like :

*Caesar ſtatuit exſpectandam clāſſem*, CAES., *B.G.*, III. 14, 1 ; *Caesar reſolved that the fleet muſt be waited for.*

### CONCORD.

**210. THE THREE CONCORDS.**—There are three great concords in Latin :

1. The agreement of the predicate with the subject (211).
2. The agreement of attributive or appositive with the substantive (285, 321).
3. The agreement of the relative with antecedent (614).

### 211. Agreement of the Predicate with the Subject.

The verbal predicate agrees with its subject { in number and person.

The adjective predicate agrees with its subject { in number, gender, and case.

The substantive predicate agrees with its subject in case.

*Substantiva mōbilia* (21, 2) are treated as adjectives, and follow the number and gender of the subject ; as C., *Or.*, I. 4, 13 (321).

*Ego* (207) *rēgēs āſci, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcitis*, [C.] *ad Her.*, IV. 53, 66 ; *I drove out kings, ye are bringing in tyrants.*

*Verae amicitiae ſempiternae ſunt*, C., *Lael.*, 9, 32 ; *true friendships are abiding.*

*Dōs eſt decem talenta*, TER., *And.*, 950 ; *the dowry is ten talents.*

REMARKS.—1. The violation of the rules of agreement is due chiefly to one of two cauſes ; *either* the natural relation is preferred to the artificial (*conſtruction according to the ſenſe*), or the nearer is preferred to the more reinote. Hence the following

EXCEPTIONS.—(a) Subſtantives of multitude often take the predicate in the Plural : *pars*, *part* ; *vis* (*power*), *quantity* ; *multitūdō*, *crowd* ; organized bodies more rarely.

*Pars maior reſperant ſeſe*, L., XXXIV. 47, 6 ; *the greater part had retired.*

*Omnis multitūdō abeunt*, L., XXIV. 3, 15 ; *all the crowd depart.*

(b) The adjective predicate often follows the natural gender of the subject ; so especially with *millia*.

*Capita coniuratiōnis virgīs caesi sunt*, L., x. 1, 3 ; *the heads of the conspiracy were flogged*.

*Samnitium caesi tria millia*, Cf. L., x. 34, 3 ; *of the Samnites (there) were slain three thousand*.

The passive verb often agrees in gender with the predicate : *Nōn omnis error stultitia dicenda est*, C., Div., II. 43, 90 ; *not every false step is to be called folly*.

(c) The copula often agrees with the number of the predicate ("the wages of sin is death") :

*Amantium irae* (204, R. 5) *amōris integratiō est*, TER., *And.*, 555 ; *lovers' quarrels are love's renewal*.

2. A superlative adjective defined by a Partitive Gen. follows the gender of the subj. when it precedes :

*Indus, qui est omnium flūminum māximus*, C., *N.D.*, II. 52, 130 ; *the Indus, which is the greatest of all rivers*.

(3) 4. The neuter adjective is often used as the substantive predicate of a masculine or feminine subject :

*Triste lupus stabulis*, V., *Ec.*, 3, 80 ; *the wolf is a baleful thing to the folds*.

*Varium et mutabile semper femina*, V., *A.*, IV. 569 ; *"a thing of moods and fancies" is woman ever*.

5. The demonstrative pronoun is commonly attracted into the gender of the predicate :

*Ea nōn media sed nulla via est*, L., XXXII., 21, 33 ; *that is not a middle course, but no course at all*.

But in negative sentences, and when the pronoun is the predicate, there is no change. So in definitions :

*Quid aut quale est Deus?* Cf. C., *N.D.*, I. 22, 60 ; *what or what manner of thing is God?*

6. The adjective predicate sometimes agrees with a substantive in apposition to the subject. So especially when the appositive is *oppidum*, *civitas*, and the like :

*Corioli oppidum captum est*, L., II. 33, 9 ; *Corioli-town was taken*.

## Forms of the Verbal Predicate.

### VOICES OF THE VERB.

212. There are two voices in Latin—Active and Passive.

213. ACTIVE.—The Active Voice denotes that the *action proceeds from the subject*. Verbs used in the Active Voice fall into two classes, as follows :

Verbs are called *Transitive* when their action *goes over* to an object (*trānseō, I go over*) ; *Intransitive* when their action *does not go beyond* the subject: *occidere, to fell = to kill* (Transitive); *occidere, to fall* (Intransitive).

REMARK.—(a) Transitive verbs are often used intransitively, in which case they serve simply to characterize the agent. This is true especially of verbs of *movement*; as *dēclināre, inclināre, movēre, mūtāre, vertere*, and the like.

(b) On the other hand, many intransitive verbs are often used transitively. In this case the Acc. is usually the *inner* object (332).

**214. PASSIVE.**—The Passive Voice denotes that the *subject receives the action* of the verb.

The instrument is put in the Ablative. •

*Virgis caedētur, C., Verr., III. 28, 69 ; he shall be beaten with rods.*

*Ignis lūmine prōditur suū, Ov., Her., 15, 8 ; the fire is betrayed by its own light.*

The agent is put in the Ablative with **ab** (**ā**).

*Ab amicis prōdimur, C., Cluent., 52, 143 ; we are betrayed by friends.*

*Virgis caesi tribūni ab lēgātō sunt, L., XXIX. 18, 13 ; the tribunes were beaten with rods by the lieutenant.*

REMARKS.—1. Intrans. verbs of passive signification are construed as passives: *famē perire, C., Inv., II. 57, 172, to perish of hunger. So vēnīre, to be sold ; vāpulāre* (chiefly vulgar), *to be beaten, ab aliquō, by some one.*

2. When the instrument is considered as an agent, or the agent as an instrument, the constructions are reversed:

*Vinci & Voluptāte, C., Off., I. 20, 68 ; to be overcome by Dame Pleasure.*

*Patriciis invenibus saepserant latera, L., III. 37, 6 ; they had flanked him with a guard of patrician youths.*

Animals, as independent agents, are treated like persons.

*Ā cane nōn mīgnō saepe tenētur aper, Ov., Rem. Am., 422 ; a boar is often held fast by a little dog.*

Animals, as instruments, are treated like things.

Compare *equō vehī, to ride a horse (to be borne by a horse)*, with *in equō, on horseback*.

**215.** The person in whose interest an action is done is put in the Dative. Hence the frequent inference that the person interested is the agent. See 354.

1. With the Perfect passive it is the *natural* inference, and common in prose.

*Carmina nulla mihi sunt scripta*, Ov., *Tr.*, v. 12, 35 ; *poems—I have none written* (I have written no poems).

2. With the Gerundive it is the *necessary* inference, and the Dative is the rule.

*Nihil est homini tam timendum quam invidia*, C., *Cluent.*, 3, 7 ; *there is nothing that one has to fear to the same extent as envy*.

216. The Direct Object of the Active Verb (the Accusative Case) becomes the Subject of the Passive.

*Alexander Dārēum vicit*, *Alexander conquered Darius*.

*Dārēus ab Alexandrō victus est*, *Darius was conquered by Alexander*.

217. The Indirect Object of the Active Verb (Dative Case) cannot be properly used as the Subject of the Passive. The Dative remains unchanged, and the verb becomes a Passive in the Third Person Singular (Impersonal Verb). This Passive form may have a neuter subject corresponding to the Inner object (333, 1).

Active : *Miseri invident bonis*, *The wretched envy the well-to-do*.

Passive :	<i>mihi invidetur</i> , <i>I am envied</i> ,	} <i>ab aliquō, by some one.</i>
	<i>tibi invidetur</i> , <i>thou art envied</i> ,	
	<i>ei invidetur</i> , <i>he is envied</i> ,	
	<i>nōbīs invidetur</i> , <i>we are envied</i> ,	
	<i>vōbīs invidetur</i> , <i>you are envied</i> ,	
	<i>is invidetur</i> , <i>they are envied</i> ,	

*Nihil facile persuādetur invitis*, QUINT., IV. 3, 10 ; *people are not easily persuaded of anything against their will*.

*Animis nostris plūs quam animis crēditur*, SEN., *Ben.*, III. 15, 3 ; *our seals are more trusted than our souls*.

218. REFLEXIVE.—Reflexive relations, when emphatic, are expressed as in English :

*Omne animal se ipsum diligit*, C., *Fin.*, v. 9, 24 ; *Every living creature loves itself*.

But when the reflexive relation is more general, the passive is employed : *lavor*, *I bathe*, *I bathe myself*.

*Pūgāri nequiverunt*, Cf. L., XXIV. 18, 4 ; *they could not clear themselves*.

**219.** The passive in its reflexive sense is often used to express an action which the subject suffers or causes to be done to itself: *trahor*, *I let myself be dragged*; *tondeor*, *I have myself shaved*.

*Sine gemitu adürantur*, C., *Tusc.*, v. 27, 77; *they let themselves be burned without a moan*.

*Ipse docet quid agam*; *fās est et ab hoste doceri*, Ov., *M.*, iv. 428; *he himself teaches (me) what to do*; *it is (but) right to let oneself be taught even by an enemy (to take a lesson from a foe)*.

**220.** DEPONENT.—The Deponent is a passive form which has lost, in most instances, its passive (or reflexive) signification: *hortor*, *I am exhorting* (trans.); *morior*, *I am dying* (intrans.).

**221.** RECIPROCAL.—Reciprocal relations (“one another”) are expressed by *inter*, *among*, and the personal pronouns, *nōs*, *us*; *vōs*, *you*; *sē*, *themselves*.

*Inter sē amant*, C., *Q.F.* iii. 3, 1: *they love one another*.

## TENSES.

**222.** The Tenses express the relations of time, embracing:

1. The stage of the action (duration in time).
2. The period of the action (position in time).

The first tells whether the action is *going on*, or *finished*. The second tells whether the action is *past*, *present*, or *future*.

Both these sets of relations are expressed by the tenses of the Indicative or Declarative mood—less clearly by the Subjunctive.

**223.** There are six tenses in Latin:

1. The *Present*, denoting *continuance* in the *present*.
2. The *Future*, denoting *continuance* in the *future*.
3. The *Imperfect*, denoting *continuance* in the *past*.
4. The *Perfect*, denoting *completion* in the *present*.
5. The *Future Perfect*, denoting *completion* in the *future*.
6. The *Pluperfect*, denoting *completion* in the *past*.

**224.** An action may further be regarded simply as *attained*, i.e. as an *occurrence* without reference to its *continuance* or *completion*.

This is the *aoristic* or *indefinite* stage of the action, which has no especial tense-form. It is expressed by the Present tense for the present; by the Future and Future Perfect tenses for the future; and by the Perfect tense for the past.

Of especial importance are the *Indefinite* or *Historical* Present and the *Indefinite* or *Historical* Perfect (Aorist), which differ materially in syntax from the *Definite* or *Pure* Present and Perfect.

**225.** The Tenses are divided into *Principal* and *Historical*. The *Principal Tenses* have to do with the Present and Future. The *Historical Tenses* have to do with the Past.

The Present, Pure Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect are *Principal Tenses*.

The Historical Present, Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Historical Perfect are *Historical Tenses*.

## 226. Table of Temporal Relations.

ACTIVE.		
	<i>Continuance.</i>	<i>Completion.</i>
PRES.	scribō, <i>I am writing.</i>	scripsi, <i>I have written.</i>
FUT.	scribam, <i>I shall be writing.</i>	scripserō, <i>I shall have written.</i>
PAST.	scripsēbam, <i>I was writing.</i>	scripseram, <i>I had written.</i>
		<i>Attainment.</i>
		scribō, <i>I write.</i>
		scribam (scripserō), <i>I shall write.</i>
		scripsi, <i>I wrote.</i>
PASSIVE.		
	<i>Continuance.</i>	<i>Completion.</i>
PRES.	scribitur (epistula), <i>The letter is written (writing).</i>	scripta est, <i>has been written, is written.</i>
FUT.	scribētur, <i>The letter will be written (writing).</i>	scripta erit, <i>will have been, will be written.</i>
PAST.	scribēbatur, <i>The letter was written (writing).</i>	scripta erat, <i>had been written, was written.</i>
		<i>Attainment.</i>
		scribitur, <i>is written.</i>
		scribētur, <i>will be written.</i>
		scripta est, <i>was written.</i>



**REMARK.**—The English passive is ambiguous. The same form is currently used for continuance, attainment, and completion. The context alone can decide. A convenient test is the substitution of the active.

*A letter was written* : { Continuance, *Some one was writing* a letter.  
 { Completion, *Some one had written* a letter.  
 { Attainment, *Some one wrote* a letter.

### Present Tense.

**227.** The Present Tense is used as in English of *that which is going on now* (Specific Present), and of statements *that apply to all time* (Universal Present).

Specific Present :

*Auribus teneō lupum*, TER., Ph., 506 ; *I am holding a wolf by the ears.*

Universal Present :

*Probitās laudatur et alget*, JUV., I. 74 ; *honesty is bepraised and freezes.*

So regularly of the quoted views of authors, the inscriptions of books, etc. :

*Dē iuvenum amore scribit Alcaeus*, C., Tusc., IV. 33, 71 ; *Alcaeus writes concerning the love of youths.*

**REMARK.**—1. The Pr. like the Impf. (233) is sometimes used of *attempted or intended action* (*Present of Endeavor*). But do not mistake the Endeavor that lies in the *verb* for the Endeavor that lies in the *tense*.

*Periculum vitant*, C., Rosc. Am., I. 1 ; *they are trying to avoid danger.*

2. The Pr. when used with a negative often denotes *Resistance to Pressure* (233) ; this is, however, colloquial : *Taceō ; nōn taceō*, PL., Cas., 826 ; *keep quiet ! I won't.*

**228.** The Present Tense is used more rarely than in English *in anticipation of the future*, chiefly in compound sentences :

*Si vincimus, omnia tūta erunt*, S., C., 58, 9 ; *if we conquer (= shall have conquered) everything will be safe.*

**229.** The Present Tense is used far more frequently than in English, *as a lively representation of the past* (Historical Present) :

*Cohortis incēdere iubet*, S., C., 60, 1 ; *he orders the cohorts to advance.*

**230.** The Present is used in Latin of actions *that are continued into the present*, especially with **iam**, *now*; **iam diū**, *now for a long time*; **iam pridem**, *now long since*. In English we often translate by a Progressive Perfect.

**Mithridātes annum iam tertium et vicēsimum rēgnat**, C., *Imp.*, 3, 7; *Mithridates has been reigning now going on twenty-three years.*

**Liberāre vōs & Philippō iam diū magis vultis quam audētis**, L., XXXII. 21, 36; *you have this long time had the wish rather than (= though not) the courage to deliver yourselves from Philip.*

"How does your honor for this many a day?" SHAK., *Ham.*, III. i, 91.

### Imperfect Tense.

**231.** The Imperfect Tense denotes *continuance in the past*: **pūgnābam**, *I was fighting.*

The Imperfect is employed to represent *manners, customs, situations*; to describe and to particularize.

The Imperfect and the Historical Perfect serve to illustrate one another. The Imperfect dwells on the *process*; the Historical Perfect states the *result*. The Imperfect counts out the *items*; the Historical Perfect gives the *sum*.

**232.** The two tenses are often so combined that the general statement is given by the Historical Perfect, the particulars of the action by the Imperfect:

**Verrēs in forum vēnit; ardēbant oculi; tōtō ex ōre crudēlītās ēminēbat**, C., *Verr.*, v. 62, 161; *Verres came into the forum, his eyes were blazing, cruelty was standing out from his whole countenance.*

**233.** The Imperfect is used of *attempted and interrupted, intended and expected actions (Imperfect of Endeavor).*

It is the Tense of *Disappointment* and (with the negative) of *Resistance to Pressure*. (Merēnegation is regularly Perfect.)

**Cūriam relinqūēbat**, TAC., *Ann.*, II. 34, 1; *he was for leaving the senate-house.*

**Lēx abrogābātur**, Cf. L., XXXIV. 1, 7; *the law was to be abrogated.*

**Aditum nōn dabat**, NEP., IV. 3, 8; *he would not grant access (nōn dedit, DID not).*

REMARKS.—1. With definite numbers, however large, the Hist. Pf. must be used, unless there is a notion of continuance into another stage (overlapping).

**Gorgiās centum et novem vixit annōs**, QUINT., III. 1, 9 ; *Gorgias lived one hundred and nine years.*

2. As the Tense of Disappointment, the Impf. is occasionally used, as in Greek, to express a startling appreciation of the real state of things (*Imperfect of Awakening*). Greek influence is not unlikely.

**Tū aderās**, TER., *Ph.*, 858 ; (so it turns out that) *you were here* (all the time).

**234.** The Imperfect is used as the English Pluperfect, which often takes a progressive translation ; especially with **iam, iam diū, iam dūdum**.

**Iam dūdum tibi adversābar**, PL., *Men.*, 420 ; *I had long been opposing you.*

**Archias domicilium Rōmæ multōs iam annōs habēbat**, Cf. C., *Arch.*, 4, 7 ; *Archias had been domiciled at Rome now these many years.*

REMARK.—As the Hist. Pr. is used in lively *narrative*, so the Hist. Inf. is used in lively *description*, parallel with the Imperfect (647).

### Perfect Tense.

The Perfect Tense has two distinct uses :

1. Pure Perfect.
2. Historical Perfect (Aorist).

#### 1. PURE PERFECT.

**235.** The Pure Perfect Tense expresses *completion in the Present*, and hence is sometimes called the Present Perfect.

**236.** The Pure Perfect is used :

1. Of an action that is now *over and gone*.

**Viximus**, C., *Fam.*, XIV. 4, 5 ; *we have lived* (life for us has been).

**Filium unicum habeo, inmo habui**, TER., *Heaut.*, 94 ; *I have an only son—nay, have had an only son.*

2. Far more frequently of the present result of a more remote action (*resulting condition*) :

**Actumst, peristi**, TER., *Eun.*, 54 ; *it is all over ; you're undone.*

**Equum et mulum Brundisii tibi reliqui**, C., *Fam.*, XVI. 9, 3 ; *I have left a horse and mule for you at Brundisium—(they are still there).*

REMARK.—The Pure Pf. is often translated by the English Present : *nōvī*, *I have become acquainted with, I know* ; *meminī*, *I have recalled, I remember* ; *odī*, *I have conceived a hatred of, I hate* ; *cōsuevī*, *I have made it a rule, I am accustomed, etc.*

*Odērant hilarem tristēs tristēque iocōsū*, H., *Ep.*, I. 18, 89 ; *the long-faced hate the lively man, the jokers hate the long-faced man.*

**237.** As the Present stands for the Future (228), so the Perfect stands for the Future Perfect.

*Brūtus si cōservātus erit, vicimus*, C., *Fam.*, XII. 6, 2 ; *Brutus !—if he is saved, we are victorious, we (shall) have gained the victory.*

**238.** *Habeō* or *teneō*, *I hold, I have*, with the Accusative of the Perfect Participle Passive, lays peculiar stress on the maintenance of the result.

*Habeō statūtum*, Cf. C., *Verr.*, III. 41, 95 ; *I have resolved, and hold to my resolution.*

*Excūsātum habeās mē rogo, cēno domī*, MART., II. 79, 2 ; *I pray you have me excused, I dine at home.*

## 2. HISTORICAL PERFECT.

**239.** The Historical or Indefinite Perfect (Aorist) states a past action, without reference to its duration, simply as a thing attained, an occurrence.

*Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī*, SUET., *Iul.*, 37 ; *I came, saw, overcame.*

*Milō domum vēnit, calceōs et vestimenta mūtāvit, paulisper commorātus est*, C., *Mil.*, 10, 28 ; *Milo came home, changed shoes and garments, tarried a little while.*

*Gorgiās centum et novem vixit annōs*, QUINT., III. 1, 9 ; *Gorgias lived one hundred and nine years.*

**240.** The Historical Perfect is the great narrative tense of the Latin language, and is best studied in long connected passages, and by careful comparison with the Imperfect.

## Pluperfect Tense.

**241.** The Pluperfect denotes *Completion in the Past*, and is used of an action that was completed before another was begun. It is, so to speak, the Perfect of the Imperfect. Hence it is used :

1. Of an action *just concluded* in the past.

**Modo Caesarem regnantem videramus**, C., *Ph.*, II. 42, 108; *we had just seen Caesar on the throne.*

2. Of an action that was *over and gone*.

**Fuerat inimicus**, C., *Red. in Sen.*, 10, 26; *he had been my enemy.*

3. Of a *resulting condition* in the past.

**Massilienses portas Caesari clausurant**, CAES., *B.C.*, I. 34, 4; *the Marseillians had shut their gates against Caesar.* (Their gates were shut.)

REMARK.—When the *Pf.* is translated by an English *Pr.* (286, 2, *n.*), the *Plupf.* is translated by an English *Imperfect*: **noveram**, *I had become acquainted with, I knew*; **memineram**, *I remembered*; **oderam**, *I hated*; **consueveram**, *I was accustomed, etc.*

### Future Tense.

242. The Future Tense denotes *Continuance in the Future*: **scribam**, *I shall be writing.*

The Future Tense is also used to express indefinite action in the Future: **scribam**, *I shall write.*

REMARKS.—1. In subordinate clauses the Latin language is often more exact than the English in the expression of future relations.

**Dñec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos**, Ov., *Tr.*, I. 9, 5; *so long as you shall be (are) happy, you will count many friends.*

2. Observe especially the verbs **possum**, *I can*, and **volō**, *I will*.

**Ōdero si poterō; si nōn, invitus amābō**, Ov., *Am.*, III. 11, 35; *I will hate if I shall be able (can); if not, I shall love against my will.*

**Qui adipisci veram glōriam volet, iustitiae fungatur officis**, C., *Off.*, II. 13, 43; *whoso shall wish to obtain true glory, let him discharge the calls of justice.*

243. The Future is used in an imperative sense, as in English, chiefly in familiar language.

**Tū nihil dicēs**, II., *A.P.*, 385; *you will (are to) say nothing (do you say nothing).*

**Cum volet, accēdēs; cum tē vitābit, abibis**, Ov., *A.A.*, II. 529; *when she wants you, approach; and when she avoids you, begone, sir.*

Similar is the Future in Asseverations (comic).

**Ita mē amābit Iūppiter**, PL., *Trin.*, 447; *so help me Jove!*

### Future Perfect Tense.

**244.** The Future Perfect is the Perfect, both Pure and Historical, transferred to the future, and embraces both *completion* and *attainment*; *fēcerō*, TER., *Ph.*, 882; *I shall have done it*, or *I shall do it* (once for all); *prōfēcerit*, C., *Fin.*, III. 4, 14; *it will prove profitable*.

REMARKS.—1. Hence, when the Pf. is used as a Pr., the Fut. Pf. is used as a Future: *nōverō*, *I shall know*; *cōnsuſverō*, *I shall be accused*; *ōdero, si poterō*, OV., *Am.*, III. 11, 35; *I will hate if I can*.

2. In subordinate sentences, the Latin language is more exact than the English in the use of the Fut. Perfect; hence, when one action precedes another in the future, the action that precedes is expressed by the Fut. Perfect.

*Qui prior strinxerit ferrum, sine victoria erit*, L., XXIV. 38, 5; *who first draws the sword, his shall be the victory*.

3. The Fut. Pf. is frequently used in *volō*, *I will*; *nōlō*, *I will not*; *possum*, *I can*; *licet*, *it is left free*; *libet*, *it is agreeable*; *placet*, *it is the pleasure*; whereas the English idiom familiarly employs the Present.

*Si potuerō, faciam vobis satia*, C., *Br.*, 5, 21; *if I can, I shall satisfy you*.

4. The Fut. Pf. in both clauses denotes simultaneous accomplishment or attainment; one action involves the other.

*Ea vitia qui fugerit, is omnia ferē vitia vitaverit*, C., *Or.*, 69, 281; *he who shall have escaped these faults, will have avoided almost all faults*.

**245.** As the Future is used as an Imperative, so the Future Perfect approaches the Imperative.

*Dē tē tū videris*; *ego dē mē ipse profitēbor*, C., *Ph.*, II. 46, 118; *do you see to yourself*; *I myself will define my position*.

### Periphrastic Tenses.

**246.** The Periphrastic Tenses are formed by combining the various tenses of *esse*, *to be*, with participles and verbal adjectives. See 129.

#### I. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

**247.** The Periphrastic Tenses of the Active are chiefly combinations of *esse* and its forms with the so-called Future Participle Active. The Future Participle is a verbal adjective denoting *capability* and *tendency*. Compare *amātor* and *amātūrus*. The translation is very various:

1. *Scriptūrus sum*, *I am about to write, I am to write, I purpose to write, I am likely to write.*
2. *Scriptūrus eram*, *I was about to write, etc.*
3. *Scriptūrus fui*, *I have been or was about to write (often = I should have written).*
4. *Scriptūrus fueram*, *I had been about to write, etc.*
5. *Scriptūrus erō*, *I shall be about to write, etc.*
6. *Scriptūrus fuerō*, *I shall have made up my mind to write, etc.* (of course very rare).

1. *Fiet illud quod futūrum est*, C., *Div.*, II. 8, 21 ; *what is to be, will be.*
2. *Rēx nōn interfutūrus nāvālī certāminī erat*, L., XXXVI. 43, 9 ; *the king did not intend to be present at the naval combat.*
3. *Fascīs ipsī ad mē dēlātūrī fuērunt*, C., *Ph.*, XIV. 6, 15 ; *they themselves were ready to tender the fasces to me.*
4. *Maior Rōmānōrum grātia fuit quam quanta futūra Carthāginiēnsium fuerat*, L., XXI. 22, 19 ; *the Romans' credit for this was greater than the Carthaginians' would have been.*
5. *Eōrum apud quōs aget aut erit scētūrus, mentēs sēnsūsque dēgustet*, C., *Or.*, I. 52, 223 ; *he must taste-and-test the state of mind of those before whom he will plead or will have to plead.*
6. *Sapiēns nōn vivet, si fuerit sine homine victūrus*, SEN., *E.M.*, 9, 17 ; *The wise man will not continue to live, if he finds that he is to live without human society.* (The only example cited, and that doubtful.)

REMARKS.—1. The forms with *sum*, *eram*, and the corresponding Subjv. forms with *sim*, *essem*, are much more common than those with *fui*, *etc.*, probably for euphonic reasons.

2. The Subjv. and Inf. *scriptūrus sim*, *essem*, *fuerim*, *fuissem*, *scriptūrum esse*, *fuisse*, are of great importance in subordinate clauses. (656.)

## II. PERIPHRASTIC TENSES OF THE PASSIVE.

### A.—Of Future Relations.

248. The periphrases *futūrum esse* (more often *fore*) *ut*, (*that*) *it is to be that*, and *futūrum fuisse ut*, (*that*) *it was to be that*, with the Subjunctive, are very commonly used to take the place of the Future Infinitive Active ; necessarily so when the verb forms no Future Participle. In the passive they are more common than the Supine with *iri*.

*Spērō fore ut contingat id nobis*, C., *Tusc.*, I. 34, 82 ; *I hope that we shall have that good fortune.*

*In fātis scriptum Vſientēs habēbant fore ut ā Gallis Rōma caperētur*, C., *Div.*, I. 44, 100 ; *the Veientes had it written down in their prophetic books that Rome would be taken by the Gauls.*

REMARK.—*Posse*, to be able, and *velle*, to will, on account of their future sense, do not require a periphrasis. In the absence of periphrastic forms, the forms of *posse* are often used instead. (656, R.)

249. In *eō* est, it is on the point, } ut, that (of), with  
           erat, } was (Impersonal), } the Subjunctive.  
           fuit, }

In *eō* erat ut *Pausaniās* comprehenderetur, NEP., IV. 5, 1; it was on the point that *Pausanias* should be (*Pausanias* was on the point of being) arrested.

#### B.—Of Past Relations.

250. The Perfect Participle passive is used in combination with *sum*, *I am*, and *fui*, *I have been*, *I was*, to express the Pure Perfect and Historical Perfect of the Passive Voice. *Eram*, *I was*, and *fuera*m, *I had been*, stand for the Pluperfect; and *erō*, *I shall be*, and *fuero*, *I shall have been*, for the Future Perfect.

REMARKS.—1. *Fui* is the favorite form when the participle is frequently used as an adjective: *convivium exornatum fuit*, the banquet was furnished forth; *fui* is the necessary form when the Pf. denotes that the action is over and gone: *amatus fui*, I have been loved (but I am loved no longer).

*Arma quae fixa in parietibus fuerant, ea sunt humi inventa*, C., Div., I. 34, 74; the arms which had been fastened to the walls, were found on the ground.

*Quod tibi fuerit persuasum, huic erit persuasum*, C., Rose. Com., I, 3; what is (shall have proved) acceptable to you will be acceptable to him.

2. To be distinguished is that use of the Pf. where each element has its full force, the Participle being treated as an adjective. In this case the tense is not past.

*Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres*, CAES., B.G., I, 1: Gaul as a whole is divided into three parts.

#### C.—Periphrastic Conjugation—Passive Voice.

251. 1. The combination of the Tenses of *esse*, to be, with the Gerundive (verbal in *-ndus*), is called the Periphrastic Conjugation of the Passive, and follows the laws of the simple conjugation (129). The idea expressed is usually one of necessity.

*Præponenda est divitis gloria*, C., Top., 22, 84; glory is to be preferred to riches.



2. According to the rule (217) the Gerundive of intransitive verbs can be used only in the Impersonal form.

*Parcendum est victis, The vanquished must be spared.*

### TENSES IN LETTERS.

252. The Roman letter-writer not unfrequently puts himself in the position of the receiver, more especially at the beginning and at the end of the letter, often in the phrase *Nihil erat (habēbam) quod scriberem, I have nothing to write*. This permutation of tenses is never kept up long, and applies only to temporary situations, never to general statements.

#### Table of Permutations.

<i>scribō,</i>	<i>I am writing,</i>	becomes	<i>scribēbam.</i>
	<i>I write,</i>	“	<i>scripsi.</i>
<i>scripsi,</i>	<i>I have written,</i>	“	<i>scripseram.</i>
	<i>I wrote,</i>	“	<i>scripseram</i> or <i>is unchanged.</i>
<i>scribam,</i>	<i>I shall write,</i>	“	<i>scripturus eram.</i>

The adverbial designations of time remain unchanged—or

<i>heri,</i>	<i>yesterday,</i>	becomes	<i>pridie.</i>
<i>hodie,</i>	<i>to-day,</i>	“	<i>quō diē hās litterās dedi, dabam.</i>
<i>crās,</i>	<i>to-morrow,</i>	“	<i>posterō diē, postridiē.</i>
<i>nunc,</i>	<i>now,</i>	“	<i>tum.</i>

*Formiās mē continuō recipere cōgitābam, C., Att., vii. 15, 3; I am thinking of retiring forthwith to Formiæ.*

*Litterās eram datūrus postridiē ei qui mihi primus obviam vēnisset, C., Att., ii. 12, 4; I will give the letter to-morrow to the first man that comes my way.*

### MOODS.

253. Mood signifies manner. The mood of a verb signifies the manner in which the predicate is said of the subject.

There are three moods in Latin :

1. The Indicative.
2. The Subjunctive.
3. The Imperative.

NOTE.—The Infinitive form of the verb is generally, but improperly, called a mood.

## The Indicative Mood.

**254.** The Indicative Mood represents the predicate *as a reality*. It is sometimes called the Declarative Mood, as the mood of direct assertion.

The use of the Latin Indicative differs little from the English.

REMARKS.—1. The Latin language expresses *possibility* and *power*, *obligation* and *necessity*, and abstract relations generally, as *facts*; whereas, our translation often *implies the failure to realize*.

Such expressions are: *dēbeō*, *I ought, it is my duty*; *oportet*, *it behooves*; *neceſse eſt*, *it is absolutely necessary*; *poſſum*, *I can, I have it in my power*; *convenit*, *it is fitting*; *pār, æquum eſt*, *it is fair*; *infinitum*, *endless*; *difficile*, *hard to do*; *longum*, *tedious*; and many others; also the Indic. form of the passive Periphrastic Conjugation.

*Possum persequi permulta oblectamenta rerum rusticarum*, C., *Cat. M.*, 16, 55; *I might rehearse very many delights of country life*.

Observe the difference between the use of the Inf. in Eng. and in Latin after past tenses of *dēbeō*, *poſſum*, *oportet*, etc.

*Ad mortem tē dūci oportēbat*, C., *Cat.*, I. 1, 2; *it behooved you to be (you ought to have been) led to execution (you were not)*.

*Volumnia dēbuit in tē officiōſior eſſe*, C., *Fam.*, XIV. 16; *it was Volumnia's duty to be (V. ought to have been) more attentive to you*.

2. The Impf. as the Tense of Disappointment (233) is sometimes used in these verbs to denote opposition to a present state of things: *dēbēbam*, *I ought (but do not)*; *poterās*, *you could (but do not)*. These may be considered as conditionals in disguise. (See R. 3.)

*Poteram morbos appellare, sed nōn conveniret ad omnia*, C., *Fin.*, III. 10, 35; *I might translate (that Greek word) "diseases," but that would not suit all the cases (poteram si conveniret)*.

3. The Impf. Indic. is sometimes used in unreal conditional Apodoses like the Periphrastic Impf. and the Plupf. like the Periphrastic Plupf.: so *lābēbar* = *lāpſurus eram*; *vicerāmus* = *victūri fuerāmus*. (See 597, R. 2.)

4. In general relative expressions, such as *quisquis*, *no matter who*, *quotquot*, *no matter how many*, and all forms in *-cumque*, *-ever*, the Indic. is employed in classical Latin where we may use in English a Subjv. or its equivalent: *quisquis eſt*, *no matter who he is, be, may be*; *quæcumque eſt*, *whatever sort of thing it is, be, may be*.

*Quidquid id eſt, timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentēs*, V., A., II. 49; *whatever it (may) be, I fear the Danai even when they bring presents*.

### Subjunctive Mood.

**255.** The Subjunctive Mood represents the Predicate *as an idea*, as something merely conceived in the mind.

REMARK.—The Latin Subjv. is often translated into English by the auxiliary verbs *may, can, must, might, could, would, should*. When these verbs have their full signification of *possibility* and *power, obligation* and *necessity*, they are represented in Latin by the corresponding verbs, thus : *may, can, might, could* by the forms of *posse*, to be *able, licet, it is left free* ; *will* and *would* by *velle, to will, to be willing* ; *must*, by *debeo* or *oportet* (of moral obligation), by *necesse est* (of absolute obligation).

**256.** 1. The realization of the idea may be *in suspense*, or it may be *beyond control*. The first, or purely Ideal Subjunctive, is represented by the Present and Perfect Tenses ; the second, or Unreal, is represented by the Imperfect and Pluperfect.

2. The idea may be a *view*, or a *wish*. In the first case the Subjunctive is said to be Potential, in the second case Optative. The Potential Subjunctive is nearer the Indicative, from which it differs in tone ; the Optative Subjunctive is nearer the imperative, for which it is often used.

### Potential Subjunctive.

**257.** 1. The Potential Subjunctive represents the opinion of the speaker as an opinion based on the character of the action. The tone varies from vague surmise to moral certainty, from “*may*” and “*might*” to “*must*.” The negative is the negative of the Indicative, *nōn*.

2. The Potential of the Present or Future is the Present or Perfect Subjunctive. The proof of the action is in suspense, and so future ; the action itself may be present or future : with Perfect sometimes past.

*Velim, I should wish ; nōlim, I should be unwilling ; mālīm, I should prefer ; dicās, you would say ; crēdās, you would believe, you must believe ; dicat aliquis, some one may undertake to say ; dixerit aliquis, some one may go so far as to say, may prove to have said.*

*Caedi discipulōs minimē velim, QUINT., I. 3, 13 ; I should by no means like pupils to be flogged.*

**Tū** Platōnem nec nimis valdē nec nimis saepe laudāveris, C., *Leg.*, III. I, 1; *you can't praise Plato too much nor too often.*

**258.** The Potential of the Past is the Imperfect Subjunctive, chiefly in the Ideal Second Person, an imaginary "you."

**Vellem**, *I should have wished*; **nōllem**, *I should have been unwilling*; **māllem**, *I should have preferred* (it is too late).

**Crēderēs** victōs, L., II. 43, 9; *you would, might, have thought them beaten.*

**Mirārētur** qui tūm cerneret, L., XXXIV. 9, 4; *any one who saw it then must have been astonished.*

**259.** The Potential Subjunctive is used in questions which serve to convey a negative opinion on the part of the speaker.

**Quis dubitet** (= **nēmō dubitet**) **quā** in virtūte divitiāe sint? C., *Parād.*, VI. 2, 48; *who can doubt that true wealth consists in virtue?* (No one.)

**Quis tulerit** Gracchōs dē sēditione querentēs? JUV., II. 24; *who could bear the Gracchi complaining of rebellion?* (No one.)

### Optative Subjunctive.

**260.** The Subjunctive is used as an *Optative* or *wishing* mood. The negative is **nē**.

The Pr. and Pf. Subjv. are used *when the decision is in suspense*, no matter how extravagant the wish; the Impf. and Plupf. are used *when the decision is adverse*. The Pf. is rare and old.

**Stet** haec urbs, C., *Mil.*, 34, 93; *may this city continue to stand!*

**Ita** dī faxint (= **fēcerint**), PL., *Poen.*, 911; *the gods grant it!*

**Nē** istuc Iūppiter optimus māximus sirit (= **siverit**)! L., XXXIV. 24, 2; *may Jupiter, supremely great and good, suffer it not!*

**261.** The Optative Subjunctive frequently takes **utinam**, *would that*; **utinam nē**, **utinam nōn**, *would that . . . not*. **Ō** **si**, *oh if*, is poetical and very rare; **ut** is mainly archaic.

**Valeās** beneque ut tibi sit, PL., *Poen.*, 912; *farewell! God bless you!*

**Utinam** reviviscat frāter! GELL., X. 6, 2; *would that my brother would come to life again!*

**Illud** utinam **nē** vērū scriberem, C., *Fam.*, v. 17, 3; *would that what I am writing were not true!*

**Utinam** susceptus nōn essem, C., *Att.*, III. 11, 8; *would I had not been born!*

*Ō mihi praeſeritōs referat ſi Iuppiter annōs*, V., A., VIII. 560 ; *O if Jove were to bring me back the years that are gone by !*

REMARK.—For the wish with adverbial decision, *vellem* and *māilem* (theoretically also *nōilem*) may be used with the Impf. and sometimes (especially *vellem*) with the Plupf. Subjunctive.

*Vellem adeſſe poſſet Panaetius !* C., *Tuſc.*, I. 33, 81 ; *would that Panaetius could be preſent !*

*Vellem mē ad cōnam invitāſſe*, C., *Fam.*, XII. 4, 1 ; *would that you had invited me to your dinner-party.*

So *velim*, *nōlim*, etc., for the ſimple wiſh (546, R. 2).

*Tuam mihi dari velim eloquentiam*, C., *N.D.*, II. 59, 147 ; *I could wiſh your eloquence given to me.*

262. The Optative Subjunctive is uſed in *aſſeverations* :

*Ita vivam ut māmōs ſūptūs faciō*, C., *Att.*, V. 15, 2 ; *as I live (literally, ſo may I live as), I am making very great outlay.*

*Moriar, ſi magis gaudērem ſi id mihi accidieſſet*, C., *Att.*, VIII. 6, 3 ; *may I die if I could be more glad if that had happened to me.*

263. The Subjunctive is uſed as an *Imperative* :

1. In the Firſt Perſon Plural Preſent, which has no Imperative form :

*Amēmus patriam*, C., *Seſt.*, 68, 143 ; *let us love our country.*

*Nō difficilia optēmus*, C., *Verr.*, IV. 7, 15 ; *let us not deſire what is hard to do.*

2. In the Second Perſon.

(a) In the Preſent chiefly in the Singular, and chiefly of an imaginary “you” :

*Iſtō bonō ūtāre, dum adſit, cum abſit, nō requirās*, C., *Cat.M.*, 10, 33 ; *you muſt enjoy that bleſſing ſo long as ’tis here, when it is gone you muſt not pine for it.*

(b) In the Perfect negatively :

*Nō trāſieris Hiberum*, L., XXI. 44, 6 ; *do not croſs the Ebro.*

*Nō vōs mortem timueritis*, C., *Tuſc.*, I. 41, 98 ; *have no fear of death !*

3. In the Third Perſon Preſent (regularly) :

*Suum quiſque nōſcat ingenium*, C., *Off.*, I. 31, 114 ; *let each one know his own mind.*

*Dōnā impī nō plācāre audeant deōs*, C., *Leg.*, II. 16, 41 ; *let the wicked not dare to try to appeaſe the gods with gifts.*

**264.** The Subjunctive is used as a *Concessive* :

*Sit fur*, C., *Verr.*, v. 1, 4 ; (*granted that*) *he be a thief.*

*Fuerit malus civis*, C., *Verr.*, i. 14, 37 ; (*suppose*) *that he was a bad citizen.*

For other examples with *ut* and *nē*, see 608.

**265.** The Subjunctive is used in Questions which expect an Imperative answer (*cōniunctivus deliberativus*).

Genuine questions are commonly put in the First Person, or the representative of the First Person :

*Utrum superbiam prius commemorem an crudelitatem*, C., *Verr.*, i. 47, 122 ; *shall I mention the insolence first or the cruelty ?*

*Magna fuit contentiō utrum moenibus sē defenderent an obviam front hostibus*, *NEP.*, i. 4, 4 ; *there was a great dispute whether they should defend themselves behind the walls or go to meet the enemy.* (*Utrum nō defendāmus an obviam eāmus ?*)

### Imperative Mood.

**266.** The Imperative is the mood of the will. Its tone varies from stern command to piteous entreaty. It may appear as a demand, an order, an exhortation, a permission, a concession, a prayer.

*Abi in malam rem*, *PL.*, *Capt.*, 877 ; *go to the mischief.*

*Compescē mentem*, *H.*, *O.*, i. 16, 22 ; *curb your temper.*

*Dā mihī hōc, mel meum!* *PL.*, *Trin.*, 244 ; *give me this, honey dear !*

**267.** The Imperative has two forms, known as the First and the Second Imperative (also, but less accurately, as the Present and Future Imperative). The First Imperative has only the Second Person ; the Second Imperative has both Second and Third Persons. The First Person is represented by the Subjunctive (263, 1).

REMARK.—Some verbs have only the second form : so *scitō*, *know thou* ; *mementō*, *remember thou* ; *habetō*, in the sense of *know, remember*.

**268. 1.** The First Imperative looks forward to immediate fulfilment (Absolute Imperative) :

*Special* : *Patent portae* ; *proficiscere*, C., *Cat.*, i. 5, 10 ; *open stand the gates ; depart.*

*General* : *Iustitiam cole et pietatem*, C., *Rep.*, vi. 16, 16 ; *cultivate justice and piety.*

2. The Second Imperative looks forward to contingent fulfilment (Relative Imperative), and is chiefly used in laws, legal documents, maxims, recipes, and the like ; likewise in familiar language.

**Cōsulēs nēmīni pārentō**, C., *Leg.*, III. 3, 8 ; *the consuls shall obey no one.*

**Percontātōrem fugitō**, nam garrulus idem est, H., *Ep.*, I. 18, 69 ; *avoid your questioner, for he is a tell-tale too.*

(269) **270. NEGATIVE OF THE IMPERATIVE.**—1. The regular negative of the Imperative is **nē** (*nēve*, *neu*), which is found with the Second Imperative ; with the First Imperative, it is poetical or colloquial.

**Hominem mortuum in urbe nē sepelitō nēve aritō**, C., *Leg.*, II. 23, 58 ; *one shall not bury nor burn a dead man in the city.*

**Tū nē cōde malis**, sed contrā audentior itō, V., *A.*, VI. 95 ; *yield not thou to misfortunes, but go more boldly (than ever) to meet them.*

REMARKS.—1. **Nōn** may be used to negative a single word :

**Opus poliat lima**, nōn exerat, Cf. *QUINT.*, X. 4, 4 ; *let the file rub the work up, not rub it out.*

2. Instead of **nē** with the First Imperative was employed either **nōli** with the Infinitive (271, 2) ; or occasionally **nē** with the Pf. Subjv. (263, 2, b). The Pr. Subjv. with **nē** is the Ideal Second Person ; see 263, 2, a.

**271. PERIPHRASES.**—1. For the *Positive Imperative* may be used **cūrā** (*cūrātō*) **ut**, *take care that* ; **fac** (*facitō*) **ut**, *cause that* ; **fac** (*facitō*), *do*, with the Subjunctive.

**Cūrā ut quam primum** (303) **veniās**, C., *Fam.*, IV. 10, 1 ; *manage to come as soon as possible.*

**Fac cōgitās**, C., *Fam.*, XI. 3, 4 ; *do reflect !*

2. For the *Negative Imperative* (Prohibitive) **nōli**, *be unwilling*, with Infinitive is the rule :

**Cavē** and **cavē** (*cavētō*) **nē**, *beware lest*, and also **fac nē**, *do not*, with the Subjunctive are also found.

**Nōli verberāre lapidem**, PL., *Curc.*, 197 ; *don't beat a stone.*

**Cavē festinēs**, C., *Fam.* XVI. 12, 6 ; *do not be in a hurry.*

**Fac nē quid aliud cūrēs hōc tempore**, C., *Fam.*, XVI. 11, 1 ; *see that you pay no attention to anything else, at this time.*

**272. REPRESENTATIVES OF THE IMPERATIVE.**—1. Instead of the Positive Imperative, may be employed :

- (a) The Second Person of the Present Subjunctive (263, 2).
- (b) The Second Person of the Future Indicative (243).
- (c) The Third Person of the Present Subjunctive (263, 3).

2. Instead of the Negative Imperative (Prohibitive), may be employed :

- (a) The Second Person of the Present Subjunctive, with *nē* (263, 2, a).
- (b) The Second Person of the Perfect Subjunctive, with *nē* (263, 2).
- (c) The Second Person of the Future, with *nōn* (243).
- (d) The Third Person of the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, with *nē* (263, 3).

REMARK.—The Pr. Subjv. is employed when stress is laid on *the continuance of the action*; the Pf., when stress is laid on *the completion*. Hence the use of the Pf. Subjv. in total prohibitions and passionate protests.

3. The Imperative of the past is expressed by the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive (unfulfilled duties).

*Dōtem darētis; quæreret alium virum, TER., Ph., 297; you should have given her a portion; she should have sought another match.*

*Nē poposcissēs librōs, C., Att., II. I, 3; you ought not to have asked for the books.*

**273.** Passionate questions are equivalent to a command :

*Nōn tacēs ? PL., Am., 700; won't you hold your tongue ?*

*Quin tū tacēs ? PL., Men., 561: why don't you hold your tongue ?*

(274) **275. Summary of Imperative Constructions.**

Positive.

Negative.

SECOND PERSON.

<i>audi, hear thou,</i>	<i>nōli audire, hear not.</i>
	<i>nē audiveris</i> (occasional).
<i>audītō</i> (legal or contingent),	<i>nē audītō</i> (legal).
<i>audiās</i> (ideal 2nd Person chiefly),	<i>nē audiās</i> (ideal 2nd Pers. chiefly).
<i>audiēs</i> (familiar),	<i>nōn audiēs</i> (familiar).
	<i>nē audi</i> (poetic).

THIRD PERSON.

<i>audiat, let him hear.</i>	<i>nē audiat, let him not hear.</i>
	<i>nē audiverit.</i>
<i>audītō</i> (legal),	<i>nē audītō</i> (legal).



### Tenses of the Moods and Verbal Substantives.

**276. THE INDICATIVE.**—The tenses of the Indicative alone express with uniform directness the period of time.

**277. THE SUBJUNCTIVE.**—1. The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive have to do with *continued* action, the Perfect and Pluperfect with *completed* action. The Perfect Subjunctive is also used to express the *attainment*.

2. In simple sentences Present and Perfect Subjunctive have a Future force because the Future alone can tell whether the action is realized. The action itself may be Present or Future for the Present Subjunctive; Present, Past, or Future for the Perfect Subjunctive.

*Crēdat, he may believe (now or hereafter).*

*Crēdiderit, let him have had the belief (heretofore), he may have come to the belief (now), he may come to the belief (hereafter).*

3. In simple sentences the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are Past Tenses, and regularly serve to indicate unreality. (See 597.)

4. In dependent sentences the Subjunctive is future if the leading verb has a future signification (515, R. 3); otherwise the tenses of the Subjunctive represent corresponding tenses of the Indicative according to the law of sequence (509).

**278. The IMPERATIVE** is necessarily Future.

**279. The INFINITIVE** has two uses :

1. Its use as a Substantive.
2. Its use as a representative of the Indicative.

**280. The Infinitive as a Substantive.**—As a Substantive the Infinitive has two tenses, Present and Perfect. (See 419.)

1. The Present Infinitive is the common form of the Infinitive, used as a Substantive. It has to do with *continued* action.

(a) The Present Infinitive is used as a subject or predicate. (See 422, 424.)

*Quibusdam tōtum hōc displicet philosophārī*, C., *Fin.*, I. I, 1 ; *to some this whole business of metaphysics is a nuisance.*

(b) The Present Infinitive is used as the object of Verbs of Creation (often called Auxiliary Verbs, see 423.)

*Catō servīre quam pugnāre māvult*, C., *Att.*, VII. 15, 2 ; *Cato prefers to be a slave rather than to fight (being a slave to fighting).*

2. The Perfect Infinitive is comparatively little used as a Substantive. It has to do with *completed* action, and is also used to express *attainment*.

(a) As a subject, it is used chiefly in fixed expressions or in marked opposition to the Present.

*Nōn tam turpe fuit vinci quam contendisse decōrum est*, Ov., *M.*, IX. 5 ; *'twas not so much dishonor to be beaten as 'tis an honor to have struggled.*

(b) As an object, the Perfect Infinitive is seldom found in the active in prose, except after *velle*, *to wish*.

*Neminem notā strēni aut ignāvi militis notāsse volui*, L., XXIV. 16, 11 ; *I wished to have marked (to mark finally, to brand) no soldier with the mark of bravery or of cowardice.*

In the poets it is not uncommon, perhaps for metrical reasons ; but it occurs usually with the Pf. and Plupf. tenses, *volui*, etc., *potui*, *dēbueram* (*dēbui*).

*Frātrēs tendentēs opaco Pēlion imposuisse Olympō*, H., *O.*, III. 4, 52 ; *the brothers striving to pile Pelion on shady Olympus for good and all.*

(c) In the Passive, the Perfect Infinitive is used after verbs of Will and Desire, to denote that entire fulfilment is demanded or desired. See 537.

*Patriam extinctam cupit*, C., *Fin.*, IV. 24, 66 ; *he desires his country blotted out.*

Here the Infinitive *esse* is seldom expressed.

281. *The Infinitive as the representative of the Indicative.*—As the representative of the Indicative, the Infinitive has all its Tenses : Present, Past, Future, and Future Periphrastics.

1. The Present Infinitive represents *contemporaneous action*—hence : the Present Indicative after a Principal Tense, and the Imperfect after a Historical Tense :

**Dico eum venire**, *I say that he is coming.*

**Dixi eum venire**, *I said that he was coming.*

2. The Perfect Infinitive represents *prior action*—hence : the Perfect and Imperfect Indicative after a Principal Tense, and the Pluperfect, Imperfect, and Historical Perfect Indicative after a Historical Tense :

**Dico eum venisse**, *I say that he came, has come, used to come.*

**Dixi eum venisse**, *I said that he had come, used to come, did come.*

REMARK.—**Memini**, *I remember*, when used of *personal experience*, commonly takes the Present.

**Tum me regem appellari a vobis memini**, *nunc tyrannum vocari video*, L., XXXIV. 31, 13 ; *I remember being styled by you a king then, I see that I am called a tyrant now.*

When the action is to be regarded as a bygone, the Pf. may be used even of personal experience.

**Me memini iratum dominae turbasse capillos**, Ov., A.A., II. 169 ; *I remember in my anger having tousled my sweetheart's hair.*

3. The Future Infinitive represents *subsequent action* :

**Dico eum venturum [esse]**, *I say that he will come.*

**Dixi eum venturum [esse]**, *I said that he would come.*

282. The Present Participle active denotes *continuance* ; the Perfect passive, *completion* or *attainment*. See 665.

REMARK.—The Latin is more exact than the English in the use of the tenses. So the Pf. Part. is frequently employed when we use the Present, as **ratus**, *thinking* ; **veritus**, *fearing* ; **gavisus**, *rejoicing*, etc.

283. The Future Participle (active) is a verbal adjective, denoting capability and tendency, chiefly employed in the older language with **sum**, *I am*, as a periphrastic tense. In later Latin it is used freely, just as the Present and Perfect Participles, to express subordinate relations ; such as, Time, Cause, Condition, and Concession ; especially Purpose after a verb of Motion. See 670.

## SIMPLE SENTENCE EXPANDED.

**284.** The sentence may be expanded by the *multiplication* or by the *qualification*, A, of the subject, B, of the predicate.

## A.

## 1. Multiplication of the Subject.

## Concord.

**285. NUMBER.**—The common predicate of two or more subjects is put in the Plural number :

*Pater et mātēr mortui sunt*, TER., *Eun.*, 518 ; *father and mother are dead.*

EXCEPTIONS.—I. The common predicate may agree with a Sing. subject when that subject is the nearest or the most important : “*My flesh and my heart faileth*,” PSA., LXXIII. 26.

*Aetās et fōrma et super omnia Rōmānum nōmen tē ferōcīōrem facit*, L., XXXI. 18, 3 ; *your youth and beauty, and, above all, the name of Roman, makes you too mettlesome.*

2. Two abstracts in combination, when conceived as a unit, take a Sing. verb ; “*When distress and anguish cometh upon you*,” PROV., I. 27.

*Religiō et fidēs antepōnātūr amicitiae*, C., *Off.*, III. 10, 46 ; *let the religious obligation of a promise be preferred to friendship.*

So any close union : “*Your gold and silver is cankered*,” JAS., v. 3.

*Senātus populusque Rōmānus intellegit*, C., *Fam.*, v. 8, 2 ; *the senate and people of Rome perceives* (= *Rome perceives*).

**286. GENDER.**—When the genders of combined subjects are the same, the adjective predicate agrees in gender ; when the genders are different, the adjective predicate takes either the *strongest* gender or the *nearest*.

1. In things with life, the masculine gender is the strongest ; in things without life, the neuter.

(a) The strongest :

*Pater et mātēr mortui sunt*, TER., *Eun.*, 518 ; *father and mother are dead.*

*Mūrus et porta dē caelō tācta erant*, L., XXXII. 29, 1 ; *wall and gate had been struck by lightning.*

(b) The nearest :

*Convicta est Messālina et Silius*, Cf. TAC., *Ann.*, XII. 65 ; *Messalina was convicted and (so was) Silius.*

2. When things with life and things without life are combined, the gender varies.

(a) Both as persons :

**Rēx rēgiaque clāssis profecti sunt**, L., XXI. 50, 11 ; *the king and the king's fleet set out*.

(b) Both as things :

**Nātūrā inimica sunt libera civitās et rēx**, Cf. L., XLIV. 24, 2 ; *a free state and a king are enemies by nature*.

3. When the subjects are feminine abstracts the predicate may be a neuter Plural (211, R. 4).

**Stultitiam et intemperantiam dicimus esse fugienda**, C., *Fin.*, III. 11, 39 ; *folly and want of self-control (we say) are (things) to be avoided*.

**287. PERSONS.**—When the persons of combined subjects are different, the First Person is preferred to the Second, the Second to the Third :

**Si tū et Tullia, lūx nostra, valētis, ego et suāvissimus Cicerō valēmus**, C., *Fam.*, XIV. 5, 1 ; *if Tullia, light of my life, and you are well, dearest Cicero and I are well*.

REMARKS.—(a) In contrasts, and when each person is considered separately, the predicate agrees with the person of the nearest subject.

**Et ego et Cicerō meus flagitabit**, C., *Att.*, IV. 18, 5 ; *my Cicero will demand it and (so will) I*.

(b) The order is commonly the order of the persons, not of modern politeness : **Ego et uxor mea**, *Wife and I*.

## 2. Qualification of the Subject.

**288.** The subject may be qualified by giving it an attribute. An attribute is that which serves to give a specific character. The chief forms of the attribute are :

I. The adjective and its equivalents : **amicus certus**, *a sure friend*.

REMARK.—The equivalents of the adjective are :

1. The pronouns **hic**, *this*, **ille**, *that*, etc.

2. Substantives denoting rank, age, trade : **servus homō**, *a slave person* ; **homō senex**, *an old fellow* ; **mulier ancilla**, *a servant-wench*.

3. The Genitive of quality (305).

4. The Ablative of quality (400).

5. Preposition and case : **excessus ē vitā**, *departure from life*.

6. Adverbs, chiefly with substantival participles : **rēctē facta**, *good actions*.

7. Relative clauses (624).

II. The substantive in apposition : **Cicerō orātor**, *Cicero the orator*.

## I. ADJECTIVE ATTRIBUTE.

## Concord.

289. The Adjective Attribute agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case :

GENDER.	NUMBER.
<b>Vir sapiēns</b> , a wise man,	<b>virī sapiētēs</b> , wise men.
<b>Mulier pulchra</b> , a beautiful woman,	<b>mulierēs pulchrae</b> , beautiful women.
<b>Rēgium dōnum</b> , royal gift,	<b>rēgia dōna</b> , royal gifts.
CASE.	
<b>Virī sapiētis</b> , of a wise man.	<b>bone fili!</b> good son !
<b>Mulierī pulchrae</b> , for a beautiful woman.	<b>rēgiō dōnō</b> , by royal gift.
<b>Virum sapiētem</b> , wise man.	<b>mulierēs pulchrās</b> , beautiful women.

290. The common attribute of two or more substantives agrees with the nearest ; rarely with the most important.

**Volusēnus**, vir et cōsiliī māgnī et virtūtis, CAES., B.G., III. 5, 2 ; *Volusēnus*, a man of great wisdom and valor.

**Cūcta maria terraeque patēbant**, S., C., 10, 1 ; *all seas and lands lay open*.

REMARKS.—1. For emphasis, or to avoid ambiguity, the adj. is repeated with every substantive.

**Semprōniae multae facētiaē**, multusque lepōs inerat, S., C., 25, 5 ; *Sempronia had a treasure of witticisms, a treasure of charming talk*.

2. When a substantive is construed with several *similar* adjectives in the Sing., it may be in agreement with one in the Sing. or may stand in the Pl., according to its position :

**Quarta et Mārtia legiōnēs**, C., *Fam.*, XI. 19, 1, but **Legiō Mārtia quārtae**, C., *Ph.*, v. 17, 46, *The fourth and Martian legions*.

291. *Position of the Attribute*.—1. When the attribute is emphatic, it is commonly put before the substantive, otherwise in classical Latin ordinarily after it.

1. **Fugitivus servus**, a runaway slave (one complex).

2. **Servus fugitivus**, a slave (that is) a runaway (two notions).

Many expressions, however, have become fixed formulæ, such as **civis Rōmānus**, Roman citizen ; **populus Rōmānus**, people of Rome.

Compare *body politic*, *heir apparent* in English.

REMARKS.—1. Variation in the position of the adj. often causes variation in the meaning of the word. Thus *rēs bonae*, *good things*; *bonae rēs*, *articles of value*, or *good circumstances*; *rēs urbānae*, *city matters*; *urbānae rēs*, *witticisms*; *mēnsa secunda*, *a second table*; *secunda mēnsa*, *dessert*.

2. Superlatives which denote order and sequence in time and space are often used partitively, and then *generally* precede their substantive: *summa aqua*, *the surface of the water*; *summus mōns*, *the top of the mountain*; *vāre primō*, *primō vāre*, *in the beginning of spring*. Similarly in *mediā urbe*, *in the midst of the city*; *reliqua, cōtera Graecia*, *the rest of Greece*, and the like.

2. When the attribute belongs to two or more words, it is placed sometimes after them all, sometimes after the first, sometimes before them all.

*Divitiae, nōmen, opēs vacuae cōsiliō dēdecoris plēnae sunt*, C., *Rep.*, I. 34, 51; *riches, name, resources (when) void of wisdom are full of dishonor*.

For examples of the other positions see 290.

## Numerals.

**292.** *Duo* means simply *two*, *ambō*, *both* (two considered together), *uterque*, *either* (two considered apart, as, “They crucified two other with him, on either side one,” JOHN, XIX. 18):

*Supplicatiō ambōrum nōmine et triumphus utrique dēcretus est*, L., XXVIII. 9, 9; *a thanksgiving in the name of both and a triumph to either (each of the two) was decreed*.

REMARK.—*Uterque* is seldom Pl., except of sets; so with *plurālia tantum*.

*Caesar ē castris utrisque opibz suis ēdūxit*, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 50, 1; *Caesar led his forces out of either camp*.

On *uterque* with the Pl., see 211, R. 1; with Gen., see 371, R.

**293.** *Mille*, *a thousand*, is in the Sing. an indeclinable adj. and is less frequently used with the Genitive: *mille militēs*, rather than *mille militum*, *a thousand soldiers*; in the Pl. it is a declinable substantive, and must have the Genitive: *duo milia militum*, *two thousand(s) of soldiers* = *two regiments of soldiers*. If a smaller number comes between, the substantive usually follows the smaller number; see the following examples:

3500 cavalry, { tria milia quingenti equites,  
tria milia equitum et quingenti, but  
equites tria milia quingenti, or  
equitum tria milia quingenti.

But duo milia quingenti hostium periēre, L., XXII. 7, 3; 2500 of the enemy perished.

**294. ORDINALS.**—The Ordinals are used more often in Latin than in English; thus always in dates: **annō ducentēsimō quārtō**, in the year 204. Sometimes they are carelessly used for the cardinals:

**Quattuor anni sunt, ex quō tē nōn vidi,**

*It is four years, that I have not seen you (since I saw you).*

**Quārtus annus est, ex quō tē nōn vidi,**

*It is the fourth year (four years, going on four years).*

**295. DISTRIBUTIVES.**—The distributives are used wherever repetition is involved, as in the multiplication table.

**Bis bina quot sunt?** C., *N.D.*, II. 18, 49; *how many are twice two?*

**Scriptum oculeum cum quinque pedibus, pullōs gallināceōs trīs cum ternis pedibus nātōs esse,** L., XXXII. 1, 11; *a letter was written to say that a colt had been foaled with five feet, (and) three chickens hatched with three feet (apiece).*

### Comparatives and Superlatives.

**296. COMPARATIVE.**—The comparative degree generally takes a term of comparison either with **quam**, *than*, or in the Ablative:

**Ignōrātiō futurōrum malōrum ūtilior est quam scientia,** C., *Div.*, II. 9, 23; *ignorance of future evils is better than knowledge (of them).*

**Nihil est virtūte amābilius,** C., *Lael.*, 8, 28; *nothing is more lovable than virtue.*

**REMARKS.**—1. (a) The Abl. is used only when the word with **quam** would stand in the Nom. or Acc. (644).

**Caesar minor est** { **quam Pompēius,** } *Caesar is younger than Pompey.*  
Pompēiō,

**Caesarem plūs amamus,** { **quam Pompēium,** } *we love Caesar more than*  
Pompēiō, } *Pompey.*

In the second example the adverb makes the Ablative construction ambiguous, for **plūs Pompēiō** may mean "*more than Pompey does.*" Hence the comparative adverb with the Abl. is avoided in careful prose.



(b) With cases other than Nom. or Acc., *quam* is regularly used to avoid ambiguity.

*Annulis nostris plūs quam animis crēditur*, SEN., *Ben.*, III. 15, 3 ; *our seals are (217) more trusted than our souls.*

2. The Abl. is very common in negative sentences and is used exclusively in negative relative sentences.

*Polybium sequāmur, quō nēmō fuit diligentior*, C., *Rep.*, II. 14, 27 ; *let us follow Polybius, than whom no one was more careful.*

3. Measure of difference is put in the Ablative (403).

4. *Quam* is often omitted after *plūs*, *amplius*, *more*, and *minus*, *less*, and the like, without affecting the construction :

*Plūs quingentōs colaphōs infrēgit mihi*, TER., *Ad.*, 199 ; *he has dealt me more than five hundred boxes on the ear.*

*Spatium est nōn amplius pedum sēcentōrum*, CAES., *B.C.*, I. 38, 5 ; *the space is not more than (of) six hundred feet.*

But the normal construction is not excluded :

*Palūs nōn lātior pedibus quinquāgintā*, CAES., *B.G.*, VII. 19, 1 ; *a swamp not broader than fifty feet (or pedēs quinquāgintā).*

5. Age may be variously stated ; thus, *more than thirty years old* may be :

1. *Nātus plūs (quam) trīgintā annōs.* 3. *Māior (quam) trīgintā annōs nātus.*

2. *Nātus plūs trīgintā annis (rare).* 4. *Māior trīgintā annis (nātus).*

5. *Māior trīgintā annōrum.*

**297. Standard of Comparison omitted.**—When the standard of comparison is omitted, it is supplied : 1. By the context ; 2. By the usual or proper standard ; 3. By the opposite.

1. By the context :

*Solent rēges Persarum plūrēs uxōrēs habere*, Cf. C., *Verr.*, III. 33, 76 ; *the kings of Persia usually have more wives [than one].*

2. By the proper standard :

*Senectūs est nātūrā loquācior*, C., *Cat.M.*, 16, 55 ; *old age is by nature rather (or too) talkative.*

3. By the opposite :

*Quiesse erit melius*, L., III. 48, 3 ; *it will be better to be perfectly-quiet (than to make a disturbance).*

**298. Disproportion.**—Disproportion is expressed by the comparative with **quam prō**, *than for*, and the Ablative; or with **quam ut**, *than that* or **quam quī**, *than who*, and the Subjunctive :

**Minor caedēs quam prō tantā victoriā fuit**, L., x. 14, 21 ; *the loss was (too) small for so great a victory.*

**Quis nōn intellegit Canachi signa rigidiōra esse quam ut imitentur vērītatem** ? C., Br., 18, 70 ; *who does not perceive that Canachus' figures are too stiff to imitate the truth (of nature) ?*

**Māior sum quam cui possit Fortūna nocēre**, Ov., M., vi. 195 ; *I am too great for Fortune possibly to hurt me.*

**299. Two Qualities compared.**—When two qualities of the same substantive are compared, we find either **magis** and **quam** with the positive, or a double comparative :

**Celer tuus disertus magis est quam sapiēns**, C., Att., x. 1, 4 ; *your (friend) Celer is eloquent rather than wise—more eloquent than wise.*

**Acutiōrem sē quam ornatiōrem vult**, C., Opt. Gen., 2, 6 ; *he wishes to be acute rather than ornate.*

**300. Restriction to the Comparative.**—The Latin uses the Comparative more exactly than the English. So regularly when only two objects are compared.

**Nātū māior**, *the eldest (of two), the elder* ; **nātū minor**, *the youngest, the younger.* **Prior**, *the first* ; **posterior**, *the last.*

**Posteriōrēs cōgitatiōnēs, ut aiunt, sapientiōrēs solent esse**, C., Ph., xii. 2, 5 ; *afterthoughts, as the saying is, are usually the wisest.*

REMARK.—The same rule applies to the interrogative **uter**, *which of two ? (whether ?)* : **Ex duobus uter dignior** ? **ex pluribus, quis dignissimus** ? QUINT., vii. 4, 21 ; *of two, which is the worthier ? of more (than two), which is the worthiest ?*

**301. Comparative Strengthened.** The comparative is often strengthened by the insertion of **etiam**, *even* ; **adhuc**, *still* ; **multō**, *(by) much* ; **longē**, *far* :

**Dic etiam clārius**, C., Verr., iii. 75, 175 ; *speak even more clearly !*

**302. Superlative.**—The Latin superlative is often to be rendered by the English positive, especially of persons :

**Quintus Fabius Māximus**, *Quintus Fabius the Great.*

**Māximō impetū māiōre fortūnā**, L., xxviii. 36, 2 ; *with great vigor, with greater luck.*

**303. Superlative Strengthened.**—The superlative is strengthened by *multo*, (by) *much*; *longe*, by *far*; *vel*, *even*; *unus*, *unus omnium*, *one above all others*.

*Protagorā sophistā illis temporibus vel maximus*, C., *N.D.*, I. 23, 63; *Protagoras, the very greatest sophist in those times*.

*Urbe[m] unam mihi amicissimam dēlinxi*, C., *Planc.*, 41, 97; *I turned aside from a city above all others friendly to me*.

*Quam* (with or without a form of *possum*) and the superlative is the regular form for *as—as possible*.

*Caesar quam aequissimō locō potest castra commūit*, CAES., *B.G.*, v. 49, 7; *Caesar fortifies a camp in as favorable a position as possible*.

## PRONOUNS.

### 1. Personal Pronouns.

**304. 1.** The personal Pronoun is usually omitted when it is the subject of a verb; see 207.

**2.** The Genitive forms, *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, *vestri*, are used mainly as *Objective Genitives*.

*Marcellinus sē acerrimum tui defēnsōrem fore ostendit*, C., *Fam.*, I. 1, 2; *Marcellinus showed that he would be your keenest defender*.

**REMARK.**—The Possessive pronouns sometimes are found in place of this Genitive: *Vester cōspectus reficit et recreat mentem meam*, C., *Planc.*, I, 2; *the sight of you refreshes and renews my spirits*.

"If I be a master, where is my fear?" *MAL.*, I. 6.

**3.** The Genitive forms, *nostrum* and *vestrum*, are used *partitively*; see 364, R.

*Tū ad mē venire uterque nostrum cupit*, C., *Att.*, XIII. 33, 2; *each of us two desires that you should come to me*.

### 2. Demonstrative Pronouns.

**305. Hic, this** (the Demonstrative of the First Person), refers to *that which is nearer the speaker*, and may mean:

**1.** The Speaker himself: *hic homō = ego*, PL., *Trin.*, III. 5.

**2.** His friends: *sī ego hōs nōvi*, *if I know these men* (= my friends, the Gentlemen of the Jury).

**3.** His subject: *hic sapiēns dē quō loquor*, C., *Ac.*, II. 33, 105; *this (imaginary) wise man of whom I am speaking*.

**4.** His hobby: *hōc studium*, *this pursuit of mine, of ours*.

**5.** That which has just been mentioned: *haec hāctenus*, *these things thus far = so much for that*.

6. Very frequently, that which is about to be mentioned : **hic** *condiciónibus, on the following terms.*

7. The current period of time : **hic** *dies, to-day ; haec* *nox, the night just past or just coming ; hic* *mēsis, the current month.*

**306. Iste, that** (of thine, of yours), refers to *that which belongs more peculiarly to the Second Person* (Demonstrative of the Second Person) :

**Adventū tuū ista subsellia vacuēfacta sunt, C., Cat., i. 7, 16 ; at your approach the benches in your neighborhood were vacated.**

**307. Ille, that** (the Demonstrative of the Third Person), denotes *that which is more remote from the speaker*, and is often used in contrast to **hic, this.**

**Catulus nōn antiquō illō mōre sed hōc nostrō eruditus, C., Br., 35, 132 ; Catulus, a cultivated man, not after the old-fashioned standard of a by-gone time (illō) but by the standard of to-day (hōc).**

**Ille** may mean :

1. That which has been previously mentioned (often **ille quidem**) : **illud quod initio vobis proposui, C., Font., 7, 17 ; that which I propounded to you at first.**

2. That which is well known, notorious (often put after the substantive) : **tēstula illa, that** (notorious) *potsherd = institution of ostracism ; illud Solōnis, that* (famous saying) *of Solon's.*

3. That which is to be recalled : **illud imprimis mirābile, that** (which I am going to remind you of) *is especially wonderful.*

4. That which is expected :

**Ille dies veniet mea quā lūgubria pōnam, Ov., Tr., iv. 2, 73 ; the day will come when I shall lay aside (cease) my mournful strains.**

**REMARKS.**—1. **Hic** and **ille** are used together in contrasts : *as, the latter—the former, the former—the latter.*

(a) When both are matters of indifference the natural signification is observed : **hic, the latter ; ille, the former.**

**Ignāvia corpus hebetat, labor firmat ; illa mātūram senectūtem, hic longam adolescentiam reddit, CELS., i. 1 ; laziness weakens the body, toil strengthens it ; the one (the former) hastens old age, the other (the latter) prolongs youth.**

(b) When the former is the more important, **hic** is *the former, ille, the latter :*

**Melior tutiorque est certa pāx quam spērāta victōria ; haec in nostrā, illa in deūrum manū est, L., xxx. 30, 19 ; better and safer is certain peace than hoped for victory ; the former is in our hand(s), the latter in the hand(s) of the gods.**

2. *Hic et ille; ille et ille; ille aut ille, this man and (or) that man = one or two.*

*Nōn dicam hōc signum ablatum esse et illud; hōc dico, nūllum tē signum reliquisse, C., Verr., I. 20, 53; I will not say that this statue was taken off and that; (what) I say (is) this, that you left no statue at all.*

3. The derived adverbs retain the personal relations of *hic, iste, ille*: *hic, here (where I am); hinc, hence (from where I am); hūc, hither (where I am); istic, there (where you are); illic, there (where he is), etc.*

### 3. Determinative and Reflexive Pronouns.

308. *Is, that*, is the determinative pronoun, and serves as the lacking pronoun of the Third Person. It furnishes the regular antecedent of the relative :

*Mihī vēnit obviam tuus puer; is mihī litterās ab tē reddidit, C., Att., II. 1, 1; I was met by your servant; he delivered to me a letter from you.*

*Is minimō eget mortālis qui minimum cupit, SYRUS, 286 (Fr.); that mortal is in want of least, who wanteth least.*

REMARKS.—1. *Is*, as the antecedent of the relative, is often omitted, chiefly in the Nom., more rarely in an oblique case (619).

*Bis dat qui dat celeriter, SYRUS, 235 (Fr.); he gives twice who gives in a trice.*

Often it has the force of *tālis* (631, 1) in this connection :

*Ego is sum qui nihil umquam meā potius quam meōrum civium causā fecerim, C., Fam., v. 21, 2; I am a man never to have done anything for my own sake, rather than for the sake of my fellow-citizens.*

2. *Is*, with a copulative or adversative particle, is used as *he* or *that* in English, for the purpose of emphasis. Such expressions are : *et is, atque is, isque, and he too, and that too; neque is, et is nōn, and he not; and that not; sed is, but he.*

*Exempla quaerimus et ea nōn antiqua, C., Verr., III. 90, 210; we are looking for examples, and those, too, not of ancient date.*

3. *Is* does not represent a substantive before a Gen., as in the English *that of*. In Latin the substantive is omitted, or repeated, or a word of like meaning substituted.

*Nōn iudiciō discipulōrum dicere debet magister sed discipuli magistri, QUINT., II. 2, 13; the master is not to speak according to the judgment of the pupils; but the pupils according to that of the master.*

*Nulla est celeritas quae possit cum animi celeritate contendere, C., Tusc., I. 19, 43; there is no speed that can possibly vie with that of the mind.*

*Coelius tribunal suum iuxta Treboni sellam collocavit*, CAES., *B.C.*, III. 20, 1 ; *Coelius placed his chair of office next to that of Trebonius.*

Of course *hic*, *ille*, and *iste* can be used with the Gen. in their proper sense.

**309. REFLEXIVE.** Instead of forms of *is*, the Reflexive Pronoun *sui*, *sibi*, *sē*, together with the Possessive of the Reflexive *suus*, *sua*, *suum* is used. (See 521.)

1. *Regularly* when reference is made to the *grammatical* subject of the sentence.

*Ipsē sē quisque diligit quod sibi quisque cārus est*, C., *Lael.*, 21, 80 ; *every one loves himself, because every one is dear to himself.*

The subject may be indefinite or (occasionally) impersonal.

*Contentum suis rebus esse maximae sunt divitiae*, C., *Par.*, VI. 3, 51 ; *to be content with one's own things (what one hath) is the greatest riches.*

"Pure religion and undefiled is this . . . to keep *himself* unspotted from the world." JAMES, I. 27.

2. *Frequently* when reference is made to the *actual* subject (521, R. 2) :

*Oculatur tigrem suum custōs*, SEN., *E.M.*, 85, 41 ; *her own keeper kisses the tigress (the tigress is kissed by her own keeper).*

This is especially common with *suus*, which when thus employed has usually its emphatic sense : *own, peculiar, proper.*

3. *Sui*, *sibi*, *sē* are the reflexive of the Infinitive and its equivalents.

*Rōmāni sui colligendi hostibus facultatem nōn relinquunt*, CAES., *B.G.*, III. 6, 1 ; *the Romans do not leave the enemy a chance to get themselves together, to rally.*

*Sē* is also used with prepositions *ergā*, *inter*, *propter*, *per* in reflexive or emphatic phrases ; as *inter sē*, *among one another*, *per sē*, *by itself*.

4. *Suus* is also used in prepositional phrases, especially after *cum* and *inter* ; more rarely after *in*, *intrā*, and *ad*.

*Māgōnem cum clāsse suā in Hispāniam mittunt*, L., XXIII. 32, 11 ; *they sent Mago with his fleet to Spain.*

So the phrases *suō tempore*, *at the right time* ; *suō locō*, *at the right place*.

*Cōmōediae quem ūsum in pueris putem suō locō dicam*, QUINT., I. 8, 7 ; *what I consider to be the good of comedy in the case of boys I will mention in the proper place.*

**310. Idem, the same,** serves to unite two or more attributes or predicates on a person or thing; it is often to be translated by *at the same time; likewise, also; yet, notwithstanding.*

*Cimōn incidit in eandem invidiam quam pater suus, NEP., v. 3, 1; Cimon fell into the same odium as his father.*

*Difficilis facilis, iucundus acerbus, es idem, MART., XII. 47, 1; crabbed (and) kindly, sweet (and) sour, are you at once.*

REMARKS.—1. When a second attribute is to be added to a substantive it is often connected by *Idemque, et idem, atque idem.*

*Vir doctissimus Platō atque idem gravissimus philosophōrum omnium, C., Leg., II. 6, 14; Plato, a most learned man, and at the same time weightiest of all the philosophers.*

2. *The same as* is expressed by *Idem* with *qui*, with *atque* or *et*, with *ut*, with *cum*, and poetically with the Dative. See 359, N. 6, 642, 643.

*Tibi mēcum in eōdem est pistrinō vivendum, C., Or., II. 33, 144; you have to live in the same treadmill with me.*

3. *Idem* cannot be used with *is*, of which it is only a stronger form (*is + dem*).

**311. I, Ipse, self,** is the distinctive pronoun, and separates a subject or an object from all others:

*Ipse fecit, I myself did it and none other, I alone did it, I did it of my own accord, I am the very man that did it. Nunc ipsum, at this very instant, at this precise moment.*

*Valvae subitō sē ipsae aperuerunt, C., Div., I. 34, 74; the folding-doors suddenly opened of their own accord.*

*Catō mortuus est annis octōgintā sex ip̄s ante Cicerōnem cōsulem, C., Br., 15, 61; Cato died just eighty-six years before Cicero's consulship.*

REMARKS.—1. Owing to this distinctive character, *ipse* is often used of *persons* in opposition to *things*; *riders* in opposition to *horses*; *inhabitants* in opposition to the *towns* which they inhabit; the *master* of the house in opposition to his *household, etc.*

*Ipse dixit, C., N.D., I. 5, 10; the master said (αὐτὸς ἔφα).*

*Mē ipsa misit, PL., Cas., 790; mistress sent me.*

2. *Et ipse, likewise, as well,* is used when a new subject takes an old predicate:

*Locri urbs dēseverat et ipsa ad Poenōs, L., XXIX. 6, 1; Locri-city had likewise (as well as the other cities) revolted to the Carthaginians.*

2. **Ipse** is used to lay stress on the reflexive relation ; in the Nominative when the subject is emphatic, in the Oblique Cases when the object is emphatic.

**Se ipse laudat**, he (and not another) *praises himself*. **Se ipsum laudat**, he *praises himself* (and not another).

**Piger ipse sibi obstat**, Prov. (SEN., *E.M.*, 94, 28) ; *the lazy man stands in his own way, is his own obstacle*.

Exceptions are common :

**Quique aliis cavit, non cavet ipse sibi**, Ov., *A.A.*, 1. 84 ; *and he who cared for others, cares not for himself*.

#### 4. Possessive Pronouns.

312. The Possessive Pronouns are more rarely used in Latin than in English, and chiefly for the purpose of contrast or clearness.

**Manus lavā et cōnā**, C., *Or.*, 11. 60, 246 ; *wash (your) hands and dine*.

**Praedia mea tū possidēs, ego aliēnā misericordiā vivō**, C., *Rosc.Am.*, 50, 145 ; *you are in possession of my estates, (while) I live on the charity of others*.

REMARKS.—1. Observe the intense use of the Possessive in the sense of *property, peculiarity, fitness* : **suum esse**, to belong to one's self, to be one's own man.

**Tempore tuō pugnasti**, L., XXXVIII. 45, 10 ; *you have fought at your own time* (= when you wished).

**Hōc honore mē adfēcistis annō meō**, C., *Leg.Agr.*, 11. 2, 4 ; *you visited me with this honor in my own year* (= the first year in which I could be made consul).

2. On the use of the Possessive Pronouns for the Gen., see 364.

#### 5. Indefinite Pronouns.

313. **Quidam** means *one, a, a certain one* ; the speaker may know but he does not tell. In the Plural, **quidam** means *some, sundry*, without emphasis.

**Interēa mulier quaedam commigravit hūc**, TER., *And.*, 69 ; *meanwhile a certain woman took up her quarters here*.

REMARKS.—1. With an adjective **quidam** often heightens by adding vagueness and mystery. (Gr. 115.)

**Est quōdam incredibillī rōbre animī**, C., *Mil.*, 37, 101 ; *really he is endowed with a certain (strange, indescribable) strength of mind that is past belief*.



2. **Quidam** is often used with or without *quasi, as if*, to modify an expression :

**Est quaedam virtutum vitiōrumque vicinia**, QUINT., II. 12, 4; *there is a certain neighborly relation between virtues and vices.*

**314. Aliquis (aliqui)** means, *some one, some one or other*; neither the speaker nor the hearer knows :

**Dēolāmābam cum aliquō cottidīe**, C., *Br.*, 90, 310; *I used to declaim with somebody or other daily.*

In the predicate it is often emphatic (by Litotēs, 700) : **sup aliquis, aliquid**, *I am somebody = a person of importance, something = of some weight*; opposed to : **nūllus sum, nihil sum**, *I am a nobody, nothing.*

**Est hōc aliquid, tametsi nōn est satis**, C., *Div. in Caec.*, 15, 47; *this is something, although it is not enough.*

**315. Quis (qui)**, fainter than **aliquis**, is used chiefly after **sī, if**; **nisi, unless**; **nē, lest**; **num, whether**, and in relative sentences. See 107, R.

**Nē quid nimis!** TER., *And.*, 61; *nothing in excess!*

REMARK.—**Aliquis** is used after **sī, etc.**, when there is stress : **sī quis, if any**; **sī aliquis, if some**; **sī quid, if anything**; **sī quidquam, if anything at all** (317, 1).

**Si aliquid dandum est voluptātī, senectūs modicis conviviis dēlectārī potest**, C., *Cato M.*, 14, 44; *if something is to be given to pleasure (as something or other must), old age can take delight in mild festivities.*

**316. Quispiam** is rarer than **aliquis**, but not to be distinguished from it, except that **quispiam** never intimates importance.

**Dixerit quispiam**, C., *Cat. M.*, 3, 8; *some one may say.*

**317. 1. Quisquam** and **ūllus** (adjective) mean *any one* (at all), and are used chiefly in negative sentences, in questions that imply a negative answer, and in sweeping conditions :

**Iūstitia numquam nocet cuiquam**, C., *Fin.*, I. 16, 50; *justice never hurts anybody.*

**Quis Graecōrum rhētorum & Thūcýdide quidquam dūxit?** C., *Or.*, 9, 317; *what Greek rhetorician drew anything from Thucydides?* [None.]

**Si quisquam, ille sapiēns fuit**, C., *Lael.*, 2, 9; *if any one at all (was) wise, he was.*

**Hostem esse in Syriā negant ūllum**, C., *Fam.*, III. 8, 10; *they say that there is not any enemy in Syria.*

So after comparatives, for these involve a negative :

*Solis candor infestrior est quam ullius ignis*, C., *N.D.*, II. 15, 40 ; *the brilliancy of the sun is more radiant than that of any fire.*

2. The negative of *quisquam* is *nēmō*, *nobody* ; *nihil*, *nothing* (108). The negative of *ullus* is *nullus*, *no*, *none*.

*Nēmō vir magnus*, C., *N.D.*, II. 66, 167 ; *no great man, no one (who is) a great man.*

REMARK.—Instead of *nēminis* and *nēmine*, *nullius* and *nullō*, *nulla* are used regularly.

318. 1. *Quisque* means *each one*, as opposed to *omnia*, *every*, and is usually post-positive.

*Laudati omnes sunt donatique pro merito quisque*, L., XXXVIII. 23 ; *all were praised and rewarded, each one according to his desert.*

2. With superlatives and ordinals *quisque* is loosely translated *every* :

*Optimum quidque rarissimum est*, C., *Fin.*, II. 25, 81 ; *every good thing is rare = the better a thing, the rarer it is.*

*Quinto quoque anno Sicilia tota censetur*, C., *Verr.*, II. 56, 139 ; *every fifth year all Sicily is assessed.*

3. *Quisque* combines readily with the reflexives, *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, *suus*, in their emphatic sense (309, 2).

Here the reflexive regularly precedes.

*Sua quemque fraus et suus terror vexat*, C., *Rosc. Am.*, 24, 67 ; *it is his own sin and his own alarm that harasses a man.*

REMARK.—*Suum cuique* has become a standing phrase : *let every one have his own.*

319. *Alter* and *alius* are both translated *other*, *another*, but *alter* refers to one of two, *alius* to diversity.

*Solus aut cum altero*, *alone or with (only) one other* ; *alter Nero*, *a second Nero*.

*Alter alterum quaerit*, *one (definite person) seeks the other (definite person)* ; *alius alium quaerit*, *one seeks one, another another*.

*Alteri—alteri*, *one party—another party* (already defined) ; *alii—alii*, *some—others*.

*Alter* often means *neighbor*, *brother*, *fellow-man* ; *alius*, *third person*.

*Alter* :

*Agasilas fuit claudus altero pede*, NEP., XVII. 8, 1 ; *Agasilas was lame of one foot.*

*Alterā manū fert lapidem, pānem ostendit alterā*, PL., *Aul.*, 195 ; *in one hand a stone he carries, in the other holds out bread.*

**Alius:**

*Fallacia alia aliam trahit*, TER., *And.*, 779; *one lie treads on the heels of another* (indefinite series).

*Divitiis alii praeponunt, alii honores*, C., *Lael.*, 6, 20; *some prefer riches, others honors*.

**Alter and alius:**

*Ab aliis expectas alteri quod feceris*, SYRUS, 2 (Fr.); *you may look for from another what you've done unto your brother* (from No. 3, what No. 1 has done to No. 2).

## APPOSITION.

**320.** By apposition one substantive is placed by the side of another, which contains it:

*Cicerō orator*, *Cicero the orator*. *Rhēnus flumen*, *the river Rhine*.

## CONCORD.

**321.** The word in apposition agrees with the principal word (or words) in case, and as far as it can in gender and number:

Nom. *Hērodotus pater historiae*, *Herodotus, the father of history*;  
Gen. *Hērodoti patris historiae*; Dat. *Hērodotō patri historiae*.

*Cnidus et Colophōn, nōbillissimae urbes, captae sunt*, Cf. C., *Imp.*, 12, 33; *Cnidus and Colophon, most noble cities, were taken*.

*Omnium doctrinārum inventricēs Athēnae*, Cf. C., *Or.*, I. 4, 13; *Athens, the inventor of all branches of learning*.

REMARKS.—1. Exceptions in *number* are due to special uses, as, for example, when *dēliciae* or *amōres*, etc., are used of a Singular:

*Pompēius, nostri amōres, ipse sē affixit*, C., *Att.*, II. 19, 2; *Pompey, our special passion, has wrecked himself*.

2. The Possessive Pronoun takes the Gen. in apposition:

*Urbs meā ūnus opēra fuit salva*, Cf. C., *Pis.*, 3, 6; *the city was saved by my exertions alone*.

3. On the agreement of predicate with appositive, see 211, n. 6.

**322. Partitive Apposition.**—Partitive Apposition takes a part out of the whole.

*Cētera multītūdō sorte decimus quisque ad supplicium lēcti sunt*, L., II. 59, 11; *(of) the rest of the crowd every tenth man was chosen by lot for punishment*.

**323. Distributive Apposition.**—Distributive Apposition subdivides the whole into its parts, chiefly with *alter—alter*,

*the one—the other; quisque, uterque, each one; alii—alii, pars—pars, some—others.* (It is often called Partitive Apposition.)

*Duae filiae altera occisa altera capta est, CAES., B.G., I. 53, 4; (of) two daughters, the one was killed the other captured.*

REMARK.—The Part. Gen. is more commonly employed than either of these forms of apposition.

**324. Apposition to a Sentence.**—Sometimes an Accusative stands in apposition to a whole preceding sentence.

*Admoneor ut aliquid etiam de sepultura dicendum existimem, rem non difficilem, C., Tusc., I. 43, 102; I am reminded to take into consideration that something is to be said about burial also—an easy matter.*

### Predicative Attribution and Predicative Apposition.

**325.** Any case may be attended by the same case in Predicative Attribution or Apposition, which differ from the ordinary Attribution or Apposition in translation only.

NOMINATIVE : *Filius aegrotus rediit.*

Ordinary Attribution : *The sick son returned.*

Predicative Attribution : *The son returned sick = he was sick when he returned.*

*Hercules juvenis leonem interfecit.*

Ordinary Apposition : *The young man Hercules slew a lion.*

Predicative Apposition : *Hercules, when a young man, slew a lion = he was a young man when he slew a lion.*

GENITIVE : *Potestas eius adhibendae uxoris, the permission to take her to wife.*

DATIVE : *Amicus vivus non subvenisti, you did not help your friend (while he was) alive.*

ACCUSATIVE : *Hercules cervam vivam cepit.*

Ordinary Attribution : *Hercules caught a living doe.*

Predicative Attribution : *Hercules caught a doe alive.*

ABLATIVE : *Aere utuntur importato, they use imported copper = the copper which they use is imported.*

REMARKS.—1. The Voc., not being a case proper, is not used predicatively. Exceptions are apparent or poetical.

*Quo, morituro, ruis? V., A., x. 810; "whither dost thou rush to die" (thou doomed to die)?*

Notice here the old phrase : *Macte virtute es, H., S., I. 2, 31; increased be thou in virtue = heaven speed thee in thy high career.*

2. *Victōrēs rediērunt* may mean, *the conquerors returned*, or, *they returned conquerors*; *Idem*, *the same*, is similarly used.

*Idem abeunt qui vñerant*, C., *Fin.*, IV. 3, 7; *they go away just as they had come* (literally, *the same persons as they had come*).

3. Predicative Attribution and Apposition are often to be turned into an abstract substantive :

*Defendi rem publicam adulescens, nō dēseram senex*, C., *Ph.*, II. 46, 118; *I defended the state in my youth, I will not desert her in my old age*.

So with prepositions :

*Ante Cicerōnem cōsulem*, *before the consulship of Cicero*; *ante urbem conditam*, *before the building of the city*.

4. Do not confound the "as" of apposition with the "as" (= *as if*) of comparison—*ut, quasi, tamquam, sicut, velut* (602, 642).

(5) 6. The English idiom often uses the adverb and adverbial expressions instead of the Latin adjective : so in adjectives of *inclination* and *disinclination*, *knowledge* and *ignorance*, of *order* and *position*, of *time* and *season*, and of temporary condition generally :

*Libens*, *with pleasure*; *volens*, *willing(ly)*; *nōlens*, *unwilling(ly)*; *invitus*, *against one's will*; *prūdēns*, *aware*; *imprūdēns*, *unawares*; *sciēns*, *knowing(ly)*; *primus*, *prior, first*; *ultimus*, *last*; *medius*, *in, about the middle*; *hodiernus*, *to-day*; *mātutinus*, *in the morning*; *frequēns*, *frequent(ly)*; *sublimis*, *aloft*; *tōtus*, *wholly*; *sōlus*, *ānus*, *alone*; and many others.

*Ego eum ā mē invītissimus dimisi*, C., *Fam.*, XIII. 63, 1; *I dismissed him most unwillingly*.

*Plūs hodiē boni feci imprūdēns quam sciēns ante hunc diē umquam*, TER., *Hec.*, 880; *I have done more good to-day unawares than I have ever done knowingly before*.

*Adcurrit, mediam mulierem complectitur*, TER., *And.*, 133; *he runs up, puts his arms about the woman's waist*.

*Vespertinus pete tēctum*, H., *Ep.*, I. 6, 20; *seek thy dwelling at eventide*.

*Sōli hōc contingit sapienti*, C., *Par.*, V. 1, 34; *this good luck happens to the wise man alone* = *it is only the wise man who has this good luck*.

7. Carefully to be distinguished are the uses of *primus*, and the adverbs *primum*, *first, for the first time*, and *primō*, *at first*. *Primum* means first in a series; *primō*, first in a contrast.

*Primus sententiam dixit*, C., *Ph.*, x. 3, 6; *he was the first to express his opinion*.

*Samothraciam tē primum, post Thasum contulisti*, C., *Pis.*, 36, 89; *you betook yourself to Samothrace first, afterwards to Thasos*.

*Improbōrum facta primō suspiciō insequitur, tum accūsātor*, C., *Fin.*, I. 16, 50; *the deeds of the reprobate are attacked at first by suspicion, then by the public prosecutor*.

## B.

## 1. Multiplication of the Predicate.

**326.** The Multiplication of the Predicate requires no further rules than those that have been given in the general doctrine of Concord.

## 2. Qualification of the Predicate.

**327.** The Qualification of the Predicate may be regarded as an External or an Internal change :

I. External change : combination with an object.

1. Direct Object, Accusative. 2. Indirect Object, Dative.

II. Internal change : combination with an attribute which may be in the form of

1. The Genitive Case. 3. Preposition with a case.

2. The Ablative. 4. An Adverb.

## 1. External Change.

## Accusative.

**328.** The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object.

1. (a) The object may be contained in the verb (Inner Object, Object Effected) :

*Deus mundum creāvit, God made a creation—the universe.*

(b) Akin to this is the Accusative of Extent :

*Ā rectā cōscientiā trāversum unguem nōn oportet discēdere, C., Att., XIII. 20, 4 ; one ought not to swerve a nailbreadth from a right conscience.*

*Decem annōs (Trōia) oppugnāta est, L., v. 4, 11 ; ten years was Troy besieged.*

*Māximam partem lacte vivunt, CAES., B.G., IV. I, 8 ; for the most part they live on milk.*

2. The object may be distinct from the verb (Outer Object, Object Affected) :

*Deus mundum gubernat, God steers the universe.*

## DIRECT OBJECT (Inner and Outer).

(329) 330. Active Transitive Verbs take the Accusative case :

*Rōmulus Urbem Rōmam condidit, Cf. C., Div., I. 17, 30 ; Romulus founded the City of Rome. (Object Effected.)*

*Mēns regit corpus, C., Rep., VI. 24, 26 ; mind-governs body. (Object Affected.)*

REMARK.—Many verbs of Emotion which are intrans. in English are trans. in Latin, as : *dolēre, to grieve (for) ; dēspārāre, to despair (of) ; horrēre, to shudder (at) ; mirārī, to wonder (at) ; ridēre, to laugh (at).*

*Hōnōrēs dēspērānt, C., Cat., II. 9, 19 ; they despair of honors (give them up in despair).*

*Cōscia mēns rēcti Fāmāe mendācia risit, Ov., F., IV. 311 ; conscious of right, her soul (but) laughed (at) the falsehoods of Rumor.*

331. Verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, per, praeter, sub, subter, super, and trāns*, when they become transitive, take the Accusative :

All with *circum, per, praeter, trāns, and subter*.

Many with *ad, in, and super*.

Some with *ante, con, inter, ob, and sub*. See 347.

*Pythagorās Persārum magōs adiit, C., Fin., v. 29, 87 ; Pythagoras applied to (consulted) the Persian magi.*

*Stella Veneris antegreditur sōlem, C., N.D., II. 20, 53 ; the star Venus goes in advance of the sun.*

*Omnes Domitium circumsistunt, CAES., B.C., I. 20, 5 ; all surround Domitius.*

*Eam, si opus esse vidēbitur, ipse conveniam, C., Fam., v. 11, 2 ; I will go to see her, myself, if it shall seem expedient.*

*Convivia cum patre nōn inibat, C., Rosc. Am., 18, 52 ; he would not go to banquets with his father.*

*Fretum, quod Naupactum et Patrās interfuit, L., XXVII. 29, 9 ; the frith that flows between Naupactus and Patrae.*

*Alexander tertio et tricesimo annō mortem obiit, C., Ph., v. 17, 48 ; Alexander died in his thirty-third year.*

*Caesar omnem agrum Picēnum percurrit, CAES., B.C., I. 15, 1 ; Caesar traversed rapidly all the Picenian district.*

*Populus solet dignōs praeterire, C., Planc., 3, 8 ; the people is wont to pass by the worthy.*

*Epaminōndās poenam subiit, Cf. NEP., xv. 8, 2 ; Epaminondas submitted to the punishment.*

**Criminum vim subterfugere nullō modō poterat**, C., *Verr.*, I. 3, 8; *he could in no way evade the force of the charges.*

**Rōmāni ruinās mūri supervādēbant**, L., XXXII. 24, 5; *the Romans marched over the ruins of the wall.*

**Crassus Euphrātem nullā belli causā trānsiit**, Cf. C., *Fin.*, III. 22, 75; *Crassus crossed the Euphrates without any cause for war.*

REMARKS.—1. If the simple verb is trans., it can take two Accusatives: **Equitum magnam partem flūmen trāscit**, CAES., *B.C.*, I. 55, 1; *he threw a great-part of the cavalry across the river.*

2. With many of these verbs the preposition may be repeated; but never circum: **Cōpiās trāscit Rhodanum**, or **trāns Rhodanum**, *he threw his troops across the Rhone.*

3. Sometimes a difference of signification is caused by the addition of the preposition; so, **adire aliquem**, *to go to a man*; **adire aliquem**, *to apply to (to consult) a man.*

# INNER OBJECT.

**332.** Any verb can take an Accusative of the Inner Object, when that object serves to define more narrowly or to explain more fully the contents of the verb.

**333.** 1. Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives are often used to define or modify the substantive notion that lies in the verb.

**Xenophōn eadem ferē peccat**, C., *N.D.*, I. 12, 31; *Xenophon makes very much the same mistakes.*

With trans. verbs an Acc. of the person can be employed besides:

**Discipulōs id unum moneō**, QUINT., II. 9, 1; *I give pupils this one piece of advice.*

REMARKS.—1. The usage is best felt by comparing the familiar English *it* after intrans. verbs, “to walk it, to foot it,” etc., where “it” represents the substantive that lies in “walk, foot,” etc.

2. In many cases the feeling of the case is lost to the consciousness, so especially with the interrogative **quid**, which has almost the force of **cūr**. **Quid rīdes?** *what (laughter) are you laughing = what means your laughter?* *Why do you laugh?*

2. *Cognate Accusative.*—When the dependent word is of the same origin or of kindred meaning with the verb, it is called the Cognate Accusative, and usually has an attribute.

**Mirum atque inscītum somniāvī somnium**, PL., *Rud.*, 597; *a marvelous and uncanny dream I've dreamed.*



REMARK.—After the analogy of the Cognate Acc. are many phraseological usages, such as *rem certāre*, to fight a case; *foedus ferire*, to make a treaty (compare, to strike a bargain); *iūs respondēre*, to render an opinion; *causam vincere*, to win a case, etc. Also the phrases with *ire*: *exsequiās ire*, to attend a funeral; *infitiās ire*, to deny, etc.

### Accusative of Extent.

The Accusative of Extent has to do with Degree, Space, or Time.

**334.** The Accusative of Extent in Degree is confined to neuter adjectives and pronouns used substantively, *multum*, *plūs*, *tantum*, *quantum*, etc.

*Si mē amās tantum quantum profectō amās*, C., *Att.*, II. 20, 5; if you love me as much as in fact you do love me.

REMARKS.—1. The number of adjectives and pronouns so used is large, and in many cases the form is felt more as an adverb than as a substantive.

2. Here belong the adverbial Accusatives *māgnam*, etc., *partem*, to a great extent, in great part; perhaps *meam*, etc., *vicem*, on my side, in my turn, in my stead.

**335.** The Accusative of Extent in Space is used properly only with words that involve a notion of space. When space is not involved in the governing word the idea of extent is given by the use of *per*, *through*.

*Trabēs, distantēs inter sē binōs pedēs, in solō collocantur*, CAES., *B.G.*, VII. 23, 1; beams two feet apart are planted in the ground.

*Phoebidās iter per Thēbās fecit*, NEP., XVI. 1, 2; *Phoebidas* marched through *Thebes*.

*Militēs aggerem lātum pedēs trecentōs trigintā altum pedēs octōgintā extrūxerunt*, CAES., *B.G.*, VII. 24, 1; the soldiers raised an embankment three hundred and thirty feet wide (and) eighty feet high.

REMARKS.—1. The adjectives in most common use with this Accusative are *longus*, long, *lātus*, wide, *altus*, deep, high.

2. With *abesse* and *distāre*, an Abl. of Measure may also be used:

*Mīlibus passuum quattuor et viginti abesse*, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 41, 5; to be twenty-four miles from. . .

Noteworthy also is *ab* (ā): *ab mīlibus passuum duobus*, CAES., *B.G.*, II. 7, 3; two miles off.

**336.** The Accusative of Extent in Time, with or without *per*, answers the question, *How long?*

*Duodēquadrīgintā annōs tyrannus Syracūsānōrum fuit Dionysius, C., Tusc., v. 20, 57; thirty-eight years was Dionysius tyrant of Syracuse.*

*Lūdi per decem diēs facti sunt, C., Cat., III. 8, 20; games were performed for ten days.*

*Sedet aeternumque sedēbit infelix Thēseus, V., A., VI. 617; there sits and shall forever sit unhappy Theseus.*

REMARKS.—1. In giving definite numbers with *iam*, *iam diū*, *iam dūdum*, etc., the Latin often employs the ordinal where the English prefers the cardinal. Compare the Ablative of Measure (403).

*Mithridātēs annum iam tertium et vicissimum regnat, C., Imp., 3, 7; Mithridates has been (230) reigning now going on twenty-three years.*

2. *Per* with the Acc. is frequently used like the Abl. of Time Within Which. *Per illa tempora = illis temporibus, in those times.*

So especially with the negative :

*Nūlla rēs per triennium iudicata est, C., Verr., I. 5, 13; no matter was decided during (in) three years.*

3. The Dating Point may be given by *abhinc*, *ago*, which usually precedes the Accusative.

*Dēmōsthēnēs abhinc annōs prope trecentōs fuit, C., Div., II. 57, 118; Demosthenes lived nearly three hundred years ago.*

4. *Nātus*, *old (born)*, may also take Accusative of Extent. For other constructions see 296, E. 5.

*Puer decem annōs nātus est, the boy is ten years old.*

5. Here belong the colloquial phrases *id temporis*, *at that time*, *id aetātis*, *at that age*.

### Accusative of the Local Object.

#### Terminal Accusative.

**337.** Names of Towns and small Islands, when used as limits of Motion Whither, are put in the Accusative.

So also *rūs*, *into the country*, *domum*, *domōs*, *home*.

*Missi lēgātī Athēnās sunt, L., III. 31, 8; envoys were sent to Athens.*

*Lātōna cōnfūgit Dēlum, Cf. C., Verr., I. 18, 48; Latona took refuge in Delos.*

*Ego rūs ibi atque ibi manēbō, TER., Eun., 216; I shall go to the country and stay there.*

*Innumerābilēs philosophī numquam domum revertērunt, C., Tusc., v. 37, 107; innumerable philosophers never returned home.*

REMARKS.—1. Countries and large Islands require prepositions, such as : *in, into; ad, to; versus, -ward; in Graeciam proficisci, to set out for Greece.*

2. When *urbem, city, or oppidum, town,* precedes the name of the city or town, the preposition *in* or *ad* is prefixed; if *urbem* or *oppidum* follows, *in* or *ad* may be omitted : *in (ad) oppidum Cirtam, to, in (at) the town (of) Cirta.*

When *urbem* or *oppidum* is qualified by an adjective, it regularly follows the name of the town, and has the preposition :

*Ingurtha Thalam pervēnit in oppidum māgnū et opulentū, S., Jug., 75, 1; Jugurtha arrived at Thala, a great and wealthy town.*

3. *Domum*, with a possessive pronoun, or *Gen.*, may mean *house* as well as *home*, and accordingly may or may not have *in* before it : *domum meam, or, in domum meam, to my house; domum Pompēi, or, in domum Pompēi, to Pompey's house; also domum ad Pompēiū. Otherwise : in māgnificam domum venire, to come into a grand house.*

4. *Ad* means *to the neighborhood of*, often *before*, of military operations : *ad Mutinam, to the neighborhood (siege of) Mutina (Modena).*

5. The simple *Acc.* will suffice even for *extent* :

*Omnia illa municipia, quae sunt à Vibōne Brundisium, C., Planc., 41, 97; all the free towns from Vibo to Brundisium.*

6. Motion *to a place* embraces all the places mentioned :

*Phalara in sinum Māliacum processerat, L., xxxv., 43, 8; he had advanced to Phalara on the Maliac Gulf. Tarentum in Italiam inferiorem proficisci, to set out for Tarentum in Lower Italy.*

7. The poets and later prose writers occasionally omit the preposition also before Countries and large Islands.

## OUTER OBJECT.

### Accusative of Respect.

**338.** The Accusative of the object affected is sometimes used with a passive or intransitive verb, or an adjective. It is called the *Accusative of Respect*, sometimes the *Greek Accusative*.

1. *Definite* : The Accusative of the part affected (chiefly poetic).

*Percussa novā mentem formidine, V., G., iv. 357; her mind stricken (stricken in her mind) with a new dread.*

*Saucius pectus, QUINT., ix. 3, 17; "breast-wounded."*

2. *Indefinite* : *cōtera, alia, reliqua, omnia, plēraque, cūncta; in other respects, in all respects, in most respects.*

*Cōtera adsentior Crassō, C., Or., i. 9, 35; in all other points I agree with Crassus.*

*Omnia Mercuriō similis, V., A., iv. 558; in all respects like unto Mercury.*

## DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE (Inner and Outer).

**339.** Active verbs signifying to Ask, Demand, Teach, and Conceal take two Accusatives, one of the Person, and the other of the Thing.

*Pāsiōnem quendam Sōcratēs interrogat quaedam gēōmetrica*, C., *Tusc.*, I. 24, 57; *Socrates asks an urchin sundry questions in geometry.*

*Caesār Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat*, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 16, 1; *Caesar kept demanding corn from the Aedui.*

*Quid nunc tē, asine, litterās doceam?* C., *Pis.*, 30, 73; *why should (265) I now give you a lesson in literature, you donkey?*

*Nōn tē cēlēvi sermōnem Ampii*, C., *Fam.*, II. 16, 3; *I did not keep you in the dark about my talk with Ampius.*

REMARKS.—1. The expressions vary a good deal. Observe :

This then is not the only way,	<i>Ptēcō</i> , <i>I claim</i> , and <i>flāgitō</i> ,
For it is also right to say,	And always <i>petō</i> , <i>pōstulō</i> ,
<i>Docēre</i> and <i>cēlēre</i> dē,	Take <i>aliquid ab aliquō</i> ,
<i>Interrogāre</i> dē quā rē.	While <i>quaerō</i> takes <i>ex</i> , <i>ab</i> , <i>dē</i> , <i>quō</i> .

*Adherbal Rōmam lēgātōs miserat, qui senātum docērent dē caede frātis*, S., *Iug.*, 13, 3; *Adherbal had sent envoys to Rome to inform the senate of the murder of his brother.*

*Aquam ē pūmice nunc pōstulās*, PL., *Pers.*, 41; *you are now asking water of a pumice-stone (blood of a turnip).*

2. With *docēō* the Abl. of the Instrument is also used : *docēre fidibus*, *equō*, *to teach the lyre, to teach riding*; with *ērudire*, the Abl., or Abl. with *in*. The Participles *doctus* and *ēruditus* generally take the Abl. : *doctus Graecis litteris*, *a good Grecian*.

3. With the Passive *cēlēri*, we find either : *aliquid mē cēlētur*, *something is being concealed from me*; or, *cēlor dē aliquā rē*, *I am kept in the dark about something*.

4. The Passive of *docēre* is usually *discere*, *to learn*.

**340.** Verbs of Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, Showing, may have two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing :

*Iram bene Ennius initium dixit insāniae*, C., *Tusc.*, IV. 23, 52; *well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness.*

*Ancum Mārcium rēgem populus creāvit*, L., I. 32, 1; *the people made Ancus Marcius king.*

*Catō Valerium Flaccum habuit collēgam*, Cf. *NEP.*, XXIV. 1, 2; *Cato had Valerius Flaccus (as) colleague.*

**Athēniēnsibus Pythia praecōpit ut Miltiadem sibi imperatōrem sūmerent,** *NEP.*, I. 1, 3; *the Pythia instructed the Athenians to take Miltiades (as) their commander.*

**Praestā tē eum qui mihi es cōgnitus,** *C., Fam.*, I. 6, 2; *show yourself the man that I know you to be.*

**REMARKS.**—1. The Double Acc. is turned into the Double Nom. with the Passive (206). **Reddō, I render,** is not used in the Passive, but, instead thereof, **fiō, I become.**

**Habēō,** with two Accusatives, commonly means to *have*; in the sense of *hold, regard*, other turns are used; usually **prō**.

**Utrum prō ancillā mē habēs an prō filiā?** *PL., Pers.*, 341; *do you look upon me as a maid-servant or as a daughter?*

Similarly **habēre servōrum locō, (in) numerō dēōrum,** *to regard as slaves, as gods.*

2. With verbs of Taking and Choosing the *end* or *purpose* is indicated by the Dat. or *ad* with Accusative.

**Rōmulus trecentōs armātōs ad cūstōdiam corporis habuit,** *L., I.* 15, 8; *Romulus had three hundred armed men as a body-guard.*

#### ACCUSATIVE AS A GENERAL OBJECTIVE CASE.

(341–2) **343.** 1. The Accusative is used in Exclamations:

**Mē miserum,** *C., Fam.*, XIV. 1, 1; *poor me!*

**Mē caecum qui haec ante nōn viderim,** *C., Att.*, x. 10, 1; *blind me! not to have seen all this before.*

So in Exclamatory Questions:

**Quō mihi fortunā, si nōn concēditur tūi?** *H., Ep.*, I. 5, 12; *what (is the object of) fortune to me if I'm not allowed to enjoy it?*

The Interjections **heu, alas! ō, oh! prō, for,** are sometimes used.

**Heu mē miserum!** *TER., Ph.*, 187; *Alas! poor me!*

**Ō miserās hominū mentēs, Ō pectora caeca,** *LUCE.*, II. 14; *oh, the wretched minds of men, oh, the blind hearts!*

**Prō deū fidem,** *C., Tusc.*, v. 16, 48; *for heaven's sake!*

So, in apposition to a sentence, see 324.

**REMARK.**—**Eccē, behold!** takes only the Nom. in classical Latin; so usually **en, lo!**

2. The Accusative with the Infinitive is used:

(a) In Exclamations. (See 534.)

(b) As an Object. (See 527.)

(c) As a Subject. (See 535.)

## DATIVE.

**344.** The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object, and always involves a Direct Object, which may be expressed in the Accusative case or contained in the verb itself.

*Tibi exercitum patria pro se dedit*, C., Ph., XIII. 6, 14; *your country gave you an army for its own defence.*

*Nemo errat tibi sibi*, SEN.; E.M., 94, 54; *no one errs (makes mistakes) to (for) himself alone.*

## Dative with Transitive Verbs.

**345.** The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with Transitive verbs, which already have a Direct Object in the Accusative. Translation *to, for, from*.

This Accusative becomes the Nominative of the Passive. The Dative remains unchanged.

## Active Form :

*To* : *Facile omnes, cum valemus, recta consilia aegrotis damus*, TER., And., 309; *readily all of us, when well, give good counsel to the sick.*

*For* : *Frangam tonsori crura manusque simul*, MART., XI. 58, 10; *I'd break the barber's legs for him and hands at once.*

*From* : *Somnum mihi ademit*, C., Att., II. 16, 1; *it took my sleep away from me.*

## Passive Form :

*To* : *Mercos mihi gloria datur*, OV., F., III. 389; *let glory be given to me as a reward.*

*For* : *Immeritis franguntur crura caballis*, JUV., x. 60; *the innocent hacks get their legs broken for them.*

*From* : *Arma adimuntur militibus*, L., XXII. 44, 6; *the soldiers have their arms taken from them.*

REMARKS.—1. The Dat. with verbs of Taking Away, Prohibiting, and the like (*Dative of Separation*), is mostly confined to poetry and later prose. The translation *from* is merely approximate, instead of *for*. When the Person is not involved, the Abl. is necessary.

*Is frater, qui eripuit fratrem carcere, non potuit eripere fati*, SEN., Dial., XI. 14, 4; *the brother who wrested his brother from prison could not wrest him from fate.*

2. Observe that *to* when *motion* is involved is *ad* or *in*: *litteras ad aliquem dare*, *to indite a letter to some one*; *for (in defence of)* is *pro*: *pro patria mori*, *to die for one's country.*

## Dative with Intransitive Verbs.

**346.** The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with many Intransitive Verbs of Advantage or Disadvantage, Yielding and Resisting, Pleasure and Displeasure, Bidding and Forbidding.

*Crassi pudor nōn obfuit eius orātiōni*, C., *Or.*, I. 26, 122; *Crassus's modesty was not a bar to the effectiveness of his oratory.*

*Ipsa sibi imbecillitas indulget*, C., *Tusc.*, IV. 18, 42; *weakness gives free course to itself.*

*Probus invidet nēmīni*, C., *Tim.*, 3, 9; *your upright man cherishes envy to no one.*

*Catilina litteras mittit sē fortunae cedere*, S., *C.*, 34, 2; *Catiline writes that he gives way to fortune.*

*Diēs stultis quoque mederi solet*, C., *Fam.*, VII. 28, 3; *time is wont to prove a medicine even to fools.*

*Moderari animō, est nōn mediocris ingenii*, C., *Q.F.*, I. II. 13, 38; *to put bounds to one's temper is the work of (shows) no mean ability.*

*Si agam, ut auctori huius disciplinae placet*, C., *Fin.*, I. 9, 29; *I will act as it seems good to the head of this school (of thought).*

*Mundus deō paret et huic oboediunt maria terraeque*, C., *Leg.*, III. 1, 8; *the universe is obedient to God, and seas and lands hearken unto him.*

*Virtuti suorum satis credit*, Cf. S., *Iug.*, 106, 3; *he puts full confidence in the valor of his men.*

REMARKS.—1. Of course the passives of these verbs are used impersonally (208):

*Qui invident, egent, illis quibus invidetur, i rem habent*, PL., *Truc.*, 745; *those who envy are the needy, those who are envied have the stuff.*

2. Observe the difference where either Accusative or Dative may be employed; so especially with verbs of Fearing, as: *metuere aliquem*, to dread some one, but *metuere alicui*, to fear for some one; *cavere alicui*, to take precautions for some one, but *cavere aliquem* (also *dē, ab aliquō*), to take precautions against some one; *cōsultare alicui*, to consult a person, but *cōsultare alicui*, to consult for a person.

Noteworthy are the constructions of *invidere* and *vacare*:

*Invidere alicui (in) aliquā rē,*  
*alicui aliquid,* } to begrudge a man a thing.  
*aliquid alicui rei,* to envy something belonging to a man.

*Vacare rei,* to be at leisure for, to attend to } a matter.  
*rē, & rē,* to be at leisure from

Sometimes there is hardly any difference in meaning:

*Comitor aliquem*, I accompany a man; *comitor alicui*, I act as companion to a man; *praestolor alicui* (better) or *aliquem*, I wait for.

3. Some words with meaning like to the above take the Acc.; the most notable are : *aequāre*, to be equal ; *decēre* (to distinguish), to be becoming ; *dēficere*, to be wanting ; *dēlectāre*, to please ; *iuvāre*, to be a help ; *iubēre*, to order ; *laedere*, to injure ; and *vetāre*, to forbid. *Aequāre* and *dēficere* have also the Dative.

*Eam picturam imitāti sunt multi, aequāvit nāmō*, PLIN., *N.H.*, xxxv. II, 126 ; *that style of painting many have imitated, none equalled.*

*Fōrma virōs neglēcta decet*, OV., *A.A.*, I. 509 ; *a careless beauty is becoming to men.*

*Mē diēs dēficiat*, Cf. C., *Verr.*, II. 21, 52 ; *the day would fail me.*

*Fortēs fortūna adiuvat*, TER., *Ph.*, 203 ; *fortune favors the brave.*

#### Dative with Verbs Compounded with Prepositions.

347. Many verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, (*post*), *prae*, *sub*, and *super*, take the Dative, especially in moral relations.

Transitive Verbs have an Accusative case besides.

*Plēbēs cuncta comitiis adfuit*, C., *Planc.*, 8, 21 ; *the entire commonalty was present at the election.*

*Omnis sēnsus hominum multō antecellit sēnsibus bēstiarum*, C., *N.D.*, II. 57, 145 ; *every sense of man is far superior to the senses of beasts.*

*Ennius equi fortis senectūti comparat suam*, C., *Cat.M.*, 5, 14 ; *Ennius compares his (old age) to the old age of a gallant steed.*

*Imminent duo rēgēs tōtī Asiae*, C., *Imp.*, 5, 12 ; *two kings are menaces to all Asia.*

*Interes cōsiliis*, C., *Att.*, XIV. 22, 2 ; *you are in their councils, are privy to their plans.*

*Piger ipse sibi obstat*, SEN., *E.M.*, 94, 28 ; *the lazy man stands in his own way.*

*Omnibus Druidibus praeest unus*, CAES., *B.G.*, VI. 13, 8 ; *at the head of all the Druids is one man.*

*Anatum ova gallinis saepe suppōnimus*, C., *N.D.*, II. 48, 124 ; *we often put ducks' eggs under hens (for them to hatch).*

*Neque dēesse neque superesse rei pūblicae volō*, C. (POLLIO), *Fam.*, x. 33, 5 ; *no life that is not true to the state, no life that outlives the state's—that is my motto.*

REMARKS.—1. The Dat. is found, as a rule, only when these verbs are used in a figurative sense. In a local sense the preposition is usually employed, except in poetry and later prose.

So *incumbere in gladium*, C., *Inv.*, II. 51, 154, *to fall upon one's sword.*

(2, 3, 4) 5. Some trans. verbs compounded with *dē* and *ex* (rarely with *ab*) sometimes take the Dative of Separation ; see 345, R. 1.



## Dative with Verbs of Giving and Putting.

348. A few verbs, chiefly of Giving and Putting, take a Dative with an Accusative, or an Accusative with an Ablative, according to the conception.

*Prædam militibus dōnat*, CAES., *B. G.*, VII. 11, 9; *he presents the booty to the soldiers*. But *Rubrium corōnā dōnasti*, C., *Verr.*, III. 80, 185; *thou didst present Rubrius with a crown*.

*Nātūra corpus animō circumdedit*, SEN., *E. M.*, 92, 13; *Nature has put a body around the mind*. But *Deus animum circumdedit corpore*, Cf. C., *Tim.*, 6, 20; *God has surrounded the mind with a body*.

## Dative of Possessor.

349. *Esse*, *to be*, with the Dative, is commonly translated by the verb *to have*:

*Contrōversia mihi fuit cum avunculo tuo*, C., *Fin.*, III. 2, 6; *I had a debate with your uncle*.

*An nescis longās rēgibus esse manūs?* Ov., *Her.*, XVI. 166; *or perhaps you do not know that kings have long arms?*

REMARKS.—1. The predicate of *esse*, with the Dat., is translated in the ordinary manner: *Caesar amicus est mihi*, *Caesar is a friend to me* (*amicus meus*, MY friend, friend of MINE).

2. The Dat. is never simply equivalent to the Genitive. With the Dat. the Possession is emphatic; with the Gen. the Possessor is emphatic. The Gen. is the permanent Possessor, or owner; the Dat. is the temporary Possessor. The one may include the other:

*Latini concedunt Rōmam caput Latii esse*, Cf. L., VIII. 4, 5; *the Latins concede that Latium has its capital in ROME*. (*Latii*: that LATIUM's capital is Rome).

3. Possession of qualities is expressed by *esse* with *in* and the Abl., by *in esse* with Dat. or with *in*, or by some other turn:

*Fuit mirificus in Crasso pudor*, C., *Or.*, I. 26, 122; *Crassus had a marvellous modesty*.

*Cimon habebat satis eloquentiae*, NEP., V. 2, 1; *Cimon had eloquence enough*.

4. *Abesse* and *dēesse*, *to be wanting*, *to fail*, take also the Dat. of Possessor.

5. The Dat. of the person is regular with the phrases *nōmen est*, *cōgnōmen est*, etc. Here the name is regularly in the Nom. in apposition to *nōmen*; occasionally in the Dative.

*Fons aquae dulcis, cui nōmen Arethusa est*, C., *Verr.*, IV. 53, 118; *a fountain of sweet water named Arethusa*.

*Nōmen Arctūri est mihi*, PL., *Rud.*, 5; *my name is Arcturus*.

## Dative of Personal Interest.

**350.** The Dative is used of the person in whose honor, or interest, or advantage, an action takes place, or the reverse (*Dativus Commodi et Incommodi*):

*Censurræxisse omnes Lysandros dicuntur*, C., *Cat. M.*, 18, 63; *all are said to have risen up together in honor of Lysander.*

*Dei nostra altaria fumant*, V., *Ec.*, I. 43; *our altars smoke in honor of the god.*

## Ethical Dative.

**351.** The Ethical Dative indicates special interest in the action. It may be called the Dative of Feeling, and its use is confined to the personal pronouns (*Dativus Ethicus*).

*Ece tibi Sebosus!* C., *Att.*, II. 15; *here's your Sebosus!*

*Tu mihi istius audaciam defendis?* C., *Verr.*, III. 91, 213; *do you defend me (to my face) that fellow's audacity?*

"She's a civil modest wife, one (I tell you) that will not miss *you* morning nor evening prayer."—SHAKS., *Merry Wives*, II. 2, 201.

## Dative of Reference.

**352.** This indicates the person in whose eyes the statement of the predicate holds good (*Dativus Iudicantis*).

*Ut mihi deformis, sic tibi magnificus*, TAC., *H.*, XII. 37; *to me a monster, to yourself a prodigy of splendor.*

*Quintia formosa est multis*, CAT., 86, 1; *Quintia is a beauty in the eyes of many.*

**353.** Noteworthy is the use of this Dative in combination with participles.

*Vere aestimanti*, L., XXXVII. 58, 8; *to one whose judgment was true.*

*Hec est oppidum primum Thessaliae venientibus ab Epiro*, CAES., *B.C.*, III. 80; *this is the first town of Thessaly to those coming (as you come) from Epirus.*

## Dative of the Agent.

**354.** The Dative is used with Passive Verbs, in prose chiefly with the Perfect Passive, to show the interest which the agent takes in the result.

*Mihi res tota provisæ est*, C., *Verr.*, IV. 42, 91; *I have had the whole matter provided for.*

*Cui non sunt auditiæ Demosthenis vigilæ?* C., *Tusc.*, IV. 19, 44; *to whom are not Demosthenes' long watchings a familiar hearsay?*

**355.** The agent of the Gerund and Gerundive is put in the Dative, at all periods.

*Dēspēranda tibi salvā concordia socrū, Juv., VI. 231 ; you must despair of harmony while Mother-in-law's alive.*

REMARK.—To avoid ambiguity, especially when the verb itself takes the Dat., the Abl. with *ab* (ē) is employed :

*Civibus ā vōbīs cōsulendum, C., Imp., 2, 6 ; the interest of the citizens must be consulted by you.*

#### Dative of the Object For Which.

**356.** Certain Verbs take the Dative of the Object For Which (to what end), and often at the same time a Dative of the Personal Object For Whom, or To Whom.

*Nēmīni meus adventus labōrī aut sūmptui fuit, C., Verr., I. 6, 16 ; to no one was my arrival a burden or an expense.*

*Habere quaestui rem publicam turpe est, C., Off., II. 22, 77 ; it is base to have the state for one's exchequer.*

#### Dative with Derivative Substantives.

**357.** A few derivative substantives take the Dative of their primitives :

*Iustitia est obtemperatiō lēgibus, C., Leg., I. 15, 42 ; justice is obedience to the laws.*

#### Local Dative.

**358.** The Dative is used in poetry to denote the *place whither*.

*It caelō clāmorque virum clangorque tubārum, V., A., XI. 192 ; mounts to high Heaven warriors' shout and trumpets' blare.*

#### Dative with Adjectives.

**359.** Adjectives of Likeness, Fitness, Friendliness, Nearness, and the like, with their opposites, take the Dative :

*Canis similis lupō est, C., N.D., I. 35, 97 ; the dog is like unto the wolf.*

*Castris idōneus locus, CAES., B.G., VI. 10, 2 ; a place suitable for a camp.*

*Utile est rei publicae nōbīlēs homīnēs esse dignōs mājōribus suis, C., Sest., 9, 21 ; it is to the advantage of the state that men of rank should be worthy of their ancestors.*

*Vir mihi amīcissimus, Fabricius, C., Sest., 35, 75; my very great friend, Fabricius.*

*Omni aetātī mors est commūnis, Cf. C., Cat. M., 19, 68; death is common to every time of life.*

*Proximus sum egomet mihi, TER., And., 636; myself am nearest to me.*

*Tēstis id dicit quod illi causae m̄xim̄s est aliēnum, C., Caec., 9, 24; the witness says what is especially damaging to that case (side).*

REMARKS.—1. Many adjectives which belong to this class are used also as substantives, and as such are construed with the Genitive : *amicus, friend; aequālis, contemporary; cognātus, kinsman; commūnis, common; contrārius, opposite; p̄r, match; proprius, peculiāris, own, peculiar; similis, like* ("we ne'er shall look upon his like again").

*Ille, cuius paucōs parēs haec civitās tulit, C., Pis., 4, 8; (he was) a man few of whose peers the state hath borne.*

2. The object toward which is expressed by the Acc. with *in, ergā, adversus* :

*Manlius fuit sev̄rus in filiū, C., Off., III. 31, 112; Manlius was severe toward his son.*

*Mē esse scit sc̄s ergā benivolum, PL., Capt., 350; he knows that I am kindly disposed toward him.*

3. The object for which may be expressed by the Acc. with *ad, to* :

*Homō ad nullam rem utilis, C., Off., III. 6, 29; a good-for-nothing fellow.*

This is the more common construction with adjectives of Fitness.

## II. Internal Change.

### Genitive.

**360.** 1. The Genitive Case is the case that fills out or completes the meaning of the word with which it is construed. It may be defined as the Case of the Complement (*compleō, I fill out*).

The chief English representatives of the Genitive are :

(a) The Possessive case : *domus r̄gis, the king's palace.*

(b) The Objective case with *of* : *domus r̄gis, the palace of the king.*

(c) Substantives used as adjectives or in composition : *arbor abietis, fir-tree.*

REMARKS.—1. Other prepositions than *of* are not unfrequently used :

*Patriae quis exsul s̄ quoque fugit? H., O., II. 16, 19; what exile FROM his country ever fled himself as well?*

*Boiōrum triumphī spem collēgae reliquit, L., XXXIII. 37, 10; he left the hope of a triumph OVER the Boii to his colleague.*

2. An abstract substantive with the Gen. is often to be translated as an attribute :

**Verni temporis suavitās**, C., *Cat. M.*, 19, 70 ; *the sweet spring-time*.

**Fontium gelidæ perennitatēs**, C., *N. D.*, II. 39, 98 ; *cool springs that never fail*.

And, on the other hand, the predicative attribute is often to be translated as an abstract substantive with *of* :

**Ante Rōmam conditam**, *before the founding of Rome*. (325, R. 3.)

Notice also **hic metus**, *this fear* = *fear of this*, and kindred expressions.

2. The Genitive is employed :

I. and II. Chiefly as the complement of Substantives and Adjectives.

III. Occasionally as the complement of Verbs.

## I. GENITIVE WITH SUBSTANTIVES.

### Adnominal Genitive.

**Appositive Genitive, or Genitive of Specification.**

361. The Genitive is sometimes used by way of Apposition or Explanation, thus :

1. *Appositional Genitive*.—Genitive after such words as, **vōx**, *expression* ; **nōmen**, *name, noun* ; **verbum**, *word, verb* ; **rēs**, *thing*, etc.

**Nōmen amicitiae**, C., *Fin.*, II. 24, 78 ; *the name friendship*.

2. *Explanatory (Epezegetical) Genitive*.—Genitive after such words as **genus**, *class* ; **vitium**, *vice* ; **culpa**, *fault*, etc.

**Virtutēs continentiae, gravitatis, iustitiae, fidel**, C., *Mur.*, 10, 23 ; *the virtues of self-control, earnestness, justice, honor*.

### Possessive Genitive, or Genitive of Property.

362. The Person to whom a thing belongs is put in the Genitive. This is called the Possessive Genitive and is often parallel with the adjective.

**Domus regis** = **domus regis**, *the palace of the king, the king's palace* = *the royal palace* ; **domus eius**, *his house*.

REMARKS.—1. The Possession in the First and Second Person (and in the Reflexive) is indicated by the Possessive Pronouns : **amicus meus**, *a friend of mine* ; **gladius tuus**, *a sword of thine*. But when **omnium** is added, **vestrum** and **nostrum** are used (364 R.). Sometimes the adjective form is preferred : **canis alienus**, *a strange dog, another man's dog* ; **filius erilis**, *master's son*.

2. The attention of the student is called to the variety of forms which possession may take. *Statua Myronis*, *Myron's statue*, may mean : 1. A statue which Myron owns ; 2. Which Myron has made ; 3. Which represents Myron.

3. Sometimes the governing word is omitted, where it can be easily supplied, so especially *aedem* or *templum*, after *ad*, and less often after other prepositions : *pecunia utinam ad Opis maneret*, C., *Ph.*, I. 7, 17 ; *would that the money were still at Ops's (temple).*

#### Active and Passive Genitive.

**363.** When the substantive on which the Genitive depends contains the idea of an action (*nōmen actiōnis*), the possession may be *active* or *passive*. Hence the division into

1. The Active or Subjective Genitive : *amor Dei*, *the love of God, the love which God feels* (God loves) ; *patriae beneficia*, *the benefits of (conferred by) one's country*.

2. Passive or Objective Genitive : *amor Dei*, *love of God, love toward God* (God is loved).

REMARKS.—1. The English form in *of* is used either *actively* or *passively* : *the love of women*. Hence, to avoid ambiguity, other prepositions than *of* are often substituted for the Passive Genitive, such as *for*, *toward*, and the like. So, also, sometimes in Latin :

*Voluntas Servilii erga Caesarem*, Cf. C., *Q.F.*, III. I. 6, 26 ; *the goodwill of Servilius toward Caesar*.

*Odium in bonis inveteratum*, C., *Vat.*, 3, 6 ; *deep-seated hate toward the conservatives*.

2. Both Genitives may be connected with the same substantive :

*Veteres Helvetiorum iniuriæ populi Rōmāni*, Cf. CAES., *B.G.*, I. 30, 2 ; *the Helvetians' ancient injuries of the Roman people*.

**364.** The Subjective Genitive, like the Possessive, is used only of the Third Person. In the First and Second Persons the possessive pronoun is used.

*Amor meus*, *my love (the love which I feel)*. *Dēsiderium tuum*, *your longing (the longing which you feel)*.

Additional attributives are put in the Genitive (321, E. 2) :

*Iuravi hanc urbem meā unius operā salvam esse*, C., *Pis.*, 3, 6 ; *I swore that this city owed its salvation to my exertions alone*.

REMARK.—*Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used as Partitive Genitives.

*Magna pars nostrum*, a great part of us ; *uterque vestrum*, either (both) of you.

*Nostrī melior pars* means the better part of our being, our better part.

With *omnium*, the forms *nostrum* and *vestrum* must be used (362, R. 1).

### Genitive of Quality.

**365.** The Genitive of Quality must always have an adjective or its equivalent.

*Vir magnae auctoritatis*, CAES., *B.G.*, v. 35, 6 ; a man of great influence.

*Homō nihili* (= *nullius pretii*), PL., *B.*, 1188 ; a fellow of no account.

*Tridui via*, CAES., *B.G.*, 1. 38, 1 ; a three days' journey.

REMARK.—The Genitive of Quality is less common than the Ablative, being used chiefly of the essentials. The Genitive always of Number, Measure, Time, Space ; the Ablative always of externals, so of parts of the body. Often the use seems indifferent. (400.)

### Genitive as a Predicate.

**366.** The Genitives of Possession and Quality may be used as Predicates.

*Hic versus Plauti nōn est, hic est*, C., *Fam.*, ix. 16, 4 ; this verse is not by Plautus, this is.

*Virtus tantarū viriū est ut sē ipsa tueatur*, C., *Tusc.*, v. 1, 2 ; virtue is of such strength as to be her own protector.

REMARKS.—1. The Possession appears in a variety of forms, and takes a variety of translations :

*Huius erō vivus, mortuus huius erō*, PROP., II. 15, 35 ; hers I shall be, living ; dead, hers I shall be.

*Damnatio est iudicū, poena legis*, C., *Sull.*, 22, 63 ; condemning is the judges' (business), punishment the law's.

*Pauperis est numerāre pecus*, OV., *M.*, xiii. 823 ; 'tis only the poor man that counts his flock ('tis the mark of a poor man to count the flock).

Observe this Genitive with *facere*, to make (cause to be).

*Rōmānae ditionis facere*, L., xxi. 60, 3 ; to bring under the Roman sway.

2. *Stultitiae est*, it is the part of folly may be used, as well as *stulti est*, it is the part of a fool. So, too, *stultum est*, it is foolish. But when the adj. is of the Third Declension, the neuter should not be used, except in combination with an adj. of the Second.

Some combinations become phraseological, as : *cōnsuetūdinis, mōris est, it is the custom.*

3. The same methods of translation apply to the Possessive Pronoun in the Predicate ("Vengeance is mine") : *meum est, it is my property, business, way.*

*Nōn est mentiri meum, TER., Heaut., 549 ; lying is not my (nature).*

*His tantis in rēbus est tuum vidēre, quid agatur, C., Mur., 38, 88 ; in this important crisis it is your (business) to see what is to be done.*

### Partitive Genitive.

367. The Partitive Genitive stands for the Whole to which a Part belongs.

368. The Partitive Genitive is used with substantives of Quantity, Number, Weight.

*Māximus vini numerus fuit, permāgnū pondus argenti, C., Ph., II. 27, 66 ; there was a large amount of wine, an enormous mass of silver.*

*Campānōrum ālam excedere acis iubet, L., X. 29, 2 ; he orders a squadron of Campanians to leave the line.*

REMARK.—Whether the conception be partitive or not, depends on circumstances.

*Medimnus tritici, a medimnus of wheat,* may be a *medimnus of WHEAT (Genitive Genetivus)* or a *MEDIMNUS of wheat (Partitive).*

369. The Partitive Genitive is used with the neuter Singular of the following and kindred words, but only in the Nominative or Accusative.

<i>tantum, so much,</i>	<i>quantum, as (how much),</i>	<i>aliquantum, somewhat,</i>
<i>multum, much,</i>	<i>plūs, more,</i>	<i>plūrimum, most,</i>
<i>paulum, little,</i>	<i>minus, less,</i>	<i>minimum, least,</i>
<i>satis, enough,</i>	<i>parum, too little,</i>	<i>nihil, nothing,</i>
<i>hōc, this,</i>	<i>id, illud, istud, that,</i>	<i>idem, the same,</i>

*quod and quid, which and what ? with their compounds.*

*Is locus ab omni turbā id temporis (336, R. 5) vacuus erat, C., Fin., v. 1, 1 ; that place was at that (point of) time free from anything like a crowd.*

*Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum, S., C., 5, 4 ; enough (of) eloquence, of wisdom too little.*

REMARKS.—1. Neuter adjectives of the Second Declension can be treated as substantives in the Gen. ; not so adjectives of the Third, except in combination with adjectives of the Second, but here usually the Second Declension adjective is attracted : *aliquid bonum, or boni,*



*something good ; aliquid memorabile, something memorable ; aliquid boni et memorabilis, something good and memorable (better aliquid bonum et memorabile).*

2. A familiar phrase is : *Nihil reliqui facere.* 1. *To leave nothing (not a thing).* 2. (Occasionally), *to leave nothing undone.*

**370.** The Partitive Genitive is used with numerals, both general and special.

*Special :*

*Centum militum, a hundred (of the) soldiers, a hundred (of) soldiers.*

(*Centum militēs, a, the hundred soldiers.*)

*Quintus regum, the fifth (of the) king(s).*

(*Quintus rex, the fifth king.*)

*General :*

*Multi militum, many of the soldiers, many soldiers*

(*Multi militēs, many soldiers.*)

REMARKS.—1. The English language commonly omits the partition, unless it is especially emphatic :

*Multi civium adsunt, many CITIZENS are present. Multi civēs adsunt, MANY are the citizens present.*

2. When all are embraced, there is no partition in Latin :

*Nōs trecenti confirmavimus, L., II. 12, 15 ; three hundred of us have bound ourselves by an oath.*

*Qui omnes, all of whom. Quot estis ? how many are (there of) you ?*

So always *quot, tot, totidem.*

3. On *mille* and *millia*, see 293. On prepositions with numerals, see 372, B. 2.

**371.** The Partitive Genitive is used with Pronouns.

*II militum, those (of the) soldiers. II militēs, those soldiers.*

*Illi Graecorum, those (of the) Greeks.*

*Fidēnātium qui supersunt, ad urbem Fidēnās tendunt, L., IV. 33, 16 ; the surviving Fidenates take their way to the city of Fidenae.*

REMARKS.—1. *Uterque*, *either (both)*, is commonly used as an adjective with substantives : *uterque cōsul, either consul = both consuls ;* as a substantive with pronouns, unless a substantive is also used : *uterque hōrum, both of these ;* but *uterque ille dux, both of those leaders.*

2. On the use of prepositions instead of the Genitive, see 372, B. 2.

**372.** The Partitive Genitive is used with Comparatives and Superlatives :

*Prior hōrum in proeliō cecidit, NEP., XXI. 1, 2 ; the former of these fell in an engagement.*

*Indus est omnium flūminum m̄ximus, C., N.D., II. 52, 130 ; the Indus is the greatest of all streams.*

REMARKS.—(1) 2. Instead of the Partitive Genitive with Numerals, Pronouns, Comparatives, and Superlatives, the Abl. may be employed with *ex*, *out of*, *dē*, *from*, or the Acc. with *inter*, *among*, *apud* : *Gallus pr̄vocat ūnum ex R̄mānīs, the Gaul challenges one of the Romans ; ūnus dē multis, one of the many (the masses) ; Croesus inter rēgēs opulentissimus, Croesus, wealthiest of kings.*

With *ūnus*, *ex* or *dē* is the more common construction, except that when *ūnus* is first in a series, the Gen. is common.

3. On the concord of the Superlative see 211, R. 2.

4. The Partitive Genitive with positives belongs especially to poetry.

*Sequimur tē, s̄ncte deōrum, V., A., IV. 576 ; we follow thee, holy deity.*

5. The use of neuter adjectives as substantives with the Genitive is also mainly poetical.

*Ardus dum metuunt, smittunt v̄ra viā (29, R. 3), LUCR., I. 660 ; the while they fear the steeper road, they miss the true.*

*So am̄ra cūr̄arum, H., O., IV. 12, 19 ; bitter elements of cares, bitter cares ; str̄ta viarum, V., A., I. 422 = str̄t̄ae vīae, the paved streets.*

6. The Partitive Genitive is also used with Adverbs of Quantity, Place, Extent, as : *ubi terr̄arum, gentium ? where in the world ?* Observe also its colloquial uses with *hūc*, *eō*, as *hūc, eō arrogantiae pr̄cessit, he got to this, that pitch of presumption.*

#### Genitive with Prepositional Substantives.

**373.** *Causā*, *gr̄tiā*, *ergō*, and *instar* are construed with the Genitive.

*Sophistae quæstūs causā philosophābantur, C., Ac., II. 23, 72 ; the professors of wisdom dealt in philosophy for the sake of gain.*

*Am̄ris magis quam hon̄ris gr̄tiā, ENN., F., 287 (M.) ; more for love's (sake) than for honor's sake.*

*Virtūtis ergō, C., Opt. Gen., 7, 19 ; on account of valor.*

*Instar montis equus, V., A., II. 15 ; a horse the bigness of a mountain.*

## II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

**374.** Adjectives of Fulness and Want, of Participation, of Power, of Knowledge and Ignorance, of Desire and Disgust, take the Genitive.

*Plēnus rimārum*, TER., *Eun.*, 105; *full of chinks* ("a leaky vessel").

*Particeps cōsiliū*, C., *Sull.*, 4, 12; *a sharer in the plan*.

*Mentis compos*, C., *Ph.*, II. 38, 97; *in possession of* (one's) *mind*.

*Multārum rērum peritus*, C., *Font.*, II, 25; *versed in many things*.

*Cupidus pecūniæ*, Cf. C., *Verr.*, I. 3, 8; *grasping after money*.

*Omnium rērum inscius*, C., *Br.*, 85, 292; *a universal ignoramus*.

*Sitque memor nostri neque, referte mihi*, OV., *Tr.*, IV. 3, 10; *bring me back (word) whether she thinks of us or no*.

*Omnēs immemorem benefici odērunt*, C., *Off.*, II. 18, 63; *all hate a man who has no memory for kindness*.

*Bēstiæ sunt ratiōnis et cōtatiōnis expertæ*, C., *Off.*, I. 16, 50; *beasts are devoid of reason and speech (lack discourse of reason)*.

*Omnia plēna cōsiliōrum, infānia verbōrum vidēmus*, C., *Or.*, I. 9, 37; *we see a world that is full of wise measures, void of eloquence*.

*Gallia frūgum fertilis fuit*, L., v. 34, 2; *Gaul was productive of grain*.

REMARK.—The seat of the feeling is also put in the Gen., chiefly with *animi* and *ingeniū*. *Aeger animi*, L., I. 58, 9; *sick at heart, heart-sick*. *Audax ingeniū*, STAT., *S.*, III. 2, 64; *daring of disposition*. The Pl. is *animis*.

## Genitive with Verbals.

**375.** Some Present Participles take the Genitive when they lose their verbal nature; and so occasionally do verbals in *-ix* in poetry and later prose.

*Epaminōndās erat adeō vērītātis diligēns ut nō iocō quidem mentīrētur*, NEP., XV. 3, 1; *Epaminondas was so careful (such a lover) of the truth as not to tell lies even in jest*.

*Omnium cōsēnsū capāx imperiū nisi imperāset*, TAC., *H.*, I. 49; *by general consent capable of empire, had he not become emperor*.

## III. GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

## Genitive with Verbs of Memory.

**376.** Verbs of Reminding, Remembering, and Forgetting, take the Genitive.

*Tū veteris amicitiae commōnēfecit*, [C.] *ad Her.*, IV. 24, 33; *he reminded you of your old friendship*.

**Ipsē iubet mortis tē meminisse deus,** MART., II. 59; *a god himself bids you remember death.*

**Est proprium stultitiæ aliorum vitia cernere, oblivisci suorum,** C., *Tusc.*, III. 30, 73; *the fact is, it shows a fool to have keen eyes for the faults of others, to forget one's own.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Reminding take more often the Abl. with **dē** and the Acc. neut. of a pronoun or Numeral adjective.

**Ōrō ut Terentiam moneātis dē tēstamentō,** C., *Att.*, XI. 16, 5; *I beg you to put Terentia in mind of the will.*

**Discipulōs id ūnum moneō,** QUINT., II. 9, 1; *I give pupils this one (333, 1) piece of advice.*

2. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting also take the Acc., especially of Things :

**Hæc olim meminisse iuvābit,** V., A., I. 203; *to remember these things will one day give us pleasure.*

**Oblivisci nihil solēs nisi iniuriās,** C., *Lig.*, 12, 35; *you are wont to forget nothing except injuries.*

**Recordor** (literally = *I bring to heart, to mind*) is construed with the Acc. of the Thing; **dē** is found with Persons.

**Et vocem Anchisæ magni vultumque recordor,** V., A., VIII. 156; *and I recall (call to mind) the voice and countenance of Anchises the Great.*

**Memini,** *I bear in mind, I (am old enough to) remember,* takes the Accusative :

**Antipatrum tū probē meministi,** C., *Or.*, III. 50, 194; *you remember Antipater very well.*

#### Genitive with Verbs of Emotion.

**377. Misereor, miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet, and pertaesum est** take the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing.\*

**Miserāmini sociōrum,** C., *Verr.*, I. 28, 72; *pity your allies!*

**Suæ quemque fortunæ paenitet,** C., *Fam.*, VI. I, 1; *each man is discontented with his lot.*

**Mē nōn solum piget stultitiæ meæ, sed etiam pudet,** C., *Dom.*, II. 29; *I am not only fretted at my folly, but actually ashamed of it.*

REMARKS.—1. **Pudet** is also used with the Gen. of the Person :

**Pudet deōrum hominumque,** L., III. 19, 7; *it is a shame in the sight of gods and men.*

---

\* **misereor**, *I pity*; **miseret**, *it moves to pity*; **paenitet**, *it repents*; **piget**, *it irks*; **pudet**, *it makes ashamed*; **taedet** and **pertaesum est**, *it tires*.

(2) 8. Other constructions follow from general rules. So the Inf. (422) and quod (542).

*Nōn mē vixisse paenitet*, C., *Cat. M.*, 23, 84; *I am not sorry for having lived.*

*Quintum paenitet quod animum tuum offendit*, Cf. C., *Att.*, XI. 13, 2; *Quintus is sorry that he has wounded your feelings.*

#### Genitive with Judicial Verbs.

**378.** Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning, and Acquitting take the Genitive of the Charge.

*Miltiadēs accūsātus est prōditiōnis*, NEP., I. 7, 5; *Miltiades was accused of treason.*

*Fannius Verrem insinulat avāritiae*, C., *Verr.*, I. 49, 128; *Fannius charges Verres with avarice.*

*Videō nōn tē absolūtum esse improbitātis sed illōs damnātōs esse caedis*, C., *Verr.*, I. 28, 72; *I see not that you are acquitted of dishonor, but that they are convicted of murder.*

REMARKS.—1. For the Gen. of the Charge may be substituted (a) *nōmine* or *crimine* with the Gen., or (b) the Abl. with *dē*: *nōmine* (*crimine*) *confūrtiōnis* *damnāre*, to find guilty of conspiracy; *accūsāre dē vi*, of violence; *dē venēficiō*, of poisoning; *dē rēbus repetundis*, of extortion.

2. Verbs of Condemning and Acquitting take the Abl. as well as the Gen. of the Charge; the definite Fine is put in the Ablative; the indefinite Fine, *quantī, duplī, quadruplī, etc.*, is in the Genitive.

*Accūsāre capitis*, or *capite*, to bring a capital charge; *damnāre capitis*, or *capite*, to condemn to death; *damnārī decem milibus*, to be fined ten thousand.

*Multāre*, to mulct, is always construed with the Ablative: *Multāre pecūniā*, to mulct in (of) money.

*Manlius virtūtem filii morte multāvit*, QUINT., V. II, 7; *Manlius punished the valor of his son with death.*

#### Genitive with Verbs of Rating and Buying.

**379.** Verbs of Rating and Buying are construed with the Genitive of the general value or cost, and the Ablative of the particular value or cost. (404.)

Verbs of Rating are: *aestimāre*, *existimāre*, to value; *putāre*, to reckon; *dūcere*, to take; *habēre*, to hold; *pendere*, to weigh; *facere*, to make, put; *esse*, to be (worth); *fieri*, to be considered.

Verbs of Buying are: *emere*, to buy; *vendere*, to sell; *vendere*, to be for sale; *stare* and *constare*, to cost, to come to; *præstare*, *licere*, to be exposed, left (for sale); *condūcere*, to hire; *locare*, to let.

## 380. 1. Verbs of Rating take :

<b>Māgnī</b> , much,	<b>plūris</b> , more,	<b>plūrimī</b> , <b>māximī</b> , most,
<b>Parvī</b> , little,	<b>minōris</b> , less,	<b>minimī</b> , least,
<b>Tantī</b> , tantidem, so much,	<b>quantī</b> (and compounds), how much,	<b>nihilī</b> , naught.

**Dum nō ob malefacta, peream ; parvī existumō**, *PL., Capt., 682 ; so long as it be not for misdeeds, let me die ; little do I care.*

**Voluptātem virtūs minimī facit**, *C., Fin., II. 13, 42 ; virtue makes very little account of the pleasure of the senses.*

**Iudicēs rem publicam flocci nō faciunt**, *Cf. C., Att., IV. 15, 4 ; the judges do not care a fig for the State.*

REMARKS.—1. **Tantī** is often used in the sense of *operae pretium est* = *it is worth while*.

**Est mihi tantī huius invidiæ tempestātem subire**, *C., Cat., II. 7, 15 ; it is worth while (the cost), in my eyes, to bear this storm of odium.*

2. **Aestimō** is found with the Abl. as well as with the Genitive. So **aestimāre māgnī** and **māgnō**, *to value highly.*

2. Verbs of Buying take **tantī**, **quantī**, **plūris**, and **minōris**. The rest are put in the Ablative.

**Vendō meum frumentum nōn plūris quam ceterī, fortasse etiam minōris**, *C., Off., III. 12, 51 ; I sell my corn not dearer than everybody else, perhaps even cheaper.*

**Emit Canius hortōs tantī quantī Pythius voluit**, *C., Off., III. 14, 59 ; Canius bought the gardens at the price Pythius wanted.*

**Emit ? perī hercle : quantī ?—Vigintī minis**, *TER., Eun., 984 ; he bought her ? I'm undone ; for how much ?—Twenty minae.*

**Quantī cōnās ?** *What do you give for your dinner ?*

**Quantī habitās ?** *What is the rent of your lodgings ?*

But :

**Parvō famē cōstat, māgnō fastidium**, *SEN., E.M., 17, 4 ; hunger costs little, daintiness much.*

REMARK.—**Bene emere**, *to buy cheap ; bene vādere*, *to sell dear ; male emere*, *to buy dear ; male vādere*, *to sell cheap*. So, too, other adverbs : **melius**, **optimē**, **pāius**, **pessimē**.

## Genitive with Interest and Rēfert.

381. 1. Interest and Rēfert take a Genitive of the Person, seldom of the Thing, concerned.

**Interest omnium rectē facere**, *C., Fin., II. 22, 72 ; it is to the interest of all to do right.*

**Rēfert compositionis quae quibus antepōnās**, *QUINT., IX. 4, 44 ; it is of importance for the arrangement of words, which you put before which.*

2. Instead of the Genitive of the personal pronouns, the Ablative Singular feminine of the possessives is employed.

*Meā interest, meā rēfert, I am concerned.*

**382.** The Degree of Concern is expressed by an Adverb, Adverbial Accusative, or a Genitive of Value.

*Id meā minimē rēfert, TER., Ad., 881 ; that makes no difference at all to me.*

*Theodōri nihil interest, C., Tusc., I. 43, 102 ; It is no concern of Theodorus.*

*Magni interest meā tūc nōs esse, C., Att., XIII. 4 ; it is of great importance to me that we be together.*

#### Occasional Uses.

**383.** The Genitive is found occasionally with certain Verbs of Fulness, but the Ablative is the rule :

*Pisō multōs cōdices implēvit eārū rērum, C., Verr., I. 46, 119 ; Piso filled many books full of those things.*

*Virtūs plurimae cōmentātiōnis et exercitātiōnis indiget, Cf. C., Fin., III. 15, 50 ; virtue stands in need of much (very much) study and practice.*

#### ABLATIVE.

**384.** The Ablative is the Adverbial, as the Genitive is the Adjective case. It contains three elements :

A. Where ? B. Whence ? C. Wherewith ?

In a literal sense, the Ablative is commonly used with prepositions ; in a figurative sense, it is commonly used without prepositions.

A. The Ablative of the Place Where appears in a figurative sense as the Ablative of the Time When.

B. The Ablative of the Place Whence appears as :

1. The Ablative of Origin. 2. The Ablative of Measure.

C. The Ablative of the Thing Wherewith appears in a figurative sense, as :

1. The Ablative of Manner. 2. The Ablative of Quality. 3. The Ablative of Means.

To these we add :

D. The Ablative of Cause. E. The Ablative Absolute.

# I. The Literal Meanings of the Ablative.

## A. ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHERE.

### Ablativus Localls.

**385.** The Ablative answers the question *Where?* and takes as a rule the preposition *in*.

*In portū nāvīgō*, TER., *And.*, 480; *I am sailing in harbor.*

*Pōns in Hibērō, prope effectus erat*, CAES., *B.C.*, I. 62, 3; *the bridge over the Ebro was nearly finished.*

*Histriō in scaenā est*, PL., *Poen.*, 20; *the actor is on the stage.*

*Haeret in equō senex*, Cf. C., *Des.*, 10, 28; *the old man sticks to his horse.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Placing and kindred significations take the Abl. with *in*, to designate the result of the motion :

*Platō ratiōnem in capite posuit, iram in pectore locavit*, C., *Tusc.*, I. 10, 20; *Plato has put reason in the head, has placed anger in the breast.*

*Foedus in columnā aeneā incisum*, C., *Balb.*, 23, 53; *a treaty cut upon a brazen column.*

The same observation applies to *sub* :

*Pōne sub currū nimium propinqui sōlis*, H., *O.*, I. 22, 21; *put (me) under the chariot of the all-too neighboring sun.*

2. Verbs of Hanging and Fastening take *ex*, *ab*, or *dē*.

*Spēs omnis pendet ex fortunā*, C., *Par.*, II. 17; *all his hopes are suspended on fortune.*

3. The Ablative of Place without *in* is confined to a few words and phrases, except in poetry and later prose. So *terrā*, *on land*; *marī*, *by sea*; *terrā marique*, *on land and sea*. *Locō* and *locis*, especially when used with adjectives, usually omit *in*. Also *parte* and *partibus*; so regularly *dextrā* (*parte*), *sinistrā*, *laevā*, etc., *on the right, on the left*.

• **386.** Names of Towns in the Singular of the Third Declension, and in the Plural of all Declensions, take the Ablative of Place Where without *in*.

*Ut Rōmæ cōsulēs sic Carthāgine quotannis binī rēgēs creābantur*, NEP., XXIII. 7, 4; *as at Rome (two) consuls, so in Carthage two kings, were created yearly.*

*Talis Rōmæ Fabricius, quālis Aristidēs Athēnis, fuit*, C., *Off.*, III. 22, 87; *Fabricius was just such a man at Rome as Aristides was at Athens.*



REMARKS.—1. Appositions are put in the Abl. commonly with *in*. *Nepesin*, *in celeberrimō oppidō*, C., *Rab. Post.*, 10, 26; *at Naples, a populous town*.

2. *In the neighborhood of*, *at*, *is ad* with Acc., especially of military operations: *pōns ad Genāvam*, CAES., *B.G.*, 1. 7; *the bridge at Geneva*.

387. In citations from Books and in Enumerations, the Ablative of the Place Where is used without *in*.

*Librō tertiō*, *third book*; *versū decimō*, *tenth verse*; *aliō locō*, *elsewhere*.

But *in* is necessary when a passage in a book and not the whole book is meant.

*Agricultūra laudātur in eō librō qui est de tuendā rē familiārī*, C., *Cat. M.*, 17, 59; *agriculture is praised in the work on domestic economy*.

388. In designations of Place, with *tōtus*, *cūctus*, *whole*; *omnia*, *all*; *medius*, *middle*, the Ablative of the Place Where is generally used without *in*.

*Menippus, meō iudiciō, tōtā Asiā disertissimus*, C., *Br.*, 91, 315; *Menippus, in my judgment, the most eloquent man in all Asia* (Minor).

389. When Place is looked upon as Cause, Manner, or Instrument, the Ablative is used without a preposition.

*Ariovistus exercitum castris continuit*, CAES., *B.G.*, 1. 48, 4; *Ariovistus kept his army within the camp*.

*Nēmō ire quemquam publicā prohibet viā*, PL., *Cure.*, 35; *no man forbiddeth (any one to) travel by the public road*.

*So recipere aliquem tētō, oppidō, portā*, *to receive a man into one's house, town, harbor*.

## B. ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHENCE.

### Ablātivus Separātivus.

390. 1. The Ablative answers the question *Whence?* and takes as a rule the prepositions *ex*, *out of*, *dē*, *from*, *ab*, *off*.

*Arāneās dēiciam dē pariete*, PL., *St.*, 355; *I will get the cobwebs down from the wall*.

*Dēcedit ex Galliā Rōmam Naevius*, C., *Quinct.*, 4, 16; *Naevius withdrew from Gaul to Rome*.

2. The prepositions are often omitted with Verbs of Abstaining, Removing, Relieving, and Excluding; so regularly with *domō*, *from home*, *rūre*, *from the country*.

With Persons a preposition (chiefly *ab*) must be used.

*Verrēs omnia domō eius abstulit*, C., *Verr.*, II. 34, 83; *Verres took everything away from his house*.

*Ego, cum Tullius rūre redierit, mittam eum ad tē*, C., *Fam.*, v. 20, 9; *when Tullius returns from the country, I will send him to you*.

Compare *Alienō manum abstineant*, CATO, *Agr.*, 5, 1; *let them keep their hand(s) from other people's property*, with *Alexander vix ē sē mandis abstinuit*, C., *Tusc.*, IV. 37, 79; *Alexander hardly kept (could hardly keep) his hands from himself (from laying hands on himself)*.

Compare *Lapidibus optimōs virōs forō pellis*, C., *Har. Res.*, 18, 39; *you drive men of the best classes from the forum with stones*, with *Istum aemulum ab eā pellitō*, TER., *Eun.*, 215; *drive that rival from her*.

Compare *Omnium rerum naturā cognitā liberāmur mortis metū*, C., *Fin.*, I. 19, 63; *by the knowledge of universal nature we get rid of the fear of death*, with *Tē ab eō liberō*, C., *Q. F.*, III. i. 3, 9; *I rid you of him*.

Compare *Amicitia nullō locō excluditur*, C., *Lael.*, 6, 22; *friendship is shut out from no place*, with *Ab illā excludor, hōc concludor*, Cf. TER., *And.*, 386; *I am shut out from HER (and) shut up here (to live with HER)*.

REMARKS.—1. In classical Latin the preposition is usually employed in local relations, and omitted in metaphorical relations; though there are some exceptions.

2. It is to be noted that in the vast majority of cases the separation is indicated by a verb; hence this Abl. is found commonly with verbs compounded with prepositions. The poets use it more freely.

(3, 4, 5) 6. The Place Whence gives the Point of View from which. In English a different translation is often given, though not always necessarily: *ē tergō*, *in the rear*; *ex parte dextrā*, *on the right side*; *ab oriente*, *on the east*; *ē tantō spatiō*, *at such a distance*; *ex fugā*, *on the flight*; *ē rē frumentariā laborāre*, *to be embarrassed in the matter of provisions*.

3. The prepositions are also omitted with kindred Adjectives.

*Animus excoelus omni est liber curā*, C., *Fin.*, I. 15, 49; *a lofty mind is free from all care*.

*Catō omnibus humanis vitis immunis fuit*, VELL., II. 35, 2; *Cato was exempt from all human failings*.

REMARK.—*Procul*, *far from*, regularly takes the preposition *ab*, except in the poets and later prose.

**391.** Names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Ablative of the Place Whence.

*Demarātus fugit Tarquiniōs Corinthō, C., Tusc., v. 37, 109 ; Demaratus fled to Tarquinii from Corinth.*

*Dolabella Delō profectus*, C., *Verr.*, I. 18, 46 ; *Dolabella sets out from Delos.*

REMARKS.—1. The prepositions *ab* (s) and *ex* (s) are sometimes used for the sake of greater exactness.

*Libō discēssit ā Brundisiō, CAES., B.C., III. 24, 4 ; Libo departed from Brundisium.*

When the substantives *urbe*, *city*, and *oppidō*, *town*, are employed, the use of the preposition is the rule, as also when not the town, but the neighborhood is intended.

*Aulide, ex oppidō Boeōtiæ, from Aulis, a town of Boeotia. Ex oppidō Gergoviæ, CAES., B.G., VII. 4, 2 ; from the town of Gergovia.*

2. The Place Whence embraces all the places involved.

*Agrigentō ex Aesculāpij fānō*, whereas we should say, *from the temple of Aesculapius at Agrigentum.*

*Unde domō ? V., A., VIII. 114 ; from what home ?*

3. Letters are dated *from* rather than *at* a place.

## C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

### Ablātivus Sociātivus.

**392.** The Ablative of Attendance takes the preposition *cum*, *with*.

*Cum febrī demum rediit, C., Or., III. 2, 6 ; he returned home with a fever.*

*Cum baculō pērāque senex, MART., IV. 53, 8 ; an old man with stick and wallet.*

REMARKS.—1. In military phrases, the troops with which a march is made are put in the Ablative, with or without *cum* :

*Caesar cum equitibus DCCCC in castra pervēnit, CAES., B.C., I. 41, 1 ; Caesar arrived in camp with nine hundred cavalry.*

*Albāni ingenti exercitū in agrum Rōmānum impetum fecēre, L., I. 23, 3 ; the Albans attacked the Roman territory with a huge army.*

2. Not to be confounded with the above is the Instrumental Ablative :

*Nāvibus profectus est, C., Fam., XV. 3, 2 ; he set out by ship.*

So also with verbs which denote other military actions :

*Hasdrubal mediam aciem Hispānis firmat, L., XXIII. 29, 4 ; Hasdrubal strengthens the centre with Spanish troops.*

## II. The Figurative Meanings of the Ablative.

### A. The Place Where is transferred to the Time When.

#### Ablative of Time. Ablātivus Temporis.

#### 393. Time When or Within Which is put in the Ablative.

**Quā nocte nātus Alexander est, eādem Diānae Ephesiaē templum cōflavit,** *Cf. C., N.D., II. 27, 69 ; on the same night on which Alexander was born, the temple of Diana of Ephesus burned to the ground.*

**Sātūrnī stella trīgintā fers annis cursum suum cōficit,** *C., N.D., II. 20, 52 ; the planet Saturn completes its period in about thirty years.*

**REMARKS.**—1. Time Within Which may be expressed by *per* and the Accusative :

**Per eōs ipse diēs Philoclēs saltum Cithaerōnis trāscendit,** *L., XXXI. 26, 1 ; during those very days Philocles crossed the range of Cithaeron.*

2. Time Within Which may embrace both extremities ; so usually with *tōtus*, *all*, *whole* :

**Nocte pluit tōtā,** *V. (P. L. M., IV. 155 B) ; all night (Jupiter) rains.*

So with definite numbers ; but rarely in model prose.

**Apud Pŷthagoram discipulis quinque annis tacendum erat,** *SEN., E.M., 52, 10 ; in Pythagoras' school the disciples had to keep silence five years.*

3. When the notion is negative, the English Time For Which is the Latin Within Which.

**Rōscius Rōmam multis annis nōn vēnit,** *C., Rosc. Am., 27, 74 ; Roscius has not come to Rome in (for) many years.*

4. Especially to be noted is the Abl. of Time with *hic*, *this* ; *ille*, *that* :

**Karthāginem hōc bienniō ōvertēs,** *C., Rep., VI. 11, 11 ; Carthage you will overturn in the next two years.*

Transferred to *Ōrātiō Obliqua*, *hic* becomes *ille* (660, 3) :

**Diodōrus respondit illud argentum sē paucis illis diēbus misisse Lilybaeum,** *C., Verr., IV. 18, 39 ; Diodorus answered that he had sent that silver plate to Lilybaeum within a few days (a few days before).*

**394.** The Ablative with the preposition *in* is used of points within a period of time, or of the character of the time.

**Bis in diē, twice a day ; in pueritiā, in boyhood ; in adultēcentiā, in youth.**

**Nūllō modō mihi placuit bis in diē saturum fieri,** *C., Tusc., V. 35, 100 ; it did not suit me in any way to eat my fill twice a day.*

**Feci ego istaec itidem in adultēcentiā,** *PL., B., 410 ; I did those things too in my youth.*

REMARK.—The use or omission of *in* sometimes changes the meaning. So *bellō Persicō*, *at the time of the Persian war*; but *in bellō*, *in war times*; *in p̄coe*, *in peace times*.

B. The Place Whence is transferred :

1. To Origin.
2. To Respect or Specification.

### 1. Ablative of Origin.

**395.** Participles which signify Birth take the Ablative of Origin; sometimes with the prepositions *ex* and *dē*.

*Amplissimā familiā nātī adulescentēs*, CAES., *B.G.*, VII. 37, 1; *young men born of a great house*.

*Sate sanguine divum!* V., *A.*, VI. 125; *seed of blood divine!*

*Ex mē atque ex hōc nātus es*, TER., *Heaut.*, 1030; *you are his son and mine*.

*Odērunt nātōs dē paelice*, JUV., VI. 627; *they hate the offspring of the concubine*.

*Ab*, and occasionally *ex*, are employed of remote progenitors :

*Plērique Belgae sunt orti ab Germānis*, Cf. CAES., *B.G.*, II. 4, 1; *Belgians are mostly of German descent*.

**396.** The Ablative of Material takes *ex* in classical Latin.

*Ex animō cōstāmus et corpore*, Cf. C., *Fin.*, IV. 8, 19; *we consist of mind and body*.

*Status ex aurō, ex aere, facta*, *a statue made of gold, of bronze*. Often an adjective is used : *aureus*, *golden*; *ligneus*, *wooden*.

REMARKS.—1. With *fierī* the previous state is given also by *dē*:

*Dē templō carcerem fierī!* C., *Ph.*, v. 7, 18; *from a temple to become a jail*.

*Ex ōrātōre arātor factus*, C., *Ph.*, III. 9, 22; *a pleader turned plowman*.

2. Otherwise the simple Ablative of Material is poetic or late.

*Māvors caelātus ferrō*, V., *A.*, VIII. 700; *Mars carven of iron*.

### 2. Ablative of Respect.

**397.** The Ablative of Respect or Specification is put in answer to the questions *From What Point of View?* *According to What?* *By What?* *In Respect of What?*

*Discriptus populus cōstī, ōrdinibus, aetātibus*, C., *Leg.*, III. 19, 44; *a people drawn off according to income, rank, (and) age*.

*Ennius ingeniō māximus, arte rudis*, OV., *Tr.*, II. 424; *Ennius in genius great, in art unskilled*.

**Animō ignāvus, prociū ore, Tac., H., II. 23, 18; coward of soul, saucy of tongue.**

Noteworthy are the phrases : **crine ruber, red-haired; captus oculis** (literally, *caught in the eyes*), *blind*; **captus mente, insane**; **meā sententiā, according to my opinion**; **iure, by right**; **lēge, by law**, etc.; and the Supines in **-tū** (486).

REMARK.—Prepositions are also used, to show the conception :

**Caesaris adventus ex colōre vestītūs cōgnitus, Cf. CAES. B.G., VII. 88, 1; the arrival of Caesar was known by the color of his clothing.**

**Dē gestū intellegō quid respondeās, C., Vat., 15, 35; I understand by your gesture what answer you are giving.**

Similarly **ex lēge, according to law**; **ex pactō, according to agreement**; **ex (dē) mōre, according to custom**; **ex animi sententiā, according to (my) heart's desire**; **ex ūtū, useful**.

**398.** The Ablative of Respect is used with the Comparative instead of **quam, than**, with the Nominative or Accusative. (*Ablātivus Comparatiōnis.*)

**Tunica propior palliōst, Pl., Trin., 1154; the shirt is nearer than the cloak.**

**Nihil est virtūte amābilius, C., Lael., 8, 28; nothing is more attractive than virtue.**

So also after adverbs, but not so freely in prose :

**Lacrimā nihil citius arēscit, C., Inv., I. 56, 109; nothing dries more quickly than a tear.**

REMARK.—When the word giving the point of view is a relative, the Abl. must be used. See 296, R. 2.

**Phidiae simulācra quibus nihil perfectius vidēmus, C., Or., 2, 8; the statues of Pheidias, than which we see nothing more perfect.**

## C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

### Ablātivus Sociātivus. Ablative of Attendance.

#### 1. Ablative of Manner.

**399.** The Ablative of Manner answers the question *How?* and is used with the Preposition **cum** when it has no Adjective; with or without **cum** when it has an Adjective or its equivalent. (*Ablātivus Modi.*)

**Stellae circulos suos orbēque cōficiunt celeritāte mirābili, C., Rep., VI. 15, 15; the stars complete their orbits with wonderful swiftness.**

**Beātū vivere est honestū, id est cum virtūte, vivere, C., Fin., III. 8, 29; to live happily is to live honestly, that is, virtuously.**

## 2. Ablative of Quality.

(Descriptive Ablative.)

**400.** The Ablative of Quality has no Preposition, and always takes an Adjective or an equivalent.

*Āgesilāus statūrā fuit humillī*, NĒP., XVII. 8, 1; *Agēsilaus was (a man) of low stature.*

*Ista turpiculō puella nāsō*, CAT., 41, 3; *that girl of yours with the ugly nose.*

REMARKS.—1. External and transient qualities are put by preference in the Ablative; Measure, Number, Time, and Space are put in the Genitive only; parts of the body in the Ablative only. Otherwise there is often no difference.

2. Of unnatural productions *cum* may be used: *agnus cum suillō capite*, L., XXXI. 12, 7; *a lamb with a swine's head.*

## 3. Ablative of Means.

**401.** The Means or Instrument is put in the Ablative without a Preposition.

The Agent or Doer is put in the Ablative with the Preposition *ab* (*ā*). The Person Through Whom is put in the Accusative with *per*.

*Xerxēs certior factus est*, { 1. *nūntiō*, by a message.  
*Xerxes was informed*, { 2. *ā nūntiō*, by a messenger.  
 { 3. *per nūntium*, by means of a messenger.

*Virgīs caesi tribūnī ab lēgātō sunt*, L., XXIX. 18, 13; *the tribunes were beaten with rods by the lieutenant.*

*Discite sūnārī per quem didicistis amāre*, OY., Rem. Am., 43; *learn to be healed by means of (him by) whom you learned to love.*

REMARKS.—1. When the Instrument is personified and regarded as an Agent, or the Agent is regarded as an Instrument, the constructions are reversed; when an adjective is used, the construction may be doubtful; see 354, and 214, R. 2.

*So iacent suis fēstibus*, C., Mil., 18, 47; *they are cast by their own witnesses; or, they are cast, their own men being witnesses.*

2. A quality, when personified, has the construction of the person. *So dēserī ā mente, ā spē.*

*Vōbīs animus ab ignāviā atque sūcōrdiā corruptus est*, S., Iug., 31, 2; *you have had your soul(s) debauched by sloth and indifference.*

(3) 4. Verbs of *sacrificing* have the Abl. of Means.

*Quinquagintā capris sacrificaverunt*, L., XLV. 16, 6; *they sacrificed fifty she-goats.*

(5) 6. *Mitor*, *I stay myself*; *fidō*, *cōfidō*, *I trust, rely on*, have the Abl. *Diffidō*, *I distrust*, always has the Dat. in model prose. *Contentus*, *satisfied*, and *frētus*, *supported, relying*, have the Ablative.

*Salūs omnium nōn vērītate solum sed etiam fāmā nititur*, Cf. C., Q.F., I. ii. 1, 2; *the welfare of all rests not on truth alone, but also on repute.*  
*Omnēs mortālēs dīs sunt frētī*, PL., Cas., 348; *all mortals rely upon the gods.*

#### 4. Ablative of Standard. Ablātīvus Mēnsūrae.

402. The Standard of Measure is put in the Ablative with verbs of Measurement and Judgment.

*Magnos hominēs virtute mētimur, nōn fortunā*, NEP., XVIII. 1, 1; *we measure great men by worth, not by fortune.*

*Sonis hominēs ut aera tinnitū dignoscimus*, QUINT., XI. 3, 31; *we distinguish men by sound, as coppers by ring.*

REMARK.—*Ex* with the Abl. is frequently found with these verbs; so regularly with *aestimāre*, *existimāre*, *spectāre*, in the sense of *judge, value*.

*Sic est vulgus: ex vērītate pauca, ex opiniōne multa aestimat*, C., *Rosc. Com.*, 10, 29; *this is the way of the rabble: they value few things by (the standard of) truth, many by (the standard of) opinion.*

#### 403. Measure of Difference is put in the Ablative.

*Sol multis partibus maior est quam terra ūniversa*, C., *N.D.*, II. 36, 92; *the sun is many parts (a great deal) larger than the whole earth.*

*Perfer et obdūrā: multō graviōra tulisti*, OV., Tr., V. 11, 7; *bear to the end and be firm: you have borne much heavier burdens.*

REMARK.—Especially to be noted is the use of the Abl. of Measure with *ante*, *before*, and *post*, *after*:

*Paucis ante diēbus*, *paucis diēbus ante*, *a few days before.*

*Paucis post diēbus*, *paucis diēbus post*, *a few days after, afterward.*

*Duobus annis postquam Rōma condita est*, *two years after Rome was founded.*

*Paulō post Trōiam captam*, *a little while after the taking of Troy.*

The Acc. can also be employed: *post paucos annos*, *after a few years*; *ante paucos annos*, *a few years before*; and the ordinal as well as the cardinal numbers (but only when *quam* follows): *two hundred years after(ward)* may be:

*Ducentis annis post* or *Ducentēsimō annō post*,  
*Post ducentōs annos* or *Post ducentēsimū annum.*



## 5. Ablative of Price.

## 404. Definite Price is put in the Ablative.

*Eriphyla aurō viri vitam vendidit*, C., *Inv.*, I. 50, 94 ; *Eriphyle sold her husband's life for gold.*

*Viginti talentis unam orationem Isocrates vendidit*, PLIN., *N.H.*, VII. 31, 110 ; *Isocrates sold one speech for twenty talents.*

*Emi morte immortalitatem*, QUINT., IX. 3, 71 ; *he purchased deathlessness with death.*

REMARK.—*Mūtāre*, to exchange, is sometimes Give, sometimes Get ; sometimes Sell, sometimes Buy ; the latter in poetry and later prose.

*Nēmō nisi victor pāce bellum mūtavit*, S., C., 58, 15 ; *no one unless victorious (ever) exchanged war for peace.*

*Misera pāx vel bellō bene mūtatur*, Cf. TAC., *Ann.*, III. 44, 10 ; *a wretched peace is well exchanged even for war.*

## 6. Ablative with Verbs of Plenty and Want.

## 405. Verbs of Depriving and Filling, of Plenty and Want, take the Ablative.

*Dēmocritus dicitur oculis sē privāsse*, C., *Fin.*, v. 29, 87 ; *Democritus is said to have deprived himself of his eyes.*

*Deus bonis omnibus explēvit mundum*, Cf. C., *Univ.*, 3, 9 ; *God has filled the universe with all blessings.*

*Capua fortissimōrum virōrum multitudine redundat*, C., *Pis.*, II. 25 ; *Capua is full to overflowing with a multitude of gallant gentlemen.*

REMARKS.—1. *Egēō* and *indigēō* also take the Genitive :

*Nōn tam artis indigent quam laboris*, C., *Or.*, I. 34, 156 ; *they are not so much in need of skill as of industry.* So *implēri*, V., A., I. 214.

2. Adjectives of Plenty and Want take the Gen., but some of them follow the analogy of the verb.

*Asellus onustus aurō*, C., *Att.*, I. 16, 12 ; *a donkey laden with gold.*

*Pollicitis dives quilibet esse potest*, Ov., *A.A.*, I. 444 ; *anybody can be rich in promises.*

406. *Opus* and *ūsus* take the Dative of the Person and the Ablative of the Thing.

*Opus* may be used as a predicate with the thing wanted as a subject.

*Novō cōsiliō mihi nunc opus est*, PL., *Ps.*, 601 ; *a new device is what I'm needing now.*

*Viginti iam ūsus filiō argenti minis*, PL., *Asin.*, 89 ; *my son has urgent need of twenty silver minae.*

*Nōn opus est verbis sed fustibus*, C., *Pis.*, 30, 78 ; *there is need not of words, but of cudgels.*

*Quod nōn opus est asse cārum est*, CATO (*SEN.*, *E.M.*, 94, 27) ; *what you do not want (have no use for) is dear at a penny.*

So with the Perfect Participle Passive.

*Quod parātō opus est, parē*, TER., *And.*, 523 ; *what must be got ready, get ready.*

*Vicinō conventū est opus*, PL., *Cas.*, 502 ; *the neighbor must be called on.*

## 7. Ablative with Sundry Verbs.

407. The Deponent Verbs *ūtor*, *abūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vescor*, take the Ablative.

*Victōriā ūti nescis*, L., *XXII.* 51, 4 ; *how to make use of victory you know not.*

*Quō usque tandem abūtēre patientiā nostrā*, C., *Cal.*, I. 1, 1 ; *how long, tell me, will you abuse our patience ?*

*Lux quā fruimur a Deō nobis datur*, Cf. C., *Rosc.Am.*, 45, 131 ; *the light which we enjoy is given to us by God.*

*Funguntur officiō*, C., *Cael.*, 9, 21 ; *they acquit themselves of their duty.*

*Tūtius esse arbitrābantur sine ullō vulnere victōriā potiri*, CAES., *B.G.*, III. 24, 2 ; *they thought it safer to make themselves masters of (gain) the victory without any wound.*

*Numidae lacte vescēbantur*, S., *Iug.*, 89, 7 ; *the Numidians made their regular food of milk (fed on milk).*

REMARKS.—1. *Potior* has occasionally the Genitive.

2. On the Personal Gerundive of these verbs see 427, R. 5.

3. *Ūtor* is a favorite word, and has a most varied translation :

*Ūti aliquō amīcō*, to avail one's self of (to enjoy) a man's friendship (to have a friend in him) ; *ūti cōsiliō*, to follow advice ; *ūti bonō patre*, to have the advantage of having a good father ; *ūti legibus*, to obey the laws. See the Lexicons.

## D. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

408. The Ablative of Cause is used without a preposition, chiefly with Verbs of Emotion. *Ablātivus Causae.*

*In culpā sunt qui officiā dēserunt mollitiā animi*, C., *Fin.*, I. 10, 33 ; *they are to blame who shirk their duties from effeminacy of temper.*

*Ōderunt peccāre boni virtūtis amōre*, H., *Ep.*, I. 16, 52 ; *the good hate to sin from love of virtue.*

**Dolletis dolere, correctiōne gaudere oportet, C., Lael., 24, 90 ;** *one ought to be sorry for sin, to be glad of chastisement.*

**REMARKS.**—1. The moving cause is often expressed by a participle with the Abl., which usually precedes : **adductus, led ; ardēns, fired ; commōtus, stirred up ; incitatus, egged on ; incensus, inflamed ; impulsus, driven on ; mōtus, moved, and many others ; amore, by love ; ira, by anger ; odiis, by hate ; metu, by fear ; spe, by hope, etc. Metu porterritus, sore frightened ; vercundis dēterritus, abashed, etc.**

2. Instead of the simple Abl. prepositions are often used ; especially, **dē** and **ex** with the Abl., or **ob** and **propter** with the Accusative.

3. The preventing cause is expressed by **prae, for** : **Præ gaudiis ubi sim necdō, TER., Heaut., 308 ;** *I know not where I am for joy.*

### E. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

**409.** The so-called Ablative Absolute is an Ablative combined with a participle, and serves to modify the verbal predicate of a sentence. Instead of the participle, a predicative substantive or adjective can be employed.

**410.** The Ablative Absolute answers to the English so-called Nominative Absolute, but for purposes of style, it is often well to vary the translation.

**Xerxe regnante (= cum Xerxes regnaret), Xerxes reigning. When Xerxes was reigning. In the reign of Xerxes.**

**Xerxe victo (= cum Xerxes victus esset), Xerxes defeated, being, having been, defeated. When Xerxes had been defeated. After the defeat of Xerxes.**

**Xerxe rege (= cum Xerxes rex esset), Xerxes [being] king. When Xerxes was king.**

**Patre vivo, WHILE father is, was alive (in father's lifetime).**

**Urbe expugnata imperator rediit :**

**PASSIVE FORM : The city [being] taken (after the city was taken), the general returned.**

**ACTIVE FORM : Having taken the city (after he had taken the city), the general returned.**

**ABSTRACT FORM : After the taking of the city. After taking the city.**

**Maximas virtutes iacere omnes necesse est voluptate dominante, C., Fin., II. 35, 117 ;** *all the great(est) virtues must necessarily lie prostrate, IF (OR WHEN) the pleasure (of the senses) is mistress.*

**Romani veteres regnari omnes volebant libertatis dulcedine nondum experti, L., I. 17, 8 ;** *the old Romans all wished to have a king over them (BECAUSE they had) not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.*

REMARKS.—1. As the Latin language has no Pf. Part. active, except when the Deponent is thus used, the passive construction is far more common than in English :

*Iuvenēs veste positā corpora oleō perfūxērunt*, C., *Tusc.*, I. 47, 118 ; *the youths, (having) laid aside their clothing, anointed their bodies with oil ; or, laid aside their clothing, and anointed their bodies with oil.*

(2) 3. As a rule, the Abl. Abs. can stand only when it is not identical with the subject, object, or dependent case of the verbal predicate. *Manlius slew the Gaul and stripped him of his necklace* is to be rendered : *Mānlius caesum Gallum torque spoliāvit.*

This rule is frequently violated, for the purpose either of emphasis or of stylistic effect. The shifted construction is clearer, more vigorous, more conversational.

*Neque illum mē vivō corrumpi sinam*, PL., B., 419 ; *nor will I suffer him to be debauched while I am alive.*

The violation is most frequent when the dependent case is in the Genitive :

*Jugurtha frātre meō interfectō rēgnum eius sceleris sui praedam fecit*, S., *Jug.*, I. 4, 11 ; *Jugurtha killed my brother, and (= after killing my brother) made his throne the booty of his crime.*

## LOCATIVE.

411. In the Singular of the First and Second Declensions, names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Locative of the Place Where.

*Pompēius hiemāre Dŷrrhachī, Apollōniāe omnibusque oppidīs cōstituerat*, CAES., B.C., III. 5, 1 ; *Pompey had determined to winter at Dŷrrhachium, Apollonia, and all the towns.*

*Rhodī ego nōn fui, sed fui in Bithŷniā*, C., *Planc.*, 34, 83 ; *I was not at Rhodes, but I was in Bithynia.*

REMARKS.—1. Other Locative forms are, *domī*, at home (61, R. 2), *humī*, on the ground, *bellī*, and *militiāe*, in the combinations *domī militiāeque*, *bellī domique*, in peace and in war, at home and in the field ; *rūrī*, in the country (but *rūre meō*, on my farm). So perhaps *animī*, at heart (374, R.).

*Parvi sunt foris arma nisi est cōsiliū domī*, C., *Off.*, I. 22, 76 ; *of little value are arms abroad unless there is wisdom at home.*

*Iacere humī*, C., *Cat.*, I. 10, 26 ; *to lie on the ground.*

2. Appositions are put in the Ablative, commonly with *in*, and regularly follow when qualified by an attribute :

*Militēs Albae cōstitērunt in urbe opportūnā*, C., *Ph.*, IV. 2, 6 ; *the soldiers halted at Alba, a conveniently situated town.*

**Archias** Antiochiæ nātus est celebri quondam urbe, C., *Arch.*, 3, 4 ; *Archias was born at Antioch, once a populous city.*

When **urbe**, *city*, **oppidō**, *town*, or **insulā**, *island*, precedes, the preposition is always employed :

In **urbo** Rōmā, *in the city (of) Rome*. In **oppidō** Citiō, *in the town of Citiū*. In **insulā** Samō, *in the island (of) Samos*.

3. **Domī** takes the possessive pronoun in the Genitive :

**Domī** suae senex est mortuus, C., *N.D.*, III. 32, 81 ; *the old man died at his own house*.

**Metuis** ut meae domī cūrētur diligenter, *TER.*, *Hec.*, 257 ; *you fear that she will not be carefully nursed at my house*.

Also **aliēnae domui** (61, R. 2), C., *Tusc.*, I. 22, 51 ; *in a strange house* ; **domī illius**, C., *Div. in Caec.*, 18, 58 ; *in his house*.

But in **domō** Pericli (65), *NEP.*, VII. 2, 1 ; *in the house(hold) of Pericles*. In **domō** castā, *in a pure house*. In **domō**, *in the house (not, at home)*.

## PREPOSITIONS.

412. The Prepositions serve to define more narrowly the ideas of place involved in the cases.

The analogy of the local adverbs is followed by other adverbs, which are not so much prepositions as prepositional adverbs.

The cases used with Prepositions are the Accusative and Ablative. The Accusative, as the case of the Direct Object, represents the relation *whither?* the Ablative represents the relations *whence?* and *where?*

Prepositions derive their name from the fact that they are prefixed in composition. Many of the Latin Prepositions are not used in composition, and these may be called improper Prepositions. The prefixes **amb-** (**am-** **an-**), **dis** (**di-**), **por-** (**port-**, **pol-**), **red-** (**re-**), **sēd-** (**sē-**), and **vē-** are sometimes called inseparable prepositions.

413. *Position of the Preposition.*—The Preposition generally precedes the case.

**REMARKS.**—1. **Cum** always follows a personal pronoun, and may or may not follow a relative pronoun : **mēcum**, *with me* ; **quēcum** or **cum** **quō**, *with whom*. **Dē** is not uncommonly placed after **quō** and **quā**, rarely after **quibus**.

Dissyllabic Prepositions are postponed more often.

**Tenus**, *as far as*, and **versus**, *-ward*, always follow.

2. When the substantive has an attribute the Preposition may come between : **hanc ob causam** (C., *Br.*, 24, 94), *for this reason*.

In poetry and later prose both Preposition and attribute are sometimes postponed : **metū** in **māgnō**, L., IX. 37, 11 ; *in great fear*.

3. The Preposition may be separated from its case by a word or two: *post* *vārō Sullae victōriam*, *but after Sulla's victory*; *ad* *beātū vivendum*, *for living happily*.

**414. Repetition and Omission of the Preposition.**—With different words, the Preposition is repeated, (*a*) when the Preposition is emphatic, or (*b*) when the individual words are to be distinguished; as is the case after *aut*—*aut*, *et*—*et*, *nec*—*nec*, *vel*—*vel*, *nōn modo*—*sed etiam*, *sed*, *nisi*, *quam*, and in comparative clauses with *ut*.

Otherwise it is omitted; so always with *que*.

*Et ex urbe et ex agris*, *C., Cat., II. 10, 21*; *both from (the) city and from (the) country*.

*Dē honōre aut dē dignitāte contendimus*, *C., Tusc., III. 21, 50*; *we are striving about office, or about position*.

REMARKS.—1. When a relative follows in the same construction as its antecedent, the Preposition is usually omitted.

*Cimōn incidit in eandem invidiam (in) quam pater suus*, *NEP., V. 3, 1*; *Cimon fell into the same dispute into which his father had fallen*.

(2, 3) 4. Two Prepositions are rarely used with the same word. Either the word is repeated, a form of *is* used, or one Prep. turned into an adverb:

*Prō Scipiōne et adversus Scipiōnem*, *L., XXIX. 19, 10*; *for and against Scipio*. *Ante pūgnam et post eam*, *before and after the battle*. *Et in corpore et extrā*, *C., Fin., II. 21, 68*; *both in the body and outside*.

## 1. Prepositions Construed with the Accusative.

**416. The Prepositions construed with the Accusative are:**

*Ad*, *adversus*, *ante*, *apud*, *circā*, *circum*, *circiter*, *cis*, *citrā*, *contrā*, *ergā*, *extrā*, *infrā*, *inter*, *intrā*, *iūxtā*, *ob*, *penes*, *per*, (*pōne*) *post*, *praeter*, *prope*, *propter*, *secundum*, *suprā*, *trāns*, *ultrā*, *ūsq̄ue*, *versus*.

1. *Ad*. Of Motion Whither, *to*, *up to*. Of Direction, *towards*. Of Respect, *for*, *with regard to*. Of Manner, *after*, *according to*. Of Place, *at*. Of Time, *at*. With Numerals, *about*. Of Purpose, *for*.

2. *Adversus* (-um), [*i.e.*, *turned to*]. *Towards*, *over against*, *against*.

3. *Ante* [*i.e.*, *over against*, *facing*]. Of Place Where, *before*. Of Time, *before*; the most frequent use.

4. *Apud* is used chiefly of Persons. *At the house of* (characteristic locality). *In the presence of*. *In the writings of*. *In the view of*. Of Place, *at*, *in* (= *in*). In phrases like *apud sē esse*, *to be in one's senses*.

5. **Circā, circum.** *Around.* **Circum** is exclusively local. **Circā** also means *about*, of Time or Number.

6. **Circiter.** Usually of Time, *about*, especially with numerals.

7. **Cis, citrā,** of Place, *this side, short of.* **Citrā,** of Time, *within, this side of.* *Without (stopping short of).*

(8) 9. **Contrā.** *Opposite to, over against, opposed to, against.*

10. **Ergā.** *Opposite, towards.* Usually of friendly disposition ; rarely of Place.

11. **Extrā.** *Without, outside of, beside.*

12. **Infra.** *Beneath, lower down ;* of Space, Rank, or Grade.

13. **Inter.** *Between ;* of Place Where, rarely of Place Whither. Of Time, *during.*

14. **Intrā.** *Within.* Of Place and Time.

15. **Iuxtā** [*i.e., adjoining*]. *Hard by, near, next to.* Usually of Place.

16. **Ob** [*i.e., over against, opposite to*]. Rarely of Place, *right before.* Usually of Cause, *for.*

17. **Penes.** *With = in the hands of ;* usually of Persons.

18. **Per.** Of Space, *through ;* of Time, *during ;* of Cause, *owing to ;* of Instrument, *by* (both persons and things) ; of Manner, *by, in.* It is also used in oaths, *by.*

19. **Pōne.** *Behind,* only of Place, and rare.

20. **Post.** Of Place, *behind ;* rare. Of Time, *after.* Of Rank, *sub-ordinate to.*

21. **Praeter.** Of Place, *in front of, on before, past.* Also, *except ;* *contrary to.* Of Rank, *beyond.*

22. **Prope.** Usually of Place, *near.* **Propius** and **proximus** also occur occasionally as prepositions.

23. **Propter.** Of Place, *near.* Of Cause, *on account of.*

24. **Secundum** [*i.e., following*]. Of Time, *immediately after.* Of Series, *next to.* Of Reference, *according to.*

25. **Suprā.** Of Place, *above, beyond.* Of Grade, *above.*

26. **Trāns.** *On the other side, beyond, across ;* only of Place.

27. **Ūltrā.** Of Space and Measure, *on that side, beyond.*

(28) 29. **Versus, -ward.** Usually with names of Towns, and small Islands ; otherwise with the prepositions **ad** or **in.**

## II. Prepositions Construed with the Ablative.

417. Prepositions construed with the Ablative are **ā** (**ab, abs**), **cōram, cum, dē, ē** (**ex**), **prae, prō, sine, tenus.**

1. **A** (**ab, abs**). Of Place Whence, *from ;* so in phrases, **ā tergō,** *from (on) the rear, ā capite,* etc. Of Cause, *from.* Of Agent, *by.* Of Remote Origin, *from.* Of Time, *from.*

NOTE.—The form before vowels and *h* is always *ab*; before consonants usually *a*, though *ab* is not uncommon before consonants other than the labials *b*, *f*, *p*, *v*, and is frequent before *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, and *i* (*j*); *abs* is found only before *t*.

- (2) 3. *Cōram*. *Face to face with, in the presence of*.  
 4. *Cum*. *With*; of Accompaniment in the widest sense.  
 5. *Dē*. Of Place, *down from*, and then *from*; especially with compounds of *dē* and *ex*. Of Source, *from*. Of Origin. Of Object, *concerning*. Of the Whole *from which a part is taken*.  
 6. *E* (*ex*). Of Place, *out of, from*. Of Time, *from*. Of Origin, *from*. Of Reference, *according to*.

NOTE.—*E* is used before consonants only, *ex* before both vowels and consonants.

- (7) 8. *Palam*, in the sense of *cōram*, *in the presence of*, is very rare.  
 9. *Prae*. Of Place, *in front of*. Of the Preventive Cause, *for*. Of Comparison, *in comparison with*.  
 10. *Pro*. Of Place, *before*; rare and in phrases. *In behalf of*. *Instead of*. *In proportion to*.  
 (11, 12) 13. *Sine*, *without*, is opposed to *cum*.  
 14. *Tenus*, *to the extent of*. Of Space (actual and transferred), *as far as*. It is regularly put after its case.

### III. Prepositions Construed with the Accusative and Ablative.

418. Prepositions construed with the Accusative and Ablative are *in*, *sub*, *subter*, *super*.

1. *In*. (a) With Accusative: Of Place, *into, into the midst of*. Of Disposition and Direction, *towards*. Of Time, *into, for*. Of Purpose or Destination, *for*. Of Manner, *in, after*. With Distributives, *to, among*.

(b) With Ablative: Of Place, *in, on*. Of Time, *within*. Of Reference, *in the case of, in regard to, in the matter of*. Of Condition, *in*.

2. *Sub*. (a) With Accusative: Of Place *whither, under*. Of Time *Approaching, about*; just Past, *immediately after*. Of Condition, *under*.

(b) With Ablative: Of Place *Where, under*. Of Time *When, about*. Of Position, *under*. Of Condition, *under*.

3. *Subter, under*. (a) With Accusative; rare, and locally equal to *sub*.

(b) With the Ablative; more rare and almost wholly poetical.

4. *Super*. (a) Usually of Place, *over, above*. Post-classical.

(b) With the Ablative: Of Space, *above*. Of Time, *during*.



## INFINITIVE.

## The Infinitive as a Substantive.

**419.** The Infinitive is the substantive form of the verb. It corresponds to the English Infinitive and to the English verbal substantive in *-ing* :

*Amāre, to love ; the loving.*

The Infinitive differs from a verbal substantive in that it may take an adverb and has voice and the construction of the verb :

*Amāre, to love ; valde amāre, to love hugely ; amāri, to be loved ; amāre aliquem, to love a man ; nocere alicui, to hurt a man.*

**420.** The Subject of the Infinitive, expressed or unexpressed, is in the Accusative Case, and the Predicate of that Subject is, of course, in the Accusative Case.

*Rēgem esse, to be king. Bonum esse, to be good.*

*Quid stultius quam aliquem sibi placere ? SEN., E.M., 74, 17 ; what is more foolish than for a man to be pleased with himself ?*

- So in the paradigm of the verb :

*Amātūrum esse, to be about to love.*

**421.** The Infinitive, as a substantive, is used regularly in two cases only—Nominative and Accusative. The other cases are supplied by the Gerund and the Supine.

REMARKS.—1. The Inf. is occasionally used to express Design, particularly in the poets, never in good prose.

*Semper in Oceanum mittit mē quærere gemmās, PROP., II. 16, 17 ; she is always sending me to the Ocean to look for pearls.*

2. Similarly after some adjectives of *capability, ability, necessity, etc.*, especially in the poets, where model prose requires Sup. in *-tū* or a Final clause.

## The Infinitive as a Subject.

**422.** The Infinitive, as a Subject, is treated as a neuter substantive.

*Incipere multū est quam inpetrāre facilius, PL., Poen., 974 ; beginning is much easier (work) than winning.*

*Nōn tam turpe fuit vinci quam contendisse decūrum est, OV., M., IX. 6 ; 'twas not so much dishonor to be beaten, as 'tis an honor to have struggled.*

## The Infinitive as an Object.

423. 1. The Infinitive is used as the Object of Auxiliary Verbs.

2. Such verbs denote Will, Power, Duty, Habit, Inclination, Resolve, Continuance, End, and the like, with their opposites.

**Emeri cupiō**, TER., *Heaut.*, 971; *I want to die.*

**Sed precor ut possim tūtius esse miser**, OV., *Tr.*, v. 2, 78; *but I pray that I may be more safely wretched.*

**Vincere scis, Hannibal; victōriā tūti nescis**, L., XXII. 51; *how to win victory, you know, Hannibal; how to make use of victory, you know not.*

**Qui mentiri solet, pāterāre cōsuevit**, C., *Rosc. Com.*, 16, 46; *he who is wont to lie is accustomed to swear falsely.*

**Vulnera quae fecit debuit ipse pati**, OV., *Am.*, II. 3, 4; *the wounds he gave he should himself have suffered.*

**Miser Catulle, desinās ineptire**, CAT., VIII. 1; *poor, poor Catullus, prithece cease to play the fool.*

So **habeō**, *I have* (it in my power).

**Tantum habeō pollicēri mē tibi cumulātō satisfactūrum**, C., *Fam.*, I. 5A, 3; *so much I can promise, that I will give you abundant satisfaction.*

REMARKS.—(1, 2) 3. Notice that **coepti**, *I have begun*, and **desinō**, *I cease*, are used in Pf. pass. with passive Infinitives.

**Bellō Athēniēnsēs undique premi sunt coepti**, NEP., XIII. 3, 1; *the Athenians began to feel the pressure of war on (from) all sides.*

**Vetēs orationēs legi sunt desitae**, C., *Br.*, 32, 123; *the old speeches have ceased to be read.*

When the passives are really reflexives or neuter, the active forms may be used.

4. Verbs of Will and Desire take **ut** as well as the Infinitive. So regularly **optō**, *I choose*, in classical prose. See 546.

5. Verbs which denote Hope, Promise, and Threat take the same-tenses as verbs of Saying and Thinking (530).

**Subruptūrum pallam prōmisit tibi**, PL., *Asin.*, 930; *he promised to steal the mantle from you.*

But they are also treated occasionally as in English.

6. **Docēō**, *I teach*, **iubeō**, *I bid*, **vetō**, *I forbid*, **sino**, *I let*, take the Inf. as a Second Accusative (339):

**Dionysius tondere filiās suās docuit**, C., *Tusc.*, v. 20, 58; *Dionysius taught his daughters to shave* (taught them shaving).

**Ipse iubet mortis tē meminisse deus**, MART., II. 59; *a god himself bids you remember (376) death.*

**Vitae summa brevis spem nos vetat inchoare longam**, H., *O.*, I. 4, 15; *life's brief sun forbids us open (a) long (account with) hope.*

*Neu sinās Mēdōs equitāre inultōs, H., O., I. 2, 51 ; nor let the Median ride and ride unpunished.*

### The Infinitive as a Predicate.

**424.** The Infinitive, as a verbal substantive, may be used as a Predicate after the copula *esse*, *to be*, and the like.

*Doctō hominī et eruditō vivere est cogitare, C., Tusc., v. 38, 111 ; to a learned and cultivated man to live is to think, living is thinking.*

## GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

**425.** The other cases of the Infinitive are supplied by the Gerund. With Prepositions, the Gerund, and not the Infinitive, is employed.

N. *Legere difficile est, reading (to read) is hard to do.*

G. *Ar̄s legendī, the art of reading.*

*Puer studiōsus est legendī, the boy is zealous of reading.*

D. *Puer operam dat legendō, the boy devotes himself to reading.*

AC. *Puer cupit legere, the boy is desirous to read.*

*Puer prōpēsus est ad legendum, the boy has a bent toward reading.*

AB. *Puer discit legendō, the boy learns by reading.*

REMARK.—The Infinitive is sometimes quoted :

*Multum interest inter "dare" et "accipere," SEN., Ben., 5, 10 ; there is a vast difference between "Give" and "Receive."*

**426.** The Gerund, like the Infinitive, takes the same case as the verb.

*Hominēs ad deōs nullā rē propius accēdunt, quam salutē hominibus dandō, C., Lig., 12, 38 ; men draw nearer to the gods by nothing so much as by bringing deliverance to their fellow-men.*

**427.** *Gerundive for Gerund.*—Instead of the Gerund, with an Accusative Object, the object is generally put in the case of the Gerund, with the Gerundive as an Attribute.

G. *Plācandī Dei, of appeasing God.*

D. *Plācandō Deō, for appeasing God.*

AB. *Plācandō Deō, by appeasing God.*

In model prose this construction is invariably employed with Prepositions.

*Ad plācandōs Deōs, for appeasing the gods (C., Cat., III. 8, 20).*

*In plācandis Diis, in appeasing the gods.*

REMARKS.—(1, 2) 3. Neuter adjectives and pronouns are not attracted : *aliquid faciendi ratio*, C., *Inv.*, I. 25, 36 ; *method of doing something*.

But when the neuter adjective has become a substantive (204, R. 2), the Gerundive form may be used : *cupiditās verī videndi*, C., *Fin.*, II. 14, 46 ; *the desire of seeing the truth*.

4. The Gerundive with personal construction can be formed only from Transitive Verbs, like other passives (217). Hence the impersonal form must be used for all verbs that do not take the Accusative.

*Ad nōn pārendū senātū*, L., XLII. 9 ; *for not obeying the senate*.

5. Note as an exception to the foregoing rule that the Gerundives from *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor* (407), have the personal construction, but usually only in the oblique cases.

### Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive.

428. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives which require a complement.

*Sapientia ars vivendi putanda est*, C., *Fin.*, I. 13, 42 ; *philosophy is to be considered the art of living*.

*Triste est nōmen ipsum carendi*, C., *Tusc.*, I. 36, 87 ; *dismal is the mere word "carēre" (go without)*.

*Nōn est plācandi spēs mihi nulla Dei*, Ov., *Tr.*, v. 8, 22 ; *I am not without hope of appeasing God*.

*Ignōrant cupidi maledicendi plūs invidiam quam conviciū posse*, QUINT., VI. 2, 16 ; *those who are eager to abuse know not that envy has more power than billingsgate*.

*Neuter sui prōtegendī corporis memor (erat)*, L., II. 6, 9 ; *neither thought of shielding his own body*.

REMARKS.—1. As *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostrī*, *vestrī*, are neuter singulars, from *meum*, *my being*, *tuum*, *thy being*, *suum*, *one's being*, etc., the Gerundive is put in the same form : *cōnservandi sui*, *of preserving themselves* ; *vestrī adhortandi*, *of exhorting you* ; and no regard is had to number or gender.

*Cōpia plācandi sit modo parva tui*, Ov., *Her.* 20, 74 ; *let (me) only have a slight chance of trying to appease you (feminine)*.

2. The Gen. of the Gerund and Gerundive is used very commonly with *causā*, less often with *grātiā*, and rarely with (antiquated) *ergō*, *on account of*, to express Design : *Dissimulandi causā in senātum vēnit*, S., C., 31, 52 ; *he came into the senate for the purpose of dissimulation*.

With many substantives and adjectives the Infinitive is also allowable (422). Sometimes there is a difference in meaning ; thus *tempus* with Gerund, *the proper time (season)*, with Inf. *high time*.

## Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive.

**429.** The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after words that denote Fitness and Function.

The more common construction is *ad* with the Accusative.

*Lignum aridum materia est idonea eliciendis ignibus*, Cf. SEN., *N.Q.*, II. 22, 1; *dry wood is a fit substance for striking fire (drawing out sparks)*.

So particularly after *esse*: *Solvendō civitatēs nōn erant*, Cf. C., *Fam.*, III. 8, 2; *the communities were not (the people) to pay, (ready to pay, solvent)*. *Scit sē esse oneri ferendō*, SEN., *E.M.*, 71, 26; *he knows that he is (man enough) to bear the burden*.

Similarly *comitia decemviris creandis*, C., *Leg. Agr.*, 2, 8; *assemblies for creating decemvirs*.

## Accusative of the Gerundive.

**430.** The Accusative of the Gerundive is used after such verbs as Giving and Taking, Sending and Leaving, Letting, Contracting, and Undertaking.

*Diviti hominī id aurum servandum dedit*, PL., *B.*, 338; *he gave that gold to a rich man to keep*.

*Conōn murōs reficiendōs cūrat*, NEP., IX. 4, 5; *Conon has the walls rebuilt*.

*Patriam diripiendam reliquimus*, C., *Fam.*, XVI. 12, 1; *we have left our country to be plundered*.

*Carvilius aedem faciendam locavit*, L., X. 46, 14; *Carvilius let the (contract of) building the temple*.

The passive form has the Nominative :

*Dēmētrius ad patrem reducendus lēgātis datus est*, L., XXXVI. 35, 13; *Demetrius was given to the envoys to be taken back to his father*.

## Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive.

**431.** The Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used as the Ablative of Means and Cause, seldom as the Ablative of Manner or Circumstance.

*Ūnus homō nobis cunctandō restituit rem*, ENNIUS (C., *Cat.M.*, 4, 10); *one man by lingering raised our cause again*.

*Plausum meō nōmine recitandō dedērunt*, Cf. C., *Att.*, IV. 1, 6; *they clapped when my name was read*.

## Prepositions with the Gerund and Gerundive.

**432.** The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive follows the preposition *ad*, seldom *ante*, *circā*, *ergā*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *propter*, and *super*. See 427.

*Nulla res tantum ad dicendum proficit quantum scriptio*, C., *Br.*, 24, 92; *nothing is so profitable for speaking as is writing.*

*Inter spoliandum corpus hostis exspiravit*, Cf. L., II. 20, 9; *while in the act of stripping the body of the enemy he gave up the ghost.*

**433.** The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive takes the prepositions *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, often *in*, but seldom *cum*, *prō*, and *super*.

*Libri de contemnenda gloria*, C., *Tusc.*, I. 15, 34; *books on the contempt of glory.*

*Ex discendo capiunt voluptatem*, Cf. C., *Fin.*, v. 18, 48; *they receive pleasure from learning.*

*Brutus in liberanda patria (= dum liberat) est interfectus*, C., *Cat. M.*, 20, 75; *Brutus was slain in the effort to free his country.*

## SUPINE.

**434.** The Supine is a verbal substantive, which appears only in the Accusative and Ablative cases.

## The Accusative Supine.

**435.** The Supine in *-tum* is used chiefly after verbs of Motion, to express Design.

*Galliae legati ad Caesarem gratulatum conveniunt*, CAES., *B. G.*, I. 30, 1; *the commissioners of Gaul waited on Caesar to congratulate him.*

*Spectatum veniunt; veniunt spectentur ut ipsae*, Ov., *A. A.*, I. 99; *they come to see the show; they come to be themselves a show.*

*Galli cum sole eunt cubitum*, PLIN., *N. H.*, x. 24, 46; *cocks go to roost with the sun (at sunset).*

REMARK.—The Fut. Inf. passive is actually made up of the passive Inf. of *ire*, *to go*, *iri* (*that a movement is made*, from *itur*; 208, 2), and the Supine:

*Rumor venit datum iri gladiatoris*, TER., *Hec.*, 39; *the rumor comes that gladiators (gladiatorial shows) are going to be given.*

The consciousness of this is lost, as is shown by the Nom. (528).

*Reus damnatum iri videbatur*, QUINT., IX. 2, 88; *the accused seemed to be about to be condemned.*

## The Ablative Supine.

**436.** The Supine in *-tū* is used chiefly with Adjectives, as the Ablative of Respect (397). It never takes an object.

*Mirabile dictū*, wonderful (in the telling) to tell, *visū*, to behold.

*Id dictū quam res facilius est*, L., XXXI. 38, 4; that is easier in the saying than in the fact (easier said than done).

## PARTICIPLE.

**437.** The Participle may be used as a substantive, but even then generally retains something of its verbal nature.

*Nihil est magnum somniantī*, C., Div., II. 68, 141; nothing is great to a dreamer (to a man, when he is dreaming).

*Rēgia res est succurrere lapsis*, Ov., Pont., II. 9, 11; it is a kingly thing (to run to catch those who have slipped), to succor the fallen.

REMARK.—The Attribute of the Participle, employed as a substantive, is generally in the adverbial form: *rectis facta*, right actions; *facetis dictum*, a witty remark.

**438.** The Participle, as an adjective, often modifies its verbal nature, so as to be characteristic, or descriptive.

*Epaminondas erat temporibus sapienter utens*, NEP., xv. 3, 1; *Epaminondas was a man who made (to make) wise use of opportunities (= is qui uteretur)*.

*Senectus est operosa et semper agens aliquid*, Cf. C., Cat. M., 8, 26; old age is busy, and always doing something.

REMARKS.—1. Especial attention is called to the parallelism of the participle or adjective with the relative and Subjunctive:

*Munera non ad delicias muliebres quaesita nec quibus nova nupta comatur*, Tac., Germ., 18; gifts not sought out for woman's fancies, nor those by which a bride adorns herself.

2. The Fut. Part is used after verbs of motion to express Design; but this is rare in model prose; see 670, 3.

## ADVERB.

**439.** Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, also sometimes substantives, when they express or imply verbal or adjective relations.

*Male vivit*, he lives ill;

*bene est*, it is well;

<i>ferē omnēs, almost all ;</i>	<i>admodum adulescēns, a mere youth ;</i>
<i>nimis saepe, too often ;</i>	<i>lātē rēx (V., A., I. 21), wide-ruling ;</i>
<i>bis cōsul, twice consul ;</i>	<i>duo simul bella, two simultaneous wars.</i>

**440. Position of the Adverb.**—Adverbs are commonly put immediately before the words they qualify.

They occasionally follow the verb.

*Iniustē facit, he acts unjustly. Admodum pulcher, handsome to a degree, very handsome. Valdē diligenter, very carefully.*

REMARK.—Exceptions occur chiefly in rhetorical passages, in which great stress is laid on the adverb, or in poetry :

*Iram bene Ennius initium dixit insāniae, C., Tusc., IV. 23, 52 ; well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness.*

*Vixit dum vixit bene, TER., Hec., 461 ; he lived while he lived (and lived) well.*

### Negative Adverbs.

**441.** There are two original negatives in Latin, *nē* and *haud* (*haut, hau*). From *nē* is derived *nōn*.

**442. Nōn** (the absolute *not*) is the regular Negative of the Indicative and of the Potential Subjunctive.

*Quem amat, amat ; quem nōn amat, nōn amat, PETR., 37 ; whom she likes, she likes ; whom she does not like, she does not like.*

*Nōn ausim, I should not venture.*

REMARKS.—1. *Nōn*, as the emphatic, specific negative, may negative anything. (See 270, E. 1.)

2. *Nōn* is the rule in antitheses : *Nōn est vivere sed valēre vita, MART., VI. 70, 15 ; not living, but being well, is life.*

**443. Haud** is the negative of the single word, and in model prose is not common, being used chiefly with adjectives and adverbs : *haud quisquam, not any ; haud māgnus, not great ; haud male, not badly.*

**444. 1. Nē** is the Negative of the Imperative and of the Optative Subjunctive.

*Tū nē cēde malis, V., A., VI. 95 ; yield not thou to misfortunes.*

*Nē trānsieris Hiberum, L., XXI. 44, 6 ; do not cross the Ebro.*

*Nē vivam, si sciō, C., Att., IV. 16, 8 ; may I cease to live (strike me dead), if I know.*



## 2. *Nē* is continued by *nēve* or *neu*.

*Nē illam vēndās, neu mē perdās hominem amantem*, PL., Ps., 322 ; *don't sell her, and don't ruin me, a fellow in love.*

445. *Subdivision of the Negative*.—A negative may be subdivided by *neque*—*neque*, as well as by *aut*—*aut*, or strengthened by *nē*—*quidem*, *not even*.

*Nihil umquam neque insolēns neque glōriōsum ex ōre Timoleontis prōcessit*, NEP., XX. 4, 2 ; *nothing insolent or boastful ever came out of the mouth of Timoleon.*

*Cōsciorum nēmō aut latuit aut fugit*, L., XXIV. 5, 14 ; *of the accomplices no one either hid or fled.*

*Numquam Scipionem nē minimā quidem rē offendi*, C., Lael., 27, 103 ; *I never wounded Scipio's feelings, no, not even in the slightest matter.*

"I will give no thousand crowns, *neither*."—SHAKS., *As You Like It*, I. I, 78.

446. *Negative Combinations*.—In English, we say either *no one ever*, or, *never any one* ; *nothing ever*, or, *never anything* ; in Latin, the former turn is invariably used : *nēmō umquam*, *no one ever*.

*Verrēs nihil umquam fecit sine aliquō quaestū*, C., Verr., v. 5, 11 ; *Verrēs never did anything without some profit or other.*

REMARK.—*No one yet* is *nōndum quisquam* ; *no more, no longer*, is *iam nōn*.

447. *Negō* (*I say no, I deny*) is commonly used instead of *dicō nōn*, *I say—not*.

*Vel ai vel negā*, ACCIUS, 125 (R.) ; *say yes or say no !*

*Assem sēs datūrum negat*, C., Quinct., 5, 19 ; *he says that he will not give a copper.*

448. *Position of the Negative*.—The Negative usually stands immediately before the Predicate, but may be placed before any emphatic word or combination of words.

*Nē*—*quidem*, *not even*, bestrides the emphatic word or group.

*Potes nōn reverti*, SEN., *E.M.*, 49, 10 ; *possibly you may not return* (*nōn potes reverti, you cannot possibly return*).

*Saepe viri fallunt ; tenerae nōn saepe puellae*, OV., *A.A.*, III. 31 ; *often do men deceive ; soft-hearted maidens not often.*

*Nōn omnis aetās*, LŶDE, *lūdō* *convenit*, PL., *B.*, 129 ; *not every age, (good) Lydus (Playfair), sorts with play.*

*Nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem redimere potuerunt*, Cf. CAES., *B.G.*, I. 37, 2 ; *they could not buy back peace, even by giving hostages.*

**449.** Two negatives in the same sentence destroy one another, and make an affirmative, but see 445 :

*Nōn negō, I do not deny (I admit).*

REMARKS.—1. *Nōn possum nōn, I cannot but (I must) :*

*Qui mortem in malis pōnit nōn potest eam nōn timēre, C., Fin., III. 8, 29 ; he who classes death among misfortunes cannot but (must) fear it.*

(2, 3) 4. Of especial importance is the position of the Negative in the following combinations :

<i>Indefinite Affirmative.</i>		<i>General Affirmative.</i>	
<i>nōnnihil,</i>	<i>somewhat ;</i>	<i>nihil nōn,</i>	<i>everything ;</i>
<i>nōnnēmō,</i>	<i>some one, some ;</i>	<i>nēmō nōn,</i>	<i>everybody ;</i>
<i>nōnnūlli,</i>	<i>some people ;</i>	<i>nūlli nōn,</i>	<i>all ;</i>
<i>nōnnumquam,</i>	<i>sometimes ;</i>	<i>numquam nōn,</i>	<i>always ;</i>
<i>nōnnūquam,</i>	<i>somewhere ;</i>	<i>nūquam nōn,</i>	<i>everywhere.</i>

*In ipse cūriā nōnnēmō hostis est, C., Mur., 39, 84 ; in the senate-house itself there are enemies (nēmō nōn hostis est, everybody is an enemy).*

*Nōn est placandi spēs mihi nūlla Dei, Ov., Tr., v. 8, 22 (428) ; I have some hope of appeasing God (nūlla spēs nōn est, I have every hope).*

*Nēmō nōn didicisse māvult quam discere, QUINT., III. 1, 6 ; everybody prefers having learned to learning.*

## INCOMPLETE SENTENCE.

### Interrogative Sentences.

**450.** An interrogative sentence is necessarily incomplete. It is completed by the answer.

**451.** A question may relate :

(a) To the verb : Predicate Question :

*Vivitne pater ? PL., Capt., 282 ; is my father alive ?*

(b) To some other part of the sentence, such as Subject, Object, Adjective, Adverb : Nominal Question.

*Quis est ? Who is it ? Quid ais ? What do you say ? Qui hic mōs ? What sort of way is this ? Cūr nōn discēdis ? Why do you not depart ?*

For a list of Interrogative Pronouns see 104.

**452.** 1. Interrogative sentences are divided into *simple* and *compound* (disjunctive). *Am I ?* (simple) ; *Am I, or am I not ?* (disjunctive).

2. Interrogative sentences are further divided into *direct* and *indirect*, or *independent* and *dependent*. *Am I ?* (direct) ; *He asks whether I am* (indirect).

## DIRECT SIMPLE QUESTIONS.

**453.** Direct simple questions sometimes have no interrogative sign. Such questions are chiefly passionate in their character, and serve to express Astonishment, Blame, Disgust.

*Infelix est Fabricius quod rūs suum fodit?* SEN., *Dial.*, I. 3, 6; *Fabricius is unhappy because he digs his own field?* (Impossible!)

*Heus, inquit, linguam vis meam praecludere?* PHAEDR., I. 23, 5; *Ho! ho! quoth he, you wish to shut my mouth, you do?* (You shall not.)

*Tuum parasitum nōn nōvisti?* PL., *Men.*, 505; *you dont know your own parasite?* (Strange!)

**454. Interrogative Particles.**—**-Ne** (enclitic) is always appended to the emphatic word, and generally serves to denote a question, without indicating the expectation of the speaker.

This emphatic word usually begins the sentence.

*Omnisne pecūnia dissoluta est?* C., *Verr.*, III. 77, 180; *is ALL the money paid out?* (*Estne omnis pecūnia dissoluta?* *is all the money paid out?*)

**455. Nōne** expects the answer *Yes*.

*Nōne meministi?* C., *Fin.*, II. 3, 10; *do you not remember?*

*Nōne is generosissimus qui optimus?* QUINT., V. II, 4; *is he not the truest gentleman who is the best man?*

So the other negatives with **-ne**: *nēmōne*, *nihilne*, and the like.

**456. Num** expects the answer *No*.

*Numquis est hic alius praeter mē atque tē?* *Nēmō est*, PL., *Tr.*, 69; *is anybody here besides you and me?* *No*.

**457. 1. An (or)** belongs properly to the second part of a disjunctive question.

Sometimes, however, the first part of the disjunctive question is left out. The second alternative with **an** (*or, then*) serves to indicate Remonstrance, Expostulation, Surprise, or Irony.

*Nōn manum abstinēs? An tibi iam māvīs cerebrum dispergam hic?* TER., *Ad.*, 781; *are you not going to keep your hands off? Or would you rather have me scatter your brains over the place now?*

*An nescis longās rēgibus esse manūs?* OV., *Her.*, 16, 166; (*my husband keeps guard, though absent. Is it not so?*) *or perhaps you do not know (you do not know, then) that kings have long hands (arms).*

2. Especially to be noted, in connection with **an**, are the phrases, **nesciō an**, **hand sciō an**, *I do not know but*; **dubitō an**, *I doubt, I doubt but = I am inclined to think*.

**Hand sciō an ita sit**, C., *Tusc.*, II. 17, 41; *I do not know but it is so*.

**Dubitō an Thrasylbulum primum omnium pōnam**, NEP., VIII. 1, 1; *I doubt but I should (= I am inclined to think I should) put Thrasylbulus first of all*.

## DIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

458. Direct Disjunctive Questions have the following forms :

### First Clause.

**utrum**, *whether*,

**-ne**,

### Second and Subsequent Clauses.

**an** (*anne*), *or*

**an**,

**an** (*anne*).

**Utrum nescis quam altō ascenderis**, **an prō nihilo id putās**? C., *Fam.*, x. 26, 3; *are you not aware how high you have mounted, or do you count that as nothing?*

**Vōne Domitium an vōs Domitius dēseruit**? CAES., *B.C.*, II. 32, 8; *have you deserted Domitius, or has Domitius deserted you?*

**Ēloquar an sileam**? V., *A.*, III. 39; *shall I speak, or hold my peace?*

459. In direct questions, *or not* is **annōn**, rarely **necne**; in indirect, **necne**, rarely **annōn**.

**Isne est quem quaerō**, **annōn**? TER., *Ph.*, 852; *is that the man I am looking for, or not?*

**Sitque memor nostri necne**, **referte mihi**, OV., *Tr.*, IV. 3, 10; *bring me back (word) whether she thinks of us or no*.

## INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

460. Indirect questions have the same particles as the direct, with the following modifications.

### 1. Simple Questions.

(a) **Num** loses its negative force, and becomes simply *whether*.

**Speculārī fūssērunt num sollicitātī animī sociōrum essent**, L., XLII. 19, 8; *they ordered them to spy out whether the allies had been tampered with*.

(b) *Sī, if*, is used for *whether*, chiefly after verbs and sentences implying trial. Compare *Ō sī* (261).

*Temptāta res est si primō impetū capi Ardea posset*, L., I. 57, 2; *an attempt was made* (in case, in hopes that, to see) *if Ardea could be taken by a dash*.

## 2. Disjunctive Questions.

In addition to the forms for Direct Questions (458), a form with *-ne* in the second clause only is sometimes found in the Indirect Question.

*Tarquinius Prisci Tarquinii regis filius nepōne fuerit parum liquet*, L., I. 46, 4; *whether Tarquin was the son or grandson of King Tarquin the Elder does not appear*.

## SUMMARY OF DIRECT AND INDIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

### 461. Direct.

*Is the last syllable short or long?* Cf. C., Or., 64, 217.

*Postrēma syllaba utrum brevis est an longa?*  
*brevisne est an longa?*

### Indirect.

*In a verse it makes no difference whether the last syllable be short or long:*

In versū nihil rēfert	{	<i>utrum postrēma syllaba brevis sit an longa.</i>
		<i>postrēma syllaba brevisne sit an longa.</i>
		<i>postrēma syllaba brevis an longa sit (CICERO).</i>
		<i>postrēma syllaba brevis sit longane.</i>

## MOODS IN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

### 1. In Direct Questions.

**462.** The Mood of the question is determined by the Mood of the answer.

**463.** Indicative questions expect an Indicative answer, when the question is *genuine*.

A. *Quis homō est?* B. *Ego sum*, TER., *And.*, 965; *who is that?* *It is I.*

A. *Vivitne pater?* B. *Vivum liquimus*, PL., *Capt.*, 282; *is his father living?* *We left him alive.*

**464.** Indicative questions anticipate an Indicative answer in the negative when the question is *rhetorical* and no answer is expected.

*Quis nōn paupertatem extimēscit?* C., *Tusc.*, v. 31, 89; *who does not dread poverty?*

**465.** Subjunctive questions which expect Imperative answers are put chiefly in the First Person, when the question is *deliberative*.

A. *Abeam?* B. *Abi, Pl., Merc.*, 749; *shall I go away? Go.*

*Utrum superbiam prius commemorem an crudelitatem?* C., *Verr.*, I. 47, 122; *shall I mention the insolence first or the cruelty?*

REMARK.—So in the representative of the First Person in dependent discourse (265).

**466.** Subjunctive questions anticipate a Potential answer in the negative, when the question is *rhetorical*.

*Quis hōc crēdat?* *who would believe this?* [No one.]

*Quid faceret aliud?* *what else was he to do?* [Nothing.]

*Quis dubitet quin in virtute divitiæ sint?* C., *Parad.*, vi. 2, 48; *who can doubt that true wealth consists in virtue?* [No one.]

REMARK.—On the Exclamatory Question see 534, 558.

## 2. In Indirect Questions.

**467.** The Dependent Interrogative is always in the Subjunctive.

The Subjunctive may represent the Indicative.

*Cōsiderābimus quid fēcerit* (Indic. *fēcit*), *quid faciat* (Indic. *facit*), *quid factūrus sit* (Indic. *faciet* or *factūrus est*), Cf. C., *Inv.*, I. 25, 36; *we will consider what he has done, what he is doing, what he is going to do (will do).*

*Epaminōndās quæsiuit salvusne esset clipeus*, C., *Fin.*, II. 30, 97; *Epaminondas asked whether his shield was safe. (Salvusne est?)*

The Subjunctive may be original. See 265.

*Ipsē docet quid agam*; O.V., *M.*, IV. 428; *he himself teaches (me) what to do (Quid agam? what am I to do?)*

*Quærō a tē cūr Cornēlium nōn dēfenderem*, C., *Vat.*, 2, 5; *I inquire of you why I was not to defend Cornelius. (Cūr nōn dēfenderem? why was I not to defend?)*

REMARKS.—1. *Nesciō quis, nesciō quid, nesciō qui, nesciō quod, I know not who, what, which*, may be used exactly as indefinite pronouns, and then have no effect on the construction.

*Nescio quid māius nāscitur Iliade, PROP., II. 32, 66; something, I know not what, is coming to the birth, greater than the Iliad.*

2. The Relative has the same form as the Interrogative except in the Nom. and Acc. Sing.; hence the importance of distinguishing between them in dependent sentences.

*Interrogative: dic quid rogem, tell me what it is I am asking.*

*Relative: dic quod rogō, TER., And., 764; tell me that which I am asking (the answer to my question).*

### Anticipation of the Subject.

468. The subject of the dependent clause is often treated as the object of the leading clause by Anticipation (*Prolēpsis*).

*Nōti Mārcellum quam tardus sit, CAELIUS (C., Fam., VIII. 10, 3); you know Marcellus, what a slow creature he is.*

### Yes and No.

(469–70) 471. (a) *Yes* is represented :

1. By *sānē*, (literally) *soundly, sānē quidem, yes indeed, etiam, even (so), vērō, of a truth, ita, so, omninō, by all means, certē, surely, certō, for certain, admodum, to a degree, etc.*

*Aut etiam aut nōn respondere potest, C., Ac., II. 32, 104; he can answer either yes or no.*

2. By *cōnsēō*, *I think so; scilicet, to be sure.*

*Quid si etiam oocentem hymenaeum? Cōnsēō, PL., Cas., 806; what if I should also sing a marriage-song? I think you had better.*

3. By repeating the emphatic word either with or without the confirmatory particles, *vērō* (principally with pronouns), *sānē, prorsus, etc.*

*Estisne? Sumus, are you? We are.*

*Dāne? Dō sānē, C., Leg., I. 7, 21; do you grant? I do indeed.*

(b) *No* is represented :

1. By *nōn, nōn vērō, nōn ita, minimē, by no means, nihil, nothing, minimē vērō, nihil sānē, nihil minus.*

2. By repeating the emphatic word with the negative :

*Nōn irāta es? Nōn sum irāta, PL., Cas., 1007; you are not angry? I am not.*

(c) YEA or NAY.—*Immō* conveys a correction, and either removes a doubt or heightens a previous statement : *yes indeed, nay rather*.

*Equid placeant aedēs mē rogās ? Immō perplacent*, PL., *Most.*, 907 ; *do I like the house, you ask me ? Yes indeed, very much*.

*Causa igitur nōn bona est ? Immō optima*, C., *Att.*, IX. 7, 4 ; *the cause, then, is a bad one ? Nay, it is an excellent one*.

REMARK.—*Yes, for*, and *no, for*, are often expressed simply by *nam* and *enim*.

*Tum Antōnius : Hec enim, inquit, hōc mihi prōposueram*, C., *Or.*, II. 10, 40 ; *then saith Antony : Yes, for I had proposed this to myself yesterday*.

## SYNTAX OF THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

472. 1. A compound sentence is one in which the necessary parts of the sentence occur more than once ; one which consists of two or more clauses.

2. Coördination (*Parataxis*) is that arrangement of the sentence according to which the different clauses are merely placed side by side.

3. Subordination (*Hypotaxis*) is that arrangement of the sentence according to which one clause depends on the other.

*He became poor and we became rich* ; the second clause is a coördinate clause.

*He became poor that we might be rich* ; the second clause is a subordinate clause.

4. The clause which is modified is called the Principal Clause, that which modifies is called the Subordinate Clause. "*He became poor*" is the Principal Clause, "*that we might be rich*" is the Subordinate Clause.

## COÖRDINATION.

473. Coördinate sentences are divided into various classes, according to the particles by which the separate clauses are bound together.

REMARK.—Coördinate sentences often dispense with conjunctions (*Asyndeton*). Then the connection must determine the character.



### Copulative Sentences.

**474.** The following particles are called Copulative Conjunctions : *et*, *-que*, *atque* (*ac*), *etiam*, *quoque*.

**475.** *Et* is simply *and*, the most common and general particle of connection, and combines likes and unlikes.

*Panem et aquam natura desiderat*, SEN., *E.M.*, 25, 4 ; *bread and water* (is what) *nature calls for*.

*Probitas laudatur et alget*, JUV., I. 74 ; *honesty is bepraised and—freezes*.

*Both—and* is *et—et* : *et vita et fortuna*, C., *Ph.*, x. 1, 3 ; *both life and fortune*.

**476.** *-Que* (enclitic) unites things that belong closely to one another. The second member serves to *complete* or *extend* the first.

*Senatus populusque Romanus*, C., *Planc.*, 37, 90 ; *the Senate and people of Rome*.

*Ibi mortuus sepultusque Alexander*, L., xxxvi. 20, 5 ; *there Alexander died and was buried*.

*Que—que* ; *both—and*, is found mainly in poetry and later prose.

**477.** *Atque* (compounded of *ad* and *-que*) adds a more important to a less important member.

*Ac* (a shorter form, which does not stand before a vowel or *h*) is fainter than *atque*, and almost equivalent to *et*.

*Intra moenia atque in sinu urbis sunt hostes*, S., C., 52, 35 ; *within the walls, ay, and in the heart of the city, are the enemies*.

A. *Servus ? Ego ?* B. *Atque meus*, PL., *Cas.*, 735 ; *a slave ? I ? And mine to boot*.

**478.** *Etiam*, *even* (*now*), *yet*, *still*, exaggerates (heightens), and generally precedes the word to which it belongs.

*Nobis res familiaris etiam ad necessaria ddest*, Cf. S., C., 20, 11 ; *we lack means even for the necessities of life*.

**479.** *Quoque*, *so also*, complements (compare *que*) and always follows the words to which it belongs.

*Cum patri Timothei populus statuam posuisset, filio quoque dedit*, Cf. NEP., XIII. 2, 3 ; *the people, having erected a statue in honor of the father of Timotheus, gave one to the son also (likewise)*.

REMARK.—The difference between *etiam* and *quoque* is not to be insisted on too rigidly:

*Grande et cōspicuum nostrū quoque tempore mōnstrum*, JUV., IV. 115; *a huge and conspicuous prodigy, even in our day.*

480. *Copulation by means of the Negative.*—Instead of *et* and the negative, *neque* (*nec*) and the positive is the rule in Latin.

*Opiniōnibus vulgi rapimur in errōrem nec vĕra cernimus*, C., *Leg.*, II. 17, 43; *by the prejudices of the rabble we are hurried into error, and do not distinguish the truth.*

REMARKS.—1. *Et—nōn, and—not*, is used when the negation is confined to a single word, or is otherwise emphatic.

2. In combination with the negative we have the following

Paradigms: <i>And no one,</i>	<i>neque quisquam,</i>	<i>nor any one.</i>
<i>And no,</i>	<i>neque illius,</i>	<i>nor any.</i>
<i>And nothing,</i>	<i>neque quidquam,</i>	<i>nor anything.</i>
<i>And never,</i>	<i>neque umquam,</i>	<i>nor ever.</i>

*Iste neque dēsiderāvit quemquam*, C., *Ph.*, II. 42, 109; *and he missed no one.*

481. 1. *Insertion and Omission of Copulatives.*—When *multus*, *much*, *many*, is followed by another attribute, the two are often combined by copulative particles: *many renowned deeds*, *multa et praeclāra facinora*; *many good qualities*, *multae bonaeque artēs*.

2. Several subjects or objects, standing in the same relations, either take *et* throughout or omit it throughout. The omission of it is common in emphatic enumeration.

*Phrygēs et Pisidae et Cilicēs*, C., *Div.*, I. 41, 92; or, *Phrygēs, Pisidae, Cilicēs*, *Phrygians, Pisidians, and Cilicians.*

3. *Et* is further omitted in *climaxes*, in *antitheses*, in *phrases*, and in *formulæ*.

*Virī nōn est dēbilitārī dolōre, frangī, succumbere*, C., *Fin.*, II. 29, 95; *it is unmanly to allow one's self to be disabled (unnerved) by grief, to be broken-spirited, to succumb.*

*Difficilis facilis, iſcundus acerbus, es idem*, MART., XII. 47, 1; *crabbed (and) kindly, sweet (and) sour, you are at once* (310).

*Patrēs Cōscriptī*, *Fathers* (and) *Conscript* (Senators).

*Iuppiter Optimus Māximus*, *Father Jove, supremely good (and) great.*

## Other Particles Employed.

**482.** Other particles are sometimes employed instead of the copulative in the same general sense.

1. Temporal : *tum*—*tum*, *then—then*; *aliās*—*aliās*, *at one time—at another*; *iam*—*iam*, *nunc*—*nunc*, *modo*—*modo*, *now—now*; *simul*—*simul*, *at the same time*.

*Tum Graecō*—*tum Latīnē*, *partly in Greek, partly in Latin*.

*Horātius nunc singulōs prōvocābat, nunc increpābat omnēs*, *Cf. L., II. 10, 8*; *Horatius now challenged them singly, now taunted them all*.

*Modo hūc, modo illūc*, *C., Att., XIII. 25, 3*; *now hither, now thither (hither and thither)*.

(2, 3) 4. Comparative : *ut—ita*, *as—so* :

*Dolābellam ut Tarsēnsēs ita Lāodicēnī arcessiērunt*, *C., Fam., XII. 13, 4*; *as the people of Tarsus so the people of Laodicea* (= both the people of Tarsus and those of Laodicea) *sent for Dolabella*.

Often, however, the actions compared are adversative; and *ut* may be loosely translated *although, while*.

*Haec omnia ut invītīs ita nōn adversantibus patriciīs trānsacta*, *L., III. 55, 15*; *all this was done, the patricians, though unwilling, yet not opposing* (= against the wishes, but without any opposition on the part of the patricians).

5. Adversative : *nōn modo, nōn solum, nōn tantum, not only*; *sed, sed etiam, sed—quoque, vērūm etiam, but even, but also* :

*Nōn docērī tantum sed etiam dēlectārī volunt*, *QUINT., IV. I. 57*; *they wish not merely to be taught, but to be tickled to boot*.

In the negative form, *nōn modo nōn, not only not*; *sed nē—quidem, but not even*; *sed vix, but hardly*.

*Ego nōn modo tibi nōn irāscor, sed nē reprehendō quidem factum tuum*, *C., Sull., 18, 50*; *I not only am not angry with you, but I do not even find fault with your action*.

REMARKS.—1. Instead of *nōn modo (solum) nōn—sed nē—quidem*, the latter *nōn* is generally omitted, if the two negative clauses have a verb in common; otherwise both negatives are expressed.

*Pisōne cōnsule senātū nōn solum invāre rem publicam, sed nē lūgare quidem licēbat*, *Cf. C., Pis., 10, 23*; *when Piso was consul, it was not only not left free for the senate* (= the senate was not only not free) *to help the commonwealth, but not even to mourn* (for her).

2. Noteworthy is *nēdum, not* (to speak of) *yet, much less*, which is used either with or without a verb in the Subjunctive.

*Satrapa numquam sufferre eius sūptūs queat, nēdum tū possis*, *TER., Heaut., 454*; *a nabob could never stand that girl's expenditures, much less could you*.

## Adversative Sentences.

**483.** The Adversative particles are : *autem*, *sed*, *vērū*, *vērō*, *at*, *atquē*, *tamen*, *cēterum*. Of these only *sed* and *tamen* are really adversative.

**484.** *Autem* (post-positive) is the weakest form of *but*, and indicates a *difference* from the foregoing, a *contrast* rather than a *contradiction*.

It serves as a particle of *transition* and *explanation* (= *moreover*, *furthermore*, *now*), and of *resumption* (= *to come back*), and is often used in argument.

*Modo accēdēns, tum autem recēdēns*, C., *N.D.*, II. 40, 102 ; *now approaching, then again receding*.

*Rūmōribus mēcum pugnās, ego autem ā tē ratiōnēs requirō*, C., *N.D.*, III. 5, 13 ; *you fight me with rumors, whereas I ask of you reasons*.

*Quod est bonum, omne laudābile est ; quod autem laudābile est, omne est honestum ; bonum igitur quod est, honestum est*, C., *Fin.*, III. 8, 27 ; *everything that is good is praiseworthy ; but everything that is praiseworthy is virtuous ; therefore, what is good is virtuous*.

REMARK.—*Autem* commonly follows the first word in the sentence or clause ; but when an unemphatic *est* or *sunt* occupies the second place, it is put in the third. So *igitur* and *enim*.

**485.** *Sed* (*set*) is used partly in a stronger sense, to denote *contradiction*, partly in a weaker sense, *to introduce a new thought*, or *to revive an old one*.

*Nōn est vivere sed valēre vita*, MART., VI. 70, 15 ; *not living, but being well is life*.

*Domitius nullā quidem arte sed Latīnē tamen dicēbat*, C., *Br.*, 77, 267 ; *Domitius spoke with no art it is true, but for all that, in good Latin*.

**486.** *Vērū*, *it is true*, *true*, always takes the first place in a sentence, and is practically equivalent to *sed* in its stronger sense.

*Si certum est facere, faciam ; vērū nō post cōferās culpam in mē*, TER., *Eun.*, 388 ; *if you are determined to do it, I will arrange it ; but you must not afterward lay the blame on me*.

487. *Vērō*, of a truth, is generally put in the second place, asserts with conviction, and is used to heighten the statement.

*Platōnem Diōn adeō admirātus est ut sē tōtum ei trāderet. Neque vērō minus Platō dēlectātus est Diōne*, NEP., x. 2, 3; *Dion admired Plato to such a degree that he gave himself wholly up to him; and indeed Plato was no less delighted with Dion.*

488. *At*, but, introduces *startling transitions, lively objections, remonstrances, questions, wishes*, often by way of quotation.

*At vidēte hominis intolerābilem audāciam!* C., Dom., 44, 115; *well, but see the fellow's insufferable audacity!*

*At vōbis male sit!* CAT., III. 13; *and ill luck to you!*

*"At multis malis affectus?" Quis negat?* C., Fin., v. 30, 92; *"but he has suffered much?" Who denies it?*

489. *Atquē*, but at any rate, but for all that, is stronger than *at*, and is used chiefly in argument.

*Vix credibile. Atquē sic habet*, H., S., I. 9, 52; *scarce credible. But for all that, 'tis so.*

490. *Tamen*, nevertheless, is often combined with *at*, *vērūm*, *sed*. It commonly stands first in a sentence.

*Nātūram expellēs furcā, tamen usque recurret*, H., Ep., I. 10, 24; *you may drive out Dame Nature with a pitchfork, for all that she will ever be returning.*

REMARK.—*Nihilominus* (nothing the less), nevertheless, is used like *tamen*, by which it is occasionally strengthened.

491. *Ceterum* (for the rest), but, is used by the Historians as an adversative particle.

*Duo imperātōrēs, ipsi parēs, cēterum opibus disparibus*, S., Jug., 52, 1; *two commanders, equal in personal qualities, but of unequal resources.*

### Disjunctive Sentences.

492. The Disjunctive particles are *aut*, *vel*, *-ve*, *sive* (*seu*).

493. 1. *Aut*, or, denotes absolute exclusion or substitution.

*Vinceris aut vincis*, PROP., II. 8, 8; *you are conquered or conquering.*

2. **Aut** is often corrective = *or at least, at most, rather* (*aut saltem, aut potius*).

*Cuncti aut magna pars fidem mutavissent*, S., *Jug.*, 56, 5 ; *all, or at least a great part, would have changed their allegiance.*

*Duo aut summum tres iuvenes*, L., *XXXIII.*, 5, 8 ; *two, or at most three, youths.*

3. **Aut—aut, either—or.**

*Aut dic aut accipe calcem*, JUV., III. 295 ; *either speak or take a kick.*

*Quaedam terrae partes aut frigore rigent aut aruntur calore*, Cf. C., *Tusc.*, I. 28, 68 ; *some parts of the earth are either frozen with cold or burnt with heat.*

494. 1. **Vel** (literally, *you may choose*), *or*, gives a choice, often with *etiam, even, potius, rather*.

*Ego vel Cluivnus*, JUV., I. 80 ; *I, or, if you choose, Cluivnus.*

*Satis vel etiam nimium multa*, C., *Fam.*, IV. 14, 3 ; *enough, or even too much.*

*Epicurus homo minimus malus vel potius vir optimus*, C., *Tusc.*, II. 19, 44 ; *Epicurus (was) a person by no means bad, or, rather, a man of excellent character.*

2. **Vel—vel, either—or** (whether—or).

*Miltiades dixit regem vel hostium ferro vel inopia paucis diebus interitum*, NEP., I. 3, 4 ; *Miltiades said that the king would perish in a few days, whether by the sword of the enemy, or for want of provisions.*

495. **-Ve** (enclitic) is a weaker form of **vel**.

*Cūr timeam dubitemve locum defendere?* JUV., I. 103 ; *why should I fear or hesitate to maintain my position?*

*Aliquid faciendi nōn faciendive ratio*, C., *Inv.*, II. 9, 31 ; *the method of doing something or not doing it.*

**-Ve** is often used with numerals in the sense *at most*.

*Bis terve*, C., *Fam.*, II. 1, 1 ; *twice or at most thrice (bis terque, twice and indeed as much as thrice, if not more).*

496. 1. **Sive (seu)**, *if you choose*, gives a choice between two designations of the same object.

*Urbem matri seu novercae relinquit*, L., I. 3, 3 ; *he leaves the city to his mother or (if it seems more likely) to his step-mother.*

## 2. Sive—sive (seu—seu), whether—or (indifference).

*Sive medicum adhibueris sive nōn adhibueris nōn convalescēs, C., Fat., 12, 29 ; whether you employ a physician, or do not employ (one), you will not get well.*

## Causal and Illative Sentences.

(497) 498. A. The Causal particles are **nam**, **enim**, **namque**, and **etenim**, *for*.

**Nam** is put at the beginning of a sentence ; **enim** is post-positive : **namque** and **etenim** are not common, and usually occur in the first place.

*Sensūs mirifici conlocati sunt ; nam oculi tamquam speculatores altissimum locum obtinent, C., N.D., II. 56, 140 ; the senses are admirably situated ; for the eyes, like watchmen, occupy the highest post.*

*Piscēs ova relinquunt, facile enim illa aqua sustinentur, C., N.D., II. 51, 129 ; fish leave their eggs, for they are easily kept alive by the water.*

499. B. Illative particles are **itaque**, **igitur**, **ergō** ; **eō**, **hinc**, **inde**, **ideō**, **idcirco**, **quōcircā**, **propterea**, **quāpropter**, **proin**, **proinde**.

500. **Itaque** (literally, *and so*), *therefore*, is used of *facts* that follow from the preceding statement ; it is usually put at the beginning of the sentence.

*Namō ausus est Phocionem liber sepelire ; itaque & servīs sepultus est, Cf. NEP., XIX. 4, 4 ; no free man dared to bury Phocion, and so he was buried by slaves.*

501. **Igitur**, *therefore*, is used of *opinions* which have their natural ground in the preceding statement ; it may precede or follow the first word.

*Mihī nōn satisfacit. Sed quot hominēs tot sententiæ ; falli igitur possumus, C., Fin., I. 5, 15 ; ME it does not satisfy. But many men, many minds. I may therefore be mistaken.*

502 (503). **Ergō** denotes *necessary consequence*, and is used especially in arguments, with somewhat more emphasis than **igitur**.

*Negat hæc filiam mē suam esse ; nōn ergō hæc mātēr mea est, PL., Ep., 590 ; she says that I am not her daughter, therefore she is not my mother.*

## SUBORDINATION.

## Moods in Subordinate Sentences.

(504-7) 508. 1. Final and Consecutive Clauses always take the Subjunctive. Others vary according to their conception. Especially important are the changes produced by *Ōrātiō Obliqua*.

2. *Ōrātiō Obliqua*, or *Indirect Discourse*, is opposed to *Ōrātiō Rēcta*, or *Direct Discourse*, and gives the main drift of a speech and not the exact words.

*Ōrātiō Obliqua*, proper, depends on some Verb of Saying or Thinking expressed or implied; in it the Principal Clauses are put in the Infinitive, the Dependent in the Subjunctive.

*Sōcratēs dicere solēbat :*

*Ō. R. Omnēs in eo quod sciunt satis sunt eloquentēs.*

*Socrates used to say : " All men ARE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTAND."*

*Ō. O. Omnēs in eo quod sciunt satis esse eloquentēs, C., Or., I. 14, 68.*

*Socrates used to say that all men WERE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTOOD.*

3. The oblique relation may be confined to one clause and not extend to the whole sentence. This may be called *Partial Obliquity*. See 541, 628.

*Ō. R. Nova nūpta dicit : Fleō quod ire necesse est.*

*The bride says : I weep because I must needs go.*

*Ō. O. Nova nūpta dicit sē fīre quod ire necesse sit.*

*The bride says that she weeps because she must needs go.*

*Ō. R. Nova nūpta flet quod ire necesse est, Cf. CAT., LXI. 81.*

*The bride weeps because she must go.*

*P. O. Nova nūpta flet quod ire necesse sit.*

*The bride is weeping because " she must go " (quoth she).*

4. Akin to *Ō. O.* is the so-called Attraction of Mood, by which clauses originally Indicative are put in the Subjunctive because they depend on Infinitives or Subjunctives. (629.)

*Nōn dubitō quin nova nūpta flet quod ire necesse sit. I do not doubt that the bride is weeping because she must go (sit is attracted from est).*



## Sequence of Tenses.

**509. 1.** In those dependent sentences which require the Subjunctive,

Principal Tenses are ordinarily followed by Principal Tenses ; Historical, by Historical.

2. This rule is subject to several modifications :

1. Tense means time, not merely tense-form, so that

(a) The Historical Present may be conceived according to its sense as Past or according to its tense as Present. (229.)

(b) The Pure Perfect may be felt as giving the past starting-point (Past), or the present completion (Present). (235.)

2. The effect of a past action may be continued into the present or the future of the writer (513).

3. The leading clause may itself consist of a principal and dependent clause, and so give rise to a varying Sequence (511, B. 2).

4. An original Subjunctive (467) of the past (265) often does not change, especially in the Indirect Question.

**510.**

All forms that relate to the Present and Future (so especially Principal Tenses)	} are followed by	{ the Present Subjunctive (for continued action) ; the Perfect Subjunctive (for completed action).
All forms that relate to the Past (so especially Historical Tenses)		
	} are followed by	{ the Imperfect Subjunctive (for continued action) ; the Pluperfect Subjunctive (for completed action).

**REMARK.**—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English : *I do not know what he has been doing, I did not know what he had been doing.* The Latin is unable to make this distinction, and so the Impf. Indic. (*I was doing*) is represented in this dependent form by the Perfect and Pluperfect, when the action is completed as to the leading verb.

**511.**

PR. (PURE OR HIST.),	<i>oġnġocġ,</i>	<i>I am finding out,</i>	{	<i>quid faciās,</i> <i>what you are doing ;</i>
FUT.,	<i>oġnġocam,</i>	<i>I shall (try to) find out,</i>		<i>quid feceris,</i> <i>what you have done,</i>
PURE PF.,	<i>oġnġvi,</i>	<i>I have found out (I know),</i>		<i>quid feceris,</i> <i>what you have been doing (what you did),</i>
FUT. PF.,	<i>oġnġverġ,</i>	<i>I shall have found out (shall know),</i>		<i>quid feceris,</i> <i>what you were doing (before).</i>

HIST. PR.,	<i>oōgnōscō,</i>	<i>I am (was) finding out,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quid facerēs,} \\ \text{what you were doing;} \\ \text{quid fecissēs,} \\ \text{what you had done, what} \\ \text{you had been doing,} \\ \text{what you were doing} \\ \text{(before).} \end{array} \right.$
IMPF.,	<i>oōgnōscēbam,</i>	<i>I was finding out,</i>	
HIST. PR.,	<i>oōgnōvī,</i>	<i>I found out,</i>	
PLUFF.,	<i>oōgnōveram,</i>	<i>I had found out (I knew),</i>	

When the Subjunctive is original, we have :

<i>oōgnōscō, etc.,</i>	<i>I am finding out,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quid faciās,} \\ \text{quid facerēs,} \end{array} \right.$	<i>what you are to do.</i> <i>what you were to do.</i>
<i>oōgnōvī, etc.,</i>	<i>I knew,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quid faciās,} \\ \text{quid facerēs,} \end{array} \right.$	<i>what you were to do.</i> <i>what you were to do.</i>

### Principal Tenses.

*Nihil rēfert postrēma syllaba brevis an longa sit, Cf. C., Or., 64, 217 (461).*

*Ubi Caesarē ōrant (historical), ut sibi parcat, CAES., B.G., VI. 9, 7 (546, 1).*

*Nēmō adeō ferus est ut nōn mīttēre possit, H., Ep., I. 1, 39 (552).*

*Nec mea qui digitis lūmina condāt erit, Ov., Her., 10, 120 (631, 2).*

*Rūsticus exspectat dum dēfluat amnis, H., Ep., I. 2, 42 (572).*

*Ardeat ipsa licet, tormentis gaudet amantis, JUV., VI. 209 (607).*

*Utrum nescis quam altē ascenderis an prō nihilō id putās? C., Fam., x. 26, 3 (458).*

*Laudat Africānum Panaetius quod fuerit abstīnēs, C., Off., II. 22, 76 (542).*

*Nōn is es ut tē pudor umquam ā turpitūdine revocārit, C., Cat., I. 9, 22 (552).*

### Historical Tenses.

*Epaminōndēs quāesivit salvusne esset clipeus, C., Fin., II. 30, 97 (467).*

*Noctū ambulābat in pūblicō Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nōn posset, C., Tus., IV. 19, 44 (541).*

*Athēniēsēs creant decem praetōrēs qui exercitui praessent, NEP., I. 4, 4 (545).*

*Accidit ut tinā nocte omnēs Hermae dēicerentur, NEP., VII. 3, 2 (513, R.).*

*Hannibal omnia priusquam excederet pūgnā erat expertus, L., xxx. 35, 4 (577).*

*Tanta opibus Etrūria erat ut iam terrās fāmā nōminis sui implēsset, L., I. 2, 5 (521, R. 1).*

*Cum Caesar Anōnam occupāvisset, urbem reliquimus, C., Fam., XVI. 12, 2 (585).*

## Original Subjunctive Retained.

*Ipsæ docet quid agam* (original, *agam*); *fîs est et ab hoste doceri*, *Ov., M., iv.* 428 (219).

*Quæres tibi cur ego Cornélium non defenderem* (original, *defenderem*), *C., Vat., 2,* 5 (467).

*Miserunt Delphos consultum quid facerent* (original, *faciamus*), *Nep., II.* 2, 6 (518).

REMARKS.—1. The treatment of the Hist. Pr. according to its sense (Past) is the rule in classical Latin, especially when the dependent clause precedes. But there are many exceptions.

*Agunt gratias quod sibi peperissent; quod arma cum hominibus consanguineis contulerint queruntur*, *Caes., B.C., I.* 74, 2; *they return thanks to them for having spared them, and complain that they had crossed swords with kinsmen.*

(2) 3. The Pure Pf. is usually treated as a Hist. Pf. in the matter of sequence:

*Quæ subsidia habere et habere posse, exposui*, *Q. Cicero, 4,* 13; *what supports you have or can have, I have set forth.*

512. *Sequence of Tenses in Sentences of Design.*—Sentences of Design have, as a rule, only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive.

PR.,	edunt,	they are eating,	} ut vivant, that they may live (to live).
PURE PF.,	edērunt,	they have eaten,	
FUT.,	edent,	they will eat,	
FUT. PF.,	ederint,	they will have eaten,	
IMPF.,	edēbant,	they were eating,	} ut viverent, that they might live (to live).
PLUFF.,	ederant,	they had eaten,	
HIST. PF.,	edērunt,	they ate,	

*Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ*, *Ov., A.A., I.* 99 (435).

*Gallinae pennæ fovēt pullōs nō frigore lædantur*, *Cf. C., N.D., II.* 52, 129 (545).

*Lēgem brevem esse oportet quō facilius ab imperitis teneatur*, *Sen., E.M., 94,* 38 (545).

*Mē præmisit domum hæc ut nūntiem uxōri suæ*, *Pl., Am., 195*; *he has sent me home ahead of him, to take the news to his wife.*

*Laelius veniebat ad cēnam ut satiares desideria nāturæ*, *C., Fin., II.* 8, 25 (545).

*Phæthōn optavit ut in currum patris tolleretur*, *C., Off., III.* 25, 94 (546, 1).

REMARK.—Parenthetical final sentences like *ut ita dicam, nō errētis*, are really dependent on the thought or utterance of the speaker, and have the present sequence everywhere.

*Nō longior sim, valē, C., Fam., xv. 19; not to be tedious, farewell!*

*Nō ignōrēs, virtūte Nerōnis Armenius cecidit, H., Ep., i. 12, 25; that you may not fail to know it, it was by the valor of Nero that the Armenian fell.*

**513. Exceptional Sequence of Tenses in Sentences of Result.**—In sentences of Result, the Present Subjunctive is used after Past Tenses to denote the continuance into the Present, the Perfect Subjunctive to imply final result. This Perfect Subjunctive may represent either the Pure Perfect or Aorist, the latter especially with the negative:

Present Tense:

*Siciliam Verrēs per triennium ita vexāvit ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullō modō possit, C., Verr., i. 4, 12; Verres so harried Sicily for three years as to make it utterly impossible for it to be restored to its original condition.*

Perfect Tense (Pure):

*Mūrēna Asiā sic oblit ut in eā neque avaritiæ neque luxuriæ vĕstigiū reliquerit, C., Mur., 9, 20; Murena so administered Asia as not to have (that he has not) left in it a trace either of greed or debauchery (there is no trace there).*

Perfect Tense (Aorist):

*Equitēs hostium scriter cum equitatē nostrō cōnfixērunt tamen ut nostri eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint, CAES., B.G., v. 15, 1; the cavalry of the enemy engaged the cavalry on our side briskly, and yet (the upshot was that) our men forced them into the woods and hills.*

REMARK.—After *accidit*, *contigit*, and other verbs of Happening, the Impf. is always used, the result being already emphasized in the Indic. form.

*Accidit ut unā nocte omnēs Hermæ dāicerentur, NEP., VII. 3, 2; it happened that in one night all the Hermæ were thrown down.*

#### Representation of the Subjunctive in the Future and Future Perfect Tenses.

**514.** The Subjunctive has no Future or Future Perfect, and these relations are represented either by the other Subjunctives, or in the Active by the Subjunctive of the Periphrastic Conjugation; as follows:

RULE I.—(a) After a Future or Future Perfect Tense, the *Future Perfect* is represented by the *Perfect Subjunctive*; but the *Future* is represented by the *Present Subjunctive*, *only* when the action occurs *at the same time* as that of the leading verb.

<b>Cōgnōscam,</b>	}	<b>quid faciās, what you are doing</b>
<i>I shall (try to) find out,</i>		
<b>Cōgnōverō,</b>		<b>quid feceris, what you have done</b>
<i>I shall have found out (shall know),</i>		
		<b>(will be doing).</b>
		<b>(will have done).</b>

(b) But whenever the dependent Future occurs *after* the leading Future, the *Périphraſtic* Tense must be employed.

<b>Cōgnōscam,</b>	}	<b>quid factūrus sis,</b>
<i>I shall (try to) find out,</i>		
<b>Cōgnōverō,</b>		<b>what you are going to do (what</b>
<i>I shall have found out (shall know),</i>		
		<b>you will do).</b>

[Cōſiderābimus], [*we shall consider*].

A. **Quid fecerit aut quid ipſi acciderit aut quid dixerit,** *what he has done, or what has happened to him, or what he has said.*

B. **Aut quid faciat, quid ipſi accidat, quid dicat,** *or, what he is doing, what is happening to him, what he is saying.*

C. **Aut quid factūrus ſit, quid ipſi cōſūrum ſit, quē ſit ūſūrus ōrātiōne,** *C., Inv., I. 25, 36; or what he is going to do (will do), what is going to (will) happen to him, what plea he is going to employ (will employ).*

515. RULE II.—After the other Tenses, the *Future* relation is expressed by the Active *Périphraſtic Subjunctive*, Present or Imperfect.

<b>Cōgnōſcō,</b>	}	<b>quid factūrus ſis (what you are going to</b>
<i>I am finding out,</i>		
<b>Cōgnōvī,</b>		<b>do), what you will do.</b>
<i>I have found out (know),</i>		

<b>Cōgnōſcēbam,</b>	}	<b>quid factūrus eſſēs (what you were going to</b>
<i>I was trying to find out,</i>		
<b>Cōgnōveram,</b>		<b>do), what you would do.</b>
<i>I had found out,</i>		

**Tam ea rēs eſt facilis ut innumerābils nātūra mundōs effectūra ſit, efficiat, effecerit,** *Cf. C., N.D., I. 21, 53; the thing is ſo eaſy that nature will make, is making, has made, innumerable worlds.*

*Incertum est quam longa cūiusque nostrum vita futura sit, C., Verr., i. 58, 153; it is uncertain how long the life of each one of us is going to be (will be).*

*Antea dubitabam venturaene essent legiones; nunc mihi non est dubium quin venturae non sint, C., Fam., II. 17, 5; before, I was doubtful whether the legions would come (or no); now I have no doubt that they will not come.*

REMARK.—(1, 2) 3. When the preceding verb has a future character (Fear, Hope, Power, Will, etc.), the simple Subjv. is sufficient.

*Galli, nisi perforerint munitiones, de omni salute desperant; Romani, si rem obtinnerint, finem laborum omnium expectant, CAES., B. G., VII. 85, 3; the Gauls despair of all safety unless they break through (shall have broken through) the fortifications; the Romans look forward to an end of all their toils, if they hold their own (shall have held).*

**516. Sequence of Tenses in Ōratiō Obliqua:** In Ōratiō Obliqua and kindred constructions, the attraction of tenses applies also to the representatives of the Future and Future Perfect Subjunctive.

*In clava erat scriptum nisi domum reverteretur se capitis eum damnaturus, NEP., IV. 3, 4; it was written on the staff that if he did not return home, they would condemn him to death. (Ōratiō Recta: nisi domum revertaris, te capitis damnabimus, unless you (shall) return home, we will condemn you to death).*

*Pythia praecipit ut Miltiadem sibi imperatorem sumerent; id si fecissent (Ō. R., feceritis) incepta prospera futura (Ō. R., erunt), NEP., I. I, 3; the Pythia instructed them to take Miltiades for their general; that if they did that, their undertakings would be successful.*

*Lacedaemonii, Philippo minitante per litteras se omnia quae cōnarentur (Ō. R., cōnabimini) prohibitorum, quaeviserunt num se esset etiam mori prohibitorum (Ō. R., prohibebis), C., Tusc., V. 14, 42; the Lacedaemonians, when Philip threatened them by letter that he would prevent everything they undertook (should undertake), asked whether he was going to (would) prevent them from dying too.*

**517. Sequence of Tenses after the other Moods.**—The Imperative and the Present and Perfect Subjunctive have the Sequences of the Principal Tenses; the Imperfect and Pluperfect have the Sequences of the Historical Tenses.

*Ne compone comas quia sis venturus ad illam, Ov., Rem. Am., 679; do not arrange (your) locks because (forsooth) you are going to see her.*

*Excellentibus ingeniis citius defuerit ars quam civem regant quam quae hostem superent, L., II. 43, 10; great geniuses would be more likely to lack the skill to control the citizen than the skill to overcome the enemy.*

*Quid mē prohiberet Epicūrū esse, si probārem quae ille diceret ? C., Fin., I. 8, 27 ; what would prevent me from being an Epicurean if I approved what he said (says) ?*

*Quae vita fuisset Priamō si ab adultēcentiā scisset quōs eventūs senectūtis esset habitūrus ? C., Div., II. 9, 22 ; what sort of life would Priam have led if he had known, from early manhood, what were to be the closing scenes of his old age ?*

REMARKS.—1. Of course, when the Pf. Subjv. represents an Historical Tense, it takes the historical Sequence :

*Magna culpa Pelopis qui nōn docuerit filium quātenus esset quidque cūrandum, C., Tusc., I. 44, 107 ; greatly to blame is Pelops for not having taught his son how far each thing was to be cared for.*

518. *Sequence of Tenses after an Infinitive or Participle.*  
—When a clause depends on an Infinitive or Participle, Gerund or Supine, the sequence is Historical, if either the Finite verb is Past or the dependent verb represents a Past ; otherwise the sequence is that of the Primary tenses.

Dicit sē interrogāre (original interrogō), <i>He says that he is asking,</i>	{	quid agās,	<i>what you are doing.</i>
		quid egeris,	<i>what you have done.</i>
		quid scīturus sis,	<i>what you are going to do (will do).</i>

Dicit sē interrogāsse (original interrogāvī), <i>He says that he asked,</i>	{	quid agerēs,	<i>what you were doing.</i>
		quid egiēs,	<i>what you had done.</i>
		quid scīturus esēs,	<i>what you were going to do (would do).</i>

Mihī interroganti, <i>when I ask him,</i> (literally : <i>to me asking</i> ),	{	quid agat,	<i>what he is doing,</i>	{	nōn re-
		quid egerit,	<i>what he has done,</i>		spondet,
		quid scīturus sit,	<i>what he is going to do (will do),</i>		he gives no an- swer.

Mihī interroganti, <i>when I asked him,</i> (literally : <i>to me asking</i> ),	{	quid ageret,	<i>what he was doing,</i>	{	nōn re-
		quid egiasset,	<i>what he had done,</i>		spondit,
		quid scīturus esset,	<i>what he was going to do,</i>		he gave no an- swer.

Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait bēstiolās quāsdam nō scī quae  
tūm diem vivant, C., *Tusc.*, I. 39, 94 (650).

Satis mihi multa verba fēcisse videor quārē esset hōc bellum neces-  
sārium, C., *Imp.*, 10, 27; *I think I have said enough (to show) why  
this war is necessary.*

Apellēs pictōrēs eūs peccāre dicēbat quī nōn sentirent quid esset  
satis, C., *Or.*, 22, 73; *Apelles used to say that those painters blundered  
who did not perceive what was (is) enough.*

Miserunt Delphōs cōsultum quid facerent, NEP., II. 2, 6; *they  
sent to Delphi to ask the oracle what they should do.* See 265.

**519. Original Subjunctives in Dependence.**—The Poten-  
tial of the Present or Future after a Past tense goes into  
the Past; the same is true of Deliberative Questions (465).  
On the other hand, the Potential of the Past must be re-  
tained even after a Present tense (467). See also 597, R. 4.

Videō causās esse permultās quae Titum Rōscium impellerent,  
C., *Rosc. Am.*, 33, 92; *I see that there are very many causes which  
might have impelled Titus Roscius.*

Quaerō & tū cūr Cornēlium nōn dēfenderem, C., *Vat.*, 2, 5; *I  
inquire of you, why I was not to defend Cornelius!*

#### USE OF THE REFLEXIVE IN SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

**520.** In subordinate clauses, the Reflexive is used with  
reference either to the subject of the principal, or to the  
subject of the subordinate, clause; and sometimes first to  
the one and then to the other.

**521.** The Reflexive is used of the principal subject when  
reference is made to the thought or will of that subject;  
hence, in Infinitive Sentences, in Indirect Questions, in  
Sentences of Design, and in Sentences which partake of  
the Oblique Relation.

Sentit animus sē vi suā, nōn aliēnā movērī, C., *Tusc.*, I. 23, 55; *the  
mind feels that it moves by its own force, (and) not by that of another.*

Pompēius & mē petivit ut eōcum et apud sē essem cottidīs, Cf. C., *Att.*,  
v. 6, 1; *Pompey asked me to be with him, and at his house, daily.*

Paetus omnēs librōs quōs frāter suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit, C., *Att.*,  
II. 1, 12; *Paetus presented to me all the books (as he said) that his  
brother had left (quōs frāter eius reliquerat, would be the narrator's  
statement).*



REMARKS.—1. Sentences of Tendency and Result have forms of *is*, when the subj. is not the same as that of the leading verb ; otherwise the Reflexive :

*Tarquinus sic Servium diligebat ut is eius vulgō habēretur filius*, C., *Rep.*, II. 21, 38 ; *Tarquin loved Servius so that he was commonly considered his son.*

But *Tanta opibus Etruria erat ut iam terris famā nōminis sui implēset*, L., I. 2, 5 ; *so great in means (= so powerful) was Etruria that she had already filled the land with the reputation of her name.*

2. The Reflexive may refer to the real agent, and not to the grammatical subj. of the principal clause. (309, 2.)

*À Caesare invitō sibi ut sim lēgātus*, C., *Att.*, II. 18, 3 ; *I am invited by Caesar (= Caesar invites me) to be lieutenant to him.*

Note the freer use of *suus* (309, 4). The other forms are employed chiefly in reflexive formulæ (309, 3), as *sē recipere*, *to withdraw*, etc.

*Rōmāni sui colligendi hostibus facultātem nōn relinquunt*, CAES., *B.G.*, III. 6, 1 ; *the Romans do not leave the enemy a chance to rally.*

3. The Reflexive is used in general sentences, as *one, one's self*, etc. (309, 1) : *Deforme est dē sē ipsum praedicāre*, C., *Off.*, I. 38, 137 ; *it is unseemly to be bragging about one's self.*

4. In Indic. relative sentences, which are mere circumlocutions, *is* is the rule.

*Socratēs inhonestam sibi credidit ōrātiōnem quam ei Lysias reō composuerat*, QUINT., II. 15, 30 ; *Socrates believed the speech which Lysias had composed for him when he was arraigned, dishonoring to him.*

#### Êius and Sui.

522. *Alexander moriēns anulum suum dederat Perdicae*, NEP., XVIII. 2, 1 ; *Alexander, [when] dying, had given his ring to Perdiccas.*

*Perdiccās accēperat eius anulum*, *Perdiccas had received his ring.*

*Quāre Alexander dēclārāverat sē rēgnum ei commendāsse*, *thereby, Alexander had declared that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

*Ex quō Perdiccās cōniscerat eum rēgnum sibi commendāsse*, *from this, Perdiccas had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

*Ex quō omnēs cōniscerant eum rēgnum ei commendāsse*, *from this, all had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.*

*Perdiccās pōstulāvit ut sē rēgem habērent cum Alexander anulum sibi dedisset*, *Perdiccas demanded that they should have him for king, as Alexander had given the ring to him.*

*Amicōi pōstulāverunt ut omnēs cum rēgem habērent cum Alexander anulum ei dedisset*, *(his) friends demanded that all should have him for king, as Alexander had given the ring to him.* (Lattmann and Müller.)

*Ita sē gesserat Perdiccās ut ei rēgnum ab Alexandrō commendārētur*, *Perdiccas had so behaved himself that the kingdom was intrusted to him by Alexander.*

## OBJECT SENTENCES.

**523.** Verbs of Doing, Perceiving, Conceiving, of Thinking and Saying, often take their object in the form of a sentence.

I. Object Sentences Introduced by **QUOD**.

(524) **525.** 1. **Quod**, *the fact that, the circumstance that, in that*, introduces explanatory clauses, after verbs of Adding and Dropping, and after verbs of Doing and Happening with an adverb.

**Adde hūc quod perferri litterae nullā condiōne potuerunt**, POLLIO (C., *Fam.*, x. 31, 4); *add to this the fact that letters could under no circumstances be got through.*

**Praeterea quod eam sibi domum dālegit**, C., *Cluent.*, 66, 188; *I pass over the fact that she chose that house for herself.*

**Bene facis quod mē adiuvās**, C., *Fin.*, III. 4, 16; *you do well (in) that you help me.*

**Accidit perincommodē quod eum nūquam vidisti**, C., *Att.*, I. 17, 2; *it happened very unfortunately that you saw him nowhere.*

REMARK.—With several of the above-mentioned verbs **ut** can be employed, as well as **quod** (**ut**, of the tendency—**quod**, of the fact):

**Ad Appi Claudi senectutem accēdēbat ut etiam caecus esset**, C., *Cat. M.*, 6, 16; *to the old age of Appius Claudius was further added his being blind*, or, **quod caecus erat**.

**Accēdit quod patrem plūs etiam quam ipse scit amō**, C., *Att.*, XIII. 21, 7; *besides, I love the father even more than he himself knows.*

2. **Quod**, *in that, as to the fact that, whereas*, introduces explanatory clauses after demonstratives (expressed or implied), independent of the leading verb.

**Mihī quidem videntur hominēs hūc rē māximē bēstis praestāre, quod loqui possunt**, C., *Inv.*, I. 4; *to me men seem to excel beasts most in this, that they have the power of speech.*

**Nīl habet infelix paupertās dūrius in sē quam quod (= id quod) ridiculōs hominēs facit**, JUV., III. 152; *unhappy poverty hath in itself nothing harder (to bear) than that it makes people ridiculous.*

3. The reigning mood is the Indicative. The Subjunctive is only used as in **Ōratiō Obliqua** (508, 3).

**Hūc tē superiōrem esse putābas quam Laelium quod tē civitās Pergamēna laudāret**, C., *Flac.*, 30, 74; *in this you thought that you were superior to Laelius, that the state of Pergamum praised you.*

REMARK.—Verbs of Emotion, such as Rejoicing, Sorrowing, *etc.*, take *quod* with the Indic. or Subjunctive. See Causal Sentences, 539.

## II. Object Sentences, with Accusative and Infinitive.

(526) 527. Active verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving (*verba sentiendi et declarandi*), and similar expressions, take the Accusative and Infinitive :

*Thalēs aquam dixit esse initium rerum*, C., *N.D.*, I. 10, 25 ; *Thales said that water was the first principle of things.*

*Medici causā morbi inventā cūratiōnem esse inventam putant*, C., *Tusc.*, III. 10, 28 ; *physicians think that, (when) the cause of disease (is) discovered, the method of treatment is discovered.*

*Volucrēs vidēmus fingere et cōstruere nidōs*, C., *Or.*, II. 6, 23 ; *we see that birds fashion and build nests.*

The sentence very often passes over into the Acc. and Inf. (Ū. O.) without any formal notice.

REMARKS.—(1, 2) 3. When the subj. of the Inf. is a personal or reflexive pronoun, that subj. may be omitted—chiefly with Fut. Infinitive.

*Refrāctūrōs carcerem minābantur*, L., VI. 17, 6 ; *they threatened to break open the jail.*

4. The simple Inf. is often used in English, where the Latin takes Acc. and Infinitive. This is especially true of verbs of Hoping and Promising.

*Sperō mē hōc adeptūrum esse*, *I hope to (that I shall) obtain this.*

*Prōmittēbat sē ventūrum esse*, *he promised to (that he would) come.*

5. In some authors Verbs of Perception and Representation take the Participle to express the actual condition of the object perceived or represented (536).

*Polyphēmum Homērus cum ariete conloquentem facit*, C., *Tusc.*, v. 39, 115 ; *Homer represents Polyphemus (as) talking with the ram.*

But the Inf. is the rule for the language, and must of course be used, when the Participle is lacking.

*Octāvium dolōre cōfici vidi*, C., *Fin.*, II. 28, 93 ; *I have seen Octavius (when he was) wearing out with anguish.*

## Nominative with Infinitive.

528. Passive verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving may be construed either personally or impersonally :

1. In the Simple tenses personal construction is preferred ; except *crēditur*, *it is believed.*

2. In the Compound tenses the impersonal construction is preferred.

Thus, instead of

*Trādunt Homērum caecum fuisse, they say that Homer was blind,*

we should have,

*Trāditur Homērus caecus fuisse, Homer is said to have been blind,*

or,

*Trāditum est Homērum caecum fuisse, C., Tusc., v. 39, 114 ; there is a tradition that Homer was blind.*

*Aristaeus inventor olei esse dicitur, C., Verr., iv. 57, 128 ; Aristaeus is said to be the inventor of oil.*

*Terenti fabellae putābantur à Laeliō scribi, C., Att., vii. 3, 10 ; Terence's plays were thought to be written by Laelius.*

But :

*Venerem Adōnidi nūpsisse prōditum est, C., N.D., iii. 23, 59 ; it is recorded that Venus married Adonis.*

*Philōnem existimandum est disertum fuisse, C., Or., i. 14, 62 ; we must suppose that Philo was eloquent.*

**Tenses of the Infinitive with Verba Sentienti et Dēclārā-**  
**randī.**

(529) **530.** After verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, and the like,

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action ;

The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action ;

The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

REMARK.—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English : *I have been studying, I had been studying.* Hence, the Impf. Indic. (*I was studying*) is represented in this dependent form by the Pf. Inf., because it is prior to the leading verb. See 510, R.

☞ In this table the Present is taken as the type of the Principal, the Imperfect as the type of the Historical, Tenses.

### 531.

#### Contemporaneous Action.

##### ACTIVE.

##### PASSIVE.

P. T. Dicit : t5 errāre,

*He says, that you are going wrong,*

t5 dēcipi,

*that you are (being) deceived (226, R.).*

H. T. Dīcēbat : t5 errāre,

*He was saying, that you were going wrong,*

t5 dēcipi,

*that you were (being) deceived.*

*Prior Action.*

P. T. <b>Dicit</b> : tē errāsse, He says, that you have gone wrong, that you went wrong, that you have been going wrong,	tē dōceptum esse, that you have been (are) deceived, that you were deceived (Hist. Pf.), (that people have been deceiving you).
--	--

H. T. <b>Dicēbat</b> : tē errāsse, He was saying, that you had gone wrong, that you went wrong, that you had been going wrong,	tē dōceptum esse, that you had been deceived, that you were deceived (Hist. Pf.), (that people had been deceiving you).
---	--

*Subsequent Action.*

P. T. <b>Dicit</b> : tē errātūrum esse, He says, that you (are about to go wrong), will (be) go(ing) wrong,	tē dōceptum iri, that you (are going to) will be de- ceived.
H. T. <b>Dicēbat</b> : tē errātūrum esse, He was saying, that you were about to (would) go wrong,	tē dōceptum iri, that you were going to (would) be deceived.

*Periphrastic Future.*

The following form (the *Periphrastic Future*) is necessary when the verb has no Sup. or Fut. participle. It is often formed from other verbs to intimate an interval, which cannot be expressed by other forms, and is more common in the 'passive than the Fut. Inf. pass. of the paradigm.

P. T. <b>Dicit</b> : fore (futūrum esse) ut er- rēs (metuēs), fore (futūrum esse) ut errā- veris (rare),	fore ut dōcipiāris (metuāris), fore ut dōceptus sis (rare), usually dōceptum fore (not futūrum esse).
H. T. <b>Dicēbat</b> : fore (futūrum esse) ut errārēs (metuerēs), errāssēs (rare),	fore ut dōciperāris (metuerāris), dōceptum fore (rarely : fore ut dō- ceptus essēs).

**Accusative and Infinitive with Verbs of Will and Desire.**

**532.** Verbs of Will and Desire take a Dependent Accusative and Infinitive.

**Si vis mē flere**, dolendum est primum ipsi tibi, H., A.P., 102 ; *if you wish me to weep, you must first feel the pang yourself.*

**Utrum Milo'nis corporis an Pythagorae tibi mēllis virēs ingenii dari?** C., Cat.M., 10, 33 ; *which (whether) would you rather have given to you, Milo's strength of body or Pythagoras' strength of mind?*

REMARKS.—(1) 2. When the subj. of the Inf. is the same as the subj. of the leading verb, the subj. of the Inf. is usually not expressed :

*Et iam mallet equōs numquam tetigisse paternōs*, Ov., *M.*, II. 182 ; and now he could have wished rather never to have (that he had never) touched his father's horses.

3. On the construction of this class of verbs with *ut*, etc., see 546.

#### Accusative and Infinitive with Verbs of Emotion.

533. Verbs of Emotion take a dependent Accusative and Infinitive, inasmuch as these verbs may be considered as verbs of Saying and Thinking. (542.)

*Salvum tē advenisse gaudeō*, TER., *Ph.*, 286 ; *I rejoice that you should have arrived safe (to think that you have arrived safe, at your arriving safe)*. But *quod salvus advēnistī*, *that you have arrived safe* ; *quod salvus advēneris*, *that (as you say) you have arrived safe*.

*Inferiōrēs nōn dolēre dēbent sē ā suis dignitatē superārī*, C., *Lael.*, 20, 71 ; *inferiors ought not to consider it a grievance that they are surpassed in rank by their own (friends)*.

#### Accusative and Infinitive in Exclamations.

534. The Accusative with the Infinitive is used in Exclamations and Exclamatory Questions as the object of an unexpressed thought or feeling.

*Hem, mea lūx, tē nunc, mea Terentia, sic vexārī*, C., *Fam.*, XIV. 2, 2 ; *ah, light of my life, for you to be so harassed now, Terentia dear*.

*Hominemne Rōmānum tam Græcē loquī* ? PLIN., *Ep.*, IV. 3, 5 ; *a Roman speak such good Greek ? (To think that a Roman should speak such good Greek)*.

REMARKS.—1. Different is *quod*, which gives the ground.

*Ei mihi quod nullis amor est sãnābilis herbis*, Ov., *M.*, I. 523 ; *woe's me that (in that, because) love is not to be cured by any herbs*.

2. On *ut*, with the Subjv. in a similar sense, see 558.

#### Accusative and Infinitive as a Subject.

535. The Accusative with the Infinitive may be treated as the Subject of a sentence. The Predicate is a substantive or neuter adjective, an impersonal verb or abstract phrase.

*Est inusitātum rēgem reum capitis esse*, C., *Dei.*, I. 1 ; *it is an extraordinary thing that a king should (for a king to) be tried for his life*.

**Facinus est vincire civem Rōmānum**, C., *Verr.*, v. 66, 170 ; *it is an outrage to put a Roman citizen in chains.*

**Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab imperitis teneātur**, SEN., *E.M.*, 94, 38 ; *it is proper that a law should be brief (a law ought to be brief), that it may the more easily be grasped by the uneducated.*

REMARKS.—(1) 2. **Oportet**, *it is proper*, is always, and **necesse est**, *must needs*, is usually followed by the Subjunctive. So, also, many other phrases with **ut**. (See 553, 4 ; 557.)

**Necesse** also takes the Dat. of the Person :

**Ut culpent alii, tibi mē laudāre necesse est**, OV., *Her.*, 12, 131 ; *let others blame, but you must give me praise.*

3. When the indirect obj. of the leading verb is the same as the subj. of the Inf. the predicate of the subj. is usually put in the same case as the indirect object : in standard prose chiefly with **licet**, *it is left (free), permitted.*

**Licuit esse** ὁτιοῦ Themistocli, C., *Tusc.*, I. 15, 33 ; *Themistocles was free to live a life of leisure.*

The Acc. is the rule if the Dat. is not expressed.

**Solus erō quoniam nōn licet esse tuum**, PROP., II. 9, 46 ; *I shall be alone since I may not be thine.*

#### Object Sentences Represented by the Participlē.

**536.** The Participle is used after verbs of Perception and Representation, to express the actual condition of the object of perception or representation.

**Catōnem vidī in bibliothecā sedentem multis circumfūsum libris**, C., *Fin.*, III. 2, 7 ; *I saw Cato sitting in the library with an ocean of books about him.*

**Prōdiga nōn sentit pereuntem fēmīna cōsum**, JUV., VI. 362 ; *the lavish woman does not perceive (how) the income (is) dwindling.*

**Saepe illam audīvī furtivā vōce loquentem**, CAT., LXVII. 41 ; *I have often heard her talking in a stealthy (in an under-) tone.*

**537.** The Perfect Participle Passive is used after verbs of Causation and Desire, to denote that entire fulfilment is demanded or desired.

**Si quī voluptatibus dūcuntur missōs faciant honōrēs**, C., *Sest.*, 66, 138 ; *if any are led captive by sensual pleasures, let them dismiss honors (at once and forever).*

**Hic mandēs si quid rēctē cūrātum vellis**, TER., *Ad.*, 372 ; *you must intrust to him whatever you want properly attended to.*

## CAUSAL SENTENCES.

Causal Sentences with QUOD, QUIA, QUONIAM, and QUANDŌ.

(538-9) 540. Causal sentences with *quod*, *quia*, *because*, *quoniam*, *quandŏ*, *since*, take the Indicative in Direct Discourse.

*Torquātus filium suum quod is contrā imperium in hostem pūgnāverat necārī iussit*, S., C., 52, 30; *Torquatus bade his son be put to death because he had fought against the enemy contrary to order(s) [quod pūgnāsset = because, as Torquatus said or thought]*.

*Quia nātūra mutārī nōn potest ideo vērāe amicitiae sempiternae sunt*, C., *Lael.*, 9, 32; *because nature cannot change, therefore true friendships are everlasting*.

*Solus erō quoniam nōn licet esse tuum*, PROP., II. 9, 46; *I shall be alone since I may not be thine*.

*Voluptās sēmōvenda est quandŏ ad mīōra quaedam nātī sumus*, Cf. C., *Fin.*, v. 8, 21; *pleasure is to be put aside because we are born for greater things*.

*Sequitur ut liberātōres sint, quandŏquidem tertium nihil potest esse*, C., *Ph.*, II. 13, 31; *it follows that they are liberators, since there can be no third alternative*.

541. Causal sentences with *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandŏ* take the Subjunctive in Oblique Discourse (Partial or Total).

*Noctū ambulābat in publicō Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nōn posset*, C., *Tusc.*, IV. 19, 44; *Themistocles used to walk about in public at night because (as he said) he could not get to sleep*.

*Nē compōne comās quia sis ventūrus ad illam*, OV., *Rem. Am.*, 679; *do not arrange (your) locks, because "you are going to see her."*

*Quoniam ipse prō sē dicere nōn posset, verba fēcit frāter eius Stēsagorās*, NEP., I. 7, 5; *"as [Miltiades] could not speak for himself," his brother, Stesagoras, made a speech*. (Indirect quotation from the speech of Stesagoras.)

REMARK.—A rejected reason (if not a fact) is introduced by *nōn quod* (rarely *quia*) with the Subjv. (as being the false suggestion of another person). But when it is itself a fact the Indicative may be used. The corresponding affirmative is given by *sed quia* (less often *quod*) with the Indicative. *Nōn quā* sometimes occurs for *nōn quod nōn*.

Subjunctive :

*Pugilēs in iactandis caestibus ingemiscunt, nōn quod doleant, sed quia profundendā vōce omne corpus intenditur venitque plāga vehementior*, C., *Tusc.*, II. 23, 56; *boxers in plying the caestus heave groans, not that (as you might suppose) they are in pain, but because in giving full vent to the voice all the body is put to the stretch and the blow comes with a greater rush*.



**Māiores nostri in dominum dē servō quærī nōluerunt; nōn quā posset verum inveniri, sed quia vidēbatur indignum esse, C., Mil., 22, 59; our ancestors would not allow a slave to be questioned by torture against his master, not because (not as though they thought) the truth could not be got at, but because such a course seemed degrading.**

Indicative :

**Sum nōn dicam miser, sed certē exercitus, nōn quia multis dēbeō sed quia saepe concurrunt aliquōrum bene dē mē meritōrum inter ipsōs contentiōnēs, C., Planc., 32, 78; I am, I will not say, wretched, but certainly worried, not because I am in debt to many (though this is true), but because the rival claims of some who have deserved well of me often conflict.**

#### QUOD with Verbs of Emotion.

**542. Quod** is used to give the ground of Emotions and Expressions of Emotion, such as verbs of Joy, Sorrow, Surprise, Satisfaction and Anger, Praise and Blame, Thanks and Complaint.

The rule for the Mood has been given already : 540, 541.

Indicative :

**Gaudē quod spectant oculi tē mille loquentem, H., Ep., I. 6, 19; rejoice that a thousand eyes are gazing at you (while you are) speaking.**

**Dolet mihi quod tū nunc stemachāris, C., ad Br., I. 17, 6; it pains me that you are angry now.**

**Tibi grātiās agō, quod mē omni molestiā liberasti, C., Fam., XIII. 62; I thank you, that you freed me from all annoyance.**

Subjunctive :

**Gaudet miles quod vicerit hostem, Ov., Tr., II. 49; the soldier rejoices at having conquered the enemy.**

**Laudat Africānum Panaetius quod fuerit abstinēns, C., Off., II. 22, 76; Panaetius praises Africanus for having been abstinent.**

**Nēmō est oratōrem quod Latīnē loqueretur admirātus, C., Or., III. 14, 52; no one (ever) admired an orator for speaking (good) Latin.**

**Socratēs accusātus est quod corrumpere iuventutem, QUINT., IV. 4, 5; Socrates was accused of corrupting youth.**

REMARK.—This class of verbs may be construed with the Acc. and Infinitive; see 533. But in expressions of Praise and Blame, Thanks and Complaint, **quod** is more common.

**Grātulor ingenium nōn latuisse tuum, Ov., Tr., I. 9, 54; I congratulate (you) that your genius has not lain hidden.**

**Isocratēs queritur plūs honoris corporum quam animōrum virtūtibus dari, QUINT., III. 8, 9; Isocrates complains that more honor is paid to the virtues of the body than to those of the mind.**

## SENTENCES OF DESIGN AND TENDENCY.

**543.** 1. Sentences of Design are commonly called Final Sentences. Sentences of Tendency are commonly called Consecutive Sentences. Both contemplate the end—the one, as an aim ; the other, as a consequence.

2. They are alike in having the Subjunctive and the particle *ut* (*how, that*), a relative conjunction.

3. They differ in the Tenses employed. The Final Sentence, as a rule, takes only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. Consecutive Sentences may take also Perfect and Pluperfect.

4. They differ in the kind of Subjunctive employed. The Final Sentence takes the Optative. The Consecutive Sentence takes the Potential. Hence the difference in the Negative.

<i>Final</i> : <i>nē</i> ( <i>ut nē</i> ),	<i>Consecutive</i> : <i>ut nōn</i> , <i>that not</i> .
<i>nē quis</i> ,	<i>ut nēmō</i> , <i>that no one</i> .
<i>nē ullus</i> ,	<i>ut nullus</i> , <i>that no</i> .
<i>nē umquam</i> , ( <i>nē quandō</i> ),	<i>ut numquam</i> , <i>that never</i> .
<i>nē usquam</i> , ( <i>nē ubi</i> ),	<i>ut nusquam</i> , <i>that nowhere</i> .
<i>nē aut—aut</i> , ( <i>ut nēve—nēve</i> ),	<i>ut neque—neque</i> , <i>that neither—nor</i> .

## FINAL SENTENCES.

**544.** Final sentences are divided into two classes :

I. Final Sentences in which the Design is expressed by the particle ; Pure Final Sentences (Sentences of Design).

This form may be translated by (*in order*) *to* ; sometimes by *that may, that might, that*, with the Subjunctive and the like.

*Oportet esse, ut vivās, nōn vivere ut edās*, [C.], *ad Her.*, iv. 28, 39 ; *you must eat in order to live, not live in order to eat*.

II. Final Sentences in which the Design lies in the leading verb (*verba studii et voluntātis*, verbs of Will and Desire) ; Complementary Final Sentences.

This form is often rendered by *to*, never by *in order to*, sometimes by *that* and the Subjunctive, or some equivalent.

*Volō uti mihi respondeās*, C., *Vat.*, 7, 17 ; *I wish you to answer me*.

Of the same nature, but partly Final and partly Consecutive in their sequence, are :

Verbs of Hindering.

Peculiar in their sequence are :

### III. Verbs of Fearing.

REMARK.—The general sense of a Final Sentence may also be expressed :

- (1) By the Relative *qui* with the Subjunctive. (630.)
- (2) By the Genitive of Gerund or Gerundive, with (seldom without) *causā* or *gratiā*. (428, R. 2.)
- (3) By *ad* with Gerund and Gerundive. (432.)
- (4) By the Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive. (429.)
- (5) By the Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive after verbs of Giving, etc. (430.)
- (6) By the Accusative Supine after verbs of Motion. (435.)
- (7) By the Future Participle Active (post-Ciceronian). (438, R. 2.)
- (8) By the Infinitive (poetic and rare). (421, R. 1.)

#### I. Pure Final Sentences.

545. Pure Final Sentences are introduced by :

1. *Ut* (*uti*), (*how*) *that*, and other relative pronouns and adverbs. (630.) Negative : *ut nō*.

2. *Quō* = *ut eō*, *that thereby* ; with comparatives, *that the . . .* — :

3. *Nō*, *that not, lest*, continued by *nēve*, *neu*. (444.)

*Ut amāris, amābilis estō*, Ov., A.A., II. 107 ; *that you may be loved (to make yourself loved, in order to be loved), be lovable*.

*Athēniensēs creant decem praetōrēs qui exercitui praesentent*, NEP., I. 4, 4 ; *the Athenians make ten generals to command their army*.

*Laelius veniebat ad cēnam ut satiaŕet dēsideria nātūrae*, C., Fin., II. 8, 25 ; *Laelius used to go to table to satisfy the cravings of nature*.

*Lēgem brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab imperitis teneātur*, SEN., E.M., 94, 38 ; *a law ought to be brief that it may the more easily be grasped by the uneducated*.

*Gallinae pennīs fovēt pullōs, nō frigore laedantur*, Cf. C., N.D., II. 52, 129 ; *hens keep (their) chickens warm with (their) wings, that they may not be (to keep them from being) hurt by the cold*.

*Dionysius, nō collum tōnsōri committeret, tendere filiās suās docuit*, C., Tusc., V. 20, 58 ; *Dionysius, to keep from trusting his neck to a barber, taught his daughters to shave*.

REMARKS.—(1) 2. *Nōn* is used after *ut* when a particular word is negated :

*Cōfer tē ad Mānlium, ut nōn sīectus ad aliēnōs sed invitātus ad tuōs isse videāris*, C., *Cat.*, I. 9, 23 ; *betake yourself to Manlius, that you may seem to have gone not as an outcast to strangers but as an invited guest to your own (friends).*

## II. Complementary Final Sentences.

### A. Verbs of Will and Desire.

546. Complementary Final Sentences follow verbs of Willing and Wishing, of Warning and Beseeching, of Urging and Demanding, of Resolving and Endeavoring (*verba studii et voluntātis*).

#### 1. Positive : *ut*.

*Volō uti mihi respondeās*, C., *Vat.*, 7, 17 ; *I wish you to answer me.*

*Phaethōn optāvit ut in currum patris tollerētur*, C., *Off.*, III. 25, 94 ; *Phaethon desired to be lifted up into his father's chariot.*

*Ubi Caesarē ōrant, ut sibi parcat*, CAES., *B.G.*, VI. 9, 7 ; *the Ubi beg Caesar to spare them.*

*Exigis ut Priamus nātōrum fūnere lūdat*, Ov., *Tr.*, v. 12, 7 ; *you exact that Priam sport at (his) sons' funeral.*

So also any verb or phrase used as a verb of Willing or Demanding.

*Pythia respondit ut moenibus lignis sē mūnīrent*, NEP., II. 2, 6 ; *the Pythia answered that they must defend themselves with walls of wood.*

#### 2. Negative : *nē, ut nē* ; continued by *nēve (neu)*, and *not*.

*Caesar suis imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tālum in hostēs rēicerent*, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 46, 2 ; *Caesar gave orders to his (men) not to throw back any missile at all at the enemy.*

*Pompēius suis praedixerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent nēve sē locō movērent*, CAES., *B.C.*, III. 92, 1 ; *Pompey had told his men beforehand to receive Caesar's charge and not to move from their position.*

REMARKS.—1. When verbs of Willing and Wishing are used as verbs of Saying and Thinking, Knowing and Showing, the Inf. must be used. The English translation is *that*, and the Indic. : *volō, I will have it (maintain)*, *moneō, I remark*, *persuadeō, I convince*, *dēcernō, I decide*, *cōgō, I conclude*.

*Moneō artem sine adsiduitate dicendī nōn multum iuvāre*, Cf. [C.], *ad Her.*, I. 1, 1 ; *I remark that art without constant practice in speaking is of little avail.*

Vix cuiquam persuasēbātur Graeci omni cōsūtū Rōmānō, L., XXXIII. 32, 8; *scarce any one could be persuaded (made to believe) that the Romans would retire from all Greece.*

2. When the idea of Wishing is emphatic, the simple Subjv., without *ut*, is employed.

Māiō tē sapiēs hostis metuat quam stultī civēs laudent, L., XXII. 39, 20; *I had rather a wise enemy should fear you than foolish citizens should praise you.*

Vellem mē ad cēnam invitāssēs, C., *Fam.*, XII. 4, 1; *would that you had invited me to your dinner-party!*

3. Some of these verbs have also the Infinitive; so regularly *iubeō*, *I bid*, and *vetō*, *I forbid* (423, R. 6).

#### B. Verbs of Hindering.

(547) 548. Verbs and phrases signifying to Prevent, to Forbid, to Refuse, and to Beware, may take *nō* with the Subjunctive, if they are not negated.

Impedior *nō* plūra dicam, C., *Sull.*, 33, 92; *I am hindered from saying more (I am hindered that I should say no more).*

"Who did hinder you that ye should not obey the truth?" GAL., V. 7.

Servitūs mea mihi interdixit *nō* quid mirer meum malum, PL., *Pers.*, 621; *my slavery has forbidden me to marvel aught at ill of mine.*

Histiaeus *nō* rēs cōficeretur obstitit, NEP., I. 3, 5; *Histiaeus opposed the thing's being done.*

Rēgulus sententiam *nō* diceret recūsavit, C., *Off.*, III. 27, 100; *Regulus refused to pronounce an opinion.*

REMARK.—*Cavēre*, followed by *ut*, means *to be sure to*; by *nō* or *ut nō*, *to see to it that not*; by *nō*, *to take precautions against*. When *nō* is omitted, *cavē*, *cavētō*, with the Subjv. form circumlocutions for the negative Imperative (271, 2). So with *vidē ut*, *nō*.

*Vidē nō* (*nō nōn*), *see to it lest*, is often used as a polite formula for *dubitō an* (457, 2), *I am inclined to think*. *Crēdere omnia vidē nō nōn sit necesse*, C., *Div.*, II. 13, 31.

549. Verbs of Preventing and Refusing may take *quōminus* (= *ut eō minus*), *that thereby the less*, with the Subjunctive.

Aetās nōn impedit quōminus agrī colendī studia teneāmus, C., *Cat. M.*, 17, 60; *age does not hinder our retaining interest in agriculture.*

Quid obstat quōminus Deus sit beātus? C., *N. D.*, I. 34, 95; *what is in the way of God's being happy?*

Caesar cōgnōvit per Afrānium stāre quōminus proeliō dimicratur, CAES., *B. C.*, I. 41, 3; *Caesar found that it was Afranius's fault that there was no decisive fight (stat, there is a stand-still).*

## III. Verbs of Fearing.

**550. 1.** Verbs of Fearing, and expressions that involve Fear, take the Present and Perfect, Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

The Present Subjunctive represents the Present and Future Indicative. The Perfect Subjunctive regularly represents the Perfect Indicative.

Present and Perfect Subjunctive become Imperfect and Pluperfect after a Past Tense.

**2.** With verbs of Fearing :

**Nē, lest,** shows that the negative is wished and the positive feared ;

**Ut (nē nōn)** shows that the positive is wished and the negative feared :

**Nē nōn** is used regularly after the negative, or an interrogative with negative force.

**Vereor nē hostis veniat,** *I fear lest the enemy come, that he is coming, that he will come. (I wish he may not come.)*

**Vereor nē hostis vēnerit,** *I fear lest the enemy have come, that (it will turn out that) he has come.*

**Vereor ut amicus veniat,** *I fear (how my friend can come) lest my friend come not, that he is not coming, will not come. (I wish he may come.)*

**Vereor ut amicus vēnerit,** *I fear lest my friend have not come, that he has not come.*

**Nōn vereor nē amicus nōn veniat,** *I do not fear that my friend is not coming, will not come.*

**Nōn vereor nē amicus nōn vēnerit,** *I do not fear that my friend has not come.*

**Timeō nē tibi nihil praeter lacrimās queam reddere,** *C., Planc., 42, 101 ; I am afraid that I can give you nothing in return save tears.*

**Timeō ut sustineās labōrēs,** *C., Fam., XIV. 2, 3 ; I fear that you will not hold out under your toils.*

**Nōn vereor nē tua virtūs opiniōni hominum nōn respondeat,** *Cf. C., Fam., II. 5, 2 ; I do not fear that your virtue will not answer to (come up to) public expectation.*

**Metuō nē id cōsiliū cōperimus quod nōn facile explicāre possumus,** *C., Fam., XIV. 12 ; I fear that we have formed a plan that we cannot readily explain.*

## CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES.

*Sentences of Tendency and Result.*

551. 1. Consecutive Sentences are those sentences which show the Consequence or Tendency of Actions.

2. Consecutive Sentences are divided into two classes :

I. Consecutive Sentences in which the Tendency is expressed by the Particle : Pure Consecutive Sentences.

II. Consecutive Sentences in which the Tendency lies in the leading Verb : (a) after verbs of Effecting ; (b) after negative verbs of Preventing, Doubt, and Uncertainty ; (c) after words and phrases requiring expansion.

## I. Pure Consecutive Sentences.

552. Pure Consecutive Sentences are introduced by

1. **Ut** (**utī**), *that, so that*, and other relative pronouns and adverbs (631).

2. **Ut—nōn**, *that, so that, as—not*, continued by **neque, nec** (543, 4).

3. **Quin** = **ut nōn**, after a negative sentence (555).

**Nōn** is es ut tē pudor umquam ā turpitudine revocārit, C., *Cat.*, I. 9, 22 ; *you are not the man for shame ever to have recalled you (= ever to have been recalled by shame) from baseness.*

**Tanta** vis probitātis est, ut eam in hoste etiam diligāmus, C., *Lael.*, 9, 29 ; *so great is the virtue of uprightness, that we love it even in an enemy.*

**Nēmō** adeō ferus est ut nōn mīttēscere possit, H., *Ep.*, I. 1, 39 ; *no one is so savage that he cannot (be made to) soften.*

**Nīl** tān difficile est quin quærēndō invēstīgārī possit, TER., *Heaut.*, 675 ; *naught is so hard but it can (= that it cannot) be tracked out by search.*

REMARKS.—1. Notice especially the impersonal **tantum abest**, **āfuit** (rarely **aberat**)—**ut—ut**.

**Tantum** abest ab eō ut malum mors sit ut verear nō hominī sit nihil bonum aliud, C., *Tusc.*, I. 31, 76 ; *so far is it from death (= so far is death from) being an evil that I fear man has no other blessing.*

The personal construction is extremely rare.

**Agēsilaus** tantum āfuit ab insolentiā glōriæ ut commiserātus sit fortūnam Græciæ, NEP., XVII. 5, 2 ; *Agēsilaus was so far from the insolence of glory that he pitied the (mis)fortune of Greece.*

The second *ut* may be omitted, and a declarative sentence follow independently; *Tantum aberat ut binde libros scriberent: vix singulas confecerunt*, C., *Att.*, XIII. 21, 5; *so far were they from writing two copies of each book, they with difficulty finished up one.*

2. *Dignus*, *worthy*, *indignus*, *unworthy*, *aptus*, *idoneus*, *fit*, take a consecutive sentence with *qui*. Occasionally *dignus* and *indignus* take *ut*.

*Qui modesto paret, videtur qui aliquando imperet dignus esse*, C., *Leg.*, III. 2, 5; *he who obeys duly seems to be worthy to command some day.*

3. *Ita* (and *sic*) are sometimes used to give a restriction or a condition (= *provided, on condition*); in this case the negative is *ne*.

*Ita probanda est mansuetudo ut adhibeatur rei publicae causa severitas*, C., *Off.*, I. 25, 88; *mildness is to be approved, so that (provided that) strictness be used for the sake of the commonwealth.*

*Ita tu istaec tua misceto ne me admisceas*, TER., *Heaut.*, 783; *mix up your mixings so you mix me not withal.*

4. *Ut non* is often = *without*, and the English verbal in *-ing*:

*Mallet existimari bonus vir ut non sit quam esse ut non putetur*, C., *Fin.*, II. 22, 71; *he will certainly prefer being thought a good man without being such, to being (a good man) without being believed (to be such).*

## II. Complementary Consecutive Sentences.

### A. Verbs of Effecting.

553. Verbs of Effecting belong partly to the Consecutive, partly to the Final Sentence. The negative is *non* or *ne*; the sequence varies between final and consecutive.

Such verbs are:

1. Verbs of Causation: *facere*, *efficere*, *perficere*, *I make, effect, achieve*; *assequi*, *consequi*, *I attain, accomplish*, and many others. (Sequence Final.)

*Efficiam ut intellegatis*, C., *Cluent.*, 3, 7; *I will cause you to understand.*

*Sed perforce, ut Crassus haec quae coartavit nobis explicet*, C., *Or.*, I. 35, 163; *but bring it about that Crassus (make Crassus) unfold to us what he has condensed.*

Negatives:

*Potestis efficere ut male moriar, ut non moriar non potestis*, PLIN., *Ep.*, III. 16, 11; *you may make me die a hard death, keep me from dying you cannot.*

*Efficiam posthac ne quemquam voce lacescas*, V., *Ec.*, 3, 51; *I will bring it about that you challenge no one hereafter in song.*



**Facere ut** is often little more than a periphrasis ; especially in the forms **fac ut** and **faxō, faxit** (both peculiar to Comedy).

**Fortūna vestra facit ut iras meas temperem**, L., XXXVI. 35, 3; *your fortune causes that I (makes me) restrain my anger (put me to my anger).*

**Invitus** (325, R. 6) **faciō ut recorder ruinas rei publicae**, C., *Vat.*, 9, 21; (it is) *against my will that I (am doing so as to) recall the ruined condition of the commonwealth.*

## 2. Verbs of Compelling and Permitting (Sequence Final):

**Tenēmus memoriā Catulum esse coactum ut vitā sē ipse privāret**, C., *Or.*, III. 3, 9; *we remember that Catulus was forced to take his own life.*

**Illud natura nōn patitur, ut aliorum spoliis nostras opes augeamus**, C., *Off.*, III. 5, 22; *nature does not allow us to increase our wealth by the spoils of others.*

## 3. Passive verbs of Effecting, and their equivalents, namely, many Impersonal Verbs of Happening and Following (Sequence Consecutive, but see 513, R.).

Such verbs are **conficitur, efficitur, fit, accidit, contingit, evenit, it happens, nūq̄ venit, it occurs, sequitur, it follows**, and many others. So also **est, it is the case.**

**Ex quō efficitur, nōn ut voluptās nō** (the design of the arguer) **sit voluptās, sed ut voluptās nōn** (the result of the argument) **sit summum bonum**, C., *Fin.*, II. 8, 24; *from which it results, not that pleasure is not pleasure, but that pleasure is not the supreme good.*

**Potest fieri ut** is unde tē audisse dicis Irātus dixerit, C., *Or.*, II. 70, 285; (it) *may be (that) he from whom you say you heard (it) said it in anger.*

**Persaepe evenit ut utilitās cum honestāte certet**, C., *Part. Or.*, 25, 89; *it very often (so) happens that profit is at variance with honor.*

## 4. Very many impersonal verbs and combinations of neuter adjectives with **est**, after the analogy of the impersonals just mentioned (Sequence Consecutive).

The Infinitive is much more common after neuter adjectives.

**Ad Appi Claudī senectūtem accēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset**, C., *Cat. M.*, 6, 16; *to the old age of Appius Claudius was further added his being blind.*

**Ei ne integrum quidem erat ut ad iustitiam remigrāret**, C., *Tusc.*, v. 21, 62; *for him it was not even an open question to go back to justice.*

REMARK.—**Necesse est, it is necessary**, generally, and **oportet, it behooves**, always omit **ut**:

**Leuctrica pugna immortalis sit necesse est**, NEP., XV. 10, 2; *the battle of Leuctra must needs be immortal.*

**Mecum moriāris oportet**, PROP., II. 8, 25; *you must die with me.*

B. *Verbs of Hindering.*

(554) **555. Quin** is used when Verbs and Phrases of Preventing, Omitting, Refraining, Refusing, and Delaying, Doubt, and Uncertainty, are negated or questioned.

## 1. Verbs of Preventing and the like (Sequence Final).

**Vix nunc obsistitur illis quin laenient mundum**, OV., *M.*, I. 58 ; *they are now hardly to be kept (that they should not rend) from rending the universe.*

**Antiochus nōn sē tenuit quin contrā suum doctōrem librum ederet**, C., *Ac.*, II. 4, 12 ; *Antiochus did not refrain from publishing a book against his teacher.*

## 2. Verbs of Doubt and Uncertainty (Sequence of the Interrogative Sentence).

**Nōn dubium est quin uxōrem nōlit filius**, TER., *And.*, 172 ; *there is no doubt that (my) son does not want a wife.*

**Quis dubitet (= nēmō dubitet) quin in virtūte divitiæ sint** ? C., *Parad.*, VI. 2, 48 ; *who can doubt that true wealth consists in virtue ?*

**Nōn dubitārī debet quin fuerint ante Homērum poētae**, C., *Br.*, 18, 71 ; *it is not to be doubted that there were poets before Homer.*

REMARKS.—1. Of course **dubitō** and **nōn dubitō** may have the ordinary interrogative constructions (467). On **dubitō** an, see 457, 2.

2. **Nōn dubitō**, with the Inf., usually means *I do not hesitate to :*

**Nōn dubitem dicere omnēs sapientēs semper esse beātōs**, C., *Fin.*, v. 32, 95 ; *I should not hesitate to say that all wise men are always happy.*

**556. Quin**, equivalent to **ut nōn**, may be used after any negative sentence (Sequence Consecutive).

Here it may often be translated “*without.*”

**Nūl tam difficile est quin quaerendō invēstīgārī possit**, TER., *Heaut.*, 675 ; *naught is so hard but it can be tracked out by search.*

**Nūllum adhūc intermisi diem quin aliquid ad tē litterarū darem**, C., *Att.*, VII. 15, 1 ; *I have thus far not allowed a day to pass but I dropped you (without dropping you) something of a letter (a line or two).*

REMARK.—Note the combination (*facere*) **nōn possum quin**, *I cannot but*, and similar combinations, such as **nōn abest quin**, etc.

**Nōn possum quin exclāmem**, PL., *Trin.*, 705 ; *I cannot but (I must) cry out.*

**Paulum fuit quin Fabius Vārum interficeret**, CAES., *B.C.*, II. 35, 2 ; *there was little lacking but Fabius (had) killed Varus (= Fabius came near killing Varus).*

## Explanatory Ut.

557. A Consecutive Sentence with *ut* is often used to give the contents or character of a preceding substantive, adjective, or pronoun.

*An quiquamvis unus homini se ut cruciet ?* TER., *Heaut.*, 81 ; *of what good is it to any man to torture himself ?*

*Est miserorum ut malevolentis sint atque invident bonis*, PL., *Capt.*, 583 ; *the wretched have a way of being ill-natured and envying the well-to-do.*

*Nec meum ad te ut mittam gratias*, PL., *Asin.*, 190 ; *nor is it my style to let her go to you as a gracious gift.*

*Id est proprium civitatis ut sit libera*, C., *Off.*, II. 22, 78 ; *it is the peculiar privilege of a state, to be free.*

*Totum in eo est, ut tibi imperes*, C., *Tusc.*, II. 22, 53 ; *all depends upon this (one thing), your self-command.*

## Exclamatory Questions.

558. *Ut* with the Subjunctive is used in Exclamatory Questions, usually with the insertion of *-ne*.

*Egone ut te interellem ?* C., *Tusc.*, II. 18, 42 ; *I interrupt you ?*

*Di magni, ut qui civem Romanum occidisset, impunitatem acciperet*, SEN., *Ben.*, V. 16, 3 ; *Great Gods ! that one who had slain a Roman citizen, should escape unpunished !*

## TEMPORAL SENTENCES.

559. The action of the Temporal or Dependent clause may stand to the action of the Principal clause in one of three relations :

I. It may be *antecedent*.

CONJUNCTIONS : *Postquam* (*Postea quam*), *after that, after ; ut, as ; ubi, when* (literally, *where*) ; *simulac*, *as soon as ; ut primum, cum primum*, *the first moment that.*

II. It may be *contemporaneous*.

CONJUNCTIONS : *Dum donec, while, until ; quoad, up to* (the time) *that ; quamdiu, as long as ; cum, when.*

III. It may be *subsequent*.

CONJUNCTIONS : *Antequam, priusquam, before that, before.*

A special chapter is required by

IV. *Cum* (*quom*), *when*.

## I. ANTECEDENT ACTION.

(560) 561. *Ut, ut primum, ubi, ubi primum, cum, cum primum, simul ac, simul atque, and postquam (posteaquam),* in the sense of *after, as soon as*, take the (Historical) Perfect, rarely the Historical Present Indicative.

The English translation is not unfrequently the Pluperfect.

*Postquam Caesar pervēnit, obaidēs popūscit*, CAES., *B. G.*, I. 27, 3; *after Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages.*

*Pompēius ut equitātum suum pulsum vidit, acis excoessit*, CAES., *B. C.*, III. 94, 5; *as Pompey saw his cavalry beaten, he left the line of battle.*

*Pelopidās nōn dubitāvit, simul ac cōspexit hostem, cōnfigere* (555 2, R. 2), NEP., XVI. 5, 3; *as soon as he (had) caught sight of the enemy, Pelopidas did not hesitate to engage him.*

Subjunctive in *Ōrātiō Obliqua*.

*Ariovistum, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās vicerit* (Ō. R. vicit), *superbē imperāre*, CAES., *B. G.*, I. 31, 12; "*that Ariovistus, as soon as he had once beaten the forces of the Gauls, exercised his rule arrogantly.*"

562. The Imperfect is used to express an action continued into the time of the principal clause (overlapping).

*Ubi nēmō obuius ibat, ad castra hostium tendunt*, L., IX. 45, 14; *when (they saw that) no one was coming to meet them, they proceeded to the camp of the enemy.*

Subjunctive in *Ōrātiō Obliqua*.

*Scripteistī eum posteaquam nōn audēret* (Ō. R. nōn audēbat) *reprehendere, laudāre coepisse*, C., *Att.*, I. 13, 4; *you wrote that, after he could not get up the courage to blame, he began to praise.*

563. 1. The Pluperfect is used to express an action completed before the time of the principal clause; often of the Resulting Condition.

*Posteaquam multitudinē collēgerat emblemātum, instituit officinam*, C., *Verr.*, IV. 24, 54; *after he had got together a great number of figures, he set up shop.*

2. The Pluperfect is used with *postquam* when a definite interval is mentioned.

*Post* and *quam* are often separated. With an Ablative of Measure, *post* may be omitted. Notice *posterō diē quam*, *the day after*.

*Post diē tertium gesta res est quam dixerat*, C., *Mil.*, 16, 44; *the matter was accomplished three days after he said it would be.*

**Hamilcar nōnō annō postquam in Hispāniam vānerat occisus est, NEP.,**  
 XXII. 4, 2; *Hamilcar was killed nine years after he came to Spain.*

### Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Obliqua.

**Scriptum ē Posidōniō est trīgintā annis vixisse Panaetium postēquam**  
**librēs dē officiis edidisset, C., Off., III. 2, 8; it is recorded by Posidonius**  
*that Panaetius lived thirty years after he put forth his books on Duties.*

The attraction is sometimes neglected.

**564. Postquam** and the like, with the Present and Perfect Indicative, assume a causal signification (compare **quoniam**, *now that = since*).

**Cūria minor mihi videtur postēquam est maior, C., Fin., v. 1, 2; the**  
*senate-house seems to me smaller now that it is (really) greater.*

### Iterative Action.

(565) **566. RULE I.**—When two actions are repeated contemporaneously, both are put in tenses of continuance.

**Humilēs labōrant ubi potētēs dissident, PHAED., I. 30, 1; the lowly**  
*suffer when the powerful disagree.*

**Ubi frūmentō opus erat, cohortēs praesidium agitābant, S., Iug., 55, 4;**  
*when there was need of corn, the cohorts would serve as an escort.*

### The Subjunctive with the Ideal Second Person.

**Bonus sēgnior fit ubi negligās, S., Iug., 31, 28; a good man becomes**  
*more spiritless when you neglect him.*

**567. RULE II.**—When one action is repeated before another, the antecedent action is put in the Perfect, Pluperfect, or Future Perfect; the subsequent action in the Present, Imperfect, or Future, according to the relation.

Observe the greater exactness of the Latin expression. Compare 244, R. 2.

**Quotiēns cecidit, surgit, As often as he falls, he rises.**

**Quotiēns ceciderat, surgēbat, As often as he fell, he rose.**

**Quotiēns ceciderit, surget, As often as he falls (shall have fallen),**  
*he will rise.*

**Simul inflāvit tībicen & peritō carmen agnoscitur, C., Ac., II. 27, 86;**  
*as soon as the fluter blows, the song is recognized by the connoisseur.*

**Dociliōra sunt ingenia priusquam obdūrāerunt, QUINT., I. 12, 9; minds**  
*are more teachable before they (have) become hardened.*

**Cum pālam sius ānuli ad palmam converterat Gyges & nūllō vidēbatur,**  
**C., Off., III. 9, 38; when(ever) Gyges turned the bezel of the ring toward**  
*the palm (of his hand), he was to be seen by no one.*

*Si pēs condoluit, si dēns, ferre nōn possumus*, C., *Tusc.*, II. 22, 53 ; *if a foot, if a tooth ache(s), we cannot endure it.*

*Stomachābātur senex, si quid asperius dixeram*, C., *N.D.*, I. 33, 93 ; *the old man used to be fretted, if I said anything (that was) rather harsh.*

### The Subjunctive with the Ideal Second Person.

*Ubi cōsulueris, mātūrē factō opus est*, S., *C.*, I. 6 ; *when you have deliberated, you want speedy action.*

### The Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Obliqua.

*Catō mirārī sē sēbat quod nōn ridēret haruspex haruspīcem cum vidisset*, C., *Div.*, II. 24, 51 ; *Cato said that he wondered that an haruspex did not laugh when he saw (another) haruspex. (Nōn ridet cum vidit.)*

### The Subjunctive by Attraction.

*Quārē fībat, ut omnium oclōs, quotiāscunq̄ in pūblicum prōdīset, ad sē converteret*, NEP., VII. 3, 5 ; *whereby it happened that he attracted the eyes of all every time he went out in public (quotiāscunq̄ prōdierat, convertēbat).*

REMARK.—The Subjunctive in Iterative sentences instead of the Indicative becomes increasingly common from LIVY on.

## II. CONTEMPORANEOUS ACTION.

**568.** Conjunctions used of Contemporaneous Action are :

**Dum, dōnec**, *while, so long as, until* ; **quoad**, *up to (the time) that* ; **quamdiū**, *as long as* ; **cum**, *when*.

An action may be contemporaneous in Extent—*so long as, while*.

An action may be contemporaneous in Limit—*until*.

### 1. Contemporaneous In Extent.

(*So long as, while.*)

**569. Complete Coextension.**—**Dum, dōnec, quoad, quamdiū**, *so long as, while*, take the Indicative of all the tenses.

**Vita dum superest, bene est**, MAECENAS (SEN., *E.M.*, 101, 11) ; *while (so long as) life remains, 'tis well*.

**Tiberius Gracchus tam diū laudābitur dum memoria rērum Rōmānārum manēbit**, C., *Off.*, II. 12, 43 ; *Tiberius Gracchus shall be praised so long as the memory of Roman history remains (shall remain).*

Fuit haec gens fortis dum Lycūrgi lēges vigēbant, C., *Tusc.*, I. 42, 101 ; *this nation was brave so long as the laws of Lycurgus were in force.*

Dūnec grātus eram tibi, Persarū vigui rēge beātior, H., *O.*, III. 9, 1 ; *while I was pleasing in your sight, I throve more blessed than Persia's king.*

Quoad potuit, restitit, CAES., *B.G.*, IV. 12, 5 ; *as long as he could, he withstood.*

### Subjunctive in Ōrātiō Obliqua.

Rēgulus dixit quam diū iūre iūrāndō hostium tenērētur nōn esse sē senātōrem, C., *Off.*, III. 27, 100 ; *Regulus said that as long as he was bound by his oath to the enemy he was not a senator. (Quamdiū teneor nōn sum senātor.)*

### Subjunctive by Attraction.

Faciam ut mei memineris dum vitam vivas, PL., *Pers.*, 494 ; *I'll make you think of me the longest day you live.*

**570. Partial Coextension.**—*Dum*, while, while yet, during, commonly takes the Present Indicative after all Tenses : so especially in narrative.

Cape hunc equum, dum tibi virium aliquid superest, L., XXII. 49, 7 ; *take this horse, while you have yet some strength left.*

Dum haec Rōmae aguntur, cōsulēs ambō in Liguribus gerēbant bellum, L., XXXIX. 1, 1 ; *while these things were going on at Rome, both consuls were carrying on war in Liguria.*

## 2. Contemporaneous in Limit.

(Until.)

**571. Dum, dūnec, quoad, up to (the time) that, until**, have the Present, Historical Present, Historical Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative.

Tityre, dum redeō, brevis est via, pāce capellās, V., *Ec.*, 9, 23 ; *Tityrus, while I am returning (=till I return)—the way is short—feed my kids.*

Exspectābō dum venit, TER., *Eun.*, 206 ; *I will wait until he comes.*

Epaminōndās ferrum in corpore usque eō retinuit, quoad renūtiātum est viciisse Boeōtiās, OF. NEP., XV. 9, 3 ; *Epaminondas retained the iron in his body, until word was brought back that the Boeotians had conquered.*

Haud dēsinam dūnec perfecerō hōc, TER., *Ph.*, 420 ; *I will not cease until I have (shall have) accomplished it.*

Subjunctive in *Ōrātiō Obliqua*.

*Scipiōni Silānōque dōnec revocātī ab senātū forent prōrogātum imperium est*, L., XXVII. 7, 17; *Scipio and Silanus had their command extended until "they should have been recalled by the senate."*

**572. Dum, dōnec, and quoad, until**, take the Subjunctive when Suspense and Design are involved.

*Vergīnius dum collēgam cōsuleret mortuus est*, L., IV. 21, 10; *Verginius delayed until he could (long enough to) consult his colleague*.

*At tantī tibi sit nōn indulgēre theatris, dum bene dē vacuō pectore cēdat amor*, Ov., *Rem. Am.*, 751; *but let it be worth the cost to you (= deem it worth the cost) not to indulge in play-going, until love be fairly gone from (your) untenanted bosom*.

Often with *verba expectandī*, especially *expectō, I wait*.

*Rūsticus expectat dum dēfluat amnis*, H., *Ep.*, I. 2, 42; *the clown waits for the river to run off (dry)*.

REMARK.—*Verba expectandī* have also other constructions, as *ut, si, quin*, but not the Infinitive.

**573. Dum, modō, and dummodō, if only, provided only, only**, are used with the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive in Conditional Wishes. The other tenses are very rare.

The negative is *nō* (*dum nō = nō interim*).

*Ōderint dum metuunt*, ACCIUS (C., *Off.*, I. 28, 97); *let them hate so long as they fear (provided that, if they will only fear)*.

*Quō lubeat nūbant, dum dōs nō fiat comes*, PL., *Aul.*, 491; *let them marry where (= whom) they please, if but the dowry do not go with them*.

*Dummodō mōrta rectē veniat, dōtata est satis*, PL., *Aul.*, 239; *provided only she come with a good character, she is endowed (= her dowry is) enough*.

### III. SUBSEQUENT ACTION.

*Antequam and Priusquam with the Indicative.*

**574. Antequam and priusquam, before**, take the Present, Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative, when the limit is stated as a fact. The Present is used in anticipation of the Future.

REMARK.—The elements *ante, anteq̄, prius, and quam* are often separated.



**575.** The Present Indicative is used after positive sentences.

*Antequam ad sententiam redeō, dē mē pauca dicam*, C., *Cat.*, IV. 10, 20 ; *before I return to the subject, I will say a few things of myself.*

*Omnia experiri certum est prius quam pereō*, TER., *And.*, 311 ; *I am determined to try everything before I perish.* (*Prius quam peream* = *sooner than perish, to keep from perishing.*)

**576.** The Perfect (Aorist) and Future Perfect Indicative are used both after positive and after negative clauses, chiefly the latter.

Observe that *nōn priusquam* = *nōn dum*.

*Hēracles, aliquantō ante quam est mortuus, omnia trādidit*, C., *Verr.*, II. 18, 46 ; *some time before he died he had handed over everything to Heracles.*

*Lēgātī nōn ante profecti quam impositōs in nāvīs militēs vidērunt*, L., XXXIV. 12, 8 ; *the envoys did not set out until they saw the soldiers on board.*

Subjunctive in *Ōratiō Obliqua*.

*Themistocles suis praedixit, ut nō prius Lacedaemoniorum lēgātōs dimitterent quam ipse esset remissus*, NEP., II. 7, 3 ; *Themistocles told his colleagues beforehand not to dismiss the Lacedaemonian envoys before he had been sent back.* (*Nōn prius dimittētis quam ego erō remissus.*)

*Antequam and Priusquam with the Subjunctive.*

**577.** *Antequam* and *priusquam* are used with the Subjunctive when the action is expected, contingent, designed, or deprecated.

The translation is often *before*, and the verbal in *-ing* ; the limit in these sentences is said to be ideal.

*Ante vidēmus fulgōrem quam sonum audiāmus*, SEN., *N. Q.*, II. 12, 6 ; *we see the flash of lightning before hearing the sound* (we may never hear it).

*In omnibus negotiis prius quam aggrediāre adhibenda est praeparatiō diligēns*, C., *Off.*, I. 21, 73 ; *in all affairs, before addressing yourself (to them), you must make use of careful preparation* (Ideal Second Person).

*Collem celeriter priusquam ab adversariis sentiātur commūnit*, CAES., *B. C.*, I. 54, 4 ; *he speedily fortified the hill before he was* (too soon to be) *perceived by the enemy* (*prius quam* = *prius quam ut*).

*Hannibal omnia priusquam excōderet pugnā erat expertus*, L., XXX. 35, 4 ; *Hannibal had tried everything before withdrawing from the fight* (= *to avoid withdrawing from the fight*).

## IV. CONSTRUCTIONS OF CUM (QUOM).

(578) 579. There are two great uses of *cum* :

I. Temporal *cum* (*when, then*), with the Indicative, to give the *date*.

II. Circumstantial *cum* (*as, whereas*), with the Subjunctive, to give the *situation*.

Of the latter there are three varieties :

(a) Historical *cum, as*, giving the circumstances under which an action took place.

(b) Causal *cum, as, whereas, since*, indicating that the main action proceeded from the subordinate one.

(c) Concessive *cum, whereas, although*, indicating that the main action was accomplished in spite of that of the subordinate clause.

I. *Cum vēr appetit, militēs ex hibernis movent, when spring approaches, soldiers move out of winter-quarters.*

II. (a) *Cum vēr appeteret, Hannibal ex hibernis mōvit, as spring was approaching (spring approaching), Hannibal moved out of winter-quarters.*

(b) *Cum vēr appetat, ex hibernis movendum est, as (since) spring is approaching, we must move out of winter-quarters.*

(c) *Cum vēr appeteret, tamen hostēs ex hibernis nōn mōvērunt, whereas (although) spring was approaching, nevertheless the enemy did not move out of winter-quarters.*

## 1. Temporal Cum.

580. *Cum, when*, is used with all the tenses of the Indicative to designate merely temporal relations.

*Animus, nec cum adest nec cum discēdit, appāret, C., Cat. M., 22, 80 ; the soul is not visible, either when it is present, or when it departs.*

*Sex librōs dē rē publicā tum scripsimus cum gubernācula rei publicae tenēbāmus, C., Div., II. 1, 8 ; I wrote the six books about the State at the time when I held the helm of the State.*

*Recordāre tempus illud cum pater Cūriō maerēns iacēbat in lectō, C., Ph., II. 18, 45 ; remember the time when Curio the father lay abed from grief.*

*Iam dilucēscēbat cum signum cōsul dedit, L., xxxvi. 24, 6 ; by this time day was beginning to dawn, when (581) the consul gave the signal.*

Ideal Second Person with the Subjunctive :

*Infāmia etiam tum vivit quom esse crēdās mortuam, PL., Pers., 355 ; ill-fame lives on even when you think that it is dead.*

REMARKS.—1. *Fuit cum* commonly follows the analogy of other characteristic relatives (631), and takes usually the Subjunctive :

*Fuit tempus cum* (= *fuit cum*) *rūra colerent hominēs*, VARRO, *R. R.*, III. 1, 1 ; *there was a time when all mankind tilled fields = were countrymen.*

2. *Memini cum*, *I remember the time when*, takes the Indic., but *audire cum* takes the Subjv. parallel with the participle :

*Memini cum mihi dēscipere vidēbare*, C., *Fam.*, VII. 28, 1 ; *I remember the time when you seemed to me to show the worst possible taste.*

*Audivi Mētrodorū cum dē his ipais rēbus disputāret*, C., *Or.*, II. 90, 365 ; *I have heard Metrodorus discuss(ing) these very matters.*

3. Peculiar is the use of *cum* with Lapses of Time. Lapses of Time are treated as Designations of Time in Accusative or Ablative :

*Multi anni sunt cum* (= *multōs annōs*) *in aere meō est*, C., *Fam.*, XV. 14, 1 ; (*it is*) *many years (that) he has been (230) in my debt.*

*Nōdum centum et decem anni sunt cum* (= *ex quō = abhinc annōs*) *dē pecūniis repetundis lēta lēx est*, C., *Off.*, II. 21, 75 ; *it is not yet one hundred and ten years since the law concerning extortion was proposed.*

**581. Cum Inversum.** When the two actions are independent, *cum* is sometimes used with the one which seems to be logically the principal clause, just as in English.

*Iam dilucidēbat cum signum cōsul dedit*, L., XXXVI. 24, 6 ; *by this time day was beginning to dawn, when the consul gave the signal.*

(582–3) **584. Iterative cum.**—*Cum* in the sense of *quotiēns*, *as often as*, takes the Tenses of Iterative Action. See 566.

*Solet cum sē pūrgat in mē cōferre omnem culpam*, C., *Att.*, IX. 2 A, 1 ; *he is accustomed, when he clears himself, to put off all the blame on me.*

## 2. Circumstantial Cum.

**585. Historical cum.**—*Cum*, *when, as*, is used in narrative with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive to give the circumstances of a past action.

The Imperfect is used if the action of the *cum*-clause occurs at the same time as that of the leading verb ; the Pluperfect if it precedes it.

*Agēsilaus cum ex Aegyptō reverterētur dēcessit*, NEP., XVII. 8, 6 ; *Agēsilaus died as he was returning from Egypt.*

*Zēnōnem cum Athēnis essem audiēbam frequenter*, C., *N. D.*, I. 21, 59 ; *when I was (being) at Athens, I heard Zeno (lecture) frequently.*

*Cum Caesar Anconam occupāvisset, urbem reliquimus*, C., *Fam.*, XVI. 12, 2 ; *when (as) Caesar had occupied Ancona (Caesar having occupied Ancona), I left the city.*

*Attalus moritur altero et septuagésimo anno, cum quattuor et quadraginta annis regnasset*, L., XXXIII. 21, 1 ; *Attalus died in his seventy-second year, having reigned forty-four years.*

**586. Causal cum.**—*Cum*, *when*, *whereas*, *since*, *seeing that*, is used with any tense of the Subjunctive, to denote the reason of an action.

*Quae cum ita sint, effectum est nihil esse malum quod turpe non sit*, C., *Fin.*, III. 8, 29 ; *since these things are so, it is made out (proved) that nothing is bad that is not dishonorable.*

*Dolo erat pugnandum, cum par non esset armis*, NEP., XXIII. 10, 4 ; *he had to fight by stratagem, as he (seeing that he) was not a match in arms.*

**587. Concessive and Adversative cum.**—*Cum*, *whereas*, *although*, is used with any tense of the Subjunctive, to express concession or opposition.

*Nihil me adiuvit, cum posset*, C., *Att.*, IX. 13, 3 ; *he gave me no assistance, although (at a time when) he had it in his power.*

*Perire artem putamus nisi appareat, cum desinat ars esse, si appareat*, QUINT., IV. 2, 127 ; *we think that (our) art is lost unless it shows, whereas it ceases to be art if it shows.*

**588. Cum—tum.** When *cum*, *when*, *tum*, *then*, have the same verb, the verb is put in the Indicative. *Cum—tum* then has the force of *both—and especially*.

*Pausanias consilia cum patriae tum sibi inimica capiebat*, NEP., IV. 3, 3 ; *Pausanias conceived plans that were hurtful both to his country and especially to himself.*

REMARK.—When they have different verbs, the verb with *cum* may be in the Subjunctive, especially if there is an idea of concession.

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**589.** In Conditional Sentences the clause which contains the condition (supposed cause) is called the **Protasis**, that which contains the consequence is called the **Apodosis**.

Logically, **Protasis** is *Premiss* ; and **Apodosis**, *Conclusion*.

Grammatically, the **Apodosis** is the *Principal*, the **Protasis** the *Dependent*, clause.

**590. Sign of the Conditional.**—The common conditional particle is *si*, *if*.

**591. Negative of *sī*.**—The negative of *sī* is *sī nōn* or *nisi*.

(a) *Sī nōn* means *if not*, and is the rule :

1. When the positive of the same verb precedes.

*Sī fœceris, magnam habēbō grātiā; sī nōn fœceris, ignōscam*, C., *Fam.*, v. 19 ; *if you do it, I will be very grateful to you ; if you do not, I will forgive (you).*

2. When the Condition is concessive ; in this case the principal clause often contains an adversative particle.

*Sī mihi bonā rē publicā frui nōn licuerit, at carēbō malā*, C., *Mil.*, 34, 98 ; *if I shall not be allowed to enjoy good government, I shall at least be rid of bad.*

(b) *Nisi* means *unless*, and is used when an exception or restriction is made to the leading statement. Compare the general use of *nisi*, *except* (R.).

*Nisi molestumst, paucis percontārier* (180, 6) *volō ego ex tē*, PL., *Rud.*, 120 ; *if it is not disagreeable, I wish to ask you a few questions.*

So especially after negatives.

*Nōn possem vivere nisi in litteris viverem*, C., *Fam.*, ix. 26, 1 ; *I could not live unless I lived in study.*

*Memoria minuitur nisi eam exerceās*, C., *Cat. M.*, 7, 21 ; *memory wanes unless (except) you exercise it. (Sī nōn exerceās, in case you fail to exercise it.)*

REMARK.—*Nisi*, after negative sentences or equivalents, has often the signification of *but*, *except*, *besides*, *only* :

*Nihil hic nisi triste vidēbis*, Ov., *Tr.*, III. 1, 9 ; *you will see nothing here except (what is) sad.*

*Falsus honor iuvat et mendāx infāmia terret, quem nisi mendōsum et medicandum?* H., *Ep.*, I. 16, 39 ; *"false honor charms and lying slander scares," whom but the faulty and the fit for physic?*

**592. Two Conditions excluding each the other.**—When two conditions exclude each the other, *sī* is used for the first ; *sin*, *if not (but if)*, for the second.

*Sin* is further strengthened by *autem*, *vērō* (rare), *but* ; *minus*, *less (not)* ; *secus* (rare), *otherwise* ; *aliter*, *else*.

*Mercātūra, si tenuis est, sordida putanda est ; sin magna et cōpiosa, nōn est vituperanda*, C., *Off.*, I. 42, 151 ; *mercantile business, if it is petty, is to be considered dirty (work) ; if (it is) not (petty, but) great and abundant (= conducted on a large scale), it is not to be found fault with.*

REMARK.—If the verb or predicate is to be supplied from the context, *si minus*, *if less (not)*, *sin minus*, *sin aliter*, *if otherwise*, are commonly used, rarely *si nōn* :

*Ēdūc tēcum omnēs tuōs*; *si minus*, *quam plurimōs*, C., *Cat.*, I. 5, 10; *take out with you all your (followers); if not, as many as possible.*

*Ōdero si poterō*; *si nōn*, *invitus amābō*, Ov., *Am.*, III. II, 35; *I will hate if I can, if not I shall love against my will.*

593. *Other Forms of the Protasis.*—1. The Protasis may be expressed by a Relative.

*Qui vidēret, urbem captam diceret*, C., *Verr.*, IV. 23, 52; *whoso had seen it, had said that the city was taken.*

2. The Protasis may be contained in a Participle.

*Si latet ars, prōdest*; *affert dēprēnsa pudōrem*, Ov., *A.A.*, II. 313; *art, if concealed, does good; detected, it brings shame.*

3. The Protasis may be involved in a modifier.

*Fēcērunt id servi Milōnis quod suōs quisque servōs in tāli rē facere voluisset*, C., *Mil.*, 10, 29; *the servants of Milo did what each man would have wished his servants to do in such case (si quid tāle accidisset).*

4. The Protasis may be expressed by an Interrogative, or, what is more common, by an Imperative or equivalent.

*Immūtā verbōrum collocatiōnem, perierit tōta rēs*, C., *Or.*, 70, 282; *(if you) change the order of the words, the whole thing falls dead.*

### Classification of Conditional Sentences.

594. Conditional sentences may be divided into three classes, according to the character of the Protasis :

I. Logical Conditional Sentences: *si*, with the Indicative.

II. Ideal Conditional Sentences: *si*, chiefly with Present and Perfect Subjunctive.

III. Unreal Conditional Sentences: *si*, with Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

#### I. LOGICAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

595. The Logical Conditional Sentence simply states the matter, according to the formula: if this is so, then that is so; if this is not so, then that is not so.

The Protasis is in the Indicative: the Apodosis is generally in the Indicative; but in future relations any equivalent of the Future (Subjunctive, Imperative) may be used :

## PROTASIS.

<b>SI id crēdis,</b> <i>If you believe that,</i>	
<b>SI id crēdēbās,</b> <i>If you believed that,</i>	
<b>SI id crēdidisti,</b> <i>If you (have) believed that,</i>	
<b>SI id crēdēs,</b> <i>If you (shall) believe that,</i>	
<b>SI id crēdideris,</b> <i>If you (shall have) believe(d) that,</i>	
<b>SI quid crēdidisti,</b> <i>If you have believed anything</i> (= when you believe anything),	
<b>SI quid crēdideris,</b> <i>If you had believed anything</i> (= when you believed anything),	

## APODOSIS.

<b>errās,</b> <i>you are going wrong.</i>	
<b>errābās,</b> <i>you were going wrong.</i>	
<b>errāsti,</b> <i>you went (have gone) wrong.</i>	
<b>errābis,</b> <i>you will (be) go(ing) wrong (242).</i>	
<b>errāveris,</b> <i>you will have gone (will go) wrong.</i>	
<b>errās,</b> <i>you go wrong. Comp. 569.</i>	
<b>errābās,</b> <i>you went wrong.</i>	

**SI spiritum dūcit, vivit, C., Inv., I. 46, 86 ; if he is drawing (his) breath (breathing) he is living.**

**SI occidi, rectā feci ; sed nōn occidi, QUINT., IV. 5, 13 ; if I killed him, I did right ; but I did not kill him.**

**Nātūrā si sequēmur ducem, numquam aberrābimus, C., Off., I. 28, 100 ; if we (shall) follow nature (as our) guide, we shall never go astray.**

**Flectere si nequeō superōs, Acheronta movēbō, V., A., VII. 312 ; if I can't bend the gods above, I'll rouse (all) hell below.**

**Dēsine timēre, si spērāre dēsieris, SEN., E.M., I. 5, 7 ; you will cease to fear, if you (shall have) cease(d) to hope.**

**Peream male, si nōn optimum erat, H., S., II. I, 6 ; may I die the death if it was not best.**

REMARKS.—1. After a verb of Saying or Thinking (**Ōrātiō Obliqua**), the Protasis must be put in the Subjv., according to the rule.

(SI id crēdis, errās.)	Dico, tē, si id crēdās, errāre.
	Dixi, tē, si id crēderēs, errāre.
(SI id crēdēs, errābis.)	Dico, tē, si id crēdās, errātūrum esse.
	Dixi, tē, si id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.
(SI id crēdidisti, errāsti.)	Dico, tē, si id crēdideris, errāsse.
	Dixi, tē, si id crēdidissēs, errāsse.

For examples, see **Ōrātiō Obliqua**, 657.

2. The Subjv. is used by Attraction :

**Arāneolae rēte texunt ut si quid inhaeserit cōficiant, C., N.D., II. 48, 128 ; spiders weave webs (567) to despatch anything that gets caught.**  
(SI quid inhaesit cōficiunt.)

3. The Ideal Second Person takes the Subjv. in connection with the Universal Present :

**Sonectūs plēna est voluptātis si illā sciās uti, SEN., E.M., I2, 4 ; old age is full of pleasure if you know (if one knows) how to enjoy it.**

4. **Sive—sive** (*seu—seu*) almost invariably takes the Logical form. (496, 2.)

*Seu vicit, ferociter instat victis ; seu victus est, instaurat cum victoribus certāmen*, L., XXVII. 14, 1 ; *if he vanquishes* (567), *he presses the vanquished furiously ; if he is vanquished, he renews the struggle with the vanquishers.*

## II. IDEAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**596.** The Ideal Conditional Sentence represents the matter as still in suspense, according to the formula : if this should be so, then that would be so.

Nothing is indicated as to the reality of the actions. The point of view is usually the Present.

1. The Protasis is put in the Present Subjunctive for continued action, and in the Perfect Subjunctive for completion or attainment.

The Apodosis is in the Present or Perfect Subjunctive. The Imperative and Future Indicative or equivalents are often found. The Universal Present is frequently used, especially in combination with the Ideal Second Person (595, R. 3).

### PROTASIS.

**Si id crēdās,**

*If you should (were to) believe that,*

**Si id crēdās,**

*If you should (were to) believe that,*

**Si id crēdideris,**

1. *If you should (prove to) have believed that*  
(Perfect ; Action Past or Future),

2. *If you should (come to) believe that* (Aor. ;  
Action Future),

**Si id crēdideris,**

*If you (should have) believe(d) that,*

### APODOSIS.

**errēs,**

*you would be going wrong.*

**errāveris,**

*you would go wrong.*

**errēs,**

*you would be going wrong.*

*you would be going wrong.*

**errāveris** (rare),

*you would (have) go(ne) wrong.*

**Hanc viam si asperam esse negem, mentiar**, C., *Sest.*, 46, 100 ; *if I should say that this way is not rough, I should lie.*

**Si gladium quis apud tē sēnā mente deposuerit, repetat insāniēns, red-dere peccātum sit, officium nōn reddere**, C., *Off.*, III. 25, 95 ; *if a man in sound mind were to deposit (to have deposited) a sword with you, (and) reclaim it (when) mad, it would be wrong to return it, right not to return it.*

**Si valeant hominēs, ars tua, Phoebe, iacet**, O., *Tr.*, IV., 3, 78 ; *should men keep well, your art, Phoebus, is naught.*

**Nulla est excusātiō peccāti, si amīcī causā peccāveris**, C., *Lael.*, II, 37 ; *it is no excuse for a sin to have sinned for the sake of a friend.*



2. The Point of View is occasionally the Past. In that case the Protasis is found in the Imperfect, very rarely the Pluperfect Subjunctive, and the Apodosis has corresponding forms.

**SI** Alfenus tum iudicium accipere vellet, quid agerēs? C., *Quinct.*, 26, 83; in case Alfenus was willing then to undertake the trial, what were you to do? (Present: si nunc vellet . . . agēs?)

REMARK.—The lively fancy of the Roman sometimes employs the Ideal where we should expect the Unreal. This is more common in early Latin.

**TU** si hic sis, aliter sentīās, TER., *And.*, 310; if you were I (put yourself in my place), you would think differently.

### III. UNREAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

597. The Unreal Conditional Sentence is used of that which is not or was not true, according to the formula: if this were so, then that would be so; if this had been so, then that would have been so.

The Imperfect Subjunctive is used to express continued action—generally, in opposition to the Present; the Pluperfect Subjunctive, to express completed action—uniformly in opposition to the Past.

PROTASIS.	APODOSIS.
<b>SI</b> id crēderēs, If you believed (were believing) that, [you do not,]	<b>errārēs</b> , you would be going wrong.
<b>SI</b> id crēdidissēs, If you had believed that, [you did not,]	<b>errāvissēs</b> , you would have gone wrong.

**Sapientia** nōn expetērētur, si nihil efficeret, C., *Fin.*, I. 13, 42; wisdom would not be sought after, if it did no practical good.

**Caederem** tē, nisi irāscerer, SEN., *Ira.*, I. 15, 3; I should flog you, if I were not getting angry.

**SI** ibi tē esse scissem, ad tē ipse vēnissem, C., *Fin.*, I. 8; if had known you were there, I should have come to you myself.

**Ego** nisi peperissem, Rōma nōn oppugnārētur; nisi filium habērem, libera in liberā patriā mortua essem, L., II. 40, 8; had I not become a mother, Rome would not be besieged; had I not a son, I should have died a free woman in a free land.

REMARKS.—(1) 2. After a negative Protasis, the Apodosis is sometimes expressed by the Impf. Indic. when the action is represented as interrupted (283).

**Lābēbar** longius, nisi mē retinuissem, C., *Leg.*, I. 19, 52; I was letting (should have let) myself go on too far, had I not checked myself.

3. The Indicative is the regular construction in the Apodosis with verbs which signify Possibility or Power, Obligation or Necessity—so with the active and passive Periphrastic—*viz*, *paene*, *scarcely*, *hardly*, and the like.

*Cōsul esse qui potui, nisi eum vitæ cursum tenuissem?* C., *Rep.*, i. 6, 10; *how could I have been consul, if I had not kept that course of life?*

*Emendatūrus, si licuisset, eram*, Ov., *Tr.*, i. 7, 40; *I should have removed the faults, if I had been free (to do it).*

4. In *Ōrātiō Obliqua* the Protasis is unchanged; the Apodosis is formed by the Periphrastic Pr. and Pf. Inf. (149), for the Active, *futūrum* (fore) *ut*, *futūrum fuisse* *ut* for passive and Supineless verbs.

A. *Dico* (*dixi*), *tē, si id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.*

B. *Dico* (*dixi*), *tē, si id crēdidissēs, errātūrum fuisse.*

A. *Dico* (*dixi*), *si id crēderēs, fore ut dēciperāris.*

B. *Dico* (*dixi*), *si id crēdidissēs, futūrum fuisse ut dēciperāris.*

5. When the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional is made to depend on a sentence which requires the Subjv., the Plupf. is turned into the Periphrastic Pf. Subjv.; the Impf. form is unchanged.

The passive form is unchanged.

<i>Nōn dubitō,</i> <i>I do not doubt,</i>	}	<i>quā, si id crēderēs, errārēs,</i> <i>that, if you believed that, you would be going wrong.</i>
<i>Nōn dubitābam,</i> <i>I did not doubt,</i>		<i>quā, si id crēdidissēs, errātūrus fueris,</i> <i>that, if you had believed that, you would have gone wrong.</i>

*Honestum tāle est ut, vel si ignōrārent id hominēs, esset laudābile*, Cf. C., *Fin.*, ii. 15, 49; *virtue is a thing to deserve praise, even if men did not know it.*

*Dic quidnam factūrus, fueris, si eō tempore cēnsor fuissēs?* L., ix. 33, 7; *tell (me) what you would have done, if you had been censor at that time?*

Similarly *potui* (R. 3) becomes *potuerim*, and *fui* with the Periphrastic passive in *-us* becomes *fuerim* after all tenses.

#### INCOMPLETE CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

598. *Omission of the Conditional Sign.*—Occasionally the members of a Conditional sentence are put side by side without a Conditional sign.

*Pōscit, dandum est; vocat, veniendum est*, C., *Parad.*, 5, 2; *she asks, he must give; she calls, he must come.*

*Unum cōgnōris, omnis nōris*, TER., *Ph.*, 265; *you know one, you know all.*

**599. Omission of the Verb of the Protasis.**—When the verb of the Protasis is omitted, either the precise form or the general idea of the verb is to be supplied from the Apodosis.

*Si quisquam* (= *si quisquam fuit*), *Catō sapiēns fuit*, *Cf. C., Lael., 2, 9*; *if any one was wise, Cato was.*

*Edūc tūcum omnes tuos*; *si minus, quam plurimōs*, *C., Cat., 1. 5, 10*; *take out with you all your (followers); if not (take out) as many as possible.*

#### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES OF COMPARISON.

(600–1) **602. Ut si, ac si, quasi, quam si, tamquam, tamquam si, velut, and velut si**, meaning *as if*, take the Subjunctive.

The tenses follow the rule of sequence, rather than the ordinary course of the conditional.

*Nōli timēre quasi* [= *quam timeās si*] *assem elephantō dēs*, *QUINT., VI. 3, 59*: *don't be afraid, as if you were giving a penny to an elephant.*

*Mē iuvat, velut ipse in parte labōris ac periculi fuerim, ad finem belli Pūnici porvēnisse*, *L., XXXI. 1*; *I am delighted to have reached the end of the Punic war, as if I had shared in the toil and danger (of it).*

*Tantus patrēs metus cēpit velut si iam ad portēs hostis esset*; *L., XXI. 16, 2*; *a great fear took hold of the senators, as if the enemy were already at their gates.*

REMARKS.—1. *Quasi* is used to soften or apologize for a single word (= *ut ita dicam*).

*Mors est quaedam quasi migrātiō commutātiōque vitae*, *Cf. C., Tusc., 1. 12, 27*; *death is as it were a shifting of life's quarters.*

2. As in the ordinary Conditional sentence, so in the Comparative sentence, the Protasis may be expressed by a participle:

*Tamquam occisus relictus est*, *Cf. C., Verr., v. 11, 28*; *he was left for (as if) slain (dead).*

#### CONCESSIVE SENTENCES.

(603) **604. Etsi, etiamsi, and tametsi**, *even if, although*, take the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the general principles which regulate the use of *si, if*. The Indicative is more common, especially with *etsi*.

*Dē futūrīs rēbus etsi semper difficile est dicere, tamen interdum coniectūrā possis accēdere*, *C., Fam., VI. 4, 1*; *although it is always difficult to tell about the future, nevertheless you can sometimes come near it by guessing.*

**Inops** ille etiamsi referre grātiā nōn potest, habēre certē potest, C., *Off.*, II. 20, 69; *the needy man (spoken of), if he cannot return a favor, can at least feel it.*

**605. Quamquam** (*to what extent soever*), *although*, is a generic relative (254, R. 4), and, in the best authors, is construed with the Indicative.

**Medici** quamquam intellegunt saepe, tamen numquam aegris dicunt, illō morbo eōs esse moritūros, C., *Div.*, II. 25, 54; *although physicians often know, nevertheless they never tell their patients that they will die of that (particular) disease.*

REMARK.—The Potential Subjv. (257) is sometimes found with **quamquam**.

**Quamquam** exercitum qui in Volscis erat mallet, nihil recūsavit, L., VI. 9, 6; *although he might well have preferred the army which was in the Volscian country, nevertheless he made no objection.*

So especially with the Ideal Second Person.

**606. Quamvis** (*as much as you will*), *although*, is construed with the Subjunctive.

**Quamvis** sint sub aquā, sub aquā maledicere temptant, Ov., *M.*, VI. 376; *although they be under the water, under the water they try to revile.*

**Quamvis** ille niger, quamvis tū candidus essēs, V., *Ec.*, II. 16; *although he was black, although you were fair.*

REMARK.—**Quamvis** is sometimes found with the Indicative in the poets and later prose.

**607. Licet** (*it is permitted*) retains its verbal nature, and, according to the Sequence of Tenses, takes only the Present and Perfect Subjunctive:

**Licet** irrideat si qui vult, C., *Parad.*, I. 1, 8; *let any one laugh who will.*

**Ardeat ipsa licet**, tormentis gaudet amantis, Juv., VI. 209; *though she herself is aglow, she rejoices in the tortures of her lover.*

**608. Ut**, *granted that*, and **nē**, *granted that (not)*, are also used concessively for the sake of argument.

**Ut** desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas, Ov., *Pont.*, III. 4, 79; *granted that strength be lacking, nevertheless you must praise (my) good will.*

**Nē** sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est, C., *Tusc.*, II. 5, 14; *granted that pain be not the chief evil, an evil it certainly is.*

**609. Other forms of the Concessive Sentence.**—The Concessive sentence may be represented by a Participle or Predicative Attribute.

*Multorum tē oculi et aures nōn sentientem cūstōdient*, C., *Cat.*, I. 2, 6; *the eyes and ears of many will keep guard over you, though you perceive it not* (WITHOUT your perceiving it).

## RELATIVE SENTENCES.

**610.** The Latin language uses the relative construction far more than the English: so in the beginning of sentences, and in combination with Conjunctions and other Relatives.

REMARKS.—1. The awkwardness, or impossibility, of a literal translation may generally be relieved by the substitution of a demonstrative with an appropriate conjunction, or the employment of an abstract substantive:

*Quae cum ita sint*, now since these things are so (Ciceronian formula).

*Futura modo expectant*; *quae quia certa esse nōn possunt, cōfidentur* et angere et metui, C., *Fin.*, I. 18, 60; *they only look forward to the future; and because that cannot be certain, they wear themselves out with distress and fear.*

*Epicūrus nōn satis politus iis artibus quās qui tenent, eruditī appellantur*, C., *Fin.*, I. 7, 26; *Epicurus is not sufficiently polished by those accomplishments, from the possession of which people are called cultivated.*

2. Notice especially *quod* in combination with *si*, *nisi*, and *ni*, with *ubi*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and the like, in which *quod* means *and as for that*, and is sometimes translated by *and*, *but*, *therefore*, *whereas*, sometimes not at all. At the beginning of a sentence it is often convenient to translate *quod* "*as for the fact that.*" See 525, 2.

*Quod ni fuisset inoblitus ita eum expectārem ut p̄r fuit*, TER., *Ph.*, 155; *whereas, had I not been heedless, I should be awaiting him in proper mood.*

*Quod m̄gnum dolōrem brevem esse dicitis, id nōn intellegō, quāle sit*, C., *Fin.*, II. 29, 94; *as for your saying that great grief is short, I do not understand what that means.*

(611) **612. Position of Relatives.**—The Relative and Relative forms are put at the beginning of sentences and clauses. The preposition, however, generally, though not invariably, precedes its Relative (413).

**613. Antecedent.**—The word to which the Relative refers is called the Antecedent, because it precedes in thought even when it does not in expression.

## CONCORD.

**614.** The Relative agrees with its antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person.

*Uxor contenta est quae bona est unō virō*, PL., *Merc.*, 812 ; *a wife who is good is contented with one husband.*

*Hōc illis nārrō qui mē nōn intelligunt*, PHAEDR., 3, 128 ; *I tell this tale for those who understand me not.*

*Ego qui tē cōfirmō, ipse mē nōn possum*, C., *Fam.*, XIV. 4, 5 ; *I who reassure you, cannot reassure myself.*

REMARKS.—1. The Relative agrees with the Person of the true Antecedent, even when a predicate intervenes ; exceptions are very rare :

*Tū es is, qui mē summīs laudibus ad caelum extulisti*, C., *Fam.*, XV. 4, 11 ; *you are he that has(t) praised me to the skies.*

(2) 3. The gender and number of the Relative may be determined :

(a) By the sense, and not by the form ;

*Caesa sunt ad sex milia qui Pydnam perfugerant*, L., XLIV. 42, 7 ; *there were slain up to six thousand who had fled to Pydna.*

*Equitātum omnem praemittit, qui videant*, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 15 ; *he sent all the cavalry ahead, who should see (that they might see, to see).*

(b) By the predicate or the apposition, and not by the antecedent ;

*Thēbae, quod Boeōtiae caput est*, L., XLII. 44, 3 ; *Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.*

*Flūmen Scaldis, quod infuit in Mosam*, CAES., *B.G.*, VI. 33, 3 ; *the river Scheldt, which empties into the Maas.*

(4) 5. When the Relative refers to the combined antecedents of different gender, the strongest gender is preferred, according to 286 :

*Ōtium atque divitiae, quae prima mortālēs putant*, S., *C.*, 36, 4 ; *leisure and money, which mortals reckon as the prime things.*

Or, the nearest gender may be preferred :

*Eae frūgēs atque fructūs quōs terra gignit*, C., *N.D.*, II. 14, 37 ; *those fruits of field and tree which earth bears.*

6. Combined Persons follow the rule, 287.

**615.** *Repetition of the Antecedent.*—The Antecedent of the Relative may be repeated in the Relative clause, with the Relative as its attributive.

*Caesar intellēxit diem instāre, quō diē frūmentum militibus mētiri oportēret*, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 16, 5 ; *Caesar saw that the day was at hand, on which day it behooved to measure corn (corn was to be measured out) to the soldiers.*

**616. Incorporation of the Antecedent.**—1. The Antecedent substantive is often incorporated into the Relative clause; sometimes there is a demonstrative antecedent, sometimes not.

*In quem primum egressi sunt locum Trōia vocātur*, L., I. 1, 3; *the first place they landed at was called Troy*.

2. An appositional substantive, from which a Relative clause depends, is regularly incorporated into the Relative clause.

*Amānus Syriam & Ciliciā dividit, qui mōns erat hostium plēnus*, C., Att., v. 20, 3; *Syria is divided from Cilicia by Amanus, a mountain which was full of enemies*.

3. Adjectives, especially superlatives, are sometimes transferred from the substantive in the principal clause and made to agree with the Relative in the Relative clause.

*Themistoclēs dē servis suis quem habuit fidēlissimū ad rēgem misit*, NEP., II. 4, 3; *Themistocles sent the most faithful slave he had to the king*.

**617. Attraction of the Relative.**—The Accusative of the Relative is occasionally attracted into the Ablative of the antecedent, rarely into any other case.

*Hōc cōfirmāmus illō auguriō quō diximus*, C., Att., x. 8, 7; *we confirm this by the augury which we mentioned*.

**618. Correlative of the Relative.**—The usual Correlative of *quī* is *is*, more rarely *hic*, *ille*.

*Is minimō eget mortālīs, qui minimum cupit*, SYRUS, 286 (Fr.); *that mortal lacketh least, who wanteth least*.

*Hic sapiēs, de quō loquor*, C., Ac., II. 33, 105; *this wise man of whom I am speaking*.

*Illā diēs veniet, mea quā lūgubria pōnam*, OV., Tr., IV. 2, 73; *the day will come when I shall lay aside my mournful strains*.

**619. Absorption of the Correlative.**—The Correlative *is* is often absorbed, especially when it would stand in the same case as the Relative.

*Postume, nōn bene olet, qui bene semper olet*, MART., II. 12, 4; *Postumus, (he) smells not sweet, who always smells sweet*.

*Quem dī diligunt adulescēns moritur*, PL., B., 816; *(he) whom the gods love dies young*.

**620. Position of the Correlative clause.**—The Relative clause naturally follows its Correlative, but it often precedes ; absorption also is common.

*Male sē rēs habet cum quod virtute effici debet id temptatur pecuniā, C., Off., II. 6, 22 ; it is a bad state of affairs when what ought to be accomplished by worth, is attempted by money.*

*Quod nōn dedit fortuna, nōn eripit, SEN., E.M., 59, 18 ; what fortune has not given (does not give), she does not take away.*

**621. Indefinite Antecedent.**—The Indefinite Antecedent is generally omitted.

*Elige cui dicās : tū mihi sōla placēs, Ov., A.A., I. 42 ; choose some one to whom you may say : You alone please me.*

### TENSES IN RELATIVE SENTENCES.

**622. Future and Future Perfect.**—The Future and Future Perfect are used with greater exactness than in current English (242, 244).

*Sit liber, dominus qui volet esse meus, MART., II. 32, 8 ; he must be free who wishes (shall wish) to be my master.*

*Qui prior strinxerit ferrum, eius victōria erit, L., XXIV. 38, 5 ; who first draws (shall have drawn) the sword, his shall be the victory.*

**623. Iterative Action.**—Relative sentences follow the laws laid down for Iterative action (566, 567).

#### I. Contemporaneous action :

*Ōre trahit quodcumque potest, atque addit acervō, H., S., I. I, 34 ; drags with its mouth whatever it can, and adds to the treasure (heap).*

*Quācumque incēdēbat agmen, lēgātī occurrēbant, L., XXXIV. 16, 6 ; in whatever direction the column advanced, ambassadors came to meet them.*

#### II. Prior action :

*Terra numquam sine usūrā reddit, quod accēpit, C., Cat.M., 15, 51 ; the earth never returns without interest what it has received (receives).*

*Haerēbant in memoriā quaecumque audierat et viderat Themistoclēs, C., Ac., II. 1, 2 ; whatever Themistocles heard and saw (had heard and seen), remained fixed in his memory.*

*Sequentur tē quōcumque pervēneris vitia, SEN., E.M., 28, 1 ; vices will follow you whithersoever you go.*

**REMARK.**—On the Subjv. in Iterative Sentences, see 567, R.



## MOODS IN RELATIVE SENTENCES.

**624.** The Relative clause, as such—that is, as the representative of an adjective—takes the Indicative mood.

*Uxor quae bona est*, PL., *Merc.*, 812; *a wife who is good (a good wife)*.

**625. Indefinite and Generic Relatives.**—*Quicumque, quisquis*, and the like, are Iterative in their nature and take the Indicative according to the principles of Iterative action; see 623.

REMARK.—The Subjv. is used :

(1) In *Ōrātiō Obliqua* (Total or Partial) :

*Marti Galli quae bellō cōperint* (Pl. Subjv.) *dēvovent* (= *sē datūrōs vovent*), Cf. CAES., *B.G.*, VI. 17, 8; *the Gauls devote (promise to give) to Mars whatever they (shall) take in war* (Ō. R., *Quae cōperimus, dabimus*).

(2) By Attraction of Mood (Complementary Clauses) :

*Quis eum diligit quem metuat?* C., *Lael.*, 15, 53; *who could love a man whom he fears?*

(3) In the Ideal Second Person :

*Bonus sēgnior fit ubi negligēs*, S., *Iug.*, 31, 28; *a good man becomes more spiritless when you neglect him*.

(626) **627.** The Subjunctive is employed in Relative clauses when it would be used in a simple sentence.

POTENTIAL: *Habēs quae velim*, C., *Fin.*, I. 8, 28; *I have what I should like*.

OPTATIVE: *Quod faustum sit, rēgem creāte*, L., I. 17, 10; *blessing be on your choice, make ye a king*.

REMARK.—Notice the Subjunctive in restrictive phrases like *quod sciam*, *so far as I know*.

**628.** The Subjunctive is used in Relative clauses which form a part of the statement or opinion of another than the narrator, or of the narrator himself when indirectly quoted. So especially in *Ōrātiō Obliqua* and Final Sentences.

*Rēctōs Graeci praecipiant, nōn temptanda quae effici nōn possint*, QUINT., IV. 5, 17; *right are the Greeks in teaching that those things are not to be attempted which cannot be accomplished*.

*Senātus cōsult uti quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, Haedūs defenderet*, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 35; *the senate decreed that whoever obtained Gaul as his province should defend the Haedui*.

REMARK.—Even in *Ōratiō Obliqua* the Indic. is retained :

(a) In explanations of the narrator :

*Nūntiātur Afrāniō magnās commēditūs qui iter habēbant ad Caesarem ad flūmen cōstitisse*, CAES., *B.C.*, I. 51, 1 ; *it is (was) announced to Afranius that large supplies of provisions* (which were on their way to Caesar) *had halted at the river.*

(b) In mere circumlocutions :

*Prōvidendum est nō quae dicuntur ab eō qui dicit dissentiant*, QUINT., III. 8, 48 ; *we must see to it that the speech be not out of keeping with the speaker.*

**629. Attraction of Mood.**—Relative sentences which depend on Infinitives and Subjunctives, and form a necessary part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive.

*Figri est ingenii contentum esse iis quae sint ab aliis inventa*, QUINT., X. 2, 4 ; *it is the mark of a slow genius to be content with what has been found out by others.*

*Si sōlōs eōs dicerēs miserōs quibus moriendum esset, nēmīnem eōrum qui viverent exaperēs* ; *moriendum est enim omnibus*, C., *Tusc.*, I. 5, 9 ; *if you called only those wretched who had (have) to die, you would except none who lived (live) ; for all have to die.*

REMARK.—The Indic. is used :

(a) In mere circumlocutions ; so, often in Consecutive Sentences :

*Efficitur ab ōrātōre, ut si qui audiunt ita adficiantur ut ōrātor velit*, Cf. C., *Br.*, 49, 185 ; *it is brought about by the orator that those who hear him (= his auditors) are affected as he wishes (them to be).*

(b) Of individual facts :

*Et quod vidēs perisse perditum dicēs*, CAT., VIII. 2 ; *and what you see (definite thing, definite person) is lost for aye, for aye deem lost.* (*Quod vidēs*, anybody, anything.)

**630. Relative Sentences of Design.**—Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Design, when *qui* = *ut* is, *in order that he*.

*Sunt multi qui ōripiunt aliis quod aliis largiantur*, C., *Off.*, I. 14, 43 ; *many are they who snatch from some to lavish on others.*

**631. Relative Sentences of Tendency.**—Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Tendency, when *qui* = *ut* is, *so that he* (*Subjunctive of Characteristic*).

The notion is generally that of Character and Adaptation, and we distinguish three varieties :

1. With a definite antecedent, when the character is emphasized ; regularly after *idōneus*, *suitable* ; *aptus*, *fit* ;

**dignus, worthy ; indignus, unworthy ;** after **is, tālis, eiusmodi, tam, tantus, and the like ;** after **ūnus and sōlus.**

**Est innocentia adfectiō tālis animi, quae noceat nēmini, C., Tusc., III. 8, 16 ;** *harmlessness (innocence) is that state of mind that does harm to no one (is innocuous to any one).*

**Sōlus es, Caesar, cūius in victōriā ceciderit nēmō, C., Dei., 12, 34 ;** *thou art the only one, Caesar, in whose victory no one has fallen.*

## 2. With indefinite antecedents such as :

**Est qui, sunt qui, there is, there are some who ; nēmō est qui, there is none to ; nihil est quod, there is nothing to ; multi, nōnulli sunt qui, there are many, some, to ; habes quod, I have to ; reperiuntur qui, persons are found who (to) . . . ; quis est qui ? who is there who (to) . . . ? est cūr, there is reason for, etc.** So, also, **fuit cum, there was a time when (580, R. 1).**

**Sunt qui discēsum animi ā corpore putent esse mortem, C., Tusc., I. 9, 18 ;** *there are some who (to) think that death is the departure of the soul from the body.*

**Post mortem in morte nihil est quod metum mali, PL., Capt., 741 ;** *after death there is no ill in death for me to dread.*

**Nec mea qui digitis lūmina condāt erit, Ov., Her., 10, 120 ;** *and there will be no one to close mine eyes with his fingers.*

**Miserimus est qui quom esse cupit quod edat nōn habet, PL., Capt., 463 ;** *he is a poor wretch who, when he wants to eat, has not anything to eat (nōn habet quid edat would mean does not know what to eat).*

REMARK.—The Indicative may be used in affirmative statements of definite facts, and not of general characteristics :

**Multi sunt qui eripiant, Multi sunt qui eripiunt,**  
*There are many to snatch away. Many are they who snatch away.*

**Sunt-qui (= quidam) quod sentiunt nōn audent dicere, C., Off., I. 24, 84 ;** *some dare not say what they think.*

**Sunt-quibus ingrātis timida indulgentia servit, Ov., A.A., II. 435 ;** *to some trembling indulgence plays the slave all thanklessly.*

## 3. After comparatives with **quam** as an object clause.

**Maiōra in defectione deliquerant, quam quibus ignosci posset, L., xxvi. 12, 6 ;** *(in that revolt) they had been guilty of greater crimes than could be forgiven (had sinned past forgiveness).*

**632. Quin in Sentences of Character.**—After negative clauses, **quin** is often used (556) for **qui nōn.**

**Sunt certa vitia quae nēmō est quin effugere cupiat, C., Or., III. 11, 41 ;** *there are certain faults which there is no one but (= everybody) desires to escape.*

**633. Relative in a Causal Sense.**—When *qui* = *cum* is, as *he*, the Subjunctive is employed.

*Caninius fuit mirificè vigilantis qui suò tñtò cōsulatū somnum nōn viderit*, C., *Fam.*, VII. 30, 1; *Caninius has shown marvellous watchfulness, not to have seen (= taken a wink of) sleep in his whole consulship.*

**634. Relative in a Concessive or Adversative Sense.**—When *qui* = *cum* is, *although, whereas he*, the Subjunctive is employed.

*Ego qui leviter Graecis litteris attigissem, tamen cum vēnissem Athēns complūres ibi diēs sum commoratus*, C., *Or.*, I. 18, 82; *although I had dabbled but slightly in Greek, nevertheless, having come to Athens, I stayed there several days.*

(635–6) **637. Relative Sentence represented by a Participle.**—The Relative sentence may be represented by a Participle.

*Omnēs aliud agentēs, aliud simulantēs perfidī sunt*, C., *Off.*, III. 14, 60; *all who are driving at one thing and pretending another are treacherous.*

## COMPARATIVE SENTENCES.

**638. Comparative Sentences** which are introduced in English by *as* or *than*, are introduced in Latin:

(a) By correlatives; (b) by *atque* or *ac*; (c) by *quam*.

**639. Moods in Comparative Sentences.**—The mood of the Dependent clause is the Indicative, unless the Subjunctive is required by the laws of oblique relation, or by the conditional idea (602).

REMARK.—On *potius quam* with the Subjv., see below, 644, R. 3.

**640.** The dependent clause often borrows its verb from the leading clause. Compare 602.

*Servi mōribus idem erant quibus dominus*, Cf. C., *Verr.*, III. 25, 62; *the servants had the same character as the master.*

**641.** When both clauses have the same verb and are both dependent upon a verb of Saying or Thinking, they have the same construction.

*Ita sentis Latinam linguam locupletiorē esse quam Graecam*, C., *Fin.*, I. 3, 10; *it is my opinion that the Latin language is richer than the Greek.*

Ego Gaium Caesarem nōn eadem dē rē publicā sentire quae mē sciō,  
C., Pis., 32, 79; *I know that Gaius Caesar has not the same political  
views that I (have).*

### I. Correlative Comparative Sentences.

642. Correlative Sentences of Comparison are introduced by Adjective and Adverbial Correlatives :

#### 1. Adjective correlatives :

tot, totidem	quot,	(so) as many	} as.
tantus	quantus,	(so) as great	
tālis	quālis,	such	
idem	qui,	the same	

#### 2. Adverbial correlatives :

tam	quam,	(so) as much	} as.
tantopere	quantopere,	(so) as much	
totiēns	quotiēns,	as often	
tamdiū	quamdīū,	as long	
ita, sic	{ ut, uti, sicut, quemadmodum, quōmodo,	} so (as) = as.	
item, itidem			

Quot hominēs, tot sententiæ, (as) many men, (so) many minds, TER.,  
Ph., 454.

Frumentum tanti fuit quanti iste aestimāvit, C., Verr., III. 84, 194;  
*corn was worth as much as he valued it.*

Plērique habēre amicum tālem volunt, quāles ipsi esse nōn possunt, C.,  
Lael., 22, 82; *most people wish to have a friend of a character such as  
they themselves cannot possess.*

Nihil est tam populāre quam bonitās, C., Lig., 12, 37; *nothing is so  
winning as kindness.*

Sic dē ambitīōne quōmodo dē amicō queruntur, SEN., E.M., 22, 10;  
*they complain of ambition as they do of a sweetheart.*

Tamdiū requiescō quamdiū ad tē scribō, C., Att., IX. 4, 1; *I rest as  
long as I am writing to you.*

#### 3. The Correlative is sometimes omitted.

Homō, nōn quam isti sunt, glōriōsus, L., xxxv. 49, 7; *a man, not (so)  
vainglorious as they are.*

Discēs quamdiū volēs, C., Off., I. 1, 2; *you shall learn (as long) as  
you wish.*

II. Comparative Sentences with **ATQUE** (**ĀC**).

**643.** Adjectives and Adverbs of Likeness and Unlikeness may take **atque** or **āc**.

*Virtus eadem in homine āc deū est*, C., *Leg.*, I. 8, 25 ; *virtue is the same in man as in god*.

*Dissimulatio est cum alia dicuntur āc sentias*, C., *Or.*, II. 67, 269 ; *dis-simulation is when other things are said than what you mean* (something is said other than what you mean).

*Nōn dixi secus āc sentiebam*, C., *Or.*, II. 6, 24 ; *I did not speak otherwise than I thought*.

III. Comparative Sentences with **QUAM**.

**644.** Comparative Sentences with **quam** follow the comparative degree or comparative expressions.

The Verb of the dependent clause is commonly to be supplied from the leading clause, according to 640.

In Comparative Sentences **quam** takes the same case after it as before it.

*Melior est certa pax quam sperata victoria*, L., xxx. 30, 19 ; *better is certain peace than hoped-for victory*.

*Potius amicum quam dictum perdidit*, QUINT., VI. 3, 20 ; *I preferred to lose my friend rather than my joke*.

REMARKS.—1. When the second member is a subject, and the first member an oblique case, the second member *must* be put in the Nom., with the proper form of the verb **esse**, unless the oblique case be an Accusative :

*Vicinus tuus equum meliorem habet quam tuus est*, Cf. C., *Inv.*, I. 31, 52 ; *your neighbor has a better horse than yours*.

*Ego hominem callidorem vidi neminem quam Phormionem*, TER., *Ph.*, 591 ; *I have seen no shrewder man than Phormio* (= *quam Phormio est*).

2. On **quam** **prō**, and **quam** **quī**, see 298. On the double comparative, see 299.

3. (a) When two clauses are compared by **potius**, *rather*, **prius**, *before*, **citius**, *quicker*, *sooner*, the second clause is put in the Pr. or Impf. Subjv. (512), with or without **ut**.

*Dēpugnā potius quam serviā*, C., *Att.*, VII. 7, 7 ; *fight it out rather than be a slave*.

(b) If the leading clause is in the Inf., the dependent clause may be in the Inf. likewise.

*Sē ab omnibus desertōs potius quam abs tē dēfensōs esse mālunt*, C., *Div. in Caec.*, 6, 21 ; *they prefer to be deserted by all rather than defended by you*.

## THE ABRIDGED SENTENCE.

**645.** The compound sentence may be reduced to a simple sentence, by substituting an Infinitive or a Participle for the dependent clause.

**646.** The practical uses of the Infinitive and its kindred forms, as equivalents of dependent clauses, have already been considered :

Infinitive after Auxiliary Verbs : 423.

Gerund and Gerundive : 425-433.

Supine : 434-436.

Infinitive in Object Sentences : 526-531.

Infinitive in Complementary Final Sentences : 532, 546,

R. 3.

Infinitive in Relative Sentences : (635), 655, R. 1.

## HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.

**647.** The Present Infinitive is sometimes used by the historians to give a rapid sequence of events, with the subject in the Nominative ; generally, several Infinitives in succession.

*Verrēs minitārī Diodōrō, vōciferārī palam, lacrimās interdum vix tenēre, C., Verr., IV. 18, 39 ; Verrēs threatened (was for threatening) Diodorus, bawled out before everybody, sometimes could hardly restrain his tears.*

## ŌRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA.

**648.** The thoughts of the narrator, or the exact words of a person, as reported by the narrator, are called **Ōrātiō Rēcta**, or Direct Discourse.

Indirect Discourse, or **Ōrātiō Oblīqua**, reports not the exact words spoken, but the general impression produced.

REMARKS.—1. Under the general head of **Ōrātiō Oblīqua** are embraced also those clauses which imply Indirect Quotation (Partial Obliquity). See 508.

2. *Inquam*, *quoth I*, is used in citing the **Ōrātiō Rēcta** ; *aiō*, *I say*, generally in **Ōrātiō Oblīqua**.

*Inquam* never precedes the **Ōrātiō Oblīqua**, but is always parenthetic ; *aiō* may or may not be parenthetic.

649. *Ōrātiō Obliqua* differs from *Ōrātiō Rēcta*, partly in the use of the Moods and Tenses, partly in the use of the pronouns.

#### Moods in *Ōrātiō Obliqua*.

650. In *Ōrātiō Obliqua* the *principal* clauses (except Interrogatives and Imperatives) are put in the *Infinitive*, the *subordinate* clauses in the *Subjunctive*.

*Ōrātiō Rēcta*: Apud Hypanim fluvium, inquit Aristotelēs,

*Ōrātiō Obliqua*: Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait

Ō. R.: bēstiolae quaedam nāscuntur,

Ō. O.: bēstiolās quāsdam nāscī,

Ō. R.: quae unum diem vivunt,

Ō. O.: quae unum diem vivant, C., *Tusc.*, I. 39, 94.

Ō. R.—On the river Bog, says Aristotle, } little creatures are born, that live

Ō. O.—Aristotle says that on the river Bog, } (but) one day.

Sōcratēs dicere solēbat:

Ō. R. Omnēs in eō quod sciunt satis sunt eloquentēs,

Ō. O. Omnēs in eō quod scirent satis esse eloquentēs, C., *Or.*, I. 14, 63.

Ō. R. Socrates used to say: "All men ARE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTAND."

Ō. O. Socrates used to say that all men WERE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTOOD.

REMARK.—When the Principal Clause, or Apodosis, is in the Indic., the Inf. is used according to the rule for Verbs of Saying and Thinking. When the Principal Clause, or Apodosis, is in the Subjv., as in the Ideal and Unreal Conditions, special rules are necessary (656).

Otherwise, Subjv. in Ō. R. continues to be Subjv. in Ō. O.

651. Interrogative sentences are put in the Subjunctive, according to 467; inasmuch as the verb of Saying involves the verb of Asking.

Arriovistus respondit sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum: quid sibi vellet cūr in suās possessiōnēs veniret, CAES., *B.G.*, I. 44, 7; *Arriovistus replied that he had come to Gaul before the Roman people; what did he (Caesar) mean by coming into his possessions?* (*Quid tibi vis?*)

REMARKS.—1. Indicative Rhetorical Questions (464), being substantially statements, are transferred from the Indic. of Ō. R. to the Acc. and Inf. of Ō. O. when they are in the First and Third Persons. The Second Person goes into the Subjunctive.

Ō. R. Num possum? Can I?

[No.] Ō. O. Num posse?

CAES., *B.G.*, I. 14, Could he?

Quid est turpius? What is baser? [Nothing.] Quid esse turpius?

CAES., *B.G.*, v. 28, 6; What was baser?



*Quō sē repulsi ab Rōmānis itūrō?* L., XXXIV. II, 6; *whither should they go, if repelled by the Romans?* (*Quō ibimus?*)

*Cui nōn appārere ab eō qui prior arma intulisset iniūriam ortam esse?* L., XXXII. IO, 6; *to whom is it not evident that the wrong began with him, who had been the first to wage war?* (*Cui nōn appāret?*)

*Si bonum dūcerent, quid prō noxiō damnaissent?* L., XXVII. 34, 13; *if they thought him a good man, why had they condemned him as guilty?* (*Si bonum dūcitis, quid prō noxiō damnaistis?*)

2. In Subjv. Rhetorical Questions the Subjv. is either retained or transferred to the Infinitive. *The Deliberative Subjv. is always retained.*

*Quis sibi persuaderet sine certā rē Ambiorigem ad eiusmodi cōsiliū descendisse?* CAES., B.G., V. 29, 5; *who could persuade himself that Ambiorix had proceeded to an extreme measure like that, without (having made) a sure thing (of it)?* (*Quis sibi persuaderet?*)

652. Imperative sentences are put in the Subjunctive, sometimes with, usually without, *ut*; the Negative is, of course, *nō* (never *ut nō*).

*Reddatur rēspōsum: nōndum tempus pūgnae esse; castris sē tenērent,* L., II. 45, 8; *there was returned for answer, that it was not yet time to fight, that they must keep within the camp.* (*Ō. R., castris vōs tenēte.*)

*Vercingetorix cohortātus est: nō perturbārentur incommōdō,* CAES., B.G., VII. 29, 1; *Vercingetorix comforted them (by saying) that they must not be disconcerted by the disaster.* (*Ō. R., nōlite perturbārī.*)

#### Tenses in Ōrātiō Obliqua.

653. The Tenses of the Infinitive follow the laws already laid down (530):

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action;

The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action;

The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

REMARK.—The Impf. Indic., as expressing prior continuance, becomes the Pf. Inf. in Ō. O., and hence loses its idea of continuance.

654. The Tenses of the Subjunctive follow the laws of sequence (510). The choice is regulated by the point of view of the Reporter, or the point of view of the Speaker.\*

Point of View of the Reporter:

*Lēgātīōnī Ariovistus rēspōdit: sibi mirum vidārī quid in suā Galliā quam bellō vicisset, Caesari negōtīū esset,* CAES., B.G., I. 34, 4; *to the embassy Ariovistus replied, that it seemed strange to him (he wondered) what business Caesar had in his Gaul, which he had conquered in war.*

\* This is technically called *repraesentātiō*, *representation*.

## Point of View of the Speaker :

*Lēgātīs Helvētiōrum Caesar respondit: cōsueſse deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciſci velint, his ſecundiorēs interdum res concedere, CAES., B. G., I. 14, 5; to the envoys of the Helvetians Caesar replied, that the Gods were (are) wont, that men might (may) suffer the more severely from change in their fortunes, to grant occasional increase of prosperity to those whom they wished (wish) to punish for their crime.*

## Point of View shifted :

*Ad haec Mārcius respondit: Si quid ab ſenātū petere vellent, ab armis diſcedant, S., C., 34, 1; thereto Marcius replied: If they wished to ask anything of the senate, they must lay down their arms.*

### 655. Object, Causal, Temporal, and Relative Clauses follow the general laws for Subordinate Clauses in Ōrātiō Obliqua.

For examples of Object Clauses, see 525; for Causal, see 541; for Temporal, see 561-564, 569-577; for Relative, see 628.

REMARKS.—1. Coördinate Relative Clauses are put in the Acc. and Infinitive occasionally, especially in CICERO.

2. Relative Clauses are put in the Indicative: (a) In mere circumlocutions. (b) In explanations of the narrator (628, R.).

3. *Dum*, with the Indic., is often retained as a mere circumlocution:

*Dic, hospes, Spartae nōs tē hīc vīdiſſe iacentis, dum ſāctis patriae lēgibus obsequimur, C., Tusc., I. 42, 101; tell Sparta, stranger, that thou hast seen us lying here obeying (in obedience to) our country's hallowed laws.*

### 656. Conditional Sentences in Ōrātiō Obliqua, Total and Partial.

1. The Protasis follows the rule for subordinate clauses (650).

2. The Indicative Apodosis follows the rule, but Present, Imperfect, and Perfect Subjunctive are turned into the Future Infinitive or its periphrases.

The Pluperfect Subjunctive is transferred to the Perfect Infinitive of the Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

Passive and Supineless Verbs take the circumlocution with *futūrum fuisse ut* . . . 248.

REMARK.—*Pesse* needs no Fut. (248 R.), and *potuisse* no Periphrastic Pf. Inf., so that these forms are often used to lighten the construction.

3. *Identical Forms*.—In the transfer of Conditions to **Ō. 0.**, the difference between many forms disappears. For instance,

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| I. 1. Si id crēdis, errābis.       | } Dicō tē, si id crēdās, errātūrum esse.      |
| 2. Si id crēdēs, errābis.          |   |
| 3. Si id crēdās, errēs.            |   |
| II. 1. Si id crēdis, errābis.      | } Dixi tē, si id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.    |
| 2. Si id crēdēs, errābis.          |   |
| 3. Si id crēdās, errēs.            |   |
| 4. Si id crēderēs, errārēs.        |   |
| III. 1. Si id crēdideris, errābis. | } Dixi tē, si id crēdidissēs, errātūrum esse. |
| 2. Si id crēdideris, errēs.        |   |
| 3. Si id crēdideris, errāveris.    |   |
| 4. Si id crēdidissēs, errārēs.     |   |

### 657. Logical Conditions in *Ōrātiō Obliqua*.

Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: si ipse populū Rōmānū nōn praescriberet quemadmodum suū iūre ūteretur, nōn oportere sēs & populū Rōmānū in suū iūre impediri, CAES., *B. G.*, I. 36, 2; to this Ariovistus made answer: If he did not prescribe to the Roman people how to exercise their right, he ought not to be hindered by the Roman people in the exercise of his right. (Ō. R.: si ego nōn praescribō, nōn oportet mē impediri.)

Si bonum dūcerent, quid prō noxiō damnaessent? Si noxium comperissent, quid alterum cōsulātum crēderent? L., XXVII. 34, 13; if they thought him a good man, why had they condemned him as guilty; if, on the other hand, they had found him guilty, why did they intrust him with a second consulship? (Ō. R.: si—dūcitis, quid damnaestis? si—comperistis, quid crēditis?)

Eum omnium labōrum finem fore existimābant si hostem Hibērō intercludere potuissent, CAES., *B. C.*, I. 68, 3; they thought that would be the end of all (their) toils, if they could cut off the enemy from the Ebro. (Ō. R.: is labōrum finis erit (or fuerit) si hostem intercludere potuerimus.)

Nōn multō ante urbem captam exaudita vōx est . . . futūrum esse, nisi prōvisum esset, ut Rōma caperetur, C., *Div.*, I. 45, 101; not long before the taking of the city, a voice was heard (saying), that unless precautions were adopted, Rome would be taken. (Ō. R.: nisi prōvisum erit, Rōma capiētur.)

Ariovistus respondit nisi decēdat Caesar sēs illum prō hoste habitūrum; quod si eum interfecerit, multis sēs nōbilibus principibusque populī Rōmāni grātum esse factūrum, CAES., *B. G.*, I. 44, 12; Ariovistus replied, that unless Caesar withdrew, he should regard him as an enemy, and in case he killed him, he would do a favor to many men of the highest position among the Roman people. (Ō. R.: nisi decēdēs tē prō hoste habēbō . . . si tē interfecerō grātum fēcerō; 244, R. 4.)

REMARK.—*Posse* is used as has been stated (656, 2, R.).

*Negarunt dirimi bellum posse nisi Messenii Achaem Pylum redderent*, L., XXVII. 30, 13; *they said that the war could not be stopped unless the Achaeans restored Pylos to the Messenians.* (Ō. R.: *bellum dirimi nōn potest (poterit) nisi Pylum reddent.*)

*Decent, si turris concidisset, nōn posse militēs continēri quin spēs praedae in urbem irrumperent*, CAES., B.C., II. 12, 4; *they show that if the tower fell, the soldiers could not be kept from bursting into the city in the hope of booty.* (Ō. R.: *si conciderit, nōn possunt (poterunt) continēri.*)

### 658. Ideal Conditions in Ōrātiō Obliqua.

*Ait sē si uratur "Quam hōc suāve" dictūrum*, C., *Fin.*, II. 27, 88; *he declares that if he were to be burnt he would say, "How sweet this is."* (Ō. R.: *si urar, dicam*, same form as Logical.)

*Voluptātem si ipsa prō sē loquatur concēssuram arbitror Dignitāti*, C., *Fin.*, III. 1, 1; *I think that if Pleasure were to speak for herself, she would yield (the palm) to Virtue.* (Si loquatur, concēdat.)

### 659. Unreal Conditions in Ōrātiō Obliqua.

*Titurius clāmitābat Eburōnēs, si [Caesar] adesset, ad castra ventūrōs nōn esse*, CAES., B.G., v. 29, 2; *Titurius kept crying out that if Caesar were there, the Eburones would not be coming to the camp.* (Ō. R.: *si Caesar adesset, Eburōnēs nōn venirent.*)

*Appārebat si diūtius vixisset, Hamilcare duce Poenōs arma Italiae inlātūrōs fuisse*, L., XXI. 2, 2; *it was evident that if he had lived longer, the Punics would have carried their arms into Italy under Hamilcar's conduct.* (Ō. R.: *si . . . vixisset . . . intulissent.*)

*Nisi eō ipso tempore nūntiī dē Caesaris victoriā essent allātī existimābant plērique futūrum fuisse ut oppidum amitteretur*, CAES., B.C., III. 101, 3; *had not news of Caesar's victory been brought at that very time, most persons thought the city would have been lost.* (Ō. R.: *nisi nūntiī allātī essent, oppidum amissum esset.*)

### Pronouns in Ōrātiō Obliqua.

660. 1. The Reflexive is used according to the principles laid down in 520 ff.

2. The person addressed is usually *ille*; less often *is*.

*Ariovistus respondit nisi dēcedat Caesar sēsē illum prō hoste habitūrum: quod si eum interfecerit, multis sēsē nōbilibus principibusque populi Rōmāni grātum esse factūrum*, CAES., B.G., I. 44, 12 (657).

Of course, this does not exclude the ordinary demonstrative use.

3. **Hic** and **iste** are commonly changed into **ille** or **is**, **nunc** is changed into **tum** and **tunc**, except when already contrasted with **tunc**, when it is retained.

Diodorus respondit illud argentum sē paucis illis diebus misisse Lilybaeum, C., Verr., IV. 18, 39 (393, R. 4).

4. **Nōs** is used when the narrator's party is referred to ; compare CAES., B. G., I. 44, below.

### 661. Specimens of the conversion of Ōrātiō Obliqua into Ōrātiō Rēcta.

#### Ōrātiō Obliqua.

##### 1. *Arionistus respondit :*

Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallis ; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse ; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntate datōs ; stipendium capere iūre belli, quod victōrēs victis impōnere cōnsuerint. Nōn sēsē Gallis sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse ; omnēs Galliae civitates ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse et contrā sē castra habuisse ; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās āc superātas esse. Sī iterum experiri velint, sē iterum parātum esse decertāre ; sī pāce ūti velint, iniquum esse dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntate ad id tempus pependerit. Amicitiam populi Rōmāni sibi ōrnamētō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportere idque sē eā spē petisse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittatur et dediticiū subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populi Rōmāni amicitiam quam appetiit. Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trāducat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facere ; eius rei tēstimōniō esse quod nisi rogātus nōn venerit et quod bellum nōn intulerit sed dēfenderit.

CAES., B. G., I. 44.

#### Ōrātiō Rēcta.

Trānsi Rhēnum nōn meā sponte sed rogātus et arcessitus ā Gallis ; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliqui ; sēdēs habēō in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntate datōs ; stipendium capiō iūre belli, quod victōrēs victis impōnere cōnsuerunt. Nōn ego Gallis sed Galli mihi bellum intulerunt ; omnēs Galliae civitatēs ad mē oppugnandum vēnerunt et contrā mē castra habuerunt ; eae omnēs cōpiae ā mē ūnō proeliō pulsae āc superatae sunt. Sī iterum experiri volunt, iterum parātus sum decertāre, sī pāce ūti volunt, iniquum est dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntate ad hōc tempus pependerunt. Amicitiam populi Rōmāni mihi ōrnamētō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportet idque eā spē peti. Sī per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittatur et dediticiū subtrahentur, nōn minus libenter recūsādō populi Rōmāni amicitiam quam appeti. Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trāducam,\* id mei mūniendī, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā faciō ; eius rei tēstimōniō est quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnī et quod bellum nōn intulī sed dēfendi.

\* Allusion to the preceding speech, otherwise trādūcō.

## Ōratiō Obliqua.

## Ōratiō Rēcta.

2. *Hīs Caesar ita respondit :*

*Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari quod eas res quas lēgātī Helvētīi commemorāssent memoriā tenēret atque eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī accidissent ; quī sī alicūius iniūriāe sibi cōnsciū fuisset nōn fuisse difficile cavēre ; sed eō dēceptum quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quārē timēret neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, nūm etiā recentium iniūriarū, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciā per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent memoriā dēpōnere posse ? Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne tulisse iniūriās admirārentur eōdem pertinēre. Cōsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rerū doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum res et diūturniōrem impietatem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriis quas ipsi sociisq̄ue eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciānt, sēsē cum iis pacem esse factūrū.*

CAES., B. G., I. 14.

3. *Sulla regi patefecit :*

*Quod polliceatur, senatum et populum Rōmānū, quoniam amplius armīs valuissent, nōn in grātiā habitūrōs ; faciundum aliquid, quod illōrum magis quam suā rētulisse vidēretur ; id ideo in prōptū esse, quoniam Iugurthae cōpiā habēret, quem sī Rōmānis trādidisset, fore ut illi plurimum dēberētur ; amicitiam, foedus, Numidiāe partem, quam nunc peteret, tunc ultro adventūrā.*

S., Iug., III.

*Hoc mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur quod eas res quas vos, lēgātī Helvētīi, commemorāstis, memoriā teneō atque hōc gravius ferō quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī acciderunt ; quī sī alicūius iniūriāe sibi cōnsciū fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre ; sed eō dēceptum quod neque commissum ā sē intellegēbat quārē timēret neque sine causā timendum putābat. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī volō, nūm etiā recentium iniūriarū, quod me invītō iter per prōvinciā per vim temptāstis, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāstis, memoriā dēpōnere possum ? Quod vestrā victōriā tam insolenter glōriāmini, quodque tam diū vos impūne tulisse iniūriās admirāmini eōdem pertinet. Cōsuēverunt enim dī immortālēs quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rerū doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī volunt, hīs secundiōrēs interdum res et diūturniōrem impietatem concēdere. Cum haec ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ā vobis mihi dabuntur, uti ea, quae pollicēmini, factūrōs intellegam et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriis quas ipsi sociisq̄ue eōrum intulistis, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, ego vōbiscum pacem faciam.*

*Quod pollicēris, senātus et populus Rōmānus quoniam amplius armīs valuērunt, nōn in grātiā habebunt ; faciundum aliquid, quod illōrum magis quam tuā rētulisse videatur ; id ideo in prōptū est, quoniam Iugurthae cōpiā habēs, quem sī Rōmānis trādidērīs, tibi plurimum dēbetur ; amicitia, foedus, Numidiāe pars, quam nunc petis, tunc ultro adveniet.*

## Ōrtiō Oblīqua.

## Ōrtiō Rēcta.

4. *Athēniēnsēs dēplōrāvērunt vāstātiōnem populātiōnemque miserābilem agrōrum.* Neque sē id queri quod hostilia ab hoste passi forent; esse enim quaedam belli iūra quae ut facere ita pati *sit* fās. Sata exūri, dirui tēcta, praedās hominum pecorumque agi misera magis quam indigna patienti *esse*; vērū enim vērō id sē queri, quod is, qui Rōmānōs aliēnigēnās et barbarōs vocet, adēō omnia simul divīna hūmānaque iūra polluerit ut priore populātiōne cum infēnis diis, secundā cum superis bellum nefārium gesserit. Omnia sepulcra monumentaque diruta *esse* in finibus *suīs*, omnium nūdātōs mānēs, nūllius ossa terrā tegi. Quālem terram Atticam fecerit, exōrnatam quondam opulentamque, tālem *eum* si liceat Aetōliam Graeciamque omnem *factūrum*. Urbis quoque *suae* similem dēfōrmitātē futūrā fuisse, nisi Rōmāni subvēnissent.

L., xxxi. 30.

Nōn id querimur quod hostilia ab hoste passi *sumus*. *Sunt* enim quaedam belli iūra quae ut facere ita pati *est* fās. Sata exūri, dirui tēcta, praedās hominum pecorumque agi misera magis quam indigna patienti *sunt*; vērū enim vērō id querimur quod is, qui Rōmānōs aliēnigēnās et barbarōs vocat, adēō omnia simul divīna hūmānaque iūra polluit ut priore populātiōne cum infēnis diis, secundā cum superis bellum nefārium gesserit. Omnia sepulcra monumentaque diruta *sunt* in finibus *nostris*, omnium nūdātī mānēs, nūllius ossa terrā teguntur. Quālem terram Atticam fecit, exōrnatam quondam opulentamque, tālem *is*, si licēbit (or: liceat) Aetōliam Graeciamque omnem faciet (or: faciat). Urbis quoque *nostrae* similis dēfōrmitās fuisset, nisi Rōmāni subvēnissent.

## PARTICIPIAL SENTENCES.

(662-3) **664.** Participles are used in Latin even more extensively than in English, to express a great variety of subordinate relations, such as Time and Circumstance. Cause and Occasion, Condition and Concession. The classification cannot always be exact, as one kind blends with another.

REMARKS.—1. It is sometimes convenient to translate a Participial sentence by a coordinate clause, but the Participle itself is never coordinate, and such clauses are never equivalents.

*Mānlius Gallum caesum torque spoliāvit*, L., vi. 42, 5; *Manlius slew the Gaul and stripped him of his neckchain* (after slaying the Gaul stripped him of his neckchain, having slain, etc.).

*Miltiadēs capitis absolūtus, pecūniā multātus est*, NEP., i. 7, 6; *Miltiades (though) acquitted of a capital charge, was mulcted in (a sum of) money (was acquitted, but mulcted)*.

2. A common translation of the Participle is an abstract substantive; see 325, R. 3.

*Nec terra mutāta mutāvit mōrēs*, L., xxxvii. 54, 18; *nor hath the change of land changed the character*.

**Tenecer Ulixén reum facit Áiádis oecidi, QUINT., IV. 2, 18 ;** *Tenecer indicts Ulysses for the murder of Ajax.*

3. On the Participle after verbs of Perception and Representation, see 536.

### 665. Participles may represent Time When.

**Alexander moriēns anulū suū dederat Perdiccae, NEP., XVIII. 2, 1 ;** *Alexander (when he was) dying, had given his ring to Perdiccas.*

**Dionýsius tyrannus Syracūsas expulsus Corinthi puerōs docebat, C., Tusc., III. 12, 27 ;** *Dionysius the tyrant, (after he had been) exiled from Syracuse (after his exile from Syracuse), taught (a) boys' (school) at Corinth.*

#### Ablative Absolute.

**Solōn et Pisistratus Serviū Tulliū regnante viguerunt, C., Br., 10, 39 ;** *Solon and Pisistratus flourished when Servius Tullius was king (in the reign of Servius Tullius).*

**Sole ortō Volsci sē circumvallātōs vidērunt, Cf. L., IV. 9, 13 ;** *when the sun was risen (after sunrise) the Volscians saw that they were surrounded by lines of intrenchment.*

### 666. Participles may represent Cause Why.

**Arēopagitae damnāverunt puerum coturnicem oculōs ēruentem, Cf. QUINT., V. 9, 13 ;** *the court of Mars' Hill condemned a boy for plucking out (because he plucked out) the eyes of quails.*

**Athēniēnsēs Alcibiadem corruptum ā rēge Persarū capere nōluisse Cýmēn arguēbant, Cf. NEP., VII. 7, 2 ;** *the Athenians charged Alcibiades with having been unwilling to take Cyme (because he had been) bribed by the King of Persia.*

#### Ablative Absolute.

**Rōmānī veterēs regnārī omnes volēbant libertātis dulcedine nōndum experti, L., I. 17, 3 ;** *the old Romans all wished to have a king over them (because they had) not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.*

### 667. Participles may represent Condition and Concession.

For Condition, see 593, 2 ; for Concession, 609.

#### Ablative Absolute.

**Māximās virtūtēs iacēre omnes necesse est voluptātē dominante, C., Fin., II. 35, 117 ;** *all the greatest virtues must necessarily lie prostrate if pleasure is mistress.*

### 668. Participles may represent Relative Clauses ; see 637.

**REMARK.—So-called, qui dicitur, vocātur, quem vocant ; above-mentioned, quem antea, supra diximus.**



(669) **670.** In later Latin, the Future Participle (active) is used to represent subordinate relations (438, R. 2) :

1. Time When.

**Tiberius trāiectūrus** (= cum trāiectūrus esset) **Rhēnum commēditum nōn trāsmisit**, Suet., *Tib.*, 18; *when Tiberius was about to cross the Rhine, he did not send over the provisions.*

2. Cause Why.

**Dēridiculō fuit senex foedissimae adūlātōnis tantum infāmīe usūrus**, Tac., *Ann.*, III. 57, 3; *a butt of ridicule was the old man, as infamy was the only gain he would make by his foul fawning.*

3. Purpose (usually after a verb of Motion).

**Marbodūus misit lēgātōs ad Tiberium ōrātūrōs auxilia**, Tac., *Ann.*, II. 46; *Marbod sent commissioners to Tiberius, to beg for reinforcements.*

4. Condition and Concession.

**Quātūnt arma, ruptūri imperium nī dūcantur**, Tac., *H.*, III. 19, 3; *they clash their arms, ready to break orders, if they be not led forward.*

**Librum misi exigenti tibi, missūrus etsi nōn exēgissēs**, Plin., *Ep.*, III. 13, 1; *I have sent you the book, as you exacted it, although I should have sent it even if you had not exacted it.*

## ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

**671.** The Latin language allows greater freedom in the arrangement of words than the English. This freedom is, of course, due to its greater wealth of inflections.

Two elements enter into the composition of a Latin Sentence, governing to some extent its arrangement : Grammar and Rhetoric.

**672.** 1. Grammatical arrangement has for its object clearness.

2. Rhetorical arrangement has for its objects Emphasis and Rhythm. Emphasis is usually produced by reversing the ordinary position ; rhythm often governs the order of words at the close of a sentence.

(673) **674.** The most simple arrangement of a sentence is as follows:

1. The Subject and its Modifiers.

2. The Predicate and its Modifiers.

1. **Dionysius tyrannus, Syracūsīs expulsus**, 2. **Corinthi puerōs docebat**, C., *Tusc.*, III. 12, 27; 1. *Dionysius the tyrant* (after he had been) *exiled from Syracuse*, 2. *taught (a) boys' (school) at Corinth.*

Rhetorical position :

**Potentēs sequitur invidia**, Quint., IV. 1, 14; *it's the POWERFUL that envy follows.*

**675.** Interrogative Sentences begin with the interrogative ; subordinate clauses with the leading particle or relative.

**676.** An adjective usually precedes, but often follows, the word to which it belongs ; see 291.

A dependent Genitive usually follows the governing word ; so too does a word in Apposition.

REMARKS.—1. The demonstrative pronouns regularly precede ; the possessives regularly follow.

2. Ordinals regularly follow, Cardinals regularly precede the substantive.

3. Many expressions have become fixed formulae : so titles, proper names, and the like ; see 288.

4. The titles *rēx*, *imperator*, *etc.*, frequently precede the proper name with which they are in apposition.

**677.** Adverbs are commonly put next to their verb (before it when it ends a sentence), and immediately before their adjective or adverb ; see 440.

REMARKS.—1. *Ferē*, *pæne*, *prope*, usually follow.

2. Negatives always precede ; see 448.

**678.** Prepositions regularly precede their case (418).

**679.** Particles vary.

*Enim* commonly takes the second, seldom the third place ; *nam* and *namque* are regularly prepositive. See 498.

*Ergō* in the syllogism precedes, elsewhere follows ; *igitur* is commonly second or third ; *itaque* regularly first. See 500, 501.

*Tamen* is first, but may follow an emphatic word. See 490.

*Etiam* usually precedes, *quoque* always follows. See 478, 479.

*Quidem* and *dēmum* (*at length*) follow the word to which they belong.

## FIGURES OF SYNTAX AND RHETORIC.

(680–7) **688.** Ellipsis is the omission of some integral part of the thought, such as the substantive of the adjective, the copula of the predicate, the verb of the adverb.

*Unde domō ?* V., A., VIII. 114.

**689.** Brachylogy (*breviloquentia*) is a failure to repeat an element which is often to be supplied in a more or less modified form.

*Tam felix esēs quam fōrmōsissima* (= es) *vellem*, Ov., *Am.*, I. 8, 27 ; *would thou wert fortunate as (thou art) fair.*

**690.** Zeugma or Syllēpsis is a junction of two words under the same regimen, or with the same modifier, although the common factor strictly applies but to one.

**Manūs ēc supplicēs vōcēs ad Tiberium tendēns,** (Tac., *Ann.*, II. 29, 2 ; *stretching out hands and* (uttering) *suppliant cries to Tiberius.*

**691.** Aposiōpēsis is a rhetorical breaking off before the close of the sentence, as in the famous Vergilian *Quōs ego . . . . .*

**692.** Pleonasm is the use of superfluous words.

**693.** Enallagé is a shift from one form to another : **vōs ō Calliopē precor,** V., A., IX. 525.

Hypallagé is an interchange in the relations of words : **dare clāssibus austrōs,** V., A., III. 61.

**694.** Oxymōron is the use of words apparently contradictory of each other : **cum tacent clāmant,** C., *Cat.*, I. 8, 21.

**695.** Synecdoché is the use of the part for the whole, or the reverse : **tētum** for **domum**, **puppis** for **nāvis**, **mucrō** for **gladius**, etc.

**696.** Hypérbaton, Trajection, is a violent displacement of words. **Lydia dīc per omnēs tē deōs ōrō,** H., *O.*, I. 8, 1.

**697.** Anacolūthon, or *want of sequence*, occurs when the scheme of a sentence is changed in its course.

**698.** Hendiadys (ἐν διὰ δυοῖν) consists in giving an analysis instead of a complex, in putting two substantives connected by a copulative conjunction, instead of one substantive and an adjective or attributive genitive.

**Vulgus et multitūdō,** *the common herd.* **Via et ratiō** (C., *Verr.*, I. 16, 47), *scientific method.* **Vi et armis,** *by force of arms.*

So two verbs may be translated by an adverb and a verb : **fundi fugārique,** *to be utterly routed.*

**699.** Cōstrūctiō Praegnāns. So-called **cōstrūctiō praegnāns** is nothing but an extended application of the accusative of the Inner Object (Object Effected). The result is involved, not distinctly stated.

**Exitium inrītāt,** Cf. Tac., *Ann.*, XIII. I, 1 ; *he provokes destruction* (ad exitium inrītāt).

**700.** Lītōtēs, or Understatement, is the use of an expression by which more is meant than meets the ear. This is especially common with the Negative.

**Nōn indecōrō pulvere sordidi,** H., *O.*, II. I, 22.

# PROSODY.

---

## 701. PROSODY treats of Quantity and Versification

### QUANTITY.

**702.** A syllable is said to be long *by nature* when it contains a long vowel or diphthong : *ō, vae, lēgēs, saevae.*

REMARKS.—1. (a) A vowel before *-gm, -gn, -nf, -ns*, and i consonant (j) is long *by nature* ; (b) a vowel before *-nt, -nd* is short *by nature*.

EXCEPTIONS : *Cōntiō* (for *conventiō*), *assembly* ; *nūntius*, *messenger* ; *quintus*, *fifth* ; also *nūndinae* (*noven-d-*), *market day* ; *nōndum*, *not yet* ; *prēndō*, *I seize* ; *quīndecim*, *fifteen* ; *vēndō*, *I sell* ; *ūndecim*, *eleven* ; *vin-dēmia*, *vintage*, and some Greek words. Compounds of *-iugum* have preceding vowel short.

2. Inchoative verbs have vowel before *-sc* long *by nature* ; *discō*, *I learn*.

3. Noteworthy are the following : *quārtus*, *fourth* ; *quīque*, *five*, and its derivatives ; *vīginti*, *twenty* ; *mille*, *thousand*, and its derivatives.

**703.** A syllable is said to be long *by position* (12, 2) when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant : *ars, collum, castra.*

**704.** A syllable ending in a short vowel before a mute, followed by l or r, is common (13) : *tenēbrae*, *darkness*. In early Latin it is regularly short ; so, too, when the mute and liquid begin a word.

REMARK.—The syllable must *end* in a short vowel : *nāvi-fragus*, *ship-wrecking* ; *melli-fluus*, *flowing with honey* ; but in *ab-rumpō* the *a* is long *by position*.

**705.** Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diphthong, or contracted from other vowels, is long (14) : *saevus*, *cruel* ; *conclūdō*, *I shut up* (from *claudō*) ; *iniquus*, *unfair* (from *aequus*) ; *cōgō*, *I drive together* (from *cōigō* = *con* + *agō*).

EXCEPTION.—*Prae* in composition is shortened before a vowel ; *prae-tustus*, *burnt at the point* (V., A., VII. 524).

**706.** One simple vowel before another vowel-sound, or *h*, makes a short syllable : *dēus*, *God* ; *pūer*, *boy* ; *nihil*, *nothing*.

**EXCEPTIONS :**

1. *ē* in the old Gen. of the First Declension : *aurei*.
2. *ī* in *-ī* of the Fifth Declension, when a vowel precedes : *diī*, but *fidēi* (63).
3. *a* and *e* before *i* in proper names in *-ius* : *Gai*, *Pompai*.
4. *i* in the Gen. form *-ius* (76, R. 2). *Alterius* is often shortened, perhaps even in prose : *finius*, *ullius*, *nūllius*, *tōtius*, are found in poetry. In *alius* the *i* is never shortened.
5. *i* in *fiō* is long, except before *er* : *fiō*, but *fieret* and *fieri*.
6. *ē* in *dīana*, *diūs* (= *divus*).
7. Many Greek words : *ātr*, *Menelāus*, *mūsūm*, *Mēdēa*.

### Quantity of Final Syllables.

**707.** In Latin words of more than one syllable, final *a*, *e*, and *y* are short ; *i*, *o*, and *u* are long. Greek words follow usually their original quantity.

1. *a* is short : except in
  1. The Abl. of the First Declension : *terrā*.
  - (2) 3. The Impv. of First Conjugation : *amā*.
  4. Most uninflected words : *trigintā*, *iūxtā*, but *itā*, *quā*, *siā*.
2. *e* is short : except in
  1. The Abl. of the Fifth Declension : *diē*.
  2. The Impv. of Second Conjugation : *monē*.
  3. Most adverbs of Second Declension : *rēctō* ; but *bonē*, *malē*.
- (3) 4. *i* is long : except in
  - (1, 2) 3. *quā*, *nī*, *cū* (when a dissyllable).
  4. *i* is common in *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ibi*, *ubi*.  
Observe the compounds : *ibi*dem, *ibi*que, *ubi*que, *ubi*nam, *ubi*vis, *ubi*cunque, *nē*cubi, *uti*nam, *uti*que, *sicuti* ; (but *uti*).
5. *o* is long : *bonō*, *tūtō* ; except that it is
  1. Common in many substantives of the Third Declension in *ō*.
  2. Common in the first person Pr. Indic. active of many verbs.
  3. Usually short in *modō*, *citō*, *octō*, *egō*, *illō*, *immō*, *duō*, and in many other words in later poetry.
6. *u* is always long : *cornū*, *fructū*, *audītū*.

**708.** In Latin all final syllables that end in a simple consonant other than *s* are short. Greek words have often their original quantity.

**EXCEPTIONS :**

1. *illō*, *liē*.
2. The adverbs and oblique cases of *ille*, *illū*, *istū*, *istū*.
3. Compounds of *pār* : *dispār*, *impār*.
4. *it*, *petit*, and their compounds.

**709.** In Latin, of final syllables in *s*: *as*, *es*, *os*, are long; *is*, *us*, *ys*, short.

EXCEPTIONS :

1. *-as* is *short* in *anās*, *anātis*.

2. *-es* is *short* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., Third Declension, when the Gen. has *ētis*, *ītis*, *īdis*: *segēs*, *mīlēs*, *obsēs*; but *abiēs*, *ariēs*, *pariēs*.  
*ēs*, *be* (and its compounds): *adēs*, *potēs*.

*penēs* (Preposition).

3. *Os* is *short* in *compēs*, *impēs*, *exēs*; and old Nom. in *os* in the Second Declension.

4. *is* is *long* in Dat. and Abl. Plural: *terris*, *bonis*.

Also in the Acc. Pl. of the Third Declension: *omnis* = *omnēs*.

In the Nom. of sundry Proper Names, increasing long in the Genitive: *Quiris*, *Quiritis*.

In the 2nd Person Sing. Pr. Indic. active, Fourth Conjugation: *audis*.

In the verbal forms *vis*, *sis*, *fis*, and *velis* and their compounds.

In the Second Person Sing. Fut. Pf. Indic. and Pf. Subjv., *is* is common: *videris*.

5. *Us* is *long* in the Gen. Sing., Nom. and Acc. Pl., Fourth Declension: *currūs*.

Also in the Nom. Sing. Third Declension, when the Gen. has *ū*: *virtūs*, *virtūtis*; *incūs*, *incūdis*; *tellūs*, *tellūris*.

### Quantity of Monosyllables.

**710.** All monosyllables that end in a vowel are long: *ā*, *dā*, *mā*, *dē*, *hī*, *sī*, *ū*, *dō*, *tū*.

Except the enclitics: *-quē*, *-vē*, *-nē*, *-oē*, *-tē*, *-pōē*, *-ptē*.

**711.** Declined or conjugated monosyllables that end in a consonant follow the rules given for final syllables: *dās*, *fīs*, *scīs*, *dāt*, *fiet*, *is*, *id*, *quis*, *hīs*, *quīs*, *quōs*.

But *hic*, *this one*; *dīc* and *dūc* have the quantity of their verbs.

**712.** Monosyllabic Nominatives of substantives and adjectives ending in a consonant are always long: *ōs*, *mōs*, *vēr*, *sōl*, *fūr*, *plūs*; *lār* (*lāris*), *pōs* (*pēdis*), *bōs* (*bōvis*), *pār* (*pāris*).

EXCEPTIONS: *Vir* and *lac*, *os* (*ossis*), *mel*;

Also *cor*, *vas* (*vadis*), *fel*. Also *quot*, *tot*.

**713.** Monosyllabic particles that end in a consonant are short: *ān*, *cis*, *in*, *nēc*, *pēr*, *tēr*.

Excepting *ēn* and *nōn* and *quīn*;

And also *crēs* and *cūr* and *sīn*;

Also the Adverbs in *c*: *hic*, *hūc*, *hāc*, *sic*; and *ēc* (*atque*).

## Quantity in Compounds.

(714) **715.** Compounds generally keep the quantity of their constituent parts : (cēdō), ante-cēdō, dē-cēdō, prō-cēdō ; (caedō), occidō ; (cādō), occidō.

REMARKS.—1. Of the inseparable prefixes, *di*, *sē*, and *vē* are long, *rē* short : *diducō*, *sēducō*, *vēcor*, *rēducō* ; *di*, in *disertus*, is shortened for *dis*, and in *dirimo*, *dīr* stands for *dis*.

2. *Nē* is short, except in *nēdum*, *nēmō* (*ne-hemō*), *nēquam*, *nēquiquam*, *nēquāquam*, *nēquitia*, *nēve*.

(3) 4. *Prō* is shortened before vowels, and in many words before consonants, especially before *f* : *prāvus*, *prōhibeō*, *prōinde*, *prōfugiō*, *prōfundus*, *prōfiteor*, *prōcella*, *prōcul*, *prōnepōs*. The older language shortens less frequently than the later. In Greek words *pro* (πρό) is generally short : *prōphēta* ; but *prōlogus*.

## FIGURES OF PROSODY.

(716–8) **719.** 1. *Elision*.—When one word ends with a vowel and another begins with a vowel, or *h*, the first vowel is *elided*. Elision is not a total omission, but rather a hurried half-pronunciation, similar to Grace notes in music.

*Ō felix tū(a) ant(e) aliis Priamēa virgō*.—V., A., III. 321.

2. *Ecthlipsis*.—In like manner *m* final (a faint nasal sound) is elided with its short vowel before a vowel or *h*.

*Mōnstr(um), horrend(um), infirm(e) ingēns cui lūmen adāptum*.—V., A., III. 658.

REMARK.—After a vowel or *m* final, the word *est*, *is*, drops its *e* and joins the preceding syllable (*Aphaeresis*).

*Si rixast ubi tū pulsās ego vāpulō tantum*.—JUV., III. 289.

*Aeternās quoniam poenās in morte timendumst*.—LUCR., I. III.

**720.** *Hiatus*.—Hiatus is the meeting of two vowels in separate syllables, which meeting produces an almost continuous opening (yawning) of the vocal tube. It is found most commonly in the principal caesura (750) after a monosyllabic interjection, or in a resolved Thesis where a long vowel is shortened (*semih hiatus*).

*Ō pater, ō (h) hominum rērumque aeterna potestās*.—V., A., x. 18.

*Crēdimus ? an qui (h) amant ipsi sibi somnia fingunt ?*—V., *Ec.*, VIII. 108.

*Prōmissam ārīpui generō. (h) Arma impia sūmpsi*.—V., A., XII. 31.

**721.** *Diastolē*.—Many final syllables, which were originally long, are restored to their rights by the weight of the Thesis.

*Omnia vincit Amōr ; et nōs cēdāmus Amōri*.—V., *Ec.*, x. 69.

Sometimes, however, Diastolé arises from the necessities of the verse (as in proper names), or is owing to a pause (Punctuation); so particularly que.

*Dēcine plūra puēr—et quod nunc instat agāmus.*—V., *Ec.*, ix. 66.

*Terrāsque tractūsque maris cælumque profundum.*—V., *A.*, iv. 222.

**722. Systolé.**—Long syllables which had begun to shorten in prose, are shortened (Systolé).

*Obstupi steteruntque comae vōx faucibus haesit.*—V., *A.*, ii. 774.

*E terrā māgn(um) alterius spectāre labōrem.*—LUCR., ii. 2.

**723. Hardening.**—The vowels *i* and *u* assert their half-consonant nature (Hardening): *abiētō* (*ābiētō*), *genrā* (*gēnūā*), *tēnviā* (*tēnūā*).

*Fluviōrum rēx Ēridanus campōque per omnēs.*—V., *G.*, i. 482.

*Quam quae tēnvia sunt hīscendist nulla potestās.*—LUCR., iv. 66.

**724. Dialysis.**—The consonants *i* and *v* assert their half-vowel nature: *dissōlūō* (*dissolvō*), *Gāiūs* (*Gāius*, from *Gāvius*).

*Adulterētur et columba mīlūō.*—HOR., *Epod.*, 16, 82.

*Stamina nōn illi dissoluenda deō.*—TIB., i. 7, 2.

**725. Syncope.**—Short vowels are dropped between consonants, as often in prose: *calfaciō* for *calefaciō*.

*Templōrum positor templōrum sācto reposit.*—OV., *Fast.*, ii. 63.

*Quiddam māgnū addēns ūnum mē surpite (= surripite) mortī.*—HOR., *S.*, ii. 3, 288.

**726. Tmesis.**—Compound words are separated into their parts.

*Quae mē cumque (= quaecumque mē) vocant terrae; sic fātus amicū.*—V., *A.*, i. 610.

**727. Synizēsis.**—Vowels are connected by a slur, as often in the living language: *dēinde*, *dēinceps*.

*Nec tantum Rhodopē māratur et Ismarus Orphēa.*—V., *Ec.*, vi. 30.  
So even when *h* intervenes, as *dēhinc*:

*Eurū ad sē Zephyrūque vocat, dēhinc tālia fātur.*—V., *A.*, i. 131.

REMARK.—Synizēsis (*settling together*) is also called Synaerēsis (*taking together*), as opposed to Diaeresis (5).

**728. Synapheia.**—A line ends in a short vowel, which is elided before the initial vowel of a following line, or a word is divided between two lines, *i. e.*, the two lines are joined together.

*Iamque iter ōmēsi turrīs sē tēcta Latinōr(um)*

*Ardūa.*—V., *A.*, vii. 160.

*Lābitur ripā Iove nōn probante u-*

*xōrius amnis.*—HOR., *O.*, i. 2, 19.



## VERSIFICATION.

**729. Rhythm.**—Rhythm means harmonious movement; and is marked by the stress of voice (*Accent*).

The accented part is called the Thesis; the unaccented, the Arsis. The Rhythmical Accent is called the Ictus (*blow, beat*).

**730. Metre.**—Rhythm, when represented in language, is embodied in Metre (*Measure*).

A Metre is a system of syllables standing in a determined order.

**731. Unit of Measure.**—The Unit of Measure is the short syllable, (∪), and is called *Mora, Tempus* (*Time*).

The long (—) is the double of the short.

REMARK.—An irrational syllable is one which is not an exact multiple of the standard unit. Feet containing such quantities are called irrational.

**732. Resolution and Contraction.**—In some verses, two short syllables may be used instead of a long (Resolution), or a long instead of two short (Contraction).

Resolution, ∪ ∪; Contraction, — ∪

**733 (734). Feet.**—When Metres are combined to form verses they are called feet.

The feet in most common use are the following:

**Feet of Three Times.**

Trochee, — ∪  
Iambus, ∪ —  
Tribrach, ∪ ∪ ∪

**Feet of Four Times.**

Dactyl, — ∪ ∪  
Anapaest, ∪ ∪ —  
Spondee, — —

REMARK.—In verses beginning with an Arsis, it is often convenient to cut this off and regard the verse as beginning with a Thesis; the short syllable is then called Anacrusis (*upward stroke, signal-beat*) and is marked :

(735–7) **738. Rhythmical Series.**—A Rhythmical Series is an uninterrupted succession of rhythmical feet, and takes its name from the number of feet that compose it.

Dipody = two feet.

Tripody = three feet.

Tetrapody = four feet.

Pentapody = five feet.

Hexapody = six feet.

REMARKS.—1. The Dipody is the ordinary unit of measure (-meter) in Trochaic, Iambic, and Anapaestic verse. In these rhythms a monometer contains two feet, a dimeter four, a trimeter six, a tetrameter eight.

2. The single foot is the ordinary unit of measure (-meter) in Dactylic verse. Thus, a verse of one Dactyl is called a Monometer; of two, a Dimeter; of three, a Trimeter; of four, Tetrameter; of five, a Pentameter; of six, a Hexameter.

(739) **740. Equality of the Feet.**—Every rhythmical series is composed of equal parts. To restore this equality, when it is violated by language, there are four methods:

- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Syllaba Anceps. | 3. Protraction. |
| 2. Catalæxis.      | 4. Correption.  |

**741. Syllaba Anceps.**—The final syllable of an independent series or verse may be short or long indifferently. It may be short when the metre demands a long; long when the metre demands a short. Such a syllable is called a Syllaba Anceps.

**742. Catalæxis and Pause.**—A complete series is called Acatalectic; an incomplete series is called Catalectic. A series or verse is said to be Catalectic in *syllabam*, in *dissyllabum*, in *trisyllabum*, according to the number of syllables in the catalectic foot.

⋮ | ⋮ | ⋮ *Trimeter dactylicus catalæcticus in syllabam.*

⋮ | ⋮ | ⋮ *Trimeter dactylicus catalæcticus in dissyllabum.*

The time is made up by Pause.

This is marked  $\wedge$  if one mora is omitted;  $\overline{\wedge}$  if two.

**743. Protraction and Syncopé.**—Protraction (*τροπή*) consists in drawing out a long syllable beyond its normal quantity. It occurs in the body of a verse, and serves to make up for the omission of one or more Arses, which omission is called Syncopé.

— = 3 = (triseme long); — = 4 = (tetraseme long).

**744. Correption.**—Correption is the shortening of a syllable to suit the measure.

1. So a long syllable sometimes takes the place of a short, and is marked >; similarly, two short syllables often seem to take the place of one, and may be marked ∪.

2. When a Dactyl is used as a substitute for a Trochee, the approximate value is often  $1\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} + 1 = 3$ ; which may be indicated by ∪∪ (cyclic Dactyl).

The following line illustrates all the points mentioned:

—> | ∪∪ | — | ∪∪ | — | ∪∪ | — | — | —  
 $\alpha$     $b$     $c$     $b$     $c$     $b$     $d$     $e$

Nūllam | Vāre sa- | crā | vīte pri- | us | sēveris | arbo | -rem.—HOR., O., I. 18, 1.

(a) Irrational trochee (irrational long). (b) Cyclic dactyl. (c) Syncopé and Protraction (triseme long). (d) Syllaba anceps. (e) Catalæxis.

(745-8) **749.** *Conflict of Ictus and Accent.*—In ordinary Latin verse, at least according to modern pronunciation, the Ictus overrides the Accent; this conflict seems, however, to have been avoided in the second half of the Dactylic Hexameter, and the Ictus made to coincide with the Accent.

**750.** *Conflict of Word-foot and Verse-foot.*—The conflict of word-foot and verse-foot gives rise to Caesura. Caesura means an incision produced by the end of a word in the middle of a verse-foot, and is marked †.

This incision serves as a pause, partly to rest the voice for a more vigorous effort, partly to prevent monotony by distributing the masses of the verse. The most important pause in the verse is called the Great or Principal Caesura.

So in the Heroic Hexameter the Principal Caesura falls *before* the middle of the verse, to give the voice strength for the first Arsis of the second half.

“ ∪ | √ — | √ — | “ — | √ ∪ ∪ | √ —

Una salūs victis † nullam sperāre salutem.—V., A., II. 353.

It does not occur *at* the middle, as in that case the verse would become monotonous.

**751.** *Varieties of Caesura.*—Caesurae have different names to show their position in the verse, as follows :

*Semiteriāria*, after the third half foot, *i. e.*, in the second foot.

*Semiquināria*, after the fifth half foot, *i. e.*, in the third foot.

*Semiseptenāria*, after the seventh half foot, *i. e.*, in the fourth foot.

*Seminovenāria*, after the ninth half foot, *i. e.*, in the fifth foot.

REMARK.—These Caesurae are frequently called after their Greek names, thus : *trihemimeral*, *penthemimeral*, *hepthemimeral*, *etc.*

**752.** *Masculine and Feminine Caesurae.*—In trisyllabic metres, when the end of the word within the verse-foot falls on a Thesis, it is called a Masculine Caesura; when on an Arsis, a Feminine Caesura.

Una sa | lūs †<sup>a</sup> vi | ctis †<sup>b</sup> nūl | lam †<sup>c</sup> spē | rāre †<sup>d</sup> sa | lūtem.

a, b, c, are Masculine Caesurae; d, a Feminine Caesura.

Especially noteworthy is the Feminine Caesura of the third foot in the Hexameter, called the Third Trochee.

**753.** *Diaeresis.*—When verse-foot and word-foot coincide, Diaeresis arises, marked |.

Ite domum saturae † venit | Hesperus | ite capellae.—V., *Ecl.*, 10, 77.

REMARK.—Diaeresis at the end of the fourth foot of a Hexameter is called Bucolic Caesura, and has a special effect.



shortest in use, five Spondees and one Dactyl—in all, thirteen syllables. This variety in the length of the verse, combined with the great number of caesural pauses, gives the Hexameter peculiar advantages for continuous composition.

*Scheme* : " — — | — — — | — — — | " — — | — — — | — —

Ut fugiunt aquilæ † timidissima | turba columbae, Ov., A.A., I. 117, 5 Dactyls.

Cum mediis celeris † revolant | ex æquore mergi, V., G., I. 361, 4 Dactyls.

Nō turbata volent † rapidis † ludibria ventis, V., A., VI. 75, 3 Dactyls.

Versaqu(e) in obnixis † urgentur | cornua vāstis, V., G., III. 222, 2 Dactyls.

Aut lēves cœcis † lentis † discunt argenti, V., A., VII. 634, Spondaic.

REMARKS.—1. The two reigning ictuses are the first and fourth, and the pauses are so arranged as to give special prominence to them—the first by the pause at the end of the preceding verse, the fourth by pauses within the verse, both before and after the Thesis.

2. The Principal Caesura is the *semiquinaria* or *penthemimeral*, i.e., after the Thesis of the third foot, or Masculine Caesura of the third foot; the next is the *semiseptenaria* or *hepthemimeral*, after the Thesis of the fourth foot.

In verses with several Caesurae, the *semiseptenaria* outranks the *semiquinaria*, if it precedes a period, and the latter does not, or if it is perfect and the latter is imperfect (i.e., formed by tmesis or by elision); it also as a masculine Caesura outranks the Third Trochee.

### 785 (786–9). *Elegiac Pentameter (Catalectic Trimeter repeated).*

The Elegiac Pentameter consists of two Catalectic Trimeters or Penthemimers, *the first of which admits Spondees, the second does not.* There is a fixed Diaeresis in the middle of the verse, as marked below, which is commonly supplemented by the *semiteminaria* Caesura. The Pentameter derives its name from the old measurement: — — —, — — —, — —, — — —, — — —; and the name is a convenient one, because the verse consists of 2½ + 2½ Dactyls. The Elegiac Distich is used in sentimental, amatory, epigrammatic poetry.

*Scheme* : — — — | — — — | — | — — — | — — — | — —

Neither Syllaba Anceps nor Hiatus is allowed at the Diaeresis, and a syllable long by nature is preferred at that point.

The Elegiac Pentameter occurs only as a Clausula to the Heroic Hexameter, with which it forms the Elegiac Distich. Consequently the sense should not run into the following Hexameter (exceptions rare):

Pār erat inferior versus : riasse Cupido

Dicitur atque finem | surripuisse pedem, Ov.

Cum pulchre dominae nostri placuisse libelli,

Quō licuit libris | nōn licet ire mihi, Ov., Am., III. 8, 5.

## APPENDICES.

### 1. Roman Calendar.

The names of the Roman months were originally adjectives. The substantive *mēsis*, *month*, may or may not be expressed : (*mēsis*) *Iānuārius*, *Februārius*, and so on. Before Augustus, the months July and August were called, not *Iulius* and *Augustus*, but *Quintilis* and *Sextilis*.

The Romans counted backward from three points in the month, Calends (*Kalendae*), Nones (*Nōnae*), and Ides (*Idūs*), to which the names of the months are added as adjectives : *Kalendae Iānuāriæ*, *Nōnae Februāriæ*, *Idūs Martiæ*. The Calends are the first day, the Nones the fifth, the Ides the thirteenth. In March, May, July, and October the Nones and Ides are two days later. Or thus :

In March, July, October, May,  
The Ides are on the fifteenth day,  
The Nones the seventh ; but all besides  
Have two days less for Nones and Ides.

In counting backward ("come next Calends, next Nones, next Ides") the Romans used for "the day before" *pridie* with the Acc. : *pridie Kalendæ Iānuariæ*, Dec. 31 ; *pridie Nōnæ Iān.* = Jan. 4 ; *pridie Idūs Iān.* = Jan. 12.

The longer intervals are expressed by *ante diem tertium, quārtum, etc.*, before the Accusative, so that *ante diem tertiam Kal. Iān.* means "two days before the Calends of January ;" *ante diem quārtum*, or *a. d. iv.*, or *iv. Kal. Iān.*, "three days before," and so on. This remarkable combination is treated as one word, so that it can be used with the prepositions *ex* and *in* : *ex ante diem iii. Nōnæ Iūniæ usque ad pridie Kal. Septembres*, from June 3 to August 31 ; *differre aliquid in ante diem xv. Kal. Nov.*, to postpone a matter to the 18th of October.

**LEAP YEAR.**—In leap year the intercalary day was counted between *a. d. vi. Kal. Mart.* and *a. d. vii. Kal. Mart.* It was called *a. d. bis sextum Kal. Mart.*, so that *a. d. vii. Kal. Mart.* corresponded to our February 23, just as in the ordinary year.

#### To turn Roman Dates into English.

*For Nones and Ides.*—I. Add one to the date of the Nones and Ides, and subtract the given number.

*For Calends.*—II. Add two to the days of the preceding month, and subtract the given number.

EXAMPLES : a. d. viii. Īd. Iān.  $(18 + 1 - 8) = \text{Jan. } 6$  ; a. d. iv. Nōn. Apr.  $(5 + 1 - 4) = \text{Apr. } 2$  ; a. d. xiv. Kal. Oct.  $(30 + 2 - 14) = \text{Sept. } 18$ .

*Year.*—To obtain the year B.C., subtract the given date from 754 (753 B.C. being the assumed date of the founding of Rome, *annō urbis conditae*). To obtain the year A.D., subtract 753.

Thus: *Cicero was born* 648, a. u. c. = 106 B.C.

*Augustus died* 767, a. u. c. = 14 A.D.

## 2. Roman Long and Square Measure.

1 pēs	= 11.65 Eng. in.	
2½ pedēs	= 1 gradus.	The iugerum (acre) contains
2 gradūs,	} = 1 passus.	28,800 sq. ft. Rom. ;
5 pedēs		Eng. acre = 43,560 sq. ft.
125 passūs	= 1 stadium.	
8 stadia	= 1 mille passuum (mile).	

## 3. Roman Money.

The unit was originally the *ās* (which was about a pound of copper), with its fractional divisions. This gradually depreciated, until, after the second Punic war, the unit had become a *sestertius*, which was nominally 2½ *asses*.

2½ assēs	= 1 sestertius (about	25 dēnarii = 1 aureus (nummus).
	4 cts.).	1000 sestertii = 1 sestertium
4 sestertii	= 1 dēnarius.	(\$42.94 to Augustus's time).
Observe that decies sestertium = 1,000,000 sestertii (96, B. 6).		

## 4. Roman Names.

The Roman usually had three names ; a *nōmen*, indicating the *gens*, a *cōgnōmen*, indicating the *familia* in the *gens*, and the *praenōmen*, indicating the individual in the *familia*.

The *nōmina* all end in *ius*. The *cōgnōmina* have various forms, in accordance with their derivation. For example : Q. Mācius Scaevola (from *scaevus*, *left hand*).

The *praenōmina* are as follows, with their abbreviations :

Aulus,	A.	Lūcius,	L.	Quintus,	Q.
Appius,	App.	Mārcus,	M.	Servius,	Ser.
Gāius,	C.	Mānius,	M'.	Sextus,	Sex.
Gnaeus,	Cn.	Māmercus,	Mam.	Spurius,	Sp.
Decimus,	D.	Numerius,	Num.	Titus,	T.
Kaesō,	K.	Publius,	P.	Tiberius,	Ti., Tib.

## 5. General Rules for Gender (19, 20).

1. Names of Males are masculine; names of Females feminine.
2. Names of Months and Mountains, Rivers and Winds are masculine.
3. Names of Countries, Islands, Cities, Plants, and Trees are feminine.
4. Indeclinable words are neuter.

## 6. Special Rules for Gender.

5. Substantives of the First Declension are feminine (30);  
except *Hadria*.
6. Substantives in *-us* (Second Declension) are masculine (34);  
except *alvus, colus, humus, vannus* (fem.); *pelagus, virus, vulgus*  
(neut.); Substantives in *-um* are neuter.
7. Substantives in *-l* are masculine (39);  
except *fel, mel, sil*.
8. Masculine are nouns in *-ō*,  
Save those in *-dō, -gō* and *-iō*,  
With *carō, flesh*; but *cardō, ōrdō*,  
Are masculine with *ligō, margō*;  
So *harpagō* and in *-iō*  
All concrete nouns like *pūgiō* (43).
9. Substantives in *-er* and *-or* are masculine; those in *-ar* and *-ur*  
are neuter (46).

Observe: Feminine are *linter, arbor*.

Neuters are: *fār, nectar, marmor*,

*Aequor, iter, acer, piper*,

*Verber, ūber, vār, cadāver*,

*Ador, tūber* and *papāver*.

10. Substantives in *-is (-eris)* and *-ōs (-ōris)* are masculine;  
except *ūs, mouth* (neuter).  
Substantives in *-us (-eris, -oris)* and *-ūs (-ūris)* are neuter;  
except *tellūs* (f.) and *lepus* and *mūs* (m.) (49).
11. Substantives in *-s* from mute stems are feminine.

Observe: Masculine: *-unx, -ix*, and *ex*,

Saving *forfex, forpex, nex*,

*Lāx, vībēx, faex*, and forms of [*prex*].

Masculine are:

*Lapis, pariēs, pēs*, and substantives in *-es (-itis)*;

except *merges*.

Also: *dēns, fōns, mōns, pōns, rudēns, torrēns*.

Neuters are: *cor, lac, caput*.



12. Vowel stems with nominative in *-s* are feminine, except those in *-is*, which are partly masculine, partly feminine (58).

Vowel stems with nominative in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*, are neuter.

Observe :

*Masculinī generis*

are these words that end in *-is* :

amnis, axis, būris, collis,  
caulis, crinis, fācis, follis,  
fūnis, fūstis, ignis, torris,  
orbis, pānis, postis, ōnsis,  
vectis, vermis, unguis, mēnsis,  
—antēs, cassēs, mānēs (plural)—

Add to these *the mullet*, *mūgil*,  
also certain animals.

13. Substantives in *-ūs* are feminine.  
14. Substantives in *-us* (Fourth Declension) are masculine (62),  
Except *acus*, *domus*, *manus*, *idūs*,  
*penus*, *porticus*, and *tribus*.  
Substantives in *-a* are neuter.  
15. Substantives of the Fifth Declension are feminine (64),  
Except *diēs* (common in Sing.) and *meridiēs*. ●

## 7. Irregular Forms.

### 16. Irregular Substantives (71).

<i>ās</i> , assis.	<i>iecur</i> , <i>iecoris</i> , <i>iecinoris</i> , <i>iecineris</i> , <i>ieci-</i> <i>neris</i> .
<i>auceps</i> , <i>aucupis</i> .	<i>Iuppiter</i> , <i>Iovis</i> .
<i>būs</i> , <i>bovis</i> .	<i>mel</i> , <i>mellis</i> .
Pl. G. <i>boum</i> , D. Ab. <i>būbus</i> , <i>bōbus</i> .	<i>nēmō</i> , G. <i>nūllus</i> , Ab. <i>nūllō</i> .
<i>caput</i> , <i>capitis</i> .	<i>nix</i> , <i>nivis</i> .
<i>anceps</i> , <i>incipitis</i> ,	<i>os</i> , <i>ossis</i> .
<i>praeceps</i> , <i>praecipitis</i> .	<i>ōs</i> , <i>ōris</i> .
<i>carō</i> , <i>carnis</i> . Pl. G. <i>carnium</i> .	<i>pollis</i> , <i>pollinis</i> .
<i>Cerēs</i> , <i>Cereris</i> .	<i>sanguis</i> , <i>sanguinis</i> .
<i>fār</i> , <i>fārris</i> .	<i>senex</i> , <i>senis</i> .
<i>fel</i> , <i>fellis</i> .	<i>supellēx</i> , <i>supellēctilis</i> .
<i>femur</i> , <i>femoris</i> , or <i>feminis</i> .	<i>Venus</i> , <i>Veneris</i> .
<i>iter</i> , <i>itineris</i> .	

### Pronominal Adjectives (76).

17. With Gen. in *-ius*, Dat. in *-i* :
- Alius*, *alter*, *alteruter* ;  
*uter* and *neūter* ;  
*ūllus* and *nūllus* ;  
*sōlus*, *tōtus*, and *ūnus*.

## Irregular Comparison of Adjectives (87-90).

18. Dexter,	dexterior,	dextimus.
vetus,	veterior, vetustior,	veterrimus.
_____	citerior,	citimus.
_____	exterior,	extrēmus, extimus.
_____	inferior,	infimus, imus.
_____	interior,	intimus.
_____	posterior,	postrēmus, postumus.
_____	prior,	primus,
_____	superior,	suprēmus, summus.

## 17. Superlative in -limus (87, 3):

facilis,	similis,	gracilis,
difficilis,	dissimilis,	humilis.
18. [iuvenis]	iūnior,	minimus nātū.
[senex]	senior,	māximus nātū.
19. bonus,	melior,	optimus (90).
parvus,	minor,	minimus.
multus,	plūs,	plūrimus.
malus,	pōior,	pessimus.
māgnus,	māior,	māximus.
frūgi,	frūgālior,	frūgālissimus.

## Irregular Comparison of Adverbs (93).

20. bene,	melius,	optimē.	male,	pōius,	pessimē.
[parvus],	minus,	minimē.	[māgnus],	māius,	māximē.
multum,	plūs,	plūrimum.	satis,	satius.	

## INDEX OF VERBS.

- Ab-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 138, 1.  
 ab-igō, ere, -ēgī, -actum, 153.  
 ab-iciō, ere, -iēcī, -iectum, 155.  
 ab-luō, ere, -luī, -lūtum, 156.  
 ab-nuō, ere, -nuī (-nuitūrus), 156.  
 ab-oleō, ēre, -ōvī, itum, 124.  
 ab-olēscō, -ere, -olēvī, -olitum, 157.  
 ab-ripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, 158.  
 abs-condō (pō), ere, -dī (-didī),  
 ditum, 138.  
 ab-sistō, -ere, -stitī, 149.  
 ab-sum, -esse, ab-fui, ā-fui, 117.  
 ac-cendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēsum,  
 154.  
 ac-cidō, ere, -cidī, 148.  
 ac-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, 155.  
 ac-colō, ere, -colui, -cultum, 158.  
 ac-cumbō, ere, -cubuī, -cubitum,  
 158.  
 ac-currō, ere, ac-curri, -cursum,  
 148.  
 ac-quirō, ere, -quisivī, -quisitum,  
 157.  
 acuō, ere, acuī, acūtum, 156.  
 ad-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 138, 1.  
 ad-imō, ere, -ēmī, -emptum, 153.  
 ad-ipsor, ī, ad-eptus sum, 165.  
 ad-iuvō, āre, -iūvī, -iūtum, 139.  
 ad-olēscō, ere, -olēvī, -ultum, 157.  
 ad-orior, -oriri, -ortus sum, 166.  
 ad-sciscō, ere, -scivī, -scitum, 157.  
 ad-sistō, ere, -stitī, 149.  
 ad-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectrum  
 147.  
 ad-stō, -stāre, -stitī, 138, 2.  
 ad-sum, ad-esse, ad-fui (af-fui),  
 117.  
 ad-vesperāscō, ere, āvī, 157.  
 aff-erō, -ferre, at-tuli, al-lātum,  
 171.  
 af-fligō, ere, -fixī, -fictum, 144.  
 ag-gredior, -gredi, -gressus, 165.  
 ā-gnōscō, ere, ā-gnōvī, ā-gnitum  
 (āgnōtūrus), 157.  
 ago, ere, ēgī, āctum, 153.  
 aiō, 175, 1.  
 algeō, ēre, alsī, 141.  
 al-liciō, ere, -lexī (-licui) -lectum, 147.  
 al-luō, ere, -lui, -lūtum, 156.  
 alō, ere, alui, al(i)tum, 158.  
 amb-igō, ere, 163.  
 amb-iō, īre, īvī (ii), itum, 169, 2,  
 1.  
 amiciō, īre, (amicui,) amictum,  
 160.  
 amplector, ī, amplexus, 165.  
 angō, ere, anxi, 146.  
 an-nuō, ere, annui (anūtum), 156.  
 ante-cellō, ere, 158.  
 ante-stō, -stāre, -stetī, 138.  
 a-periō, -īre, aperui, apertum, 160.  
 ap-petō, ere, īvī, itum, 157, c.  
 ap-plicō, āre, -plicui, -plicitum,  
 (-plicāvī, -plicātum),  
 137.  
 ap-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, 157.  
 arceō, ēre, arcui { arcus,  
 { artus (adj.).  
 arcessō (accersō), ere, arcessivī,  
 -itum, 157.  
 ārdeō, ēre, ārsi, ārsu, 141.  
 arguō, ere, argui, (argūtum,) 156.  
 { arguitūrus).  
 ar-ripiō, ere, ui, -reptum, 158.  
 a-scendō, ere, ī, scēsum, 154.  
 ā-spiciō, ere, ā-spexī, ā-spectrum,  
 147.  
 as-sentior, īri, assēnsus sum, 166.  
 as-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, 143.  
 as-suēscō, ere, -suēvī, -suētum, 157.  
 at-tendō, ere, -tendī, -tentum, 150.  
 at-textō, ere, -texui, -textum, 158.  
 at-tineō, ēre, ui, -tentum, 135, 1. a.  
 at-tingō, ere, attigī, attāctum, 150.  
 audeō, ēre, ausus sum, 167.  
 au-ferō, -ferre, abstuli, ablātum,  
 171.  
 augeō, ēre, auxi, auctum, 141.  
 avē, 175, 4.  
 Batuō, ere, ui, 156.  
 bibō, ere, bibī, (bibitum), 149.  
 Cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsum, 148.  
 caedō, ere, cecidi, caesum, 148.  
 calefaciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, 155 ;  
 173, 2.  
 canō, ere, cecini, cantum, 148.  
 capessō, ere, īvī, itum, 157.  
 capiō, ere, cēpī, captum, 126 ; 155.  
 carpō, ere, carpsi, carptum, 144.  
 caveō, ēre, cāvī, cautum, 143.

- cedo, 175, 6.  
 cēdō, ere, cēssi, cēssum, 144.  
 cēnseō, ēre, ui, cēnsum, (cēnsitus), 135, 1. a.  
 cernō, ere, crēvi, (crētum), 157.  
 cieō } ciēre, ciui, ciūm, 140.  
 ciō }  
 cingō, ere, cinxi, cinctum, 146.  
 circum-dō, -dare, -dedi, -datum, 138.  
 circum-sistō, ere, steti, 148.  
 circum-stō, stāre, steti, 188, 2.  
 claudō, ere, clausi, clausum, 144.  
 co-alēscō, ere, -alui, (-alitur), 157, 158.  
 co-arguō, ere, ui, 156.  
 co-ēmō, ere, -ēmi, -ēm(p)tum, 153.  
 coepl, coepisse, 175, 5, a.  
 cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvi, -gnitum, 157.  
 cō-gō, ere, co-ēgi, co-āctum, 153.  
 col-lidō, ere, -lisi, litum, 144.  
 col-ligō, ere, -lēgi, -lectum, 153.  
 col-lūcō, ēre, -lūxi, 141.  
 colō, ere, colui, cultum, 158.  
 com-būrō, ere, -būsi, -bustum, 144.  
 com-edō, ere, -ēdi, -ēsum (ēstum), 172.  
 comminiscor, i, commentus sum, 165.  
 com-moveō, ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, 143.  
 cō-mō, ere, cōmpsi, cōmptum, 144.  
 com-parcō, ere, -parsi, -parsum, 146.  
 com-pellō, ere, com-puli, -pulsum, 150.  
 com-periō, ire, com-peri, com-per-tum, 162.  
 compēscō, ere, ui, 158.  
 com-pingō, ere, -pēgi, -pāctum, 154.  
 com-plector, i, com-plexus, 165.  
 com-primō, ere, -pressi, -pressum, 144.  
 com-pungō, ere, -punxi, -punctum, 150.  
 con-cidō, ere, -cidi, 148.  
 con-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cisum, 148.  
 con-cinō, ere, -cinui, 158.  
 con-clūdō, ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, 144.  
 con-cumbō, ere, -cubui, -cubitum, 158.  
 con-cupiscō, ere, -cupivi, cupitum, 157.  
 con-cutō, ere, -cussi, -cussum, 144.  
 con-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 138, 1.  
 con-dormiscō, -ere, -ivi, itum, 157.  
 cōn-ferciō, ire (fersi), fertum, 161.  
 cōn-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, collatum, 171.  
 cōn-ficiō, ere, -fecī, -fectum, 155.  
 cōn-fiteor, ēri, -fessus, 164.  
 con-fligō, ere, -fixi, -flictum, 144.  
 cōn-fringō, ere, -frēgi, -frāctum, 154.  
 con-gruō, ere, congrui, 156.  
 con-iciō, ere, -iēci, -iectum, 155.  
 con-quirō, ere, -quisivi, -quistum, 157.  
 cōn-serō, ere, -serui, -sertum, 158.  
 cōn-serō, ere, -sēvi, -situm, 157.  
 cōn-sidō, ere, consēdi, -sessum, 153.  
 cōn-sistō, ere, -stiti, -stitum, 149.  
 cōn-spergō, ere, -spersi, -spersum, 144.  
 cōn-spiciō, ere, -spexi, -spectum, 147.  
 cōn-stituō, ere, ui, -stitūtum, 156.  
 cōn-stō, -stāre, -stiti, (constātū-rus), 138, 2.  
 cōn-suēscō, ere, -suēvi, suētum, 157 ; 175, 5.  
 cōnsulō, ere, cōnsului, -sultum, 158.  
 con-temnō, ere, -tem(p)si, -tem(p)-tum, 146.  
 con-tendō, ere, -tendi, -tentum, 150.  
 con-texō, ere, -texui, -textum, 158.  
 con-tineō, ēre, ui, -tentum, 135, 1, a.  
 con-tingō, ere, contigi, contāctum, 150.  
 convalēscō, ere, -valui, -valitum, 158.  
 coquō, ere, coxi, coctum, 147, 2 ; 144.  
 cor-ripiō, ere, ripui, -reptum, 158.  
 cor-ruō, ere, corruī, 156.  
 crē-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 138, 1.  
 crepō, ēre, crepui, crepitum, 137.  
 crēscō, ere, crēvi, crētum, 157.  
 cubō, ēre, cubui, cubitum, 137.  
 cūdō, ere, cūdi, cūsum, 153.  
 cupiō, ere, cupivi, cupitum, 157.  
 currō, ere, cucurri, cursum, 148.  
 Dē-cernō, ere, -crēvi, -crētum, 157.  
 dē-cerpō, ere, si, tum, 144.  
 dē-dō, dēdere, dēdidi, dēditum, 188, 1.

dē-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēnsūm, 154.  
 dē-gō, ere, 153.  
 dē-libuō, uere, uī, ūtum, 156.  
 dē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, 153.  
 dē-mō, ere, dēmpsi, dēmp̄tum, 144.  
 dēpellō, ere, dēpulli, dēpulsum, 150.  
 dē-primō, ere, -pressi, -pressum, 144.  
 dē-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scēnsūm, 154.  
 dē-serō, ere, -serui, -sertum, 157.  
 dē-siliō, ire, (ii), (dēsultum), 160.  
 dē-sinō, ere, dēsīvi, dēsītum, 157.  
 dē-sipiō, ere, 157.  
 dē-sistō, ere, -stiti, -stitum, 149.  
 dē-spiciō, ere, -spexi, -spectum, 147.  
 dē-suēscō, -ere, -ēvi, -ētum, 157.  
 dē-sum, -esse, -fui, 117.  
 dē-tendō, ere, -tendī, -tentum, 150.  
 dē-tineō, ēre, -ui, -tentum, 135, i. a.  
 dīcō, ere, dīxi, dictum, 144.  
 dif-ferō, -ferre, distuli, dilātum, 171.  
 dī-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvi, 157.  
 dī-ligō, ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, 144.  
 dī-rigō, ere, -rēxi, -rēctum, 144.  
 dir-imō, ere, -ēmi, -ēmp̄tum, 153.  
 dīscō, ere, didici, 151.  
 dis-crepō, āre, -crepui (āvi), 137.  
 dis-cumbō, ere, -cubui, -cubitum, 158.  
 dis-pēscō, ere, -pēscui, 158.  
 dis-sideō, ēre, -sēdi, 143.  
 dī-stinguō, ere, -stinxi, -stinctum, 146.  
 dī-stō, -stāre, 188, 2.  
 dīvidō, ere, dīvisi, dīvisum, 144.  
 dō, dare, dedi, datum, 138.  
 doceō, ēre, docui, doctum, 135, i. a.  
 domō, āre, uī, itum, 137.  
 dūcō, ere, dūxi, ductum, 144.  
 Edō, ere, ēdi, ēsum, 153, 172.  
 ē-dō, ēdere, ēdidi, ēditum, 138, i.  
 ē-dormiscō, -ere, -īvi, -ītum, 157.  
 ef-ferō, -ferre, extuli, ēlātum, 171.  
 ē-licio, ere, -licui, -licitum, 147.  
 ē-ligō, ere, -lēgi, -lēctum, 153.  
 ē-micō, āre, uī (ētūrus), 137.  
 emo, ere, ēmi, ēmp̄tum, 158.  
 ēmungō, ēre, ēmunxi, ēmunctum.

ē-necō, āre, ēnecui, ēnectum, 137.  
 eo, ire, īvi, itum, 169, 2.  
 ē-vādō, ere, ēvāsi, ēvāsūm, 144.  
 ē-vānēscō, ere, ēvānuī, 158.  
 ex-ardēscō, ere, exārsi, exārsūm, 141.  
 ex-cellō, ere, uī (excelsus), 158.  
 ex-clūdō, ere, -si, -sum, 144.  
 ex-currō, ere, ex(cu)curri, -cursum, 148.  
 ex-cutio, ere, cussi, cussum, 144.  
 ex-imō, ere, ēmi, ēmp̄tum, 153.  
 ex-olēscō, ere, -olēvi, -olētum, 157.  
 ex-pellō, ere, -pulli, -pulsum, 150.  
 expērgiscor, i, experrēctus sum, 165.  
 ex-perior, īri, -pertus sum, 166.  
 ex-pleō, ēre, ēvi, ētum, 124.  
 ex-plicō, āre, uī (āvi), itum (ātum), 137.  
 ex-plōdō, ere, -si, -sum, 144.  
 ex-stinguō, ere, -stinxi, -stinctum, 146.  
 ex-sistō, ere, -stiti, -stitum, 149.  
 ex-stō, āre (exstātūrus), 138, 2.  
 ex-tendō, ere, dī, -sum (-tum), 150.  
 ex-tollō, ere, 150.  
 ex-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum, 156.  
 Facessō, ere, īvi (-i), itum, 157.  
 faciō, ere, fēci, factum, 155.  
 fallo, ere, fefelli, falsum, 150.  
 fācio, ire, fārsi, fartum, 161.  
 fāri, 163 ; 175, 3.  
 fateor, ēri, fassus sum, 164.  
 fatiscor, i (fessus, *adj.*).  
 faveō, ere, fāvi, fautum, 143.  
 ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, 171.  
 ferveō, ēre, fervi (ferui), 143.  
 fidō, ere, fissus sum, 167.  
 figō, ere, fixi, fixum, 144.  
 findō, ere, fidi, fissum, 155.  
 fingō, ere, finxi, fictum, 146.  
 fiō, fieri, factus sum, 173.  
 flectō, ere, flexi, flexum, 145.  
 fligō, ere, flixi, flictum, 144.  
 fluō, ere, fluxi (fluxus, *adj.*), 144.  
 fodio, ere, fōdi, fossum, 155.  
 foveō, ēre, fōvi, fōtum, 143.  
 frangō, ere, frēgi, frāctum, 154.  
 fremō, ere, uī, 158.  
 frendō (eo), ere (uī), frēsūm, frēs-sum, 158.  
 fricō, āre, uī, frictum (ātum), 137.

frigeō, ēre (frīxi), 141.  
frigō, ere, frīxi, frictum, 141.  
fruor, I, fructus (fruitus) sum, 165.  
fugio, ere, fugi, fugitum, 155.  
fulciō, ire, fulsi, fultum, 161.  
fulgeō, ēre, fulsi, 141.  
fundō, ere, fudi, fūsum, 154.  
fungor, I, functus sum, 165.

Gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum, 167.  
gemō, ere, uī, 158.  
gerō, ere, gessi, gestum, 144.  
gignō, ere, genui, genitum, 158.  
gradior, ī, gressus sum, 165.

Haereð, ère, haesi, (haesum), 141.  
haurið, ire, hausi, haustum (hau-  
sûrus, haustûrus), 161.  
have, 175, 4.  
hortor, æri, ætus sum, 128.

iaceō, ēre, iacul, *to lie*.  
 iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactum, 155.  
 icō, ere, icī, ictum, 153.  
 ī-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnōtum, 157.  
 il-liciō, ere, -lexī, -lectum, 147.  
 il-lidō, ere, -lisi, -lissum, 144.  
 imbuō, ere, ul, ūtum, 156.  
 im-pingō, ere, pēgi, pāctum, 146.  
 in-calēscō, ere, -calui, 158.  
 in-cendō, ere, -cendi, -cēsum, 154.  
 incessō, ere, ivi (1), 157.  
 in-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cāsum, 148.  
 in-cidō, ere, -cidi, cīsum, 148.  
 in-cipiō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, 155.  
 in-crepō, āre, ul, itum, 187.  
 in-cumbō, ere, -cubui, -cubitum,  
 158.

in-utiō, ere, -cussī, -cussum, 157.  
ind-īpiscor, ī, indeptus sum, 165.  
in-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, 138, 1.  
indulgeō, ere, indulsī (indultum),  
141.  
in-duō, ere, -duī, -dūtum, 156.  
In-fligō, ere, -fixī, -fictum, 144.  
ingemiscō, ere, ingemuī, 158.  
ingruō, ere, uī. See congruo, 156.  
in-nōtēscō, ere, nōtūī, 158.  
in-olēscō, ere, -olēvi, 157.  
inquam, 175, 2.  
In-sideō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum, 143.  
In-sistō, ere, -stitī, 148.  
In-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum,  
147.  
In-stō, āre, -stitī (instātūrus), 138, 2.  
In-sum, -esse, -fuī, 117.

intel-legō, ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, 144.  
inter-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, 155 ;  
173, R. 2.  
inter-imō, ere, -ēmī, -emptum, 153.  
inter-pungō, ere, -punxi, -punc-  
tum, 150.  
inter-stō, āre, -stetī, 138.  
inter-sum, -esse, -fui, 117.  
inveterāscō, ere, -āvī, 157.  
in-vādō, ere, invāsi, -vāsum, 144.  
iubeō, ēre, iūssi, iūssum, 141.  
iungo, ere, iūnxi, iūnctum, 146.  
iuvō, āre, iūvi, iūtum (iuvātūrus),  
139.

Lābor, i, lāpsus sum, 165.  
lacessō, ere, lacessīvi, -itum, 157.  
laedō, ere, laesi, laesum, 146.  
lambō, ere, i, 154.  
languēō, ēre, i.  
largior, iri, itus sum, 166.  
lavō, ēre (ere), lāvī, lautum, lō-  
tum, lavātum, 139.  
lego, ere, lēgi, lēctum, 153.  
libet, libēre, libuit (libitum est).  
liceor, ēri, itus sum, 164.  
licet, licēre, licuit (licitum est).  
lingō, ere, linxi, linctum.  
linō, ere, levī (līvi), litum, 157.  
linquō, ere, liqui, 154.  
loquor, i, locūtus sum, 128, 2 ; 165.  
lūceō, ēre, lūxi, 141.  
lūdō, ere, lūsi, lūsum, 144.  
lūgeō, ēre, lūxi, 141.  
luō, ere, luī, { lūtum, *to wash*,  
                          { luitum, *to atone for*,  
                          156.

**Malō, malle, māluī, 142, 3 ; 174.**  
**mandō, ere, mandī, mānsum, 154.**  
**maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum, 141.**  
**mānsuēscō, -ere, -ēvi, -ētum.**  
**meminī, 175, 5, b.**  
**mentior, irī, itus, 128, 2; 166.**  
**mereor, ēri, meritus sum, 164.**  
**mergō, ere, mersī, mersum, 144.**  
**mētiōr, irī, mēnsus sum, 166.**  
**metō, ere, messui (rare), messum,**  
**158.**  
**metuō, ere, ui, 156.**  
**micō, āre, ui, 137.**  
**mingō, ere, minxi, mictum.**  
**minuō, ere, minuī, minūtum, 156.**  
**miscēō, ēre, ui, mixtum (mistum).**  
**misereor, ēri, miseritus (misertus)**  
**sum, 164.**

mittō, ere, mīsi, missum, 144.  
 molō, ere, molui, molitum, 158.  
 mordē, ēre, momordi, morsum, 142.  
 morior, mori, mortuus sum (mori-tūrus), 165.  
 movē, ēre, movi, motum, 143.  
 mulceō, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, 141.  
 mulgeō, ēre, mulsi, mulsum (ctum), 141.  
 mungō, ere, munxi, munctum.

Nanciscor, i, nactus (nactus), 165.  
 nascor, i, natus sum (nascitūrus), 165.  
 nectō, ere, nexi (nexui), nexum, 145.  
 neg-legō, ere, -lēxi, -lectum, 144.  
 nequeō, ire, 170.  
 ningō, ere, ninxi.  
 nitor, i, nixus (nixus) sum, 165.  
 nōlo, nōlle, nōlui, 142, 3; 174.  
 noceō, ēre, ui (nocitūrus).  
 nōscō, ere, nōvi, nōtum, 157; 175, 5, d.  
 nōtēscō, ere, nōtui, 158.  
 nūbō, ere, nūpsi, nūptum, 144.

Ob-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 138, 2.  
 ob-dormiscō, ere, -dormivi, -dormitum, 157.  
 obliuiscor, i, oblitus sum, 165.  
 ob-sideō, ēre, -sēdi, -sessum, 143.  
 ob-sistō, ere, -stiti, -stitum, 149.  
 obs-olēscō, ere, -olēvi, -olētum, 157.  
 ob-stō, stāre, stiti (obstātūrus), 138.  
 obtineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum, 135, 1, a.  
 oc-cidō, ere, -cidi, -cāsum, 148.  
 oc-clidō, ere, -clidi, -clisum, 148.  
 oc-cinō, ere, -cinui, 148, 158.  
 oc-cipiō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, 155.  
 oculō, ere, ocului, occultum, 158.  
 ōdi, def., 175, 5, a.  
 of-fendō, ere, -fendi, -fensum, 154.  
 of-ferō, -ferre, obtuli, oblātum, 171.  
 operiō, ire, operui, opertum, 160.  
 opporior, iri, oppertus (or itus), 166.  
 ōrdior, iri, ōrsus sum, 166.  
 orior, iri, ortus sum (oritūrus), 166.  
 os-tendō, ere, -tendi, -tēsum (-tentus), 150.

Paciscor, i, pactus sum, 165, 167, n. 2.  
 pandō, ere, pandi, passum (pānsum), 154.  
 pangō, ere, { pepigi, 150, } pāc-  
 { panxi, 146, } tum.  
 parcō, ere, peperci (parsi), parsū-rus, 148.  
 pariō, ere, peperii, partum (paritūrus), 152.  
 partior, iri, itus, 166.  
 pascō, ere, pāvi, pāstum, 157.  
 pate-facio, ere, -fēci, -factum, 173, a.  
 patior, i, passus sum, 165.  
 paveō, ēre, pāvi, 148.  
 pectō, ere, pexi, pexum, 145.  
 pel-liciō, -licere, -lexi, -lectum, 147.  
 pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsum, 150.  
 pendeō, ēre, pependi, 142.  
 pendō, ere, pependi, pēsum, 150.  
 per-cellō, ere, perculi, perculsum, 158.  
 per-cēnseō, ēre, -cēnsui, -cēsum, 135, 1, a.  
 per-cutiō, ere, cussi, cussum, 144.  
 per-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 138, 1.  
 per-eō, ire, perii, itum, 169, 2, a. 1.  
 per-ficiō, ere, -fēci, -fectum, 155.  
 per-fringō, ere, -frēgi, -frāctum, 154.  
 pergō, ere, perrēxi, perrēctum, 144.  
 per-petior, i, perpassus sum, 165.  
 per-spiciō, ere, -spexi, -spectum, 147.  
 per-stō, -stāre, -stiti, 138, 2.  
 per-tineō, ēre, ui, 135, 1, a.  
 pessum-dō, -dare, -dedi, -datum, 138.  
 petō, ere, iui (ii), itum, 157.  
 piget, pigere, piguit, pigitum est.  
 pingō, ere, pinxi, pictum, 146.  
 pinsō, ere, ui (i), pinsitum (pistum, pinsum), 158.  
 plangō, ere, planxi, planetum, 146.  
 plaudō, ere, plausi, plausum, 144.  
 plectō, ere, (plexi), plexum, 145.  
 plicō, ēre, ui (ēvi), itum (stum), 137.  
 pluō, ere, pluit, 156.  
 polliceor, ēri, itus sum, 164.

pōnō, ere, posui, positum.  
 pōscō, ere, popōsci, 151.  
 pos-sideō, ere, -sēdi, -sessum, 143.  
 pos-sum, posse, potui, 119.  
 potior, iri, itus sum, 166.  
 pōtō, āre, āvi, pōtum, pōtātum.  
 prae-cello, ere, -cellui, 158.  
 prae-cinō, ere, -cinui, 158.  
 prae-currō, ere, -cucurri, -cursum, 148.  
 prae-sideō, ēre, -sēdi, 143.  
 prae-sum, -esse, -fui, 117.  
 prae-stō, -stāre, -stiti (-stātūrus), 138, 2.  
 prandeō, ēre, prandi, prānsum, 143.  
 prehendo, ere, prehendi, prehensum, 154.  
 premō, ere, pressi, pressum, 144.  
 prōd-igō, ere, -ēgi, 153.  
 prō-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 138, 1.  
 proficiscor, i, profectus sum, 165.  
 pro-fiteor, ēri, -fessus sum, 164.  
 prōmō, ere, prōmpsi, prōmptum, 144.  
 prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui, 118.  
 prō-tendō, ere, -tendi, -tentum, tēnsum, 150.  
 psallō, ere, i, 154.  
 pudet, ēre, puduit, puditum est.  
 pungō, ere, pupugi, punctum, 150.  
 pūnior, iri, itus sum, 166.  
 Quaerō, ere, quaesivi, quaesitum, 157.  
 quaesō, 175, 6.  
 quatiō, ere, (quassi), quassum, 144.  
 queō, quire, 170.  
 queror, queri, questus sum, 167.  
 quiēscō, ere, quīēvi, quiētum, 157.  
 Rado, ere, rāsi, rāsum, 144.  
 rapiō, ere, rapui, raptum, 158.  
 rauciō, ire, rausi, rausum, 150, 2.  
 re-cēseō (CENSEō), ēre, -cēnsui, -cēnsum (recēnsitum), 135, 1, a.  
 re-cidō, ere, reccidi, recāsum, 148.  
 re-cumbō, ere, -cubui, 158.  
 red-arguō, ere, -argui, 156.  
 red-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 138, 1.  
 red-igō, ere, -ēgi, -actum, 153.  
 red-imō, ēre, 158.  
 re-fellō, ere, refelli, 150.  
 re-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, 171.  
 rego, ere, rēxi, rēctum, 144.  
 re-linquō, ere, -liqui, -lictum, 154.

reor, rēri, ratus sum, 164.  
 re-pellō, ere, reppuli, pulsum, 150.  
 re-periō, ire, repperi, repertum, 152, 162.  
 rēpō, ere, rēpsi, rēptum, 144.  
 re-sipiscō, ere, -sipivi (sipui), 157.  
 re-sistō, ere, -stiti, -stitum, 149.  
 re-spondeō, ere, -spondi, -spōnsum, 142.  
 re-stō, stāre, -stiti, 138, 2.  
 re-stinguō, ere, -stinxi, stinctum, 146.  
 re-tineō, ere, ui, -tentum, 135, 1, a.  
 re-vertor, i, reverti, reversum, 153, 167.  
 rideō, ēre, risi, risum, 141.  
 rōdō, ere, rōsi, rōsum, 147, 2.  
 rudō, ere, rudivi, itum, 157.  
 rumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptum, 154.  
 ruō, ere, rui, rutum (ruitūrus), 156.  
 Saepiō, ire, saepsi, saeptum, 161.  
 salio, ire, (salii), saltum, 160.  
 sallo, ere, (salii), salsum.  
 salvē, def., 175, 4.  
 sancio, ire, sānxi, sānctum, 161.  
 sapiō, ere (sapivi), sapui, 157.  
 sarcio, ire, sarsi, sartum, 161.  
 satis-dō, -dare, -dedi, -datum, 138.  
 scabō, ere, scābi, 153.  
 scalpō, ere, scalpsi, scalptum, 144.  
 scandō, ere, scandi, scānsum, 154.  
 scindō, ere, scidi, scissum, 155.  
 sciscō, ere, scivi, scitum, 157.  
 scribō, ere, scripsi, scriptum, 144.  
 sculpō, ere, sculpsi, sculptum, 144.  
 secō, āre, secui, sectum, 137.  
 sedēō, ēre, sēdi, sessum, 143.  
 sēligō, ere, -lēgi, -lēctum, 153.  
 sentiō, ire, sēnsi, sēnsum, 161.  
 sepeliō, ire, ivi, sepultum, 159.  
 sequor, i, secutus sum, 165.  
 serō, ere, 158.  
 serō, ere, sēvi, satum, 157.  
 serpō, ere, serpsi, serptum, 144.  
 sidō, ere, sidi, 153.  
 sinō, ere, sivi, situm, 157.  
 sistō, ēre, (stiti), statum, 148.  
 soleō, ēre, solitus sum, 167.  
 solvō, ere, solvi, solūtum, 153.  
 sonō, āre, sonui, sonitum, 137.  
 sonō, āre, sonui, sonātūrus, 137.  
 sorbeō, ēre (sorp-si), sorbui, 140.



sortior, iri, sortitus sum, 166.  
 spargō, ere, sparsi, sparsum, 144.  
 spernō, ere, sprēvi, sprētum, 157.  
 -spiciō, 147.  
 spondeō, ēre, spopondi, spōnsum, 142.  
 spuō, ere, spui, spūtum, 156.  
 statuō, ere, statui, statūtum, 156.  
 sternō, ere, strāvi, strātum, 157.  
 sternuō, ere, sternui, 156.  
 stertō, ere, stertui, 158.  
 -stinguō, ere, 146.  
 stō, stāre, steti, stātum, 138.  
 strepō, ere, strepui, strepitum, 158.  
 strideō, ēre (ere), stridi, 143.  
 stringō, ere, strinxi, strictum, 146.  
 struō, ere, struxi, strūctum, 144.  
 suādeō, ēre, suāsi, suāsum, 141.  
 sub-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 138.  
 sub-igō, ere, -ēgi, -āctum, 153.  
 suc-cēdō, ere, -cēssi, -cēssum, 144.  
 suc-cendō, ere, -cendi, -cēnsum, 154.  
 suc-cēnseō, ēre, ui, -cēnsum, 135, I, a.  
 suc-currō, ere, -curri, -cursum, 148.  
 suāscō, ere, suēvi, suētum, 157.  
 suf-ferō, -ferre, sus-tinui, 171, n. 2.  
 suf-ficiō, ere, -fēci, -fectum, 155.  
 suf-fodiō, ere, -fōdi, -fossū, 155.  
 sug-gerō, ere, -gessi, -gestum, 144.  
 sūgō, ere, sūxi, sūctum.  
 sum, esse, fui, 116.  
 sūmō, ere, sūmpsi, sūmptum, 144.  
 suō, ere, sui, sūtum, 156.  
 super-stō, -stāre, -steti, 138.  
 super-sum, -esse, -fui, 117.  
 sup-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum.  
 surgō, ere, surrexi, surrectum, 144.  
 surripio, ere, ui (surpui), -reptum, 158.  
 Tangō, ere, tetigi, tāctum, 150.  
 tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctum, 144.  
 temnō, ere, 146.  
 tendō, ere, tetendi, tēnsum (tentum), 150.  
 teneō, ēre, tenui, (tentum), 135, I, a.

tergeō, ēre, tersi, tersum, 141.  
 terō, ere, trivi, tritum, 157.  
 texō, ere, texui, textum, 158.  
 ting(u)ō, ere, tinxi, tinctum.  
 tollō, ere (sustuli, sublātum), 150.  
 tondeō, ēre, totondi, tonsum, 142.  
 tonō, āre, ui, 137.  
 torqueō, ēre, torxi, tortum, 141.  
 torreō, ēre, torruī, tōstum, 135, I, a.  
 trā-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 138, I.  
 traho, ere, trāxi, trāctum, 144.  
 tribuō, ere, ui, tribūtum, 156.  
 trūdō, ere, trūsi, trūsum, 144.  
 tueor, ēri, (tuitus) tūtātus sum, 164.  
 tundō, ere, tutudi, tūsum, tūsum, 150.  
 turgeō, ēre, tursi, 141.

Ulciscor, I, ultus sum, 165.  
 ungō, ere, ūnxi, ūnctum, 146.  
 urgeō, ēre, ursi, 141.  
 ūrō, ere, ūssi, ūstum, 144.  
 ūtor, I, ūsus sum, 165.

Vādō, ere, 144.  
 valē, 175, 4.  
 vehō, ere, vexi, vectum, 144.  
 vellō, ere, velli (vulsi), vulsum, 154.  
 vēn-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, 138, I.  
 vēn-eō, ire, ivi (ii), 169, 2, n. 1.  
 veniō, ire, vēni, ventum, 162.  
 vēnum-dō, -dare, -dedi, -datum, 138.  
 vereor, ēri, veritus sum, 164.  
 verrō, ere, verri, versum, 153.  
 vertō, ere, verti, versum, 153.  
 vescor, I, 165.  
 vesperāscō, ere, āvi, 157.  
 vetō, āre, vetui, vetitum, 137.  
 videō, ēre, vidi, vīsum, 143.  
 vincio, ire, vinxi, vinctum, 161.  
 vincō, ere, vici, victum, 154.  
 visō, ere, visi, 153.  
 vivō, ere, vixi, victum, 144.  
 volō, velle, volui, 158; 174.  
 volvō, ere, volvi, volūtum, 153.  
 vomō, ere, vomui, vomitum, 158.  
 voveō, ēre, vōvi, vōtum, 143.

## PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. The Verb agrees with its subject in number and person (211).
2. The Adjective agrees with its subject in gender, number, and case (211).
3. The common Predicate of two or more subjects is put in the Plural (285); when the genders are different, it takes the strongest gender or the nearest (286); when the persons are different, it takes the first in preference to the second, the second in preference to the third (287).
4. The common Attribute of two or more substantives agrees with the nearest, rarely with the most important (290).
5. The Predicate substantive agrees with its subject in case (211).
6. The Appositive agrees with its subject in case; if possible, also in number and person (321).
7. The Relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person (614).
8. Disproportion is indicated by the comparative with *quam prò, quam ut, quam qui* (298).
9. In comparing two qualities, use either *magis quam* with the positive, or a double comparative (299).
10. Superlatives denoting order and sequence are often used partially and then usually precede their substantive (291, R. 2).
11. The Genitive forms *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, are used mainly as objective genitives; *nostrum* and *vestrum* as partitive (304, 2).
12. The Reflexive is used regularly when reference is made to the grammatical subject; frequently when reference is made to the actual subject (309).
13. The Reflexive is used of the principal subject, when reference is made to the thought or will of that subject; hence, in Infinitive clauses, or Indirect Questions, in Sentences of Design, and in *Ūrātiō Obliqua* (521).
14. The Possessive Pronoun is used instead of the Possessive or Subjective Genitive in the First and Second Persons (362, 364).
15. The Appositive to a possessive pronoun is in the Genitive (321, R. 2).
16. With words of Inclination and Disinclination, Knowledge and Ignorance, Order and Position, Time and Season, the adjective is usually employed for the adverb (325, R. 6).
17. The Indicative, not the Subjunctive, is used in expressions of Possibility, Power, Obligation, and Necessity (254, R. 1).

18. The Potential of the Present or Future is the Present or Perfect Subjunctive (257) ; the Potential of the Past is the Imperfect Subjunctive (258).

19. The Optative Subjunctive may be used to express a Wish (260), an Asseveration (262), a Command (263), or a Concession (264).

20. The First Imperative looks forward to immediate, the Second to contingent, fulfilment (268).

21. The Negative of the Imperative is regularly *nō* with the Infinitive ; sometimes *nē* with the Perfect Subjunctive (270, *z.* 2), or *cavē* with the Subjunctive (271) is also used.

22. The Infinitive, with or without a subject, may be treated as a neuter subject (422), object (423), or predicate (424).

23. The Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of Will, Power, Duty, Habit, Inclination, Resolve, Continuance, End, *etc.* (423).

24. The Accusative and Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of Will and Desire (532).

25. The Accusative and Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of Emotion (533).

26. The Accusative and Infinitive is used in Exclamation (534).

27. After verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, the Present Infinitive expresses action contemporary with that of the governing verb, the Perfect, action prior to it, the Future, action future to it (530).

28. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives that require a complement (428).

29. The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used mainly in post-classical Latin after words of Fitness and Function ; also after words of Capacity and Adaptation, and to express Design (429).

30. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after verbs of Giving and Taking, Sending and Leaving, *etc.*, to indicate Design (430).

31. The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used to denote Means and Cause, rarely Manner (431).

32. The Supine in *-um* is used chiefly after verbs of Motion to express Design (435).

33. The Supine in *-a* is used chiefly with adjectives to indicate Respect (436).

34. The Present Participle denotes continuance, the Perfect, completion, at the time of the leading verb (282).

35. The Future Participle is used in post-Ciceronian Latin to express Design (438, *n.*).

36. The Participle is used after verbs of Perception and Representation to express the actual condition of the object (536).

37. The Perfect Participle passive is used after verbs of Causation and Desire, to denote impatience of anything except entire fulfilment (537).

38. The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative (203).

39. Verbs of Seeming, Becoming, with the passive of verbs of Making, Choosing, Showing, Thinking, and Calling, take two Nominatives, one of the subject, one of the predicate (206).

40. With passive verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, the Accusative subject of the Infinitive becomes the Nominative subject of the leading verb (528).

41. The Appositional Genitive is used after *vōx*, *nōmen*, *verbum*, *rēs*, etc. (361, 1).

42. The Epexegetical Genitive (or Genitive of Explanation) is used after *genus*, *vitium*, *culpa*, etc. (361, 2).

43. The Possessive Genitive is used of the Third Person to denote possession (362).

44. The Subjective Genitive is used of the subject of the action indicated by the substantive (363, 1); the objective Genitive, of the object of that action (363, 2).

45. Essential or permanent qualities are put in the Genitive, always with an adjective (365); external and transient qualities in the Ablative, always with an adjective (400). See No. 82.

46. The Genitives of Quality and Possession may be used as predicates (366).

47. The Partitive Genitive stands for the whole to which a part belongs (367).

48. Adjectives of Fulness and Want, of Knowledge and Ignorance, of Desire and Disgust, of Participation and Power, may take the Genitive (374). Also some present participles used as adjectives, and in later Latin some verbals in *-āx* (375).

49. Verbs of Reminding, Remembering, and Forgetting usually take the Genitive (376); but sometimes the Accusative, especially of things (376, 2.).

50. Impersonal verbs of Emotion take the Accusative of the Person Who Feels, and the Genitive of the Exciting Cause (371).

51. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning, and Acquitting, take the Genitive of the Charge (378).

52. Verbs of Rating and Buying take the Genitive of the General, the Ablative of the Particular Value (379, 404). See No. 87.

53. **Interest** and **Refert** take the Genitive of the Person, rarely of the Thing concerned (381).

54. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative (345).

55. Verbs of Advantage and Disadvantage, Bidding and Forbidding, Pleasure and Displeasure, Yielding and Resisting, take the Dative (346).

56. Many intransitive verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **sub**, and **super** may take a Dative ; transitive verbs also an Accusative besides (347).

57. Verbs of Giving and Putting take a Dative and Accusative, or an Accusative and Ablative (348).

58. The Dative is used with **esse** to denote possession (349).

59. The Dative is used of the Person Interested in the action (350).

60. The Ethical Dative is used of the personal pronouns only (351).

61. The Dative of Reference is used of the Person to whom a statement is referred (352).

62. The Dative of Agent is used with the Perfect passive, the Gerund, and the Gerundive (354).

63. The Dative may denote the Object For Which in combination with the Person to Whom (355).

64. Adjectives of Friendliness, Fulness, Likeness, Nearness, with their opposites, take the Dative (359).

65. Active transitive verbs take the Accusative case (390).

66. Many intransitive verbs, mostly those of Motion, compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **circum**, **con**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **per**, **praeter**, **sub**, **subter**, **super**, and **trans**, take the Accusative ; transitive verbs thus compounded may have two Accusatives (331).

67. Intransitive verbs may take an Accusative of similar form or meaning (333, 2).

68. The Accusative may express Extent in Degree, Space, or Time (334-6).

69. Names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Accusative of Place Whither ; so also **domus** and **rūs** (337). See No. 74 and 92.

70. Verbs meaning to Inquire, Require, Teach, and Conceal, take two Accusatives, one of the Person, one of the Thing (339).

71. Verbs of Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, and Showing, take two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing (340).

72. The subject of the Infinitive is regularly in the Accusative (420).

73. The Accusative may be used in Exclamations (343).

74. Place Where is denoted by the Ablative, usually with **in** (385) ;

**Place Whence** by the Ablative, usually with *ex*, *dē*, or *ab* (390). Names of Towns and Small Islands omit the prepositions (386, 391). See No. 69 and 92.

75. Attendance is denoted by the Ablative with *cum* (392).

76. Time When or Within Which is denoted by the Ablative (393).

77. Origin or Descent is denoted by the Ablative with or without *ex* and *dē* (395).

78. Material is denoted by the Ablative with *ex* (396).

79. The Point of View or Respect is denoted by the Ablative (397).

80. Comparatives without *quam* are followed by the Ablative (398).

81. Manner is denoted by the Ablative regularly with an adjective or *cum* (399).

82. External and transient qualities are denoted by the Ablative, always with an adjective (400); essential and permanent qualities by the Genitive, always with an adjective (365). See No. 45.

83. Cause, Means, and Instrument, are denoted by the Ablative (401, 408).

84. The Agent is denoted by the Ablative with *a* (*ab*) (401).

85. The Standard of Measurement is denoted by the Ablative (402).

86. Measure of Difference is put in the Ablative (403).

87. Definite Price is put in the Ablative (404); General Price in the Genitive (379). See No. 52.

88. Verbs of Depriving and Filling, of Plenty and Want, take the Ablative (405).

89. The Ablative is used with *opus* and *usus* (406).

90. *Utor*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, take the Ablative (407).

91. The Ablative, combined with a participle, serves to modify the verbal predicate of a sentence: Ablative Absolute (409).

92. Names of Towns and Small Islands of the First and Second Declensions are put in the Locative of the Place Where (411). See No. 69 and 74.

93. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs (439).

94. A question for information merely is introduced by *-ne* (454).

95. A question that expects the answer *yes* is introduced by *nōne* (455).

96. A question that expects the answer *no* is introduced by *num* (456).

97. The Deliberative Question is in the Subjunctive (365).

98. The Indirect Question is in the Subjunctive (467).

99. *Sequence of Tenses.* Principal tenses are ordinarily followed by Principal tenses, Historical by Historical (509).

100. After a Future or Future Perfect, the Future relation is expressed by the Present, the Future Perfect by the Perfect Subjunctive (514). After other tenses the Future relation is expressed by the Active Periphrastic Present and Imperfect Subjunctive (515).

101. In *Ōrātiō Oblīqua* all subordinate tenses follow the general law of sequence (516).

102. *Quod, the fact that, in that,* is used with the Indicative to introduce explanatory clauses after Verbs of Adding and Dropping, Doing and Happening, and demonstratives (525).

103. *Quod, quia, quoniam, and quandō* take the Indicative in Direct Discourse, the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, to express Cause (540, 541).

104. *Quod* is used after verbs of Emotion with the Indicative in Direct, the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, to give the Ground (542).

105. Final Sentences have the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive with *ut* or *nō* (545).

106. Complementary Final Clauses are used after verbs of Will and Desire (546).

107. Positive verbs of Preventing, Refusing, Forbidding, and Bewaring, may take *nō* with the Subjunctive (548).

108. Verbs of Preventing and Refusing may take *quōminus* with the Subjunctive (549). See No. 112.

109. Verbs of Fear are followed by *nō* or *ut* (*nō nōn*) and all tenses of the Subjunctive (550).

110. Consecutive Sentences have the Subjunctive with *ut* and *ut nōn* (552).

111. Verbs of Effecting have the Subjunctive with *ut* and *nō*, or *ut nōn* (553).

112. Negatived or Questioned verbs of Preventing, Hindering, *etc.*, of Doubt and Uncertainty, may be followed by the Subjunctive with *quā* (555). See No. 108.

113. A Consecutive Clause with *ut* is often used to give the contents or character of a preceding substantive, adjective, or pronoun (557).

114. *Ut, ut primum, cum, cum primum, ubi, ubi primum, simul, simul atque, and postquam* take the Perfect Indicative, in the sense of *as soon as*; but the Imperfect is used of Overlapping Action, and the Pluperfect when a definite interval is given (561, 562, 563).

115. When two actions are repeated contemporaneously, both are put in the Indicative in tenses of continuance (566).

116. When one action is repeated before another, the antecedent action is put in the Perfect, Pluperfect, or Future Perfect, the subsequent in the Present, Imperfect, or Future, according to the relation (567).

117. *Dum, donec, quoad, quamdiu, so long as, while*, take the Indicative of all tenses (569).

118. *Dum, while, while yet*, takes the Present Indicative after all tenses (570).

119. *Dum, donec, quoad, until*, take the Present, Historical Present, Historical Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative (571).

120. *Dum, donec, quoad, until*, take the Subjunctive when Suspense or Design is involved (572).

121. *Dum, modò, and dummodò, if only, provided only*, take the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive in Conditional Wishes (573).

122. *Antequam* and *priusquam* take the Indicative Present, Perfect, and Future Perfect when the limit is stated as a fact; the Subjunctive when the action is expected, contingent, designed, or subordinate (574, 577).

123. Temporal *cum, when*, is used with all tenses of the Indicative to designate merely temporal relations (580).

124. Historical *cum, when*, is used with the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive to give the circumstances under which an action took place (585).

125. Causal and Concessive *cum, when, whereas, although*, are used with all tenses of the Subjunctive (586, 587).

126. The Logical Condition has usually some form of the Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis (595).

127. The Ideal Condition has usually the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, less often the Imperfect or Pluperfect, in both clauses (595).

128. The Unreal Condition has the Imperfect Subjunctive of opposition to present, the Pluperfect of opposition to past fact (597).

129. *Ut si, sic si, quasi, quam si, tamquam, tamquam si, velut, and velut si*, introduce a comparison in the Subjunctive. The tense follows the rule of sequence (602).

130. Concessive clauses may be introduced by *etsi, etiam si, tametsi*, with the Indicative or Subjunctive (604); by *quamquam*, with the Indicative (605); by *quamvis*, with the Subjunctive (606).

131. Indefinite and generic relatives usually have the Indicative (625); so explanatory *qui*, when equivalent to *quod* (626).

132. The Subjunctive is used in Relative Clauses that form a part



of the utterance of another ; so in *Ōrātiō Obliqua* and *Final Clauses* (628).

133. Relative sentences that depend on Infinitives or Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive by *Attraction* (629).

134. Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Design when *qui = ut* (final) *is* (630).

135. Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive of Tendency when *qui = ut* (consecutive) *is* ; so after *dignus*, *indignus*, *idōneus*, *aptus*, *etc.* ; after an indefinite antecedent ; after comparatives with *quam* (631).

136. Comparative sentences after words of Likeness and Unlikeness may be introduced by *atque* or *ac* (643).

137. Comparative sentences after comparatives are introduced by *quam* (644).

138. In *Ōrātiō Obliqua*, Principal Clauses are put in the Infinitive, except Interrogatives and Imperatives, which are put in the Subjunctive ; Subordinate clauses are put in the Subjunctive (650, 651, 652).

## GENERAL INDEX.

A—length of final, 707,1.

**ab** (E)—Syntax of as prep., 417,1; position of, 413, R.1; Dat. after vbs. cpd. with, 347, R.5; with Abl. of Separation, 390; with Towns, 391, R.1; with Abl. of Origin, 395; with Abl. of Agent, 401; with Abl. Ger., 433.

**abesse**—with Acc. of Extent, or **ē** and Abl., 335, R.2; with Dat., 349, R.4; **tantum abest ut**,—**ut**, 552, R.1.

**ability**—adjs. of, with Inf., 423, R.2.

**ABLATIVE**—defined, 23,6; Pl. in **ēbus**, 29, R.4; mute stems with **i**, 54; vowel stems in **i**, 57, R.2; 4th decl. in **ubus**, 61, R.1; Pl. in **is** (for **ils**), 75,2; adjs. of three endings in **e**, 79, R.1; adjs. and parts. in **i** and **e**, 82; adjs. in **e** and **i**, 83; of Comp., 89, R.1; forms advs., 91.

With **abesse** and **distāre**, 335, R.2; with Acc. after vbs. of Giving and Putting, 348; with preps. instead of Part. Gen., 372, R.2; of Place where, 385; of Towns, 396; of Place whence, 390; with vbs. of Abstaining, 390,2; with Adjs., 390,3; of Towns, 391; preps. with Towns, *ib.* R.1; of Attendance, 392; of Time, 393; of Time with **in**, 394; of Origin, 395; of Material, 396; of Respect, 397; with Comp., 396, 396; of Manner, 399; of Quality, 400; of Instrument, 401; of Agent, 314, 401; with verbs of Sacrificing, 401, R.4; with **nitōr**, **fidō**, *etc.*, 401, R.6; of Standard, 402; of Difference, 403; of Price, 404; with vbs. of Plenty and Want, 405; with **opus** and **ūsus**, 400; with **titor**, **frnor**, *etc.*, 407; of Cause, 406 and *RR.*; of Ger., 431, 432; of Sup., 436.

**ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE**—syntax of, 409,10; of part., 665; 666.

**abstaining**—vbs. of, with Abl., 390,2.

**abstract**—relations expressed by Indic., 254, R.1; substs. become concrete in Pl., 204, R.5; formation of, 181,2,6.

**abūti**—with Abl., 407.

**Ac**—see **atque**; **Ac si** with Subjv. of Comparison, 602.

**accentuation**—15; effect of enclitics, *ib.* R.1; in cpds., *ib.* R.2; in Voc., *ib.* R.3.

**accidit**—sequence after, 513, R.2; with **quod**, 525, R.; with **ut**, 553,3.

**ACCUSATIVE**—definition, 23,4. 3d decl. 36; in **im**, of vowel stems, 57, R.1; Pl. in **is** and **es**, 57, R.4; in **is**, 83, R.2; of Comp. in **is**, 89, R.2; forms advs., 91.

Becomes subj. of pass., 216; Direct obj., 330; with cpd. vbs., 331; Inner obj., 332, 333; neut. pron. and adj., 333,1; Cognate, *ib.*2. Double Acc., 333,1; of Extent, in Degree, Space, Time, 334—336; with **abesse** and **distāre**, 335, R.2; with **abhinc**, 336, R.3; of Local Object, 337; of Respect, 338. Double Acc., 339—342; with vbs. of Inquiring, *etc.*, 339; with vbs. of Naming, Making, *etc.*, 340; with Interjections, 343,1; and Dat. with vbs. of Giving and Putting, 348; with preps. for Part. Gen., 372, R.2; subj. of Inf., 203, R.1; 420; of Ger., 430, 432; of Sup., 435; with Inf. as object clause, 526—535; with Inf. as subj., 535; with Inf. after vbs. of Emotion, 542, R.; with Inf. in dependent comparative clause, 641.

**accusing**—vbs. of, with Gen., 378.

**acquitting**—vbs. of, with Gen., 378.

**active voice**—112,2; 213; of something caused to be done, 219; periphrastic, 247.

**ad**—vbs. cpd. with, take Acc., 331; with Towns and Countries, 337, *RR.* 1 and 2; with Acc. of End after vbs. of Taking, *etc.*, 340, R.2; with Acc. for Dat., 345, R.2; vbs. cpd. with, take Dat., 347; in the neighborhood of, 386, R.2; position of, 413, R.1; as prep., 416,1; with Acc. Ger., 429; 432, R.

**adding**—vbs. of, with **quod**, 525,1; with **ut**, 553,4.

**ADJECTIVE**—16,2; decl. of, 17; defined, 72; 1st and 2d decl., 73; stems in **ro**, 74; with Nom. wanting, 74, R.2; Pronominal,

76; 3d decl., 77; two endings, 78; stems in *ri*, 78,2; in *ſli* and *ſri*, 78,2; one ending, 80; case peculiarities, 83; *abundantia*, 84; defective, 85; comparison of, 86; correlative, 109.

As subst., 204, R.R.1-4; agreement of pred., 211; attrib. agrees in Gender, 236; neut. with fem., *ib.* 3; concord of, 239; with two subjs., 290; position, 291; meaning varies with position, *ib.* R.1, 676; numerals, 292-295; comparatives, 296-301; superlatives, 302, 303; of Inclination, Knowledge, *etc.*, in pred., 325, R.6; neut. in Cognate Acc., 333,1; of Extent in Degree, 334 and R.1; with Gen. of Quality, 365; of 3d decl. as pred., 366, R.2; with Abl. of Separation, 390,3; with Abl. of manner, 399; with Abl. of Quality, 400; with Inf. for Gen. of Ger., 423, R.2; neut. with *ut*, 553,4.

*advantage*—vbs. of, with Dat., 346.

**ADVERB**—defined, 16,5, and R.3; formation of, 91, 92; comparison of, 93; numeral, 96; pron., 110; general use of, 439; position of, 440, 677.

*adversative*—sentences, 463-491; particles, 493; *cum*, 587; *qui*, 634.

*adversus*—gives obj. *toward which*, 359, R.2; as prep., 416,2.

*ae*—pronunciation of, 4 and R.

*aequalis*—with Gen. or Dat., 359, R.1.

*aequare*—with Acc., 346, R.3.

*aestimare*—with Gen., 379; with Abl., 390, R.2; with Abl. and *ex*, 402, R.2.

*age*—how expressed, 296, R.5.

*agent*—in Abl. with *ab*, 214, 355, R.1, 401; in Abl., 214, R.2; in Dat., 215, 354, 355; and Instrument, 401, R.1.

*ais*—175,1; introduces *Ō.R.*, 648, R.2.

*aliquis* and *aliqui*—107; syntax of, 314; for *quis* and *qui*, 107, R.1, 315, R.1.

*alius*—decl. of, 76, 108; syntax of, 319; *alia* as Acc. of Respect, 338,2; *aliās*—*aliās*, 482,1.

*alter*—decl. of, 76, 108; for *secundus*, 96,5; and *alius*, 319.

*alteruter*—decl. of, 76, 108.

*ambo*—95, 108; and *uterque*, 292.

*amicus*—with Gen. or Dat., 359, R.1.

*an*—in disjunctive questions, 457, 1; in phrases, *ib.* 2; in second part of a disjunctive question, 458; *anne*, *ib.*; *annōn* and *necne*, 459; or 497.

*anacoluthon*—697.

*anacrusis*—733, R.

*anapaestic*—foot, 733.

*animi* as Loc., 374, R.

*ante*—vbs. cpd. will take Acc. or Dat., 331,347; with Abl. of Standard or Acc. of Extent, 403, R.; as prep., 416,3; with Acc. Ger., 432,1.

*antequam*—see *antequam*.

*antecedent*—action, 561-567: of Rel., 613; repetition of, 615; incorporation of, 616; indefinite, 621; def. or indef. with Indic. or Subjv., 631,1 and 2.

*antequam*—with Indic., 574-576; with Pr., 575; with Pf. and Fut. Pf., 576; with Subjv., 577.

*aorist*—definition, 224; Hist. Pf., 239.

*aphaeresis*—714, R.

*apodosis*—589; omission of, 601; in comparative sentences, 602; in Indic. in Unreal Conditions, 597, R.3; after vb. requiring Subjv., *ib.* R.5.

*apocriphesis*—691.

*appellare*—with two Accs., 340; with two Noms., 206.

*apposition*—320; concord in, 321; Partitive, 322, 323; Restrictive, 322; Distributive, 323; to sentence, 324; Predicate, 325; Gen. of, 361; to names of Towns, 386, R.1; to Loc., 411, R.2; pron. incorporated, 614, R.4; subst. incorporated, 616,2.

*apud*—416,4.

*arrangement*—of words, 671-683; grammatical or rhetorical, 672; of simple sentences, 674; of interrog. sentences, 675; of adj. and Gen., 676; of advs., 677; of preps., 678; of particles, 679.

*as*—decl. of, 48, R.

*asking*—vbs. of, with two Accs., 339 and R.1; with *ut*, 546.

*asseverations*—in Subjv., 262.

*at*—use of, 498.

*atque*—syntax of, 477; with adjs. of Likeness, *etc.*, 643.

*atque*—499.

*attendance*—Abl. of, 392; with *cum*, *ib.* R.1; instrumental, *ib.* R.2.

*attraction*—in Gender, 211, R.5; in mood, 508,4, 629, 662, 663; of Rel., 617.

*attributive*—298; concord of adj., 289; with two or more substs., 290; position of, 291; superlatives of Order and Sequence, 291,1, R.2; pred., 325; with part., 437, R.

- aut**—use of, 493; **aut—aut**, 445.  
**autem**—position of, 484, R.; syntax of, 484.  
**auxiliary**—vbs. with Inf., 280, 1, b.
- becoming**—vbs. of, with two Noms., 206.  
**beginning**—vbs. of, with Inf., 423, and R. 3.  
**believing**—vbs. of, with Acc. and Inf., 527; with Nom., 528.  
**bellum**—in Abl. of Time, 394, R.; **belli** as Loc., 411, R. 1.  
**beseeching**—vbs. of, with **ut**, 546.  
**bewaring**—vbs. of, with **nō**, 548.  
 **bidding**—vbs. of, with Dat., 348.  
 **binī**—for duo, 96, R. 3.  
 **bōs**—decl. of, 52.  
 **brachylogy**—689.  
 **buying**—vbs. of, with Gen. or Abl., 379, 380.
- caesura**—defined, 750–753.  
 **calling**—vbs. of, with two Accs., 340; with two Noms., 206.  
 **capability**—adjs. of, with Inf., 421, R. 2.  
 **cardinal numbers**—94; Gen. Pl. of 95, R. 2; position of, 676, R. 2.  
 **carō**—decl. of, 42; gender of, 43, 1.  
 **cases**—defined, 23;  **recti** and  **obliqui**, 24; case-forms, 25; endings, 25, 2.  
 **catalexis**—742.  
 **causā**—with Gen., 373; with Gen. Ger., 428, R. 2.  
 **CAUSAL SENTENCES**—COORDINATE, 496; subordinate, 538–542; with **quod**, etc., and Indic. or Subjv., 540, 541; rejected reason, *id. R.*; with vbs. of Emotion, 542; with **cum**, 586; relative, 634; clauses in *Ō.O.*, 655.  
 **causation**—vbs. of, with part., 537; with **ut**, 553, 1; pass. with **ut**, *id. 3.*  
 **cause**—Abl. of, 406; represented by part., 666, 670, 2.  
 **cavēre**—with Subjv. for Impv., 271, 2; with Dat., 246, R. 2; constructions with, 548, R.  
 **cedo**—defective, 175, 6.  
 **cēlāre**—with two Accs., or **dē**, 339 and R. 1 and 3.  
 **(cēterus)**—Nom. masc. wanting, 74, R. 2, 85, R.; use of **cēterum**, 491; **cētera** used partitively, 291, R. 2.  
 **charge**—in Gen. with Judicial verbs, 378; with **nōmine**, *id. R. 1*; in Abl., *id. R. 2.*  
 **choosing**—vbs. of, with two Noms., 206; with two Accs., 340.
- circū**—position of, 413, R. 1; as prep., 416, 5; with Acc. Ger., 432.  
 **circiter**—as prep., 416, 6.  
 **circum**—vbs. cpd. with, take Acc., 331; never repeated, *id. R. 2*; as prep., 416, 5.  
 **cis**—as prep., 416, 7.  
 **citius quam**—constr. after 644, R. 3.  
 **citrā**—as prep., 416, 7.  
 **coepi**—175, 5, a; with Inf., 423, R. 3.  
 **cōgere**—with **ut**, 553, 2; **conclude**, with Inf., 546, R. 1.  
 **Cognate Accusative**—333, 2; similar phrases, *id. R.*; with second Acc., 341.  
 **cōgnātus**—with Gen. or Dat., 359, R. 1.  
 **cōgnōmen esse**—with Dat., 348, R. 5.  
 **colus**—decl. of, 68, 4.  
 **communis**, with Gen. or Dat., 359, R. 1.  
 **comparative**—86, 87; with **quam** or Abl., 296; omission of **quam**, *id. R. 4*; age with **nātus**, *id. R. 5*; of Disproportion, 298; doubled, 299; with Part. Gen., 372; with Abl. of Respect, 398; with **quam qui**, 631, 3.  
 **COMPARATIVE SENTENCES**—638–644; moods in, 639; vb. omitted in, 640; in dependent clauses, 641; correlatives in, 642; with **atque**, 643; with **quam**, 644.  
 **comparison**—of adjectives, 86, 87; of participles, 88, 89; of advs., 93; irregular, 90; standard of, omitted, 297; of qualities, 299; conditional sentences of, 602.  
 **compelling**—vbs. of, with **ut**, 553, 2.  
 **composition of words**, 193–200; of substs., 194–198; of vbs., 199, 200.  
 **compounds**—107, 108; quantity in, 715.  
 **conceiving**—vbs. of, with obj. clause, 523.  
 **CONCESSIVE SENTENCES**—603–609; with **etsi**, etc., 604; with **quamquam**, 605; with **quamvis**, 606; with **licet**, 607; with **ut**, 608; representatives of, 609.  
 **concord**—210; pred. with subj., 211; of multiplied subj. and pred., 285–287; of app., 321; of rel., 614.  
 **condemning**—vbs. of, with Gen., 378; with other constrs., *id. R. 2.*  
 **CONDITIONAL SENTENCES**—589–602; negatives, 591; two excluding, 592; equivalents of Protasis, 593.  **LOGICAL**, 595;  **sive—sive**, *id. R. 4.*  **IDEAL**, 596;  **UNREAL**, 597; Indic. in Apodosis, *id. R. 3*; in *Ō.O.*, *id. R. 4*;  **INCOMPLETE**, 598–601; of  **COMPARISON**, 602; in *Ō.O.*, 656;  **Logical**, 657;  **Ideal**, 658;  **Unreal**, 659.  
 **cōfidere**—with Abl., 401, R. 6.

- conjugation—defined, 17; systems of, 120; first, 122; second, 122; irregular second, 124; third, 128; third in 15, 126; fourth, 127; deponents, 128; periphrastic, 129; notes on, 130, 131; change in, 126.
- CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES—exceptional sequence in, 512; syntax of, 551-558; Pure, 552; with *dignus*, etc., *id.* R.2; with idea of Design, *id.* R.3; ut *nōn*, *without*, *id.* R.4; Complementary, 553; vbs. of Effecting, 553; vbs. of Hindering, 554-556; *quā* with vbs. of Preventing, 555, 1; with vbs. of Doubt, *id.* 2; *quā* = ut *nōn*, 556; Explanatory ut, 557; Exclamatory question, 558; rel. sentences, 551; with *quā*, 532.
- cōstructiō praeagnāns*, 699.
- cōsulere*—with Dat., 346, R.2.
- contemporaneous action—538-573; in Ex-text, 569, 570; in Limit, 571-573.
- contentus, with Abl. 401, R.6.
- contingit—with ut, 553, 3; *contigit*, sequence after, 513, R.
- continuance—vbs. of, with Inf., 433.
- contra—position of, 413, R.1; as prep., 416, 9.
- contracting—vbs. of, with Acc. Ger., 439.
- contrārius—with Gen. or Dat., 350, R.1.
- contrasts—with *hic*—*ille*, 307, RR.1, 2; with *ipse*, 311, R.1; alter—alter, etc., 323.
- convicting—vbs. of, with Gen., 378; other constr., *id.* R.2.
- coördination—defined, 472; syntax of, 472-503; copulative, 474-482; adversative, 483-491; disjunctive, 492-497; causal and illative, 498-503.
- copula—with Pred., 205; itself a pred., *id.* N.; omitted, 209; agrees with pred., 211, R.1, EX.C.
- copulative—vbs., 206; with nom. and Inf., *id.* R.1. Particles, 474, 481. Sentences 474-482; use of neg. to connect, 490.
- cor—decl. of, 53.
- cōram—as prep., 417, 3.
- correlatives—109-111; coördinating particles, as *tum*—*tum*, *aliās*—*aliās*, etc., 492; of Rel., 618; absorption of, 619, 621; position of, 620; in comparative sentences, 642; omitted, 642, 3.
- correction—744.
- countries—in Acc., with prep., 337, R.1; without, *id.* R.1.
- creāre—with two Accs., 340; with two Noms., 206.
- cum—vbs. cpd. with take Acc., or Dat., 331, 347; with Abl. of Attendance, 392; with Abl. of Manner, 399; with unnatural productions, 400, R.2; as prep., 417, 4; position of, 413, R.1; with Abl. Ger., 433.
- Primum, as soon as, 561-563; with Iterative action, 566, 567; with Subjv., *id.* R.; Temporal, 590; fruit cum, *id.* R.1; meminī cum, *id.* R.2; with Lapses of Time, *id.* R.3; Inverse, 581; Iterative, 584; Circumstantial, 585-588; Historical, 585; Causal, 586; Concessive and Adversative, 587; cum—tum, 588.
- Dactylic—foot, 783; rhythms, 783-789.
- DATIVE—defined, 23, 3; 1st decl. in *abus*, 29, R.4; 4th decl. in *ubus*, 61, R.1; 5th decl., uncommon, 63, R.1; in adjs. in *is* (for *ils*), 75, 2; in *I* of pron. adjs., 76, 2.
- With act. vb. unchanged in pass., 217, 246, R.1; of Indirect Obj., 244; with trans. vbs., 345; with vbs. of Taking Away, *id.* R.1; with intrans. vbs., 346; with cpd. vbs., 247; with vbs. cpd. with *dē*, *ex*, *ab*, *id.* R.5; and Acc. with vbs. of Giving and Putting, 348; of Possessor, 349; of Personal Interest, 350; Ethical, 351; of Reference, 352, 353; with participles, 353; of Agent, 215, 354; Double, 356; with substs., 357; Local, 358; with adjs., 359; of Ger., 429.
- dē*—with Abl. for second Acc., 339, RR.1, 3; vbs. cpd. with take Dat., 247, R.5; with Abl. of Separation, 390, 1 and 2; of Origin, 395; of Respect, 397, R.; of Cause, 406, R.3; position of, 413, R.1; as prep., 416, 5; with Abl. Ger., 433.
- decēre—with Dat., 346, R.3.
- declension—defined, 17; varieties of, 27; rules for, 28; 1st, 29, 30; 2d, 31-33; 3d, 35-40; 4th, 61, 62; 5th, 63, 64; vary between 5th and 3d, 63, R.2; of Greek substs., 65; adjs. of 1st and 3d, 73; of pron. adjs., 76; of parts., 80.
- dēesse—with Dat., 346, R.4.
- dēficere—with Acc., 346, R.3.
- deliberative questions—285; Subjv. in *Ō.O.*, 651, R.2.
- dēligere—with two Accs., 340; with two Noms., 206.
- demanding—vbs. of, with ut, 548.
- demonstratives—104; attracted in Gender, 211, R.5; syntax of, 305-307; *hic*,

- 305; *iste*, 306; *ille*, 307; followed by *quod*, 525,2; position of, 676, R.1.
- deponent—113; conjugation, 128; list of, 163-166; semi-, 167; how used, 220.
- depriving—vbs. of, with Abl., 405, N.
- desire—adjs. of, with Gen., 374; vbs. of, with Inf., 281, C, 423,2, R.4.
- determinative pronouns—103, 306.
- deus—decl. of, 33, R.6.
- dexter—74, R.1; Comp. of, 87,1, 2 and 7.
- diacresis—5, 753.
- dialysis—724.
- diastole—721.
- dicere—with two Noms. in pass., 206.
- difference—measure of, 403.
- difficile—comparison of, 87,3.
- diffidere—with Dat., 401, R.6.
- dignus—constr. after, 552, R.2; *qui* or *ut*, with Subjv., 631,1.
- diphthongs—length, 14; quantity, 705.
- disjunctive—particles, 492; sentences, 492-497; questions, 452; forms of, 458; indirect, 460,2.
- disproportion—by *quam prò*, *qui*, *ut*, etc., 298.
- dissimilis—Comp. of, 87,3.
- distāre—with Acc., or *ē* and Abl., 335, R.2.
- distributives—97; with *plūralia tantum*, *id.* R.3; for cardinals, syntax of, 295; distributive apposition, 323.
- docere—with two Accs., or *dē*, 339, and R.1; *doctus*, *id.* R.2; *discere* as pass., *id.* R.4; constr. after, 423, R.6.
- doing—vbs. of, take obj. clause, 523, 525,1.
- domus—decl., 61, R.2, 68,4; *domum*, 337; *domū*, 390,2; *domi*, 411, R.2; with Gen. of poss. pron., 411, R.3.
- dōneo—while, 569; *until*, with Indic., 571; with Subjv., 572.
- doubt—vbs. of, with *quā*, 555,2.
- dropping—vbs. of, with *quod* clause, 525.
- dubitāre—an, 457,2; *nōn dubitō*, with *quā*, 555,2; with Interrog., *id.* R.1; with Inf., *id.* R.2.
- dum—while, 569, 570; *until*, with Indic., 571; with Subjv., 572; *provided that*, 573; retained, with Indic. in *Ō.O.*, 655, R.3.
- dummodo—*provided that*, 573.
- duo—95; and *ambō*, *uterque*, 292.
- E—length of final, 707,2; see *ex*.
- ecce—with Acc. and Nom., 343,1, R.
- ecquis—106.
- ecthipsis—719,2.
- effecting—constr. of vbs. of, 553.
- efficere—with Subjv. and *ut*, 552,1 and 3.
- egere—with Gen. or Acc., 405, R.1.
- ego—decl. of, 100; Gen. Pl., 304,2 and 3; *nōs* in *Ō.O.*, 660,4.
- elision—719,1.
- ellipsis—688.
- emere—with Gen., 379.
- emotion—vbs. of, with Acc., 330, R.; with Abl., 406; with Acc. and Inf., 533; Causal sentences after, 542 and R.
- En—in exclamations, 343,1, R.
- enallage—693.
- enclitics—effect of, on pronunciation, 15, R.1.
- endeavor—vbs. of, with *ut*, 546,1.
- ending—vbs. of, with Inf., 423,2.
- enim—position of, and use of, 498.
- epicene substantives—21,3.
- ergo—use of, 416,10; with Acc. Ger., 432.
- ergō—with Gen., 373; with Gen. Ger., 428, R.2; usage of, 502.
- esse—conjugation of, 116; cpds., 117; as copula, 205; omitted, 209, 280,2; with Fut. part. to form periphrastic, 247; cpd. tenses with *fuī*, etc., *id.* R.1; *futurum esse ut*, 248; in *eō est ut*, 249; with Ger., 251,1; with Gen. of Price, 379; with Dat. Ger., 429; *est, it is the case*, with *ut*, 553,3; *fuit cum*, with Subjv., 590, R.1; *sunt qui*, with Subjv., 631,2.
- et—in numerals, 96,4, 97,4; *et—et*, usage of, 475; omitted, 481,2 and 3.
- etenim—use of, 498.
- Ethical Dative—251.
- etiam—strengthens comparative, 301; syntax of, 478; *yes*, 471,1; and *quoque*, 479, R.; after *sed*, *vērūm*, 482,5.
- etiāmsi—with Indic. or Subjv., 604.
- etsi—with Indic. or Subjv., 604.
- ex—vbs. cpd. with take Dat., 347, R.5; with Abl. of Separation, 390,1 and 2; with Towns, 391, R.1; with Abl. of Origin, 395; of Material, 396; of Respect, 397, R.; Measure, 402, R.; of Cause, 406, R.2; use as prep., 417,6; with Abl. Ger., 423.
- exclamations—in Acc., 343,1; in Acc. and Inf., 534; exclamatory questions, 558.
- existimāre—with Gen., 379; with *ex* and Abl., 402, R.
- expectāre—constr. of, 572.

extent—in Degree, 334; in Space, 335; in Time, 336.

**extrā**—as prep., 416, 11.

**facere**—**fac** (ut) for Imp., 271, 1; with pred. Gen., 366, R. 1; with Gen. of Price, 379; with consecutive clause, 553, 1; **facere** (**fax**) ut as periphrasis, *ib.* 1; **nōn possum** (**facere**) **quā**, 556, R. 1.

**fear**—sequence after vbs. of, 515, R. 3; clauses of, and Final Clauses, 543, R. 3; syntax of clause of, 550.

**ferē**—position of, 677, R. 1.

**ferre**—conj. of, 171.

**fidere**—with Abl., 401, R. 6.

**fierī**—conjugation of, 173; with two Noms., 206; with Gen. of Price, 379; with **ex** or **dē**, 396, R. 1; with **ut**, 553, 3.

**Figures**—of Syntax and Rhetoric, 688–700; of Prosody, 718–728.

**filling**—vbs. of, with Abl., 405.

**FINAL SENTENCES**—543–550; Pure, 545; Complementary, 546–549; with vbs. of Will and Desire, 546; Inf. instead, *ib.* R. 1; Subjv. without **ut**, *ib.* R. 2; with vbs. of Hindering, 547–549; **nō** with vbs. of Preventing, 548; **quōminus**, 549; with vbs. of Fear, 550; eight circumlocutions for, 544, R.; sequence in, 512.

**final syllables**—quantity of, 711–713.

**fitness**—ads. of, with Dat., 359; with Dat. Ger., 429.

**flāgitāre**—with Abl. or **ē**, 339, R. 1.

**following**—vbs. of, with **ut**, 553, 3.

**foot**—in Metre, 733, 734; equality of, 740; conflict of Word and Verse, 750.

**forbidding**—vbs. of, with Dat., 346; with **nō**, 548.

**forgetting**—vbs. of, with Gen. or Acc., 376.

**FORMATION OF WORDS**—176–200; simple words, 179–192; suffixes, 180; formation of substs., 181; of ads., 182; without suffixes, 183; formation of vbs., 190–192; cpd. words, 193–200; substs., 191–198; vbs., 199, 200.

**frētus**—with Abl., 401, R. 6.

**frui**—with Abl., 407; personal Ger., 427, R. 5.

**fullness**—ads. of, with Gen., 374; vbs. of, with Gen., 383, 1.

**fungi**—with Abl., 406; personal Ger., 427, R. 5.

**FUTURE**—112, 3; formation of, 114, 115; definition of, 223; usage, of 242; of

**volō** and **possum**, *ib.* R. 2; in Impv. sense, 243; periphrastic act., 247; part. act., 283; representation of in *Ō. O.*, 514, 515; periphrastic in Unreal Cond., 515, R. 1; Inf., 530; in rel. sentences, 622; syntax of part., 669, 670.

**FUTURE PERFECT**—112, 3; formation of, 114, 115; defined, 223; syntax of, 244; as Fut., *ib.* R. 1; with **nōlō**, **volō**, **possum**, etc., *ib.* R. 3; as Impv., 245; Representation of, in *Ō. O.*, 514, 515; Pf. and Plupf. periphrastic in Unreal Condition, 515, R. 1; in rel. sentences, 622.

**Gender**—19; common, 21, 1; epicene, 213; **substantiva mōbilia**, *ib.* 2; of 1st Decl., 30; of 2d Decl., 34; of 3d Decl., 39, 43, 46, 49, 55, 58; of 4th Decl., 62; of 5th Decl., 64; concord in, 236; neut. Pl. with feminines, *ib.* 3.

**GENITIVE**—defined, 23, 2; of 1st Decl. in **ēs**, **ēī**, **um**, 29, R. 1, 2; of 2d Decl. in **ī** (from stems in **io**), in **um**, 33, R. 1 and 3; of 3d Decl. in **um**, **ium**, 54, 57, R. 3; of Greek substs. in **ōn**, **eōn**, 65, R. 1; of ads., 73; in **um**, 75; of pron. ads. in **ius**, 76; of ads. of three endings in **um**, **ium**, 79, R. 2, 82, 83, R. 3 and 4; of Comp. of part., 89, R. 3; of Cardinals, 95, R. 2; of Distributives, 97, R. 1.

With **mille**, 293; **meī**, etc., as objective, 304, 2; **nostrum** as Part., *ib.* 3; poss. pron. for Gen., 304, 2, R.; in app. to poss. pron., 321, R. 2; Part. Gen. for Part. App., 323, R.; Adnominal, Appositive, 361; Epexegetical, 361; Possessive, 362; Subjective and Objective, 363; 1st and 3d persons as possessive, 364; of Quality, 365; as Pred., 366; with **facere**, *ib.* R. 1; **generis**, 368, R.; with prepositional subst., 373; with ads., 374; with participles and verbals, 375; with vbs. of Memory, 376; with vbs. of Emotion, 377; with Judicial vbs., 378; with vbs. of Rating and Buying, 379, 380; with interest and **reſert**, 381; with vbs. of Fullness, 383; Ger., 428; with **esse**, **causā**, etc., *ib.* R. 2; position of, 676.

**genus**—decl. of, 48.

**GERUND** and **GERUNDIVE**—112, 5; formation of, 115, 3; Agent of, in Dat., 215, 2; with **esse** to form periphrasis, 251; syntax of, 425–433; Acc. of, with preps., 432; Abl. of, with preps., 432.

*giving*—vbs. of, with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348; with Acc. Ger., 430.  
*grātia*—with Gen., 373; with Gen. Ger., 428, R.2.

Greek substantives—65; Greek Acc., 338.

*habere*—with two Noms. in pass., 206; with Pf. part. to denote Maintenance of the Result, 238; first Impv. wanting, 267, R.; with two Accs., 340, R.1; with Gen. of Price, 379; *be able*, with Inf., 423.

*happening*—sequence after vbs. of, 513, R.2; vbs. of, with *quod* clause, 525, 1; *ut* instead, *ib.* R.; vbs. of, with consecutive clause, 553, 3.

*haud*—441 and 443; *sciō an*, 457, 2.

(*h*)*avere*—175, 4.

*hendiadys*—698.

*heteroclites*—68.

*heterogeneous substantives*—67.

*hiatus*—720.

*hic*—104, 1; syntax of, 305; and *ille*, 307, R.1, 2; with Abl. of Time, 393, R.4; in *Ō.O.*, 660, 3.

*hindering*—vbs. of, with *nō*, 548; with *quā*, 554–556; and vbs. of Preventing, 555; and vbs. of Doubt, *ib.* 2.

*HISTORICAL INFINITIVE*—syntax of, 647.

*HISTORICAL PERFECT*—224; force of, 239; and Pure Pf., 235; and Impf., 231, 240.

*HISTORICAL PRESENT*—224 and 229; with *dum*, 570.

*historical tenses*—225.

*hope*—constr. of, vbs. of, 423, R.5; sequence after, vbs. of, 515, R.3; vbs. of, with Acc. and Inf., 527, R.4.

*humī*, as Loc., 411, R.2.

*hypallagē*—693.

*hyperbaton*—696.

*hypotaxis*—472.

*I*—and *J*, 1, R.2; sound of, 3; effect of, on preceding vowel, 12, 1, R.2; *I*-class of vb. stems, 133, VI.; length of final, 707, 4.

*iam*—with Pr. Indic., 230; with Impf. Indic., 234; *iam*—*iam*, 462, 1.

*Iambic*—foot, 734; rhythms, 757–767.

*IDEAL CONDITION*—596; = Unreal, *ib.* R.1; in *Ō.O.*, *ib.* R.5, 658.

*idem*—decl. of, 103, 2; syntax of, 310; *the same as*, with *quī*, *ut*, *atque*, *cum*, or Dat., 310, R.2; not used with *is*, 310, R.3.

*idōneus*—constrs. with, 552, R.2; with *quī* and Subjv., 631, 1.

*igitur*—position of, 464, R.; usage of, 561.  
*ille*—decl. of, 104, 3; Syntax of, 307; and *hic*, *ib.* R.1, 2; *et ille*, *ib.* R.2; with Abl. of Time, 393, R.4; in *Ō.O.*, 660, 2.

*immō*—use of, 471, c.

*IMPERATIVE*—112, 4; Subjv. for, 263; usage, 266–275; negative of, 270; periphrases of, 271; representatives of, 272; of Past, 272, 3; tenses of, 278; for Prothesis, 593, 4; in Subjv. with *Ō. O.*, 652.

*IMPERFECT*—112, 3; force of, 223, 231; and Hist. Pf., 232; of Endeavor, Disappointment, and Resistance to Pressure, 233; overlapping, *ib.* R.1, 562; of Awakening, 233, R.2; with *iam*, etc., 234; of opposition to Present, 254, R.2; as Potential of Past, 258; in Wish, 260; Subjv. as Concessive, 264; Subjv. as Impv. of Past, 272, 3; tense relations of Subjv., 277; in Sequence, 510, R.

*impersonal verbs*—208, 1 and 2; vbs. of Saying, etc., 528; in Ger. constr., 427, R.4; with *ut*, 553, 4.

*in*—vbs. cpd. with take Acc. or Dat., 331, 347; with Countries and Towns, 337, R.1; with Acc. for Dat., 345, R.2; with app. to Towns, 386, R.1; with books, 387; with Abl. of Time, 394, R.; as prep., 418, 1; with Acc. Ger., 432; with Abl. Ger., 433.

*incorporation*—of antecedent, 616; of correlative, 619.

*indefinite pronouns*—107; syntax of, 312–319; rel. with Indic., 254, R.4, 625.

*INDICATIVE*—112, 4; meaning of, 254, with indef. rel., *ib.* R.4; tense relations of, 276; neg. of, 257; in questions, 463, 464; after *nesciō quis*, etc., 467, R.1; in Relative Sentences, *ib.* R.2.

*indigere*—with Gen., 405, R.

*indignus*—with *quī*, *ut*, or Inf., 552, R.2; with *quī* and Subjv., 631, 1.

*INFINITIVE*—112, 5; formation of, 115, 3; usage of, 279, as subst., 280; after *dēbeō*, *ib.* 2, b; as representative of Indic., 281; after *memini*, etc., *ib.* 2, R.; syntax of, 419–424; with Acc. as subj., 420; as subst., 421; as subj., 422; as obj., 423; *ut* instead, *ib.* R.4; as pred. with *esse*, 425; Fut. pass., 435, R.; sequence after, 518; Acc. and Inf. after vbs. of Saying and Thinking, 527; part. instead, *ib.* R.5; tenses after these vbs., 529–531; with vbs. of Will and Desire, 532; with vbs. of Emotion, 533; in Exclamations, 534;



- Acc. and Inf. as subj., 535; Acc. and Inf. after vbs. of Emotion, 542; with vbs. of Will and Desire, 544, R.; with *dignus*, etc., 552, R.2; after *potius*, etc., 644, R.3, 6; in *Ö. O.*, 650. See Hist. Inf.
- infrā**—as prep., 416, 12.
- Inner Object—Acc. of, 328, 330, 332.
- inquā**—175, 2; **inquit**, in citing *Ö. R.*, 648, R.2.
- inquiring**—vbs. of, with two Accs., 339, and R.1.
- instar**—70, B; with Gen., 373.
- instrument—in Abl., 214, 401; with ab, 214, R.2; Abl. of, contrasted with Abl. of Attendance, 392, R.2.
- inter**—with reflexive to express reciprocal action, 221; vbs. cpd. with, take Acc. or Dat., 331, 347; position of, 412, R.1; as prep., 416, 18; with Acc. Ger., 432.
- interest**—with Gen. and Abl., 381; constr. of Degree of Concern, 382, 1 and 2.
- Interest—Dat. of Personal, 350.
- interjection—16, R.2; no syntax, 201, R.1.
- interrogāre**—with two Accs., or *dē*, 339, R.1.
- interrogative pronouns—106; distinguished from rel., 467, R.2.
- INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES—450—470; simple and cpd., 452; particles in, 454—457; moods in, 462—467; Indic., 463, 464; Subjv., 465, 466; in *Ö. O.*, 651.
- intrā**—position, 412, R.1; as prep., 416, 14.
- intransitive verbs—used impersonally, 208, 2; used transitively, 212, R.3; construed as pass., 214, R.1; with neut. subj. in pass., 217; impersonal Gerund, 251, 2.
- invidere**—with Dat., 346, R.2.
- locus**—heterogeneous, 67, 2.
- ipse**—decl. of, 103, 3; syntax of, 311; et *ipse*, *ib.* 1, R.2; emphasizes reflexive, *ib.* 2.
- is**—decl. of, 103, 1; syntax of, 306; = *tālis*, *ib.* R.1; with *et*, *atque*, *que*, *ib.* R.2; *id temporis*, *aetātis*, 336, R.5; with *qui* and Subjv., 631, 1; in *Ö. O.*, 660, 2.
- islands—in Local Acc., 337; with *in*, *ib.* R.1; prep. omitted, *ib.* R.7.
- iste**—decl. of, 104, II.; syntax of, 306; in *Ö. O.*, 660, 3.
- ita**—with *ut*, 462, 4.
- itaque**—usage of, 500.
- iterative action—566, 567; with *cum*, 584; in Relative Sentences, 623.
- iubere**—constr. after, 423, R.6; with Inf., with Subjv., 546, R.3.
- iuvāre**—with Acc., 346, R.3.
- iuxtā**—as prep., 416, 15.
- Judgment**—vbs. of, with Abl. of Standard, 402.
- Knowledge**—adjs. of, in pred. attrib., 325, R.6; adjs. of, with Gen., 374.
- laedere**—with Acc., 346, R.3.
- lātus**—with Acc. of Extent, 335, R.1.
- leaving**—vbs. of, with Acc. Ger., 430.
- length—by nature, 12, 1, and R.; by position, *ib.* 2.
- letters—tenses in, 252; advs. in, *ib.*; dated from a place, 391, R.3.
- letting**—vbs. of, with Acc. Ger., 430.
- libet**—added to rels., 111, 3; exact use of *libuerit*, 244, R.3; *libens*, in pred. attrib., 325, R.6.
- licere**—exact use of Fut. Pf., 244, R.3; with Gen., 379; *licet*, *although*, 603—607.
- likeness**—adjs. of, with Dat., 349; with *atque*(*et*), 643.
- litotes—700.
- Local Dative—358.
- LOCATIVE—23, N.; of 1st Decl., 29, R.2; of 2d Decl., 33, R.3, 5; syntax of, 411; app. to, in Abl., *ib.* R.2; *domi*, with poss. pron., *ib.* R.3.
- locus**—67, 2; Abl. without *in*, 385, R.3.
- LOGICAL CONDITION—595; with Subjv. by Attraction, *ib.* R.2; with Ideal 2d Person, *ib.* R.3; *sive—sive*, *ib.* R.4; in *Ö. O.*, 657, 595, R.1.
- longum**—with *est* for Subjv., 254, R.1; **longē** strengthens Comp. or Superlative, 301, 303; with Acc., 335, R.1.
- macte**—85, C, 325, R.1.
- māgnus**—comparison of, 90; *age* with *māior*, 296, R.5; *magis*, in comparison of Qualities, 299; *māgnī*, Gen. of Price, 380, 1; *māximī*, Gen. of Price, 380, 1.
- making**—vbs. of, with two Noms., 206; with two Accs., 340.
- mālle**—conj. of, 174; *mālim*, *māllem*, as Potential, 257, 2, 258; in Unreal Wish, 261, R.
- malus**—comparison of, 90.
- Manner—Abl. of, 399.
- Material—Abl. of, 399; indicated by adj., *ib.*
- Means—Abl. of, 402.
- measure**—vbs. of, take Abl., 402.

- Measure**—Abl. of, 402; of Difference, 403; with *ante* and *post*, *ib.* R.  
**medius**—used partitively, 291, R.2; Abl. used without in, 368.  
**memini**—175, 5, b; First Impv. wanting, 267, R.; with Pr. Inf., 231, 2, R.; with Acc., 376, R.2; with *cum* and Indic., 580, R.2.  
**-mēt**—added to personal pron., 102, R.  
**metre**—730; unit of, 731.  
**meus**—76; Voc. of, 100 R.1; *mei* with Gen. Ger., 423, R.1.  
**milie**—a subst. in Pl., 95, R.3; *milie*, with masc. vb., 211, R.1, Ex. b; use of, in Sg. and Pl., 293.  
**minor**—*quam* omitted with, 296, R.4; *minoris*, *minimi*, as Gen. of Price, 380, 1;  
**minus**, *no*, 471, b, 1; *minimē*, *no*, *ib.*;  
*sin minus*, 592; *si minus*, *ib.* R.  
**miseret**, *miserer*—with Gen., 377.  
**modo**—*modo*, 482, 1; *nōn modo*—*sed etiam*, 482, 5; *nōn modo nōn, sed nē—quidem*, *ib.* R.1; *provided only*, 573.  
**monēre**—with Inf., or *ut*, 546, R.1.  
**mood**—112, 4, 253; Indic., 254; Subjv., 255—265; Impv., 266—275; Inf., 279—281; attraction of, 508, 4; in Temporal Clauses, 560; in Relative Sentences, 624—635; in Comparative Sentences, 639; in *Ō. O.*, 650—652.  
**motion**—vb. of, with Inf., 421, R.1; vb. of, with Sup., 435; vb. of, with Fut. part., 438, R.2.  
**movēre**—syncope in Pf., 131, 3.  
**nam**—usage of, 496; position of, *ib.*; *yes for*, 471, R.  
**naming**—vbs. of, with two Accs., 340.  
**namque**—496; position of, *ib.*  
**nāsci**—with two Noms., 206; *nātus*, constr. of, 295, R.5; with Acc., 336, R.4.  
**nē**—neg. of Opt. Subjv., 280; of Impv., 270; continued by *neque*, 280; by *nēve*, 270, 444, 2; with Pf. Subjv., 270, R.2; syntax of, 441, 444; *nē—quidem*, 445, 448, 482, 5 and R.1; in Final Sentences, 543, 4; after vbs. of Hindering, 548; after vbs. of Fear, 550; with *dum*, 573; as Concessive, 608.  
**nē**—as interrogative, 454; to introduce double questions, 458; *neque* or *annōn*, 459; to introduce second member of an indirect question, 460, 2.  
**nearness**—adjs. of, with Dat., 259.  
**nec**—see *neque*.  
**necesse**—85, C.; with *est* instead of Subjv., 254, R.1; with Inf., or *ut*, 535, R.2, 553, 4, R.1.  
**necessity**—adjs. of, with Inf., 421, R.2; expressed by Indic., 254, R.1, 255, R.  
**nēdum**—482, 5, R.2.  
**negative**—of Potential, 257; of Opt., 280; of Impv., 270; *nōn* with Impv., 270, R.1; *nōli* with Inf., 270, R.2; advs., 441—449; *nōn*, 442; *haud*, 443; *nē*, 444; subdivision of, 445; combinations, 446; position of, 448, 449; two, 449; in Copulative Sentences, 480; in Final and Consecutive Sentences, 543, 4.  
**nēmō**—decl. of, 70, D.; and *nullus*, 108; and *quisquam*, 317, 2.  
**nequam**—85, C.; comparison of, 90.  
**neque**—subdivides a general neg., or *negō*, 445; for *et nōn*, 480 and R.1.  
**nequire**—conj. of, 170, b.  
**nesciō**—an, 457, 2; *quis*, 457, R.1.  
**neu**, *nēve*—444, 2; adds Final Clause, 543, 4.  
**neuter**—decl. of, 76, 108.  
**neuter**—adj. with masc. subj., 211, R.4; demonstrative when subst. is expected, Pl. pred. to two fems., 286, 3.  
**nēve**—see *neu*.  
**nihil**—and *nullus*, 108; neg. of *quisquam*, 317, 2; *no*, 471, b, 1; *nihil* as Gen. of Price, 380, 1.  
**nihilōminus**—490, R.  
**nisi**—with *quod*, and *si nōn*, 591, b; *but, except*, *ib.* R.  
**niti**—with Abl., 401, R.6.  
**no**—how translated, 470, b and c.  
**nōlle**—conj. of, 174; exact use of *nōluerit*, 244, R.3; *nōlim*, *nōllem*, as Potential, 257, 2, 258; *nōli*, with Inf. for Impv., 271, 2; with Inf. or *ut*, 538 and 546, R.2.  
**nōmen**—with *esse* and Dat., 349, R.5; with Gen. of Charge, 378, R.2.  
**NOMINATIVE**—defined, 23, 1; of 1st Decl., 29; of 2d Decl., 31; of 3d Decl., 38; for Voc., 201, R.2; syntax of, 203; two Noms., 206; with *en*, or *ecce*, 343, 1, R.; after vbs. of Saying and Thinking, 528.  
**nōn**—neg. of Potential, 257; neg. of Wish, 280; with Impv., 270, R.1; syntax of, 441, 442; *nōn possum nōn*, 449, R.1; *no*, 471, b, 1; *nōn modo—sed etiam*, 482, 5; *nōn modo—sed nē—quidem*, *ib.* R.1.  
**nōnne**—syntax of, 455.

**nōnnullus**—108.

**nōscere**—syncope in *Pf.*, 131,3; 175,5, *d.*

**nullus**—decl. of, 76,90; and **nēmō**, 108; and **illius**, 217,2.

**num**—456; in Indirect questions, 460,1, *a.*

**number**—Sg. and Pl., 22; concord of, 285; violation of Concord in app., 321, *r.1*; substs. of, with Gen., 368; definite numbers in Abl. of Time, 293, *r.2*.

**numerals**—cardinals, 94; ordinals, 95 and 294; cpd., 96; omission of **centēna milia**, *ib.* 6; distributives, 97 and 295; multiplicatives, 97; proportionals, 97; advs., 98; with Part. Gen., 370.

**O**—as interjection, 201, *r.2*, 343; **ō si** in Wishes, 261; length of final, 707, 5.

**ob**—vbs. cpd. with, take Acc. or Dat., 331, 347; to give the Cause, 408, *r.2*; as prep., 416,16; with Acc. Ger., 432.

**object**—indirect retained in pass., 217; direct, 230; inner, 330, 332, 333; outer, 336; indirect, 244; of Ger., 427; after Abl. Sup., 436.

**OBJECT SENTENCES**—523–537; with **quod**, 525; with Acc. and Inf., 526, 527; with Nom. and Inf., 528; after vbs. of Will and Desire, 532; after vbs. of Emotion, 533; in exclamations, 534; as subj., 535; in part., 536, 537; in *Ō. O.*, 655.

**Objective Genitive**—363,2.

**Ōdi**—conjugation of, 175,5, *c.*

**omission**—of subj., 207; of copula, 209; of conjunction, 481; of **nōn**, 482,5, *r.1*; of vb. with **si** in, 592, *r.*; of **si**, 596; of vb. of Protasis, 599; of vb. of comparative clause, 640.

**omitting**—vbs. of, with **quod**, 555,1; vbs. of, with Inf., 423,2.

**omnis**—in Abl., without in, 388; **omnia**, as Acc. of Respect, 338,2.

**oportet**—Indic. for Subjv., 254, *r.1*; with Inf. or Subjv., 535, *r.2*, 553,4, *r.*

**oppidum**—requires prep., 337, *r.2*; in app. to Town in Abl., 391, *r.1*; in app. to Loc., 411, *r.2*.

**OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE**—260–265; in Wishes, 260; in Asseverations, 262; as Impv., 263; as concessive, 264; in Deliberative Questions, 265.

**opus**—with Abl., 406; with part., *ib.*

**ὀρθία obliqua**—508,3; partial, *ib.* 8; sequence in, 516; in Relative Sentences, 625, *r.*, 628, *r.*, 648,649; moods in, 650–

652; interrogative in, 651; Impv. in, 652; tenses in, 652–655; in Causal Sentences, 655; Conditional Sentences in, 656–659; Logical, 595, *r.1*, 657; Ideal, 596, *r.5*, 658; Unreal, 597, *r.4*, 659; pronouns in, 660; by Attraction, 598,4, 662; partial, 598,3, 663; Representation, 654 and *n.* ordinals—94; alter for **secundus**, 96,5; in dates, 294; for cardinals, *ib.* and 336, *r.1*; with **quisque**, 318,2; position of, 676, *r.2*. Origin—Abl. of, 395. oxymoron—694.

**paene**—with Indic. in Apod. of Unreal Condition, 597, *r.3*; position of, 677, *r.1*.

**paenitet**—with Gen., 377.

**palam**—as prep., 417,8.

**pār**—with **est** instead of Subjv., 254, *r.1*; with Gen. or Dat., 359, *r.1*.

**parataxis**—472.

**parenthetical ut** and **nō**—515, *r.*

**pars**—with Pl. vb., 211, *r.1*, Ex. *a.*; in Abl. without in, 385, *r.3*; **māgnam partem**, 324, *r.2*.

**Part Affected**—in Acc., 338,1.

**partial obliquity**—508,3, 541,628.

**PARTICIPIAL SENTENCES**—664–670; to express Time, 665; Cause, 666; Condition and Concession, 667; relative clauses, 668; Future similarly used, 669,670.

**PARTICIPLE**—decl. of, 80,82; Abl. of, 83, *r.1*; Nom. and Acc. Pl. of, *ib.* *r.2*; comparison of, 88,89; defined, 112,5; formation of, 115,3; 125,1; *Pf.* pass. of Deponents as act., 167, *n.1*.

*Pf.* with **habere** and **tenere**, 238; Fut. periphrastic, 247; *Pf.* with **fuī**, 250; usage of *Pr.* and *Pf.*, 282; usage of Fut. act., 293; *Pr.* with Gen., 375; of Birth with Abl., 395; *Pf.* pass. with **opus** and **timor**, 406; in Abl. Abs., 409,410; as subst., 437; as adj., 438; sequence after, 518; after vbs. of Perception, *etc.*, 527, *r.5*, 536; after vbs. of Causation, *etc.*, 537; for Prot., 593,2, 602, *r.3*; Concessive, 609; for rel., 637.

**particles**—copulative, 474; adversative, 483; disjunctive, 492; causal, 496; illative, 499; position of, 679.

**Partitive Genitive**—367–372; with substs. of Quantity, *etc.*, 368; with neut. Sg., 369; with numerals, 370; with pronouns, 371; with comparatives and superlatives, 372; partitive apposition, 322.

- parvus**—Comp. of, 90; in Gen. of Price, 380,1.
- passive**—voice, 112,2; vbs. with two Noms., 206; vb. agrees with pred., 211, R.1, Ex. b; defined, 214; Pf. with Dat. of Agent, 215,1; as reflexive, 218; of something endured, 219; periphrastic forms of, 248-251; impersonal, 346, R.1.
- pause**—in Verse, 742.
- peculiāris**—with Gen. or Dat., 350, R.1.
- penes**—position of, 413, R.1; use of, as prep., 416,17.
- pentameter**—elegiac, 785.
- per**—vbs. cpd. with take Acc., 331; with Acc. of Extent, 335, 336; to Express Time Within Which, *id.* R.2, 393, R.1; with Person Through Whom, 401; position of, 413, R.1; use as prep., 416,18.
- perceiving**—vbs. of, with Object Clause, 523; with Acc. and Inf., 526, 527; with Nom., 528; with part., 527, R.5, 536.
- PERFECT**—defined, 112,3; System, 114,2; and 3, b; formation of, 114, 115, 121,2; syncopated forms of, 131, 1-3; Stem, 134; part. as act., 167, R.1.
- Pass. with Dat. of Agent, 215,1; defined, 223; Historical, 225, 235; force of, 236; for Fut. Pf., 237; part. with *habeo* and *teneo*, 238; pass. with *ful*, 250; Subjv. as Potential, 257,2; in wishes, 260; Subjv. as Impv., 263,2, b, 270, R.2; tense relations in Subjv., 277; Inf. as subjv. or obj., 280,2; after vbs. of Will and Desire, 280,2, c; use of part., 282; sequence after, 511, R.R.3; in Consecutive Sentences, 513; Inf., 530.
- periphrasis**—for Impv., 271; for Fut. periphrastic, 515, R.2; for Fut., 531; for Apod. in Unreal Condition, 597, R.5.
- PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION**—129; act., 247; pass., 251; with *ful*, 247, R.1; with *futūrum esse ut*, 248; with *in eo est*, 249; with *posse, velle*, 248, R.; Pf. part. with *sum* and *ful*, 250 and R.1; with Ger., 251; Fut. act., 253.
- permitting**—vbs. of, with Consecutive Clause, 553,2.
- persons**—in conjugation of vb., 112,1; concord of, 227; order of, *id.* R.
- personal pronouns**—304; omitted, *id.* 1; Gen. of, as objective, *id.* 2; Gen. of, as Partitive, *id.* 3.
- persuādere**—with Inf., 546, R.1.
- pertaesum est**—with Gen., 377.
- piget**—with Gen., 377.
- place**—where, in Abl., 385; with vbs. of Placing, *id.* R.1; with Towns, 386; as Cause, Means, etc., 389; with Books, etc., 387; with *tōtus*, etc., 388; in Loc., 411; whence, in Abl., 390,391; with Towns, 391; *whither*, in Acc., 337.
- pleasure**—vbs. of, with Dat., 346.
- plebs**—decl. of, 68,6.
- plenty**—vbs. of, with Abl., 405; adjs. of, with Gen. or Abl., *id.* R.2.
- pleonasm**—692.
- PLUPERFECT**—112,3; formation of, 114, 115; defined, 223; force of, 241; in Wish, 260; Subjv. as Impv. of Past, 272,3; tense force in Subjv., 277.
- plural**—of abstracts, 204, R.5; pred. with two subjs., 285; neut. pred. to two fems., 286,3.
- plūs—quam** omitted with, 296, R.4.; **plūris, plurimi**, of Price, 380,1.
- pōne**—usage of, 416,19.
- pōscere**—with two Accs., 339 and R.1; with *ē* and Abl., *id.* R.1.
- position**—of advs., 440; of neg., 448; of rel., 612; of correlative clause, 620.
- positive**—degree lacking, 87,2,7,8, and 9; in comparing qualities, 290.
- posse**—conj. of, 119; use of Fut. and Fut. Pf. of, 242, R.2, 244, R.3; needs no periphrasis, 248, R.; Indic. for Subjv., 254, R.1; Impf. Indic. of Disappointment, *id.* R.2; with Pf. Inf. act., 280,2, b; with *quam*, etc., to strengthen superlative, 303; *nōn possum nōn*, 449, R.1; in Apod. of Unreal Condition, 597, R.3; in Logical Condition, 657, R.
- Possession**—Dat. of, 349; compared with Gen., *id.* R.2; of qualities, *id.* R.3; Gen. of, 366,2; in 1st and 2d person, 362, R.1.
- possessive pronouns**—100-102; usage of *suis*, 309,4; syntax of, 312; for Gen. of personal pron., 304,2, R.; with Gen. in app., 321, R.2; for 1st and 2d persons in Subjective Gen., 364; as pred., 366, R.3; with *interest* and *refert*, 381; with *domi*, 411, R.3; position of, 676, R.1.
- post**—vbs. cpd. with, take Dat., 347; with Abl. or Acc. of Measure, 403, R.; as prep., 416,20.
- posteaquam**—see **postquam**.
- postquam**—with Hist. Pf. or Pr., 561; with Impf., 562; with Plupf., 563; with

- Subjv., *id.* n.; Causal with Pr. and Pf., 564; in Iterative action, 566, 567.
- POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE—257-259; for Pr. and Fut., 257; for Past, 258; in questions, 259.
- potiri—with Abl., 407 and n.1; with personal Ger., 427, n.5.
- potius—quam, with Subjv. or Inf., 644, n.3; see *posse*.
- power—adjs. of, with Gen., 374; vbs. of, with Inf., 423 and n.2; sequence after vb. of, 515, n.3; in Indic. rather than Subjv., 254, n.1, 255, n.
- prae—vbs. cpd. with take Dat., 347; gives Preventing Cause, 406, n.3; as prep., 417, 9.
- praeter—vbs. cpd. with, take Acc., 331; use as prep., 416, 21.
- predicate—and copula, 205; with copulative vbs., 206; concord of, 211; in Pl. with two subjs., 235; concord of, in Gender, 236; in Person, 237; Attribution, 325; Apposition, *id.* and n.6; after Inf., 535, n.3.
- prepositions—defined, 16, 6; repeated with cpd. vbs., 331, n.2, 3; with Countries and Towns, 337, n.1-4; with *domum*, *id.* n.3; omitted with Countries and Towns, *id.* n.7; instead of Dat., 347, n.1; omitted with vbs. and adjs. of Separation, 390, 2 and 3; with Abl. of Origin, 395; syntax of, 412-418.
- PRESENT—112, 3; System, 114, 3, a; Stem, 123; defined, 223; Historical, 234, 239; Specific or Universal, 227; of Endeavor, *id.* n.1; of Resistance to Pressure, *id.* n.2; anticipates Fut., 228; with *iam*, *etc.*, 330; Subjv. as Potential, 237, 2; Subjv. in Wishes, 260; Subjv. as Impv., 263, 270, n.2; Subjv. as Concessive, 264; tense relations in Subjv., 277; Inf. as subj. or obj., 280, 1; part., 232; sequence after Hist., 511, n.1.
- preventing—vbs. of, with *nē*, *quōminus*, or *quā*, 548, 549, 555, 1.
- Price—Gen. of, 379; Abl. of, 404.
- primus, primū, primum, 325, n.7; used partitively, 291; prior, 87, 8.
- priusquam—with Indic., 574, 576; with Pr., 575; with Pf. or Fut., 576; *nōn priusquam* = *dum*, *id.*; with Subjv., 577; with *ut* or Inf., 644, n.3.
- prō—to express disproportion, 298; with Nom. or Acc. in Exclamations, 343, 1; *for*, compared with Dat., 345, n.2; as prep., 417, 10; with Abl. Ger., 423.
- procul—with Abl. of Separation, 390, 3, n.; as prep., 417, 11.
- prohibere—with *nē*, 548; with *quōminus*, 549.
- prohibiting—vbs. of, with Dat., 345, n.1.
- promising—vbs. of, with Inf., 423, n.5, 527, n.4.
- PRONOUNS—defined, 16, 3; decl. of, 17; Personal, 100-102; Determinative, 103; Demonstrative, 104; Relative, 106; Interrogative, 106; Indefinite, 107; Pronominal Adjectives, 106; Possessive, 100-102; omitted, 207; syntax of, 304-319; with Part. Gen., 371; in Ō. O., 660.
- prope—as prep., 416, 22; position of, 678, n.1; *propior* and *proximus*, 87, 8.
- proprins—with Gen. or Dat., 359, n.1.
- propter—for Abl. of Cause, 406, n.3; as prep., 416, 23; with Acc. Ger., 423.
- protasis—defined, 599; equivalents of, 599; omission of vb. of, 599.
- protraction—742.
- pudet—with Gen., 377 and n.1.
- purpose—in Inf., 423, n.2; in Sup., 425; in Fut. part., 428, n.2; sequence in clauses of, 512; reflexive in clauses of, 521; rel. clauses of, 630; see Final Sentences.
- putare—with Gen. of Price, 379; with two Noms. in pass., 206.
- putting—vbs. of, with Dat. and Acc., or Acc. and Abl., 348.
- quaerere—with *a*, *dē*, *ex*, 339, n.1.
- quases—175, 6.
- Quality—possession of, 349, n.3; Gen. of, 365; Gen. and Abl. of, *id.* n.2, 400, n.1; Gen. of, as pred., 366; Abl. of, 400; Comparison of qualities, 299.
- quam—after comparatives, 296; omission of, *id.* n.4; with *prō*, *ut*, *quā* to express disproportion, 298; in comparison of qualities, 299; with *potuit* and superlative, 303; *quam si*, with Subjv. of Comparison, 602; with *quā* or *ut* after comparatives, 631, 3; with Comparative Sentences, 644.
- quamdū—568; with Indic., 589.
- quamquam—with Indic. or Subjv., 605.
- quamvis—with Indic. or Subjv., 606.
- quandō—with Causal Indic., 540; with Subjv., 541.

quantity—rules for, 12, 702-713; of cpds., 715.

quantī—with vbs. of Rating and Buying, 380.

quasi—with Subjv. of Comparison, 602.

que—added to rels., 111,2; syntax of, 476.

questions—with Potential Subjv., 259; deliberative, 265, 465; rhetorical, 265, 273, 464, 466; direct simple, 453-457; with *an*, 457; direct disjunctive, 458; neg. of, 459; particles in indirect, 460; Indic. in, 463, 464; Subjv. in, 465, 466; indirect, 467; genuine, 463; exclamatory, 558.

qui interrogative—106 and *r*.

qui relative—106; after *dignus*, etc., 552, *r*.2; *quod sciam*, 637, *r*.; equiv. to *cum* *is*, 633, 634; equiv. to *ut* *is*, 630, 631; after comparatives with *quam*, 631,3; see *quō* and *quā*.

quia—with Causal Indic. or Subjv., 540, 541.

quicunque—106; with Indic., 254,4, 625.

quidam—107,2; syntax of, 313.

quidem—position of, 679.

quilibet—107.

quin—*nōn* *quin* as Causal, 541, *r*.; in Consecutive Sentences, 552,3; with vbs. of Preventing, Doubt and Uncertainty, 555; equiv. to *ut nōn*, 556; in Relative Sentences of Character, 632; *fieri nōn possum quin*, 556, *r*.

quique—106.

quire—conjugation of, 170, *a*.

quis indefinite—and *qui*, 107,1; for *aliquis*, *id*. *r*.1; syntax of, 315; *aliquis* instead, *id*. *r*.; familiar usage of, 317,2; *quid* as Inner Obj., 333,1, *r*.2.

quis interrogative—106; and *qui*, *id*. *r*.

quisnam—106.

quispiam—107,3; syntax of, 316.

quisquam—107,3; syntax of, 317.

quisque—107,5; syntax of, 318; with ordinals and superlatives, *id*. 2; with reflexives, *id*. 3; *sum quisque*, *id*. *r*.

quisque—106; with Indic., 254,4, 625.

quvis—107,4.

quō—as Causal conjunction, 541, *r*.; *quō* in Final Clauses, 545,2.

quod—*so long as*, 569; *until*, with Indic., 571; with Subjv., 572.

quod—after vbs. of Adding and Dropping, 525,1; after demonstratives, *id*. 2; and *ut*, *id*. 1, *r*.; *as to the fact that*, with Subjv., 610, *r*.2; with Subjv. in *Ō*. O.,

*id*. 3; gives Ground in Exclamations, 534, *r*.1; with Causal Sentence in Indic. or Subjv., 546, 541; after vbs. of Emotion, 541; *nōn quod*, *id*. *r*.; *quod si*, 610, *r*.2.

quom—see *cum*.

quōminus—with vbs. of Preventing, 549.

quoniam—with Causal Indic., 540; with Subjv., 541.

quoque—syntax of, 479; and *etiam*, 479, *r*.; with *sed* and *verum*, 482,5 and *r*.1.

Rating—vbs. of, with Gen. and Abl., 379, 380.

reciprocal relations—by *inter* *se*, 221.

recordari—with Acc., 376, *r*.2.

reduplication—in Pr. stem, 123, II.; in Pf. stem, 134, III.; omitted in Pf., *id*.

Reference—Dat. of, 352.

referre—with Gen. and Abl., 381, 382; expression of Degree of Concern, 382.

reflexive—passive used for, 318; pronouns, 309; with *ipse*, 311,2; in subord. clauses, 530-532; refers to real subj., 309,2, 521, *r*.2.

refraining—vbs. of, with *quin*, 555,1.

refusing—vbs. of, with *nē*, 548; with *quōminus*, 549; with *quin*, 555,1.

relative pronouns—106; made indefinite, 111,1; or universal, *id*. 2; in Inner Obj., 333,1; and interrogative, 467, *r*.2.

RELATIVE SENTENCES—610-637; for Prothesis, 593,1; position of, 612; antecedent in, 613; concord in, 614; repetition of antecedent, 615; incorporation of antecedent, 616; attraction of, 617; correlative of, 618; absorption of correlative, 619; position of correlative, 620; indefinite antecedent, 621; tenses in, 622,623; in Iterative action, 623; moods in, 624-635; indefinite and generic relatives with Indic., 254, *r*.4, 625; or Subjv., *id*. *r*.; explanatory, 626; Subjv. in, 627; *quod sciam*, etc., *id*. *r*.; with Subjv. by Partial Obliquity, 628; with Subjv. by Attraction, 629; Final, 630; Consecutive, 631; after definite antecedent or indefinite antecedent, *id*.; after comparative, *id*. 3; with *quin*, 632; Causal, 633; Concessive and Adversative, 634; in Inf., 635; combination of, 636; participle instead, 637,638; in *Ō*. O., 635.

remembering—vbs. of, with Gen., 376; with Acc., *id*. *r*.2,

- reminding**—vbs. of, with Gen., 376; with Abl. or Acc., *ib.* RR.1,2.
- removing**—vbs. of, with Abl., 390,2.
- representatio**—654 and *n.*
- requiring**—vbs. of, with two Accs., 339.
- resisting**—vbs. of, with Dat., 246.
- resolution**—of long syllable, 732.
- resolving**—vbs. of, with Inf., 423; with *ut*, 546.
- Respect**—Acc. of, 336; Abl. of, 397; Abl. of, with comparatives, 396.
- restrictions**—in Relative Sentences, 627, R.
- Result**—for Sentences of, see Consecutive Sentences.
- rhythm**—in arrangement, 627; defined, 739; names of, 736; rhythmical series, 738.
- robur**—decl. of, 45.
- rogare**—with two Accs., 339.
- rūs**—as limit of Motion, 337; in Abl. of Separation, 390,2; *rūrī* in Loc., 411, R.1.
- salvare**—conjugation of, 175,4.
- saying**—vbs. of, with Object Clause, 523; vbs. of, with Acc. and Inf., 526,527; vbs. of with Nom. in pass., 528.
- scire**—first Impv. wanting, 267, R.; *quod sciam*, 627, R.
- secundum**—as prep., 416,24; *alter* for *secundus*, 96,5.
- sed**—with *etiam*, *quoque*, after *nōn modo*, 432,5 and *n.*1; syntax of, 435.
- seeming**—vbs. of, with two Noms., 206.
- semi-deponents**—167.
- semi-hiatus**—720.
- semi-vowels**—6,2,A.
- senex**—decl. of, 71; Comp. of, 87,9.
- Separation**—Gen. of, 383,2; Abl. of, 396.
- SEQUENCE OF TENSES**—500, 519; in sentences of Design, 512; in sentences of Result, 513; representation of Subjv. in, 514, 515; in *Ō. O.*, 516; after other moods, 517; after Inf. or part., 518; original Subjvs. in, 519; in Comparative Sentences, 602; after Hist. Pr., 511, R.1; after Pure Pf., *ib.* R.2; after *accidit*, *etc.*, 511, R.; after vb. with future character, 515, R.3.
- showing**—vbs. of, with two Noms., 206; with two Accs., 340; with Acc. and Inf., 526, 527; with Nom. and Inf., 528.
- si**—with *ŏ* in Wishes, 261; in Indirect Question after vbs. of Trial, 460,1,6; in Iterative action, 566, 567; sign of Condition, 590; *si nōn* and *nisi*, 591; *sin*, 592.
- similis**—compared, 87,3; with Gen. or Dat., 359, R.1.
- simul**—as prep., 417,12; **simul—simul**, 482,1; Temporal, with *atque* (*sc.*), *as soon as*, 561–563; Causal with Pr. and Pf., 564; with Fut. and Fut. Pf., 565.
- sin**—use of, 592; strengthened by *minus*, *etc.*, *ib.* R.
- sine**—as prep., 417,13.
- sive**—use of, 496, 595, R.4.
- sōlus**—decl. of, 76; with *qui* and Subjv., 631,1.
- Specification**—Gen. of, 361.
- Standard**—Abl. of, 402, 403; with *ex*, 402, R.; Abl. of, with *ante* or *post*, 403; of comparison omitted, 297.
- stem**—25,1, 132; Present, 114,3,a, 133; Perfect, 114,3,b, 134; Supine, 114,3,c, 135; Formation of Verb stem, 132–135; varies between Conjugations, 136.
- sub**—vbs. cpd. with, take Acc. or Dat., 331, 247; usage of, as prep., 418,2.
- subject**—201; in Nom., 203; in Acc. with Inf., *ib.* R.1; forms of, 204; omitted, 207; prolepsis of subj. of dependent clause, 463; of Inf. omitted, 527, R.3; Acc. and Inf. as, 535; attraction of pred. after Acc. and Inf., *ib.* R.3.
- Subjective**—Genitive, 363, 364; poss. pron. instead, 364.
- SUBJUNCTIVE**—112,4; with generic relatives, 254, R.6, 625,1; force of, 255; Indic. with vbs. of Possibility, *etc.*, *ib.* R.; Ideal and Unreal, 256,1; Potential and Opt., *ib.* 2; Potential of Pr. Part. and Fut., 257–259; Opt., 260; particles with Opt., 261; in asseverations, 262; as Impv., 263, 267, 270, R., 272; as concessive, 264; tense relations of, 277; in Deliberative or Rhetorical questions, 265, 465, 466; in Indirect questions, 467; after vb. with Fut. character, 515, R.3; Original in dependence, 519; with *quod*, *as to the fact that*, 627, R.; in Final and Consecutive Sentences, 543,4; in Temporal Clauses, in Iterative action, 567, R.; in Contemporaneous action, 572, 573; in Subsequent action, 577; with *cum*, 585, 588; in Relative Sentences, 627, 628; by Attraction, 509,4, 629; in *Ō. O.*, 650–652.
- subordination**—defined, 472; syntax of, Subordinate Clauses, 504, ff.; division of, 505–507; moods in, 508; Sequence of Tenses in, 509–519.

- subsequent action—574-577; with Indic., 574-576; with Subjv., 577.
- substantives—defined, 16,1; inflection of, 17; division of, 18; gender of, 19, 20; *mōbilia*, 21,2; epicene, *ib.* 3; heterogeneous, 67; heteroclitics, 68; metaplasts, *ib.*; defective, 69; *singulāria tantum*, *ib.* A; *plūralia tantum*, *ib.* B; heterologa, *ib.* C; formation of, 180, 181, 183; adjs. and parts. used as, 204, RR.; Pl. of abstracts, *ib.* R.4; agreement of pred., 211; with several adjs. in Sg., 290, R.2; verbal with Dat., 357.
- subter—vbs. cpd. with take Acc., 331; as prep., 418,2.
- suffixes—180-182.
- suf—decl. of, 102; usage of, 309, 520-522; complement of Inf., 309,3.
- sum—see *esse*.
- summus—comparison of, 87,2; used partitively, 291, R.2.
- super—vbs. cpd. with take Acc. or Dat., 331, 347; as prep., 418,4; with Abl. Ger., 433.
- superlative—in *issimus*, 86; in *rimus*, 87, 1; in *linus*, *ib.* 3; in *entissimus*, *ib.* 4 and 5; lacking, *ib.* 9; of parts., 89; of advs., 93; meaning of, varies with position, 291, R.2; strengthened, 303; with Part. Gen., 372.
- SUPINE—112,5; system, 114,3,c; formation of, 115,3; stem, 135; defined, 434; Acc. of, 435; Abl. of, 436.
- suprē—as prep., 416,25.
- sus—102; syntax of, 309; emphatic, *ib.* 2; with prep. phrases, *ib.* 4; *suum cuique*, 318,3,R.; with Gen. Ger., 428, R.1; in dependent clauses, 521.
- syllaba anceps*—741.
- syllables—division of, 10; names for, 11; open, 11,R.; close, *ib.*; length of, 12; common, 13; quantity of final, 707-713.
- syllapsis—690.
- synaphela—728.
- syncope—725-743; in Pf. forms, 131, ff.
- synecdoche—695.
- synzesis—727.
- ystole—722.
- taedet—with Gen., 377.
- taking—vbs. of, with two Accs., 340; End For Which given by Dat. or ad, *ib.* R.2; vbs. of Taking Away, with Dat., 347, R.5; with Acc. Ger., 430.
- talis—with *qui* or *ut* and Subjv., 631,1.
- tam—with *qui* or *ut* and Subjv., 631,1.
- tamen—syntax of, 490.
- tametal—usage, 604.
- tamquam—with Subjv., 602.
- tantus—with *qui* or *ut* and Subjv., 631,1; tanti, with vbs. of Rating and Buying, 390; tanti est, it is worth while, *ib.* R.1; tantum abest ut, 552, R.1.
- teaching—vbs. of, with two Accs., 339.
- TEMPORAL SENTENCES—559-588; division of, 559; Antecedent Action, 561-567; Iterative Action, 566, 567; Contemporaneous Action, 568-573; Subsequent Action, 574-577; with cum, 578-588; Temporal cum, 580; cum inversum, 581; Iterative cum, 584; Circumstantial cum, 585-588; in Ō. O., 655.
- tenses—112,3; signs of, 114,2; formation of, 114, 115; syntax of, 222-252; definitions, 223; of continuance, attainment, or completion, 224; Pr., 227-230; Impf., 231-234; Pure Pf., 235-238; Hist. Pf., 239, 240; Plupf., 241; Fut., 242, 243; Fut. Pr., 244, 245; periphrastic, 246-251; in Letters, 252; of Indic., 276; of Impv., 278; Sequence of, 509; in Final and Consecutive Sentences, 543,3; in Relative Sentences, 622, 623; in Ō. O., 653-655; in Inf., 279, 653; of Subjv., 277, 654, 655; *Representatio*, 654,n.
- tenu—position of, 413, R.1; usage of, as prep., 417,14.
- thinking—vbs. of, with two Noms., 206; with Inf., 587.
- time—when, in Abl., 393; how long, in Acc., 336; within which, in Abl., 393; with per, 336, 393, R.1; with tōtus, *ib.* R.2; when=for which, *ib.* R.3; with hic, ille, *ib.* R.4; Abl. with in, 394; lapses of, with cum, 580, R.3; given by part., 665, 670,1.
- tnesis—726.
- tōtus—decl. of, 76; with Abl. of Place Where, 393; of Time How Long, 393, R.2.
- towns—with Acc., 337; in Abl. of Place Where, 396; in Abl. of Place Whence, 391; in Loc., 411; with preps., 337, R.2, 391, R.1; with appositives, 337, R.2, 396, R.1, 391, R.1, 411, R.2.
- trajection—696.
- trāns—vbs. cpd. with take Acc., 331; as prep., 416,26.
- transitive verb—defined, 213.



*trial*—vbs. of, with *si*, 460, 1, b.  
*tu*—decl. of, 101; with *met* and *-pte*, 102, R. 1, 2; *vestri* and *vestrum*, 304, 2 and 3, 364, R.; poss. pron. for, 304, 2, R.; *tui*, *vestri*, with Gen., 428, R. 1.  
*tum*—*tum*, 462, 1; *cum*—*tum*, 588.  
*tuus*—101; *tui* with Gen. Ger., 428, R. 1.

U—length of Final—707, 6.

*ubi*—*as soon as*, with Indic., 561–563; with Iterative action, 566, 567.

*ullus*—decl. of, 76; and *quisquam*, 107, 3, R., 106; syntax of, 317.

*ulterior*—87, 8.

*ultra*—*as prep.*, 416, 27.

*uncertainty*—vbs. of, with *quā*, 555, 2.

*unlikely*—adjs. of, with *atque* (Et), 643.

UNREAL CONDITION—597; with Indic. in Apod., *id.* R. 2, 3; in *Ō. O.*, *id.* R. 4, 659; Apod. in, after vb. requiring Subjv., 597, R. 5.

*unus*—decl. of, 76, 95; Pl. with *plurālia tantum*, 95, R. 1; as distributive, 97, R. 3; with superlative, 303; with prep. for Part. Gen., 372, R. 2; with *qui* and Subjv., 631, 1.

*unusquisque*—107, 5.

*urbs*—with name of Town, requires prep., 337, R. 2, 336, R. 1, 391, R. 1, 411, R. 2.

*usus*—with Abl., 496; with Pf. Part., 496.

*ut*—in wishes, 261; with *quam*, 631, 3; with *pōtuit*, to strengthen superlative, 303; *ut*—*ita*, 482, 4; after vbs. of Adding and Happening, 525, 1, R.; in Final and Consecutive Sentences, 543; *ut nōn*, *id.* 4, 545, R., 552; after vbs. of Fear, 550; to add restriction, 552, R. 3; after vb. of Causation, 553, 1; after vbs. of Compelling and Permitting, *id.* 2; after vbs. of Happening, *id.* 3; after impersonals, *id.* 4; Explanatory, 557; Exclamatory, 558; *ut primum*, *as soon as*, with Indic., 561–563; with Iterative sentences, 566, 567; with *si* and Subjv., 602; Concessive, 608; after comparatives, 631, 3.

*uter, which*—decl. of, 76, 106; *utrum* as interrogative particle, 458.

*uterlibet*—108.

*uterque*—decl. of, 106; usage of, 292; with Part. Gen., 371, R. 1.

*utervis*—108.

*uti*—with Abl., 407; with Personal Ger., 427, R. 5.

*utinam*—in wishes, 261.

V—and u, 1, R. 2; pronunciation of, 7.

*ve*—usage of, 496.

*vel*—with superlative, 303; usage of, 494.

*velle*—conjugation of, 174; use of Fut. or Fut. Pf., 242, R. 2; has no periphrasis, 242, R.; *velim*, 257, 2; *vellem*, as Potential, 258; *vellem*, as Unreal, 261, R.; with Pf. Inf. act., 280, 2, b; *volens* in pred. attrib., 325, R. 6; with Inf. or *ut*, 546, R. 1.

*velut, velutai*—with Subjv., 602.

*vendere*—with Gen. of Price, 379.

*venire*—169, 2, R. 1; with Gen. of Price, 379. verbals—subst. with Dat., 357; in *et*, with Gen., 375; formation of, 191.

*verba*—defined, 16, 4; conjugation of, 17; inflection of, 114; deponents, 113; personal endings, 114; regular, 120, ff.; classes of, 133; list of, 137–162; Deponents, 163–166; Semi-deponents, 167; Irregular, 168–174; Defective, 175; formation of, 190–200; composition of, 199, 200; Impersonal, 208; Concord of, 210, 211, 285–287; trans. and intrans., 213.

*verō*—syntax of, 487; with *sin*, 592.

*versus*—position, 413, R. 1; usage, 416, 29.

*verum*—with *etiam*, 482, 5; syntax of, 486.

*vesci*—with Abl., 407; with personal Ger., 427, R. 5.

*vester*—101.

*vetus*—decl. of, 82, 2; comp. of, 87, 1, R. 2.

*vidēre*—with *nō*, 548, R.; with two Noms. in pass., 206; *vidē*, with Subjv. for Impv., 548, R.

VOCATIVE—defined, 23, 5; in 1, 33, R. 2; in adjs. of 1st and 2d Decl., 73; no syntax of, 261, R. 1; in pred. app., 325, R. 1.

voice—112, 2, 213; act., 213; pass., 214.

*vōmer*—decl. of, 45, R.

vowels—quantity of final, 707.

*Want*—vbs. of, with Abl., 405; adjs. of, with Gen. and Abl., *id.* R. 2.

*warning*—vbs. of, with *ut*, 546.

*will*—vbs. of, with Inf., 380, 2, c, 423, 2, 532; sequence after vbs. of, 515, R. 3; with Final sentence, 546; with Inf. instead, *id.* R. 1; with simple Subjv., *id.* R. 2.

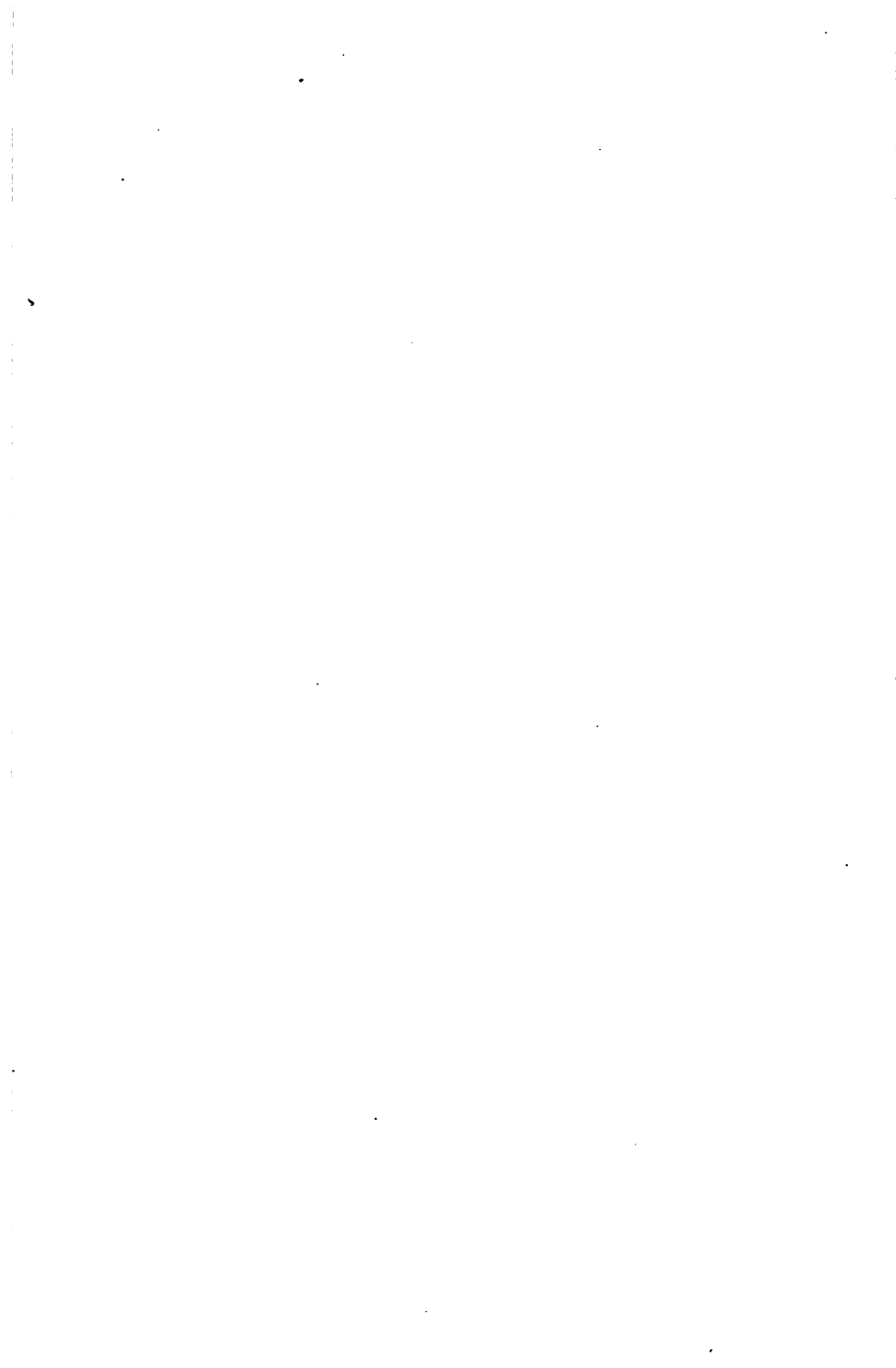
wishes—in Subjv., 260, 261.

*without*—translated by *ut nōn*, 552, R. 4; *quā*, 556.

Y—length of final, 707, 3.

*yes*—trans. of, 471, a and c.

Zeugma—690.





1926

